

New Hello!

& Treasure Island

By A Group Of Supervisors




معك
Ma3ek App
تطبيق
التعلم التفاعلي

 **EL-MONASSER**
GUIDE

الصف الأول الثانوي
الفصل الدراسي الأول



موقع
التفوق
AltFwok.com

1st
Sec.
2023
FIRST TERM

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ
 إِنَّا إِلَهِكُمْ مَا اسْتَوْأَوْعِلُوا الصَّلَاةَ إِنَّا لَا نَغْفِرُ لِمَنْ أَسْرَفَ عَنْهَا
 مَكْتَبَةُ الْفُتُوحِ

بطاقة فهرسة

فهرسة أثناء النشر إعداد الهيئة العامة
 لدار الكتب والوثائق القومية

El Moasser Guide based on New Hello!
 A Group of Supervisors
 Cairo : GPS For Printing, Publishing &
 Distribution, 2022 - 2023
 3 vols ; 24 cm.
 For 1st sec. - first term.
 I.S.B.N : 978 - 977- 475 - 862 - 5
 English language - study and teaching

428

رقم الإيداع : ٩٥٠٣ / ٢٠٢٢

موقع
 التفوق

ALTfwok.com

Manage Your Term

قم بإدارة فصلك الدراسي (منهجك)

Plan A

1 6 Units

18

Lectures

المحتوى	المحاضرة
Part One: Lessons 1&2	الأولى
Part Two: Lessons 3&4	الثانية
Part Three: Story vocabulary, Skills & Advanced exercises	الثالثة

Or Plan B

2 6 Units

12

Lectures

المحتوى	المحاضرة
Part One: Lessons 1&2	الأولى
Part Two: Lessons 3&4	الثانية

3

2

Lectures

المحتوى	المحاضرة
Part Three: Story vocabulary, Skills & Advanced exercises الوحدات ٣,٢,١	الأولى
Part Three: Story vocabulary, Skills & Advanced exercises الوحدات ٦,٥,٤	الثانية

Total

☆ وبذلك تكون قد انتهت من دراسة المنهج بالكامل كالآتي :

المحتوى	المحاضرة
Plan A	٨ محاضرة
Plan B	٤ محاضرة

تتوجه : تختلف الخطة الزمنية بحسب طريقة وأسلوب كل معلم وطالب والوقت المتاح له.

Guidebook

دليل الكتاب



1 Part One: Lessons 1&2

عرض جديد للدرس الأول والثاني يشتمل على المفردات اللغوية الأساسية والمفردات اللغوية الواردة في كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات والتعريفات والمصطلحات ونصوص القراءة والسماع والقواعد اللغوية.

2 Part Two: Lessons 3&4

عرض جديد للدرس الثالث والرابع يشتمل على المفردات اللغوية الأساسية والمفردات اللغوية الواردة في كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات والتعريفات والمصطلحات ونصوص القراءة والسماع والقواعد اللغوية.

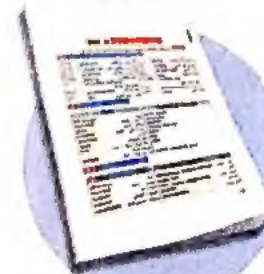


3 Part Three: Story vocabulary, Skills & Advanced exercises

عرض جديد يشتمل على أهم المفردات اللغوية للدرس الخامس والسادس والمهارات اللغوية وجزء خاص للمتفوقين.

4 Listening - Reading

عرض شامل لـ (Listening - Reading) مع التنويه عن المفردات اللغوية بلون وترجمتها على جانب الجدول.



5 Vocabulary Study

عرض جديد للمتلازمات اللفظية والمترادفات ومنضادات ومشتقات المفردات الرئيسية الخ...

6 Language

شرح مُفصل للقواعد اللغوية مع تدريبات تطبيقية على كل جزئية.



7 Just for Advanced Level

للمستويات العليا يتضمن شرح متبوعاً بتدريبات.

8 Language Skills

جزء خاص للمهارات اللغوية.



موقع التفوق AltFwok.com

CONTENTS

MODULE 1 Community

UNIT 1	Getting away	page 12
UNIT 2	Supporting the community	page 86
UNIT 3	Improving lives	page 148
Revision 1		page 206

MODULE 2 Communication

UNIT 4	Making new friends	page 211
UNIT 5	Communication	page 273
UNIT 6	Learning from literature	page 330
Revision 2		page 382

STORY	on Treasure Island	page 388
-------	--------------------	----------

9 Mini Test

اختبار مصغر لتطبيق مباشر علي الشرح

10 Grammatical Hints

ملاحظات لغوية بين السطور من
نصوص القراءة والاستماع

11 Test on Unit

اختبار شامل علي الوحدة كما يمكنك حل الاختبار
وتصويبه إلكترونيا

12 Story: Treasure Island

عرض جديد للقصة المفردة وتدريبات
تقيس مدى استيعاب الطالب لها

Getting away

SB pages 6 : 15 WB pages 88 : 93

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

Reading :

An article about ecotourism, two blogs about the summer holidays

Writing :

An essay on ecotourism

Listening :

A story about travelling and what happened when something went wrong

Speaking :

Describe an event

Language :

Past simple and past continuous

Life skills :

Collaboration



• بنك الأسئلة للزراعة الحديثة والتسويق
• ملحق المفردات للتجارة
• تدريبات للزراعة الحديثة هي بنك الأسئلة
• Dictation في ملحق بنك الأسئلة

للتفوق
الوحدة

SB pages 8 : 9

WB pages 88 & 89

Part I

Vocabulary

تدريبات • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية جيداً ومراجعتها بانتظام (أول مرة في الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

conservation (n)	حماية البيئة - صيانة	isolated (adj)	بعيد / نائي - مُعزَّل
conservationist (n)	من أنصار حماية البيئة	lean - leaned /	يتحنن / يعمل - يتكهن
ecosystem (n)	النظام البيئي	leant (v)	
eco-tourism (n)	السياحة البيئية	material (n - adj)	مادة خام - قماش - مادي
eco-tourist (n)	سائح مُراعى للبيئة	spicy (adj)	حار - مثقل بالبهارات
endangered (adj)	مُعرض للخطر - مُهدد بالانقراض	sustainable (adj)	مستدام - صديق للبيئة
environment (n)	البيئة	swell - swelled -	يتورم - يتضخم - يتزايد
environmentally (adv)	بيئياً	swollen (up) (v)	
impact(ed) (n - v)	تأثير - أثر - يؤثر	trek(ked) (n - v)	رحلة طويلة (سير) - يسير لمسافة طويلة
isolate(d) (v)	يُزِل	unique (adj)	فريد من نوعه / مُميز

تدريبات • من المفهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2 Important Vocabulary

المفردات الهامة

advertise(d) (v)	يُعلن عن	giant (adj - n)	عسلي
annoyed (adj)	متضايق - مزعج	harm(ed) (n - v)	ضرر - يضر
attractions (n)	عوامل الجذب	historic (adj)	تاريخي
avoid(ed) (v)	يتجنب - يتعاشى	including (prep)	بما في ذلك - مُتضمناً
beauty (n)	الجمال	internal (adj)	داخلي
biology (n)	علم الأحياء	introduce(d) (v)	يُطرح - يُقدم - يُقَدِّم
bite - bit - bitten (n - v)	عضة - بعض	Lemur (n)	قرود اللور
blow - blew - blown (v)	نَفَخ - ينفخ - يُفْخِر	limited (adj)	محدود
carnival (n)	احتفال / مهرجان	local (adj)	محلي
colourful (adj)	زاهي الألوان	locals (n)	السكان المحليين
community (n)	مجتمع - طائفة	luggage (n)	أمتعة السافر
considerate (of) (adj)	مُتفهم - مُراعى لـ	orangutan (n)	أفيان الغاب - الكسلان
coral reefs (n)	الشعاب المرجانية	otherwise (adv)	وإلا

council (n)	مجلس	path (n)	طريق مشاة - ممر
create(d) (v)	يخلق - يبتكر - يوجد	plaza (n)	ساحة / فناء
crowded (adj)	مكتظ	popular (adj)	مشهور - محبوب
damage(d) (v - n)	يُتلف - تلف / يضر	population (n)	(عدد) السكان
destination (n)	مقصد - وجهة سفر	properly (adv)	بشكل ملائم - على أكمل وجه
destroy(ed) (v)	يُدمر	provide(d) (v)	يوفر - يزود بـ
develop(ed) (v)	تنمي / يُطوّر - ينمو / يتطور	public (adj)	عام - شعبي
disaster (n)	كارثة - مُصيبة	rebuild - rebuilt (v)	يعيد بناء
disconnected (adj)	منفصل / متعزل	remote (adj)	بعيد / نائي
dragon (n)	تنين	resident (n)	ساكن / تزيل
eco- (prefix)	بيئي ...	site (n)	موقع
eco-hotel (n)	فندق صديق للبيئة	solution (n)	حل
eco-trip (n)	رحلة صديقة للبيئة	souvenir (n)	هدية تذكارية - تذكارات
educate(d) (v)	يُعلم	sunbathe(d) (v)	بأخذ حمام شمس - يتعرض للشمس
else (adv)	أيضاً - آخر	transport (n)	وسائل النقل المواصلات
encourage(d) (v)	يُشجع	victim (n)	ضحية
exist(ed) (v)	يوجد / يتواجد	volunteer(ed) (n/v)	مُتطوع - يتطوع
fly (n)	قُبابة	voluntourist (n)	سائح مُتطوع
fussy eater (n)	شخص صعب الإرضاء - في الطعام	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية

3 Definitions تعريفات

تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نوافذ التعلم المستهدفة - هاهنا

Memorise	Understand
conservationist (n)	a person whose job is to help protect natural things such as wild animals, forests, etc. من حُماة البيئة
ecotourism (n)	a type of holiday that helps local people and doesn't damage the natural environment السياحة البيئية
endangered (adj)	in danger of disappearing forever الإختفاء للأبد مُعرض للخطر
impact (n)	the effect that an action or a person has on someone or something أثر / تأثير
isolated (adj)	disconnected from other people and places متعزل
lean (v)	to be in a sloping position وضع مائل ينحني

materials (n)	مواد (خام)	the things that are used for making or doing something
spicy (adj)	مُثل بالبهارات	containing chilli or other spices that give a burning feeling with pleasantly strong taste
sustainable (adj)	صديق للبيئة - مستدام	able to continue without causing damage to the environment
swell (up) (v)	يتورم / ينتفخ	to get bigger and rounder أكثر إمتلاءة than normal
trek (n)	رحلة طويلة (سيراً)	a hike / walk on a difficult journey
unique (adj)	فريد - مميز	special or the only one of its type or quality

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. Pollution can have disastrous effects on the delicately balanced
(الدورة الأخيرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٢)

- a. industry b. culture c. civilization **d. ecosystem**

2. As an, you should travel in a way that shows respect to nature.
(الدورة الأخيرة - لغات ٢٠٢٢)

- a. ecotourism **b. ecotourist** c. ecosystem d. eco-friendly

3. The tourist industry has had a big on the local town.
(كورس أصو - أحمد محمد موسى بنات ٢٠٢٢)

- a. compact b. respect c. empathy **d. impact** = effect

4. The explorers spent the day through forests and over mountains.
(الدورة الأخيرة بنات ٢٠٢٢)

- a. diving **b. trekking** c. developing d. raising

5. Tourism is when we protect our touristic places.
(الدورة الأخيرة وأفضل ٢٠٢٢)

- a. sustainable** b. crowded c. unique d. noisy

6. Put some ice on your knee before it up.
(التأهيلية الأخيرة بنات ٢٠٢٢)

- a. treks **b. swells** c. leans d. isolates

7. There are many animals in the world, which we need to save.
(الدورة الأخيرة ٢٠٢٢)

- a. endangered** b. isolated c. insulated d. popular

8. I like food, especially that with hot pepper.
a. fussy b. internal c. spicy d. disconnected
9. The Great Pyramid is a/an monument.
a. isolated b. unique c. considerate d. crowded
10. helps to protect natural environment.
a. Community b. Material c. Destination d. Ecotourism
11. Don't over the balcony, Sama. You might fall.
a. volunteer b. harm c. avoid d. lean
12. The of the environment is very important.
a. population b. attraction c. conservation d. path
13. We bought some for the curtains.
a. community b. material c. destination d. ecotourism
14. A child needs a good to grow up and become a good citizen.
a. disaster b. council c. environment d. eco-hotel
15. It is not good to keep a child from other children.
a. isolated b. unique c. considerate d. giant
16. Eco-hotels are friendly, they have little bad effect on nature.
a. spicy b. properly c. environmentally d. otherwise
17. As a/an, his job is to look after the environment.
a. volunteer b. conservationist c. resident d. voluntourist

2 Important Vocabulary

18. Your arm can swell up when a mosquito you.
a. bites b. welcomes c. helps d. greets
19. I to look after my baby sister when my mother goes out.
a. volunteer b. harm c. avoid d. lean
20. Luxor is an important tourist
a. population b. attraction c. conservation d. path
21. I am travelling to Aswan in three days. It is my next
a. community b. material c. destination d. ecotourism
22. In prison, criminals are from the outside world.
a. fussy b. internal c. spicy d. disconnected
23. Try to be of other people's feelings.
a. isolated b. unique c. considerate d. giant

24. When the food is prepared, it is both healthy and tasty.
a. spicy b. properly c. otherwise d. environmentally
25. work for a charity and get no money.
a. Volunteers b. Conservationists c. Residents d. Voluntourists
26. "....." means related to the environment.
a. Re- b. Ex- c. Eco- d. In-
27. Some work in the tourist industry.
a. include b. including c. local d. locals
28. The tourists lay on the beach to
a. introduce b. blow c. sunbathe d. exist
29. Pollution the environment.
a. volunteers b. harms c. avoids d. leans
30. You should walk along the in the garden. Don't walk on the wet grass.
a. population b. attraction c. conservation d. path
31. Air pollution is really a/an
a. disaster b. council c. environment d. eco-hotel
32. The heart is one of the organs.
a. fussy b. internal c. spicy d. disconnected
33. One of the in the hotel is an important man from Canada.
a. solutions b. attractions c. residents d. victims
34. A enjoys themselves without damaging the environment.
a. volunteer b. conservationist c. resident d. eco-tourist
35. I paid for everything, the drinks.
a. include b. including c. never d. ever
36. A good team member new ideas and finds solutions to work problems.
a. introduces b. blows c. sunbathes d. exists
37. People usually going out when it is raining.
a. volunteer b. harm c. avoid d. lean
38. Try to be a good member of your
a. community b. material c. destination d. ecotourism

39. You have to arrive early, you won't be allowed in. **يسمح لك بالدخول.**
 a. spicy **b. properly**
 c. otherwise **d. environmentally**
40. Some ancient Egyptian statues still in the temple.
 a. introduce **b. blow** **c. sunbathe** **d. exist**
41. I stayed in a/an ; it does not cause harm to nature.
 a. disaster **b. council** **c. environment** **d. eco-hotel**
42. This city has a/an of about three million people.
 a. population **b. attraction** **c. conservation** **d. path**
43. The Pacific is a/an ocean, larger than all continents. **القارات**
 a. isolated **b. unique** **c. considerate** **d. harmful**
44. Some children are eaters. Mothers find it difficult to know what they like.
a. fussy **b. internal** **c. spicy** **d. disconnected**
45. He was elected as a member of city
 a. Disaster **b. Council** **c. Environment** **d. Eco-tourism**

3 Definitions

46. means special or the only one.
 a. Exotic **b. Sustainable** **c. Unique** **d. Material**
47. is a type of holiday that helps local people and doesn't damage the natural environment.
a. Ecotourism **b. Eco-trip** **c. Ecosystem** **d. Eco-hotel**
48. means in danger of disappearing forever. **الأيدي**
 a. Crowded **b. Endangered** **c. Lean** **d. Relaxing**
49. A means something that is used for making or doing something.
 a. castle **b. path** **c. material** **d. coral**
50. means that an activity can be repeated because it does not harm the environment.
 a. Exotic **b. Spicy** **c. Crowded** **d. Sustainable**
51. A / An is the effect that an action or a person has on someone or something.
a. impact **b. advantage** **c. lettuce** **d. load**

Part II Vocabulary Study

تدوينه ساعد شعورك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته

1 Verbal Collocations متلزمات لفظية

bring	problems	يسبب مشكلات	go	diving	يمارس رياضة الغوص
cause	problems	يسبب مشكلات	have	a holiday	يحصل على إجازة
catch	a flight (to)	يسافر بالطائرة (إلى)	make	notes	يأخذ ملاحظات
create	jobs for	يوفر وظائف لـ	provide	a holiday (to)	يُنظم رحلات (إلى)
do	something different	يفعل شيئاً مختلفاً	start	university	يبدأ الدراسة الجامعية
find	a solution (to)	يجد حلاً (لـ)	take	a taxi	يأخذ تاكسي
get	lost	يتوه / يضل الطريق			

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
advantage	ميزة
crowded	مزدحم - مكتظ
giant	عملاق / ضخم
isolated	بعيد / نائي - مُعزّل
material	نماش
spicy	متبل بالبهارات
trek	رحلة طويلة (سيراً) - يسير
unique	لمسافة طويلة
	فريد من نوعه / مُميز
merit, upside	
congested	
gigantic	
remote, faraway	
fabric	
hot	
hike	
special, unusually good	

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
advantage	ميزة	disadvantage, demerit, downside	عيب - لمية
crowded	مزدحم - مكتظ	empty, free	فارغ
isolated	بعيد / ناء	close, nearby, neighbouring	قريب - مجاور
isolated	مُعزّل / انطوائي	sociable	اجتماعي
sustainable	مستدام - صديق للبيئة	unsustainable	غير مستدام

ALTfwork.com موقع الترفيق

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

conservation	
conserve (v) (د) يحفظ	- It is important to conserve the environment.
conservation (n) الحفاضة	- The conservation of the environment is important.
conservationist (n) من حماة البيئة	- Conservationists work hard to protect the environment.
conservative (adj) تقليدي - محافظ على التقاليد	- My father is a conservative person.
endangered	
danger (n) الخطر	- A careless driver puts his life in danger .
endanger(ed) (v) يُعرض للخطر - يخطّر	- A careless driver endangers his life.
endangered (adj) مُعرض للخطر	- The life of a careless driver is endangered .
dangerous (adj) خطير	- It is dangerous to travel with a careless driver.
environment	
environment (n) البيئة	- We all must protect the environment .
environmentalist (n) خبير بيئي	- Some environmentalists have talked to us about how to protect the environment.
environmental (adj) بيئي	- Pollution is an environmental problem.
environmentally (adv) بيئياً	- Cars that run on electricity are environmentally friendly.
isolated	
isolate(d) (v) يعزل - يعزل	- It is important to isolate coronavirus patients.
isolation (n) العزلة - الفصل	- The isolation of coronavirus patients is important.
isolated (adj) منعزل - منفصل	- Coronavirus patients must be isolated from other people.

material	
material (n) مادة (خام)	- Wood is a hard material .
material (n) قماش	- This shirt is made of soft material .
material (adj) مادي - ملموس	- The police have material evidence that he is a thief.
lean	
lean(ed) - leant (v) يميل / ينحني - يتكى	- Don't lean on this dirty wall.
lean (adj) نحيف / منحوت الجسد	- He was lean , tall, and muscular lean .
lean (adj) خالي من الدهون	- My children like lean meat.
leaning (adj) مائل	- Don't go near this leaning wall.
spicy	
spice(d) (v) يُثبّل (يضع توابل)	- Mum has spiced the fish.
spice (n) تابل (مفرد توابل)	- Mum has put spices into the fish.
spicy (adj) حريف - حار - مثبّل بالبهارات	- I like spicy food.
sustainable	
sustain(ed) (v) يحافظ على - يتي	- A speaker should sustain the listener's interest.
sustainability (n) استمرارية / استدامة	- Conservationists are interested in environmental sustainability .
sustainable (adj) دائم - صديق للبيئة	- Cycling is a sustainable activity.
volunteer	
volunteer(ed) (v) يتطوع	- Sama and her friends volunteered to help the old woman.
volunteer (n) متطوع	- Sama and her friends were the volunteers who helped the old woman.
voluntary (adj) تطوعي	- We thanked Sama and her friends for their voluntary work.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات

at least	على الأقل	go on holiday	يأخذ إجازة
close to	قريب من	in progress	مستمر
environmentally friendly	قريب من	keep ... safe	يُبقى ... في أمان
except for	بما عدا	make sure	يتأكد - يتحقق
famous for	مشهور بـ	riding on boats	ركوب المراكب
first of all,	أولاً على شيء	that's all for now	هذا كل ما لدي الآن
for example,	على سبيل المثال	the local council	المجلس المحلي
from all around the world	من كل أرجاء العالم	tourist destinations	أماكن يقصدها السياح
go on a boat trip	يذهب في رحلة بالقارب	tourist industry	النشاط السياحي

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

benefit from	يستفيد من	introduce ... to	يُعرف ... بـ/على
blow ... off	تنتفض - ينفخ	keep ... as	يحتفظ بـ ... كـ
cycle across	يقود العراجة عبر	lean ... on / against	يستند ... على
disappear from	يختفي من	lean on / against	يتكئ على
educate ... about	تُعلم ... عن	lean out of	يتحني إلى خارج
find out (about)	يكشف/يعرف (عن)	manage to	يتسكن أن
get ... back	يسترد - يستعيد	trek across / through	يسير مسافة طويلة عبر
get to	يصل إلى	trek into / in	يسير مسافة طويلة إلى داخل / في
go back (to)	يُعود/يرجع (إلى)		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

arrive - reach - get to

- arrive (v) (فعل لازم لا يتبعه مفعول)
 - My father hasn't arrived yet.
- arrive at (v) (يصل إلى مكان صغير نسبياً مثل المدرسة/المطار/المحطة)
 - Rodayna arrived at Cairo Airport at 9:00.
- arrive in (v) (يصل إلى مكان كبير نسبياً مثل مدينة/دولة)
 - Rodayna arrived in Cairo at 9:00.
- get to (v) (يصل إلى مكان كبير أو صغير)
 - Rodayna got to Cairo Airport at 9:00.
 - Rodayna got to Cairo at 9:00.

• reach (v)

يصل إلى (معرف حرف جر)

- Rodayna reached Cairo Airport at 9:00.

coloured - colourful

• coloured (adj)

ملون / ذو ألوان متعددة

- I have no coloured photographs for my grandfather. They all are black and white.

• colourful (adj)

زاهي الألوان - ملير / متنوع

- Little children like colourful clothes.
- My uncle has had a colourful life. He has worked and lived in different countries.

contain - include - consist of

• ... contain + (شيء موجود بداخله)

يحتوي على

- This bag contains some books and pens.

• ... include + (بعض مكونات الشيء)

يشتمل على

- The program of the trip includes a visit to the High Dam.

• ... consist of + (كل مكونات الشيء)

يتكون من

- My flat consists of three bedrooms, a reception, a kitchen and two bathrooms.

destination - location

• destination (n)

جهة الوصول/الوجهة (المكان المقصود)

- I am travelling abroad next Friday. London is my destination.

• location (n)

موقع/مكان

- GPS helps us find locations.

educate - teach - learn - bring up

• educate + (v) شخص/أشخاص

تُعلم/يُدرّس لـ (غالباً في مدرسة أو جامعة)

- This school educates disabled children.

• teach (v)

يتدّرس/يعمل بالتدريس (بدون مفعول)

- Mr Nasser teaches at a secondary school.

• teach + (v) (المادة/الموضوع)

- Mr Nasser teaches English at a secondary school.

• teach + شخص + to/how to + inf. (v)

- Mr Nasser teaches students to speak English.

- Mr Nasser teaches students how to speak English.

• learn + (v) (المادة/الموضوع)

- Ahmed learns English at a secondary school.

• learn + to/how to + inf. (v)

- Ahmed learns to speak English at a secondary school.

- Ahmed learns how to speak English at a secondary school.

• bring up + شخص/أشخاص = raise (v)

- This great woman has brought up her children alone.

- This great woman has raised her children alone.

else

١- تُستخدم (else) بعد أدوات الإستفهام بمعنى (أيضا):

• Q.W. ماذا؟ else + أداة استفهام

- What else do you want?

- Where else will you go?

٢- تُستخدم (else) بمعنى (آخر) بعد الكلمات التالية:

Someone | somebody | something | somewhere | anyone | anybody
anything | anywhere | everyone | everybody | everything
everywhere | no one | nobody | nothing | nowhere

- Ahmed didn't take your camera. Someone else took it.

- Do you want to eat something else?

endangered / dangerous

• endangered (adj)

- The workers in the cave are endangered.

• dangerous (adj)

- The scorpion is very dangerous.

يُدرّس (+ مفعول)

يُعلِّم ... كيف ..

يتعلَّم (+ مفعول)

يتعلَّم كيف ...

يُربّي / يهذب (+ مفعول)

مُعَرَّض للخطر

خطير

national - international - local

• national (adj)

- Salah is the captain of the national team.

- October 6th is a national holiday.

• international (adj)

- The Suez Canal is important for international trade.

• local (adj)

- He works in the local council.

• local (adj)

- There is a local pain in my leg.

• local (n)

- One of the locals guided us to the bank.

Isolate - insulate

• isolate (v)

- Coronavirus patients are isolated from other people.

• insulate (v)

- Electric wires are insulated with plastic.

unique - special - private

• unique (adj) = unusually good or special

- I had a unique offer to spend two weeks in Paris.

• unique (adj) = the only one of its kind

- Each person has unique fingerprints.

• special (adj)

- She has special language skills.

• private (adj)

- Mr Ashraf has a private car.

قومي / وطني

دولي / عالمي

إقليمي / محلي

مكاني / موضعي

من السكان المحليين (من أهل المنطقة)

يعزل / يفصل (عن الآخرين)

يعزل (باستخدام مادة عازلة)

مميز جدًا

فريد من نوعه

مميز / خاص

خاص (= شخصي)

ALTfWok.com موقع التفوق

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

Q MRQ

1. He lives in an isolated village. The synonym of the word 'isolated' is

- a remote b unusual c close d faraway

2. "Egypt does many giant projects nowadays." The synonyms of the

word 'giant' are

- a huge b generous c delighted
d modern

3. He has so many problems.

- a does b takes c goes
d takes

4. You can say that someone has a an

- a lost b ecosystem c holiday
d new e impact

5. "He lives in an isolated village." In this sentence, 'isolated' is antonymous with

- a gigantic b remote c close
d faraway e nearby

6. The old man sat down and leant the wall to rest.

- a on b of c against
d from e in

7. When I was young, I liked very much to trek the countryside.

- a cross b across c through
d although e though

8. Voluntary work is of great importance. The antonyms of "voluntary" are

- a optional b exceptional c obligatory
d compulsory e customary

Q MRQ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Plastic is used to electric wires.

- a isolate b insulate c burn d break

2. Generous people are always ready to voluntary work.

- a do b make c give d take

3. The museum is opened daily for Fridays.

- a except b accept c expectedly d exist

4. Scientists work hard to a solution to this health problem.

- a make b tell c go d find

5. My brother university last year.

- a went b started c took d brought

6. When I first visited Cairo, I lost.

- a had b introduced c got d found

7. "I went trekking along the beach." The word 'trekking' here is a synonym of

- a fishing b hiking c losing d fabricating

8. The village benefited the new canal.

- a from b of c to d about

9. The tourist is very important.

- a factory b ecotourism c ecosystem d industry

10. When the fan was turned on, its air blew the paper

- a off b of c to d at

11. He is a good father who is close his children.

- a to b of c for d a & b

12. Children are usually about the games at the amusement park.

- a exciting b excited c excitement d b & c

13. The games at the amusement park are usually to children.

- a exciting b excited c excitement d b & c

14. Lions are animals. They can attack people.

- a coloured b colourful c endangered d dangerous

15. Lions are animals. They may die out **soon**
 a. coloured b. colourful c. endangered d. dangerous
16. Don't ask Aliaa for help. Ask somebody
 a. also b. else c. too d. b & c
17. We have to electricity to avoid paying much money.
 a. conserve b. conservation c. conservationist d. conservative
18. **Ecology** does the least harm to the environment.
 a. Ecotourists b. Ecotourism c. Ecology d. Ecosystem
19. do no harm to the environment.
 a. Ecotourists b. Ecotourism c. Ecology d. Ecosystem
20. Never put your life in **danger**.
 a. endanger b. endangered c. danger d. dangerous
21. Never your life.
 a. endanger b. endangered c. danger d. dangerous
22. He is an who works hard to stop damaging nature.
 a. environment b. environmental c. environmentalist d. environmentally
23. It is necessary **to** keep your children in from bad company.
 a. isolate b. isolated c. isolating d. isolation
24. I refused to park my car next to the wall that looked as if it was going to fall.
 a. lean b. leant c. leaning d. leans
25. Unlike me, my children like to eat food which has the flavour of **spices**.
 a. spice's b. spices c. a spiced d. spicy
26. A/An enjoys themselves and does charity work.
 a. voluntourism b. ecotourism c. voluntourist d. ecotourist

1. Reading & Listening

Ecotourism - Is this the future?

(58 page 6)

1. What is ecotourism?

Ecotourism⁽¹⁾ is about providing⁽²⁾ holidays to places which are often endangered⁽³⁾ and isolated⁽⁴⁾. The holidays are designed to have a limited⁽⁵⁾ impact⁽⁶⁾ on the local environment and to educate⁽⁷⁾ tourists about conservation⁽⁸⁾.



Egypt is developing⁽⁹⁾ ecotourism to protect the environments along the Red Sea coast⁽¹⁰⁾. Tourists can stay in hotels built of environmentally friendly⁽¹¹⁾ natural⁽¹²⁾ materials⁽¹³⁾. When tourists go diving⁽¹⁴⁾, they are taught how to avoid⁽¹⁵⁾ damaging⁽¹⁶⁾ the fish and keeping the special coral reefs⁽¹⁷⁾ safe.

Madagascar is famous for its ecotourism and wants to protect its ecosystem⁽¹⁸⁾ (the animals and plants in its environment). 80% of the animals, and 90% of the plants that live there don't exist⁽¹⁹⁾ anywhere else⁽²⁰⁾ in the world. Lemurs⁽²¹⁾, for example, only live in Madagascar.

The Galapagos Islands⁽²²⁾ in Ecuador are famous for the unique⁽²³⁾ animals, such as the giant⁽²⁴⁾ turtles⁽²⁵⁾ which live there. Ecuador makes sure that tourism is sustainable⁽²⁶⁾. Only a limited number of people can visit the islands each year, so the animals and their environment are safe.

The Komodo National Park⁽²⁷⁾ in Indonesia is a popular⁽²⁸⁾ ecotourism destination⁽²⁹⁾. Much of Indonesia's endangered wildlife⁽³⁰⁾, including⁽³¹⁾ the Komodo dragon⁽³²⁾, can only be found here. The National Park is also famous for its beach with pink sand.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) السياحة البيئية
- (2) توفر
- (3) معرض للخطر
- (4) معزول
- (5) محدود
- (6) أثر
- (7) يعلم
- (8) حماية البيئة
- (9) تنمي
- (10) ساحل
- (11) صديق للبيئة
- (12) طبيعي
- (13) مواد
- (14) الغوص
- (15) يتجنب
- (16) إتلاف
- (17) الشعاب المرجانية
- (18) النظام البيئي
- (19) يوجد
- (20) لآخر
- (21) قردة قلمصور
- (22) جزر
- (23) غريب
- (24) سمك
- (25) سلحفاة كبيرة
- (26) مستدام
- (27) المحمية الوطنية
- (28) مشهور
- (29) مقصد
- (30) الحياة البرية
- (31) بما في ذلك
- (32) التين

AltFwok.com موقع التوفيق

2. Working Together

Last year, I went to the Faroe Islands for a few days as a volunteer⁽¹⁾ – I was both a teacher⁽²⁾ and a volunteer⁽³⁾. I helped the locals⁽⁴⁾ to rebuild paths⁽⁵⁾ and walls⁽⁶⁾. It was very hard work, but great fun⁽⁷⁾ and I met other volunteers from all around the world.

While I was working on the islands, I talked to the people who live there about life in such a remote⁽⁸⁾ place. On the second day, I climbed⁽⁹⁾ to the top of a hill⁽¹⁰⁾ when the wind blew⁽¹¹⁾ my hat off. Fortunately⁽¹²⁾, the family I was staying with gave me another, much warmer⁽¹³⁾ hat which I kept as a souvenir!⁽¹⁴⁾



(SB page 9)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) متطوع
- (2) معلم
- (3) متطوع
- (4) السكان المحليين
- (5) ممرات
- (6) أسوار
- (7) متعة
- (8) بعيد / نائي
- (9) يتسلق
- (10) تَل
- (11) طُهرت
- (12) لحسن الحظ
- (13) لطيف
- (14) تذكُّار

2. Listening Texts

Luca : Last summer I decided not to go on holiday⁽¹⁾ to Greece with my friends, but do something different.

Klara : So, where did you go ?

Luca : Well, as I'm studying Biology⁽²⁾ I thought I'd go to Indonesia to find out more about the orangutans⁽³⁾ there. So, I booked a holiday with an ecotourism⁽⁴⁾ company and went to Borneo.

Klara : What was it like ?

Luca : A bit of a disaster⁽⁵⁾ although I did love the rainforests. When we got to Jakarta, we caught an internal flight⁽⁶⁾ to Borneo, but my luggage⁽⁷⁾ never arrived so, I had to buy new clothes. The next morning, we took a boat up the river to the orangutan centre and while I was leaning⁽⁸⁾ out of the boat to take photos, I dropped my camera.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) راحب في إجازة
- (2) علم الأحياء
- (3) إسمان الشبه
- (4) السياحة البيئية
- (5) كارثة
- (6) رحلة جوية داخلية
- (7) أمتعة
- (8) منحسب

Klara : Oh, no. Did you manage to get it back ?

Luca : No way, the river's really deep, so I just had to leave it, but I was very annoyed⁽⁹⁾, but at least I had my phone. It took two days to get to the centre so while we were sitting on the boat, the guide told us all about the orangutans and what the conservationists⁽¹⁰⁾ are doing there. It sounded really exciting. When we arrived, the guide introduced⁽¹¹⁾ us to the people working there and then we had dinner.

Klara : What was the food like ?

Luca : It was mainly rice and vegetables, but they were very spicy⁽¹²⁾. I don't like spicy food, so I only ate the rice. By the end of the week, I was eating the vegetables and fish though as I was so hungry.

Klara : Well, I'm glad to hear you're not such a fussy eater⁽¹³⁾ anymore. What did you do every day ?

Luca : We got up about six every morning as that's when the sun rises, had breakfast and then trekked⁽¹⁴⁾ into the forest to learn about the orangutans from the people who are looking after them.

Klara : Did you feed them ?

Luca : No, they're wild animals, not pets. We just observed them, made notes and took photos. We also learnt about other animals, birds and insects in the rainforests. Unfortunately, at the end of the first week, a spider⁽¹⁵⁾ bit me while I was sleeping and my arm swelled up⁽¹⁶⁾.

Klara : So, what happened ?

Luca : I had to go to hospital-but as the nearest hospital was 200 km away, I had to go by helicopter. I stayed there for a week all alone and then went back to the centre, but as soon as I got back I was ill. One of the tourists was making the dinner that night and he wasn't a good cook. He didn't clean the fish properly⁽¹⁷⁾ and everybody was sick. I'm staying at home this summer!

- (9) متضايق
- (10) حماية البيئة
- (11) قدم
- (12) شغل باليهارات
- (13) شخص صعب، إستهواه قريما وليس الأكل
- (14) يسير في رحلة
- (15) عككوت
- (16) يتورم
- (17) بشكل صحيح

3

A popular problem!

Venice is famous for being a city with many canals.

amazing and

buildings. However,

the city is a of its

own. Venice has

a of only 55,000.

but the city is visited by twenty million tourists every

year. This tourism a lot of jobs for the local

population, but it also many problems.

Many of the 59,000 tourists a day enjoy riding on

boats along the canals, but the large cruise ships⁽¹⁰⁾ can

the historic buildings. The narrow⁽¹²⁾ streets

can be very and it is difficult for local people

to around the city.

The are trying to find a solution⁽¹⁶⁾

which keeps both the tourists and local residents⁽¹⁷⁾ happy.

They are also trying to encourage⁽¹⁸⁾ tourists to visit other beautiful

around Venice.



(WB page 88)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مائدة / مائدة
- (2) اختلافات
- (3) أسواق - ساحات
- (4) تاريخي
- (5) شعبية
- (6) الجمال
- (7) السكان
- (8) مخطط
- (9) تسبب
- (10) مرآب سياحية
- (11) ينفذ
- (12) ضيق
- (13) مزدحم
- (14) يتحرك
- (15) مجلس محلي
- (16) حل
- (17) سكان
- (18) يشجع
- (19) معالم / مناظر

Salma's email

(WB page 89)

To : Hania

Subject : My funny holiday!

Hi Hania,

How are you? I hope you had a great summer!

I remember you talked about going to the beach with your family. Did you have a good time? What did you do?

My summer was great! I did so many different things.

First of all, we went to the village where my father was born. In the car, on the way there, my brother ⁽¹⁾ out of the window with his mouth open and he ate two flies⁽²⁾. We all ⁽³⁾ except for⁽⁴⁾ my brother, of course!

Well, that's all for now. I'll tell you more when I see you.

Best wishes,

Salma

Check Vocabulary

- (1) تهاوى / سب
- (2) فئام
- (3) ضحكنا
- (4) ماعدا / باستثناء

4 Video script section

Do tourists usually stop and think about the impact they have on the place they're visiting?

The tourist offices in cities which are popular with tourists think about how tourism affects their cities. They consider the advantages⁽¹⁾ and disadvantages⁽²⁾. They try to help local⁽³⁾ people cope with lots of visitors in the streets of their city.

A good example is Amsterdam in the Netherlands. Twenty years ago, the city's tourism office was spending a lot of money advertising⁽⁴⁾ the city, but they don't do this anymore. The city has about 18 million visitors a year and that is more than enough for a community⁽⁵⁾ of 1.5 million local people.

In future, people should think more about the environment⁽⁶⁾ and local people when they are travelling. For example, they should use public transport⁽⁷⁾ if they can, and try not to travel when the roads and trains are very busy with local people travelling to work. There is plenty of space for everyone if we are considerate⁽⁸⁾ of each other!

اطلب من الطلاب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإلقاء الأسئلة التالية عليهم :

1. How do tourist offices help local people?
2. Why doesn't the tourism office in Amsterdam advertise its city today?
3. How and when should tourists travel around a country?

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مزايا
- (2) عيوب
- (3) محلي
- (4) يعلن عن
- (5) مجتمع
- (6) البيئة
- (7) المواصلات العامة
- (8) مراعى لاهلهم

Part IV

Language

Remember

1 Conjugation of regular verbs : تصريفات الأفعال المنتظمة :

بالنسبة للأفعال المنتظمة يكون التصريف التالي (past simple) هو نفسه التصريف الثالث (past participle). ويتم تصريف الأفعال المنتظمة كالتالي:

1 فاعل الأفعال المنتظمة يتم إضافة (ed) للنهاية الفعل:

- visit: visited - visited
- help: helped - helped
- clean: cleaned - cleaned
- wash: washed - washed

2 إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف (e) يتم إضافة (d) فقط للنهاية الفعل :

- decide: decided - decided
- like: liked - liked
- live: lived - lived
- hate: hated - hated

- 1 إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف (ا) مسبق بحرف ساكن يتم حذف (a) وإضافة (ed) لتطابق الفعل
- carry : carried - carried
- deny : denied - denied
- try : tried - tried
- apply : applied - applied
- 2 إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف (ا) مسبق بحرف متحرك يبقى حرف (a) كما هو مع إضافة (ed) لتطابق الفعل
- stay : stayed - stayed
- play : played - played
- 3 إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف ساكن واحد مسبق بحرف متحرك واحد يُحذف الحرف الساكن قبل إضافة (ed)
- drop : dropped - drop
- stop : stopped - stop
- لا تنطبق هذه القاعدة على الفعل التي يكون المقطع الأخير فيها متفصص في لفظ (stress)
- open : opening (Not: openning)
- listen : listening (Not: listenning)
- develop : developing (Not: developping)
- 4 إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف (ا) يتم إضافة (ed) لتطابق الفعل
- panic : panicked - panicked
- picnic : picnicked - picnicked

2 Conjugation of irregular verbs : تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة :

بالنسبة للأفعال غير المنتظمة لا توجد قاعدة ثابتة للتصريفات وينبغي حفظ الفعل بتصريفاته. وهناك أفعال لا تتغير مثل :

- cut : cut - cut
- cost : cost - cost
- hit : hit - hit
- shut : shut - shut
- وهناك أفعال يتشابه فيها التصريفين الثاني والثالث مثل :
- sit : sat - sat
- bring : brought - brought
- وهناك أفعال يتشابه فيها التصريفين الأول والثالث مثل :
- come : came - come
- run : ran - run
- وهناك أفعال يختلف تصريفها الأول عن الثاني وعن الثالث :
- write : wrote - written
- begin : began - begun

1 The Past Simple Tense : زمن الماضي البسيط :

1 يكون الماضي البسيط في الجمل الخبرية من :
Subject فاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل + ...

ex. - Ahmed visited his friends yesterday. - They saw a show last night.

2 عند النفي :
Subject فاعل + did not / didn't + Inf. ...

ex. - Ahmed did not (didn't) visit his friends yesterday.
- They did not (didn't) see a show last night.

3 عند الاستفهام بـ "هل" :
Did + Subject فاعل + Inf. ?

ex. - Did you tidy your room ? - Yes, I did.
- Did Omar do his homework ? - No, he didn't.

4 عند السؤال بـ "كلمة استفهام" :
Question word + did/didn't + subject. + Inf. ?

ex. - Where did you watch the match ?
- Why didn't you stay at a hotel ?

5 يتحول زمن الماضي البسيط لصيغة المبني للمجهول باستخدام الصيغة التالية :
Object مفعول + was/were + P.P.

ex. - They watched a film last night. (معلوم)
- A film was watched last night (by them). (مجهول)

6 كلمات وتعابير زمنية تستخدم في الجمل لتشير إلى الماضي :

yesterday أمس	last ... الماضي ...	ago منذ	once مرة واحدة
once upon a time ذات مرة	the other day مؤخراً	in the past في الماضي	in 2011 ... etc في 2011 ... الخ
in ancient times قديماً	previously من قبل		

ex. - I met some old friends in the club the other day.
- Mr Mohammed moved to his new house two weeks ago.
نستخدم ظروف التكرار التالية مع عادات الماضي البسيط :

always ~ usually ~ sometimes ~ never ... etc.

ex. - Sama always got up early when she was a student.

Mini Test 1

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A week ago, I planted an apple tree in my garden.

a. plant b. have planted c. planted

2. A week ago, an apple tree was planted in my garden.

a. plant b. were planted c. planted

3. They didn't feed their animals yesterday.

a. didn't feed b. haven't fed c. don't feed d. hadn't fed

4. Their animals weren't fed yesterday.

a. didn't feed b. weren't fed c. don't feed d. aren't fed

5. Did you watch that film at the cinema?

a. You watched b. Did you watch c. Were you watched

6. Was that film watched at the cinema?

a. That film watched b. Did that film watch c. Was that film watched

7. Who opened the door?

a. you opened b. did you open c. were you opened

8. Who opened the door?

a. was the door opened by b. did you open the door c. were you opened the door

9. Ahmed read an interesting story everyday.

a. everyday b. ago c. now d. the other day

10. Yesterday a lorry hit a motorbike.

a. Yesterday b. In the future c. Ago d. Now

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

في زمن الماضي البسيط، إذا كان الفعل الأساسي (was / were) لا تستخدم الفعل المساعد (did)

وتستخدم (not) في النفي وفي السؤال تبدأ بـ (was / were) :

- He was at school yesterday. (إثبات)

- He wasn't at school yesterday. (نفي)

- Was he at school yesterday? (سؤال بـ 'هل')

- Where was he yesterday? (سؤال بـ أداة إستفهام)

في زمن الماضي البسيط، إذا كان الفعل الأساسي (had) فمن ملاحظ أن تستخدم (did)

كفعل مساعد في النفي أو السؤال :

- She had lunch at two o'clock. (إثبات)

- She didn't have lunch at two o'clock. (نفي)

- Did she have lunch at two o'clock? (سؤال بـ 'هل')

- When did she have lunch? (سؤال بـ أداة إستفهام)

Mini Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Hassan wasn't at school yesterday.

a. isn't b. doesn't be c. wasn't d. didn't be

2. Was Hassan at school yesterday?

a. Was Hassan b. Did Hassan be c. Had Hassan d. Did Hassan have

3. Where was Hassan yesterday?

a. was Hassan b. does Hassan be c. were Hassan d. was Hassan

4. I didn't have lunch at home yesterday.

a. haven't b. hadn't c. don't have d. didn't have

5. Did you have lunch at home yesterday?

a. Had you b. Did you have c. You had d. Do you have

Uses الاستخدامات

يستخدم الماضي البسيط في حالات كثيرة منها :

1. التعبير عن حدث بدأ وقتها في الماضي (عادة مع تعبير زمني ماضي) :

ex. - I visited my grandmother last Friday.

- My father built this house ten years ago.

2. سرد مواقف أو قصص وقعت في الماضي :

ex. The baby was called Oliver Twist. He was sent to the orphanage.

3. بعد (if) في الحالة الشرطية الثابتة :

ex. - If I studied hard, I'd pass this exam.

Part Habits

يمكن استخدام الصيغ التالية للتعبير عن عادة الماضي التي لم تعد موجودة في الحاضر

1. Subj. + used to + Inf.
ex. - He used to swim in the sea.
- She didn't use to wear glasses.
2. It was + someone's / مملوكة + habit + to + Inf.
ex. - It was his habit to swim in the sea.
3. Subj. + had + the habit of + n. / Inf. + Ing
ex. - He had the habit of swimming in the sea.
4. Subj. + was / were + in the habit of + n. / Inf. + Ing
ex. - He was in the habit of swimming in the sea.
5. It was + habitual + for + someone / شخص مملوكة + to + Inf.
ex. - It was habitual for him to swim in the sea.

يمكن استخدام was / were + used to + n. / Inf. + Ing للتعبير عن شيء ما كان معتادًا بالنسبة للفاعل

- ex. - They were used to working in the sun.
- I was used to eating salty food.

يمكن استخدام (ing + n. / Inf. + used to + got / became) للتعبير عن تغيير
ex. - I got used to the freezing weather in Canada.
- I became used to working on a farm.

Mini Test 3

C Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If we ... by the sea, we'd go swimming every day.
a live **c lived** c is lived d was lived
2. When I was a student, I ... up early.
a get b used to getting
c was used to get **d was used to getting**
3. ... go for a walk every week?
a Was he used to b Did he use **c Did he use to** d He used to

Notes for Advanced level

يمكن استخدام (had + V2) في الدبل الملتزمة للتوكيد

- You **did see** who stole the money yesterday.
- Ahmed **did break** my tablet an hour ago.

يمكن استخدام صيغة الماضي البسيط في الصيغ التالية للتعبير عن شيء غير متحقق في الحاضر

1. I wish + subject + past simple
- I wish Sama **had** enough time to help me
= Sama can't help me because she doesn't have enough time.
2. It is + (about/almost/high) + time + subject + past simple
- It is high time you **returned** home.
= You are still out.
3. Subj. + فعل ممتنع في الدبل الأول + would + rather/sooner + past simple
- I'd rather you **arrived** on time.
= You don't arrive on time.

أما إذا كان فاعل (would rather/sooner) هو نفس الفاعل بعدها فباتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر ويكون هذا أسلوب تعبير عن التفضيل

- Subj. + فعل + would + rather/sooner + Inf. ...
- I'd rather **go** shopping in the afternoon.
= I think it is better for me to go shopping in the afternoon.

في حالة وجود تعبير زمني يدل على الماضي بعد (wish / I'd rather It's about / almost) time) وليس الماضي البسيط
استخدم بعدها الماضي التام (had + P.P)

- ex. - I'd rather she **had arrived** home earlier yesterday.
منها فاعل في حالة من بعد فاعل بعد (would rather) فإننا نستخدم بعدها الفعل في المصدر.
ex. - I'd rather **have** fish. (Not had)

بعد استخدام ظروف التكرار التي تدل على النفي مثل (never / rarely / seldom / little) في بداية الجملة لابد من استخدام فعل مساعد قبل الفعل

- ex. - Rodayna **rarely left** for school before 7:30. (Rarely ...)
- Rarely **did** Rodayna leave for school before 7:30.

General Exercise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Using a word from the box, check what you have learned.

1. I prep 3 exams two months ago.
a. take **b. took** c. have taken d. was taken
2. Nada saw one of her old friends in the club
a. now b. tomorrow c. the other day d. yet
3. Mohammed Salah Liverpool and won Player of the Year Award.
a. joined b. was joined c. joins d. was joining
4. I have many friends at my first school.
a. don't b. doesn't **c. didn't** d. never
5. I had many friends at my first school.
a. don't b. doesn't **c. didn't** **d. never**
6. Rokaya didn't the mobile ringing.
a. hears **b. hear** c. heard d. hearing
7. Did Samia mum with the housework.
a. was helping b. helps c. helped **d. help**
8. What Karim do when he cut his finger?
a. did b. do c. does d. has
9. Why did Rahma look tired when she the door?
a. shuts b. shut **c. was shut** d. shutting
10. well yesterday?
a. Did you play b. You played c. Do you play d. How did you play
11. well yesterday?
a. Did you play b. You played c. Do you play d. How did you play
12. A: yesterday? B: Quite well.
a. Did you play b. You played c. Do you play d. How did you play

13. I off my tablet before I went out.
a. turn **b. turned** **c. was turned** d. was turning
14. My tablet off before I went out.
a. turn b. turned **c. was turned** d. was turning
15. I tired, so I went to bed.
a. was **b. wasn't** c. didn't be d. b & c
16. I tired, so I worked for three more hours.
a. was b. wasn't **c. didn't be** d. b & c
17. the best students at your first school.
a. They were b. Were they c. Did they be d. Are they
18. the best students at your first school?
a. They were **b. Were they** **c. Did they be** d. Are they
19. her lunch.
a. Did she have **b. Had she** c. She hadn't **d. She didn't have**
20. her lunch?
a. Did she have b. Had she c. She hadn't d. She didn't have
21. Yesterday, we some beautiful fish in the Red Sea.
a. saw b. were seeing c. see d. have seen
22. My sister usually to school when she was young.
a. walks b. was walking **c. walked** d. has walked
23. My grandfather always to work when he was young.
a. walked b. walks c. is walking d. was walking
24. My uncle in 1970.
a. born **b. was born** c. bear d. bears
25. Nesma late when she was young. She no longer does that now.
a. usually sleeps **b. is used to sleeping** c. used to sleep d. was usually slept
26. One of the Egyptian scientists awarded the Nobel Prize in 2010.
a. was b. has been c. were d. had been

27. He committed the crime and run away running in the street in Aswan creating the biggest artificial lake in the world.
28. The High Dam has been built was built at the club yesterday.
29. He wasn't seen wasn't seen didn't see doesn't see.

2 Special cases

30. A: Where is the money that was on the table?
B: Mum spent did spend b & c.
31. I offered was offered was offering a car which cost me only 100,000 pounds.
32. The door opened was opened a & b d. opens.
33. I opened was opened a & b d. opens the door and we went in.
34. At the age of five, I learned learn have learnt d. was learnt so swim.
35. As a boy, Mr Mohammed used was praising d. praised for his good behaviour.
36. He used were used got used d. didn't use to hard work on the farm.
37. My friend sent is sending has sent d. sends me an email a short time ago.
38. We'd rather you will phone phoned us tomorrow.
39. It is high time we go have gone went d. going home.
40. When I visit a foreign country, I'd rather stay staying d. can stay in a good hotel.

3 Check your understanding

41. Which of the following is correctly structured?
a I used to studying hard b I was used to study hard
c I got used to study hard d I became used to studying hard.
42. I don't have enough time for hobbies. I wish I had had enough time for hobbies.
43. I didn't have enough time for hobbies when I was a child. I wish I had had enough time for hobbies.
44. Who opened the door?
a was the door opened by b was opened the door
c did you open the door d were you opened the door
45. "She wishes she were tall." What does this mean?
a She was tall. b She wasn't tall.
c She isn't tall. d She is tall.
46. "I'd rather you didn't use my mobile." This means that
a I wanted you to use my mobile
b I didn't want you to use my mobile
c I want you to use my mobile
d I don't want you to use my mobile
47. "You have to pay the bill right now." Which of the following gives the same meaning?
a It is about time you paid the bill
b It is about time you had paid the bill
c It is time you pay the bill
d It is time you have paid the bill
48. Mum always sets the table for lunch.
a This is a present habit.
b This was a past habit.
c This always takes place.
d This never took place.



Part 1

Vocabulary

للتدريس من المفردات الرئيسية التالية: active, ancient, beautiful, bearing, busy, calm, crowded, exciting, exotic, modern.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

active (adj)	مُزيج - صاحب
ancient (adj)	في متلفي السعادة
beautiful (adj)	قديم - عجز
bearing (adj)	السلام - النكبة
busy (adj)	هادئ / دوسكينة
calm (adj)	مزاياها وعيوب
crowded (adj)	هناك - هادي
exciting (adj)	يستريح
exotic (adj)	مُزيج
modern (adj)	عالي - محشور
noisy (adj)	شعاع
over the moon (adj)	قديم - عجز
old (adj)	السلام - النكبة
peace (n)	هادئ / دوسكينة
peaceful (adj)	مزاياها وعيوب
pros and cons (n - adj)	هناك - هادي
quiet (n - adj)	يستريح
relax (v)	مُزيج
relaxing (adj)	عالي - محشور
stuck (adj)	شعاع

من المفردات المهمة: ancient, crowded, exciting, exotic, modern, noisy, over the moon, old, peace, peaceful, quiet, relax, relaxing, stuck.

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

adventure (n)	مُزيج - صاحب
amazing (adj)	في متلفي السعادة
awful (adj)	قديم - عجز
balcony (n)	السلام - النكبة
brilliant (adj)	هادئ / دوسكينة
castle (n)	مزاياها وعيوب
cheap (adj)	هناك - هادي
clean (adj)	يستريح
cruise ship (n)	مُزيج
crune (n)	عالي - محشور
cry (v)	شعاع
damage (v)	شعاع
distance (n)	شعاع
guide (n - v)	مُزيج - صاحب
hobby (n)	في متلفي السعادة
lettuce (n)	قديم - عجز
market (n)	السلام - النكبة
on board	هادئ / دوسكينة
paradise (n)	مزاياها وعيوب
photograph (v)	هناك - هادي
reason (n)	يستريح
sight (n)	مُزيج
steal - stole - stolen (v)	عالي - محشور
stressed (adj)	شعاع
sunshine (n)	شعاع
support (n - v)	شعاع

expect (v)	يُتوقع	teenager (adj - n)	مُزيج - صاحب
(d) (v)	يستكشف	temple (n)	في متلفي السعادة
ding (adj)	صغير / حزين	tiny (adj)	قديم - عجز
forget - forgot - forgotten (v)	يسى	travel (v)	السلام - النكبة
garden (n)	بستان	traveller (n)	هادئ / دوسكينة
ing (n)	بستان	try (v)	مزاياها وعيوب
ing (n)	بستان	underwater (adj - adv)	هناك - هادي
ing (n)	بستان	unusual (adj)	يستريح
grow - grew - grown (v)	يُزرع - ينمو	worry (v)	مُزيج - صاحب

تعريف المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلم المستهدفة - جامد

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
ancient (adj)	very old
crowded (adj)	having a lot of people or things
exciting (adj)	making you feel excited
exotic (adj)	unusual and often from a different country
lean (v)	to be in a sloping position
modern (adj)	new and connected to the present
orangutan (n)	a large ape with long arms and long orange-brown hair
peaceful (adj)	feeling calm, quiet, without any problems
relaxing (adj)	making you feel relaxed and not stressed

Exercise On Vocabulary Understand

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Key vocabulary

- Nuclear power must be used for purposes.
 - a annoying
 - b peaceful
 - c upsetting
 - d notorious
- The Great Pyramid is a/an monument.
 - a active
 - b exotic
 - c crowded
 - d ancient

3. My father still uses his phone which does not even connect to the internet.
a. noisy **b. old** c. busy d. modern
4. She is intelligent, hard working and polite.
a. beautiful b. boring **c. awful** d. stressed
5. I spent the weekend in a/an place where it is calm and peaceful.
a. crowded b. endangered **c. relaxing** d. swollen
6. I couldn't find a seat in the bus.
a. active b. exotic **c. crowded** d. ancient
7. I can't enjoy my time in this street. It makes me nervous.
a. noisy b. old c. quiet d. modern
8. I enjoy the of the night in the countryside.
a. noise **b. quiet** c. guide d. village
9. After this long and tiring day, you need to
a. realize b. respect c. resort **d. relax**
10. We got in the traffic jam **الازدحام المروري** for an hour.
a. arranged **b. stuck** c. trekked d. unique
11. Being is the opposite of being lazy.
a. active b. exotic c. crowded d. ancient
12. Smartphones are inventions.
a. noisy b. old c. busy **d. modern**
13. It is the fourth time I have watched this film.
a. awful b. boring **c. exciting** d. stressed
14. I saw some birds on the beach. They do not belong to this area.
a. active **b. exotic** **c. crowded** d. ancient
15. She is so doing the housework that she couldn't answer the phone.
a. noisy b. old **c. busy** d. modern
16. What a/an match! I'll turn off the TV.
a. beautiful **b. boring** c. exciting d. stressed
- 2 Important Vocabulary**
17. I hate using social media. They make me
a. pleased **b. stressed** c. dressed d. praised

18. I don't want to go to the park., I am meeting some friends in the club.
a. Environmentally b. Otherwise **c. Actually** d. Naturally
19. Secondary school students are
a. adults **b. teenagers** c. granddads d. toddlers
20. Smoking smokers' health.
a. describes b. benefits c. develops **d. damages**
21. When we travel on holidays, we usually buy to remind us of the nice time we spent.
a. Souvenirs b. sails c. turtles d. paths
22. He lives in a village. It takes you a long time to go there.
a. nearby b. near **c. remote** d. close
23. Tourists are usually fascinated to the places they visit and the people they meet.
a. dive b. destroy c. grow **d. photograph**
24. is the activity of looking after plants in a garden or a park.
a. Garden **b. Gardening** c. Park d. Parking
25. I find this novel extremely It interests me a lot.
a. fascinating **b. fascinated** **c. boring** d. bored
26. While we were camping in the forest, some monkeys our food.
a. fed **b. protected** **c. stole** **d. benefited**
27. We have to our children about nature conservation.
a. learn **b. educate** c. study d. steal
28. In difficulties, **الصعوبات** we need the of our relatives **أقارب** and friends.
a. lettuce b. swell c. material **d. support**
29. The tourists enjoyed the of the sun shining on the statue of Ramses.
a. sight **b. cruise** c. turtle d. article
30. This fascinating island is a tourist
a. mosquito **b. paradise** c. pool d. Sahara
31. People who go on holidays in mountains and rainforests like
a. resorts b. designs **c. adventure** d. respect
32. I enjoyed the on the Nile from Luxor to Aswan.
a. cruise b. ecotourism c. drive d. unique

33 When I visited London for the first time, I spent three days exploring the city. learning and collaborating

the city. exploring c leaning d collaborating
swelling 126 passengers on

24 The plane I was travelling on had 125 passengers on board.

35. I could see some fish moving about deep in the clear water.

36. Mohammed Salah is a very footballer.
a little b tiny c ancient

37. My grandfather cotton in his field.
a. grows b. breaks c. feels d. spends

36. Diving is a/an _____ activity.

a. few b. warm c. sick d. underwater

3. *Conclusions*

39. _____ means too full of people or things.
a. Awful **b. Crowded** c. Local d. Brilliant

40. _____ describes something unusual and often from a different country.

a. Close b. Natural c. Exotic d. Peaceful

41. Modern means new and connected to the present.

42. quiescent means feeling calm, quiet, without any problems.

a. Fascinating b. Natural **c. Peaceful** d. coral

43. means making you feel relaxed and not stressed.

44. A/An is a large ape with long arms and long orange-brown hair.

a. lemur b. orangutan c. dragon d. turtle

45. Spicy means having a pleasantly strong taste, and gives you a pleasant burning feeling in your mouth.

a. Underwater **b. Spicy** c. Traditional d. Fascinating

Part II Vocabulary Study

تذکرہ مساجد جامعہ علی المرتضیٰ رحمہ اللہ سے ذریعہ اسناد کار ہذا مجلہ ہفت روزہ شریفہ ہفت روزہ جدید ہفت روزہ

Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	activities	ممارس أنشطة	take	photos of	يلتقط صوراً لـ
forget	your worries	تنسى مخاوفك		a cruise	يقوم برحلة بحرية
go	trekking	يلتزم في رحلة طويلة سيراً			

2 **Synonyms** مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
aboard	على متن (سفينة/طائرة)
ancient	قديم / عتيق
beautiful	جميل
boring	مُمل
exotic	أجنبي
exotic	مُتميز / مُذهِل
over the moon	سعيد جدًا
quiet	هادئ
on board	
very old	
pretty, cute	
dull, spiritless	
foreign	
unusual, unconventional	
very happy, very excited, glad	
calm	

3 | Antonyms المقضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	المعكس
active	نشط - فاعل	lazy, inactive	كسول - خامل
ancient	قديم / عتيق	modern, new	حديث - جديد
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح
boring	مُمل	exciting, interesting	مثير
busy	مشغول	free	متفرغ
quiet	هادئ	noisy	مزعج - صاخب
crowded	مزدحم	empty, quiet	فارغ - هادئ
exotic	أجنبي	native, local	محلي
exotic	مُنمَّش / مُثْبِل	usual, familiar, conventional	هادي - تقليدي
relaxing	مُريح	stressful, tiring	مُثْغِل / مؤزق

1

1 Derivatives of key vocabulary

crowd	مجموعة	crowded	مزدحم
crowd	مجموعة	crowd	مجموعة
overcrowding	ازدحام	overcrowded	مزدحم جداً
crowded	مزدحم	overcrowded	مزدحم جداً

peace	سلام	peace	سلام
peaceful	سلمي	peaceful	سلمي
peacefully	سليماً	peacefully	سليماً

stick	عصا	stick	عصا
stick	عصا	stick	عصا
sticker	ملصق	sticker	ملصق
stuck	معلق	stuck	معلق

5 Expressions & Idioms

a crime to remember	جريمة لا تنسى	make good use of	يُحسن استعمال
active holiday	إجازة نشطة	on board = aboard	على متن سفينة أو طائرة
be tired of	يُتعب من	on the balcony	في البلكونة
busy with	مشغول بـ	on the way there	في الطريق إلى هناك
go on a cruise	يذهب في رحلة بحرية	over the moon	سعيد جداً
loads of	كثير من	there's nothing to do	لا يوجد ما يفعله

6 Verb + Preposition

add to	يضيف إلى	learn about	يتعلم عن
decide to	يقرر أن	learn to	يتعلم
escape from	يفر من	leave behind	يترك وراءه
escape to	يفر إلى	stay with	يقيم مع
go away	يذهب	walk around	يسير
go down	ينزل		

17 Clear the confusion

- old - ancient
- old (adj) قديم
- My grandfather still lives in his old house
- old (adj) قديم
- My grandfather is a very old man
- ancient = very old (adj) قديم جداً / قديم
- The ancient Egyptians had a great civilisation
- ancient (ancient) قديم قديم لا يسقط في صيغ التثنية والتفصيل
- The Great Pyramid is more ancient than the citadel
- The Great Pyramid is much older than the citadel

- Adjectives ending in -ed / -ing
- صفات متغيرة (ed) خبر أن الموصوف أقدم بالصفة - خبر من يصفه - خبر من يصفه
- I feel tired / excited / bored
- صفات متغيرة (ing) خبر أن الموصوف أصيب بالصفة
- This job is tiring / pleasing - boring

- little
- little + اسم لا يُعد
- We have little work to do
- He gave us little information about the accident
- little + اسم يُعد
- I saw a little boy selling flowers

- sight - site
- sight (n) البصر (البصر على الأشياء)
- Taha Hussein lost his sight when he was a child

• sight (نظر) (شيء يمكن إبداءه)
 I like the sight of green plants and colourful flowers.
 • sights (مناظر) (الأماكن المشهورة، الهياكل)
 The guide showed me the important sights in Aswan.
 • site (مكان) (مكان - موقع إلكتروني)
 There are some tourists visiting the archaeological site.
 • Mr Mohammad has an educational site. (= website) موقع إلكتروني

• steal (سرق) (من)
 This gang steal money from the bank.
 • rob (سرق) (مكان/شخص)
 The gang rob the bank.
 • A thief robbed me of my bike.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

- MCQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given
1. "I read a boring story." The antonyms of the word "boring" are
 a. dull b. wonderful c. tiring
 d. amazing e. spiritless
 2. "Cairo is a very crowded city." The antonyms of the word "crowded" are
 a. empty b. filled c. busy
 d. full e. quiet
 3. "She's over the moon about her new job." This means she is very
 a. happy b. annoyed c. sad
 d. excited e. angry
 4. The antonyms of the word 'advantages' are
 a. merits b. pros c. disadvantages
 d. benefits e. demerits
 5. If a place is it has a lot of people.
 a. crowded b. exciting c. isolated
 d. ancient e. busy

6. He met a very beautiful girl in the mall. The synonyms of the word "beautiful" are
 a. pretty b. energetic c. cute
 d. dull e. quiet
7. and are antonyms of "exotic".
 a. Conventional b. Modern c. Free
 d. Usual e. Ugly
8. Sometimes, I go
 a. activities b. trekking c. a hobby
 d. the shopping e. diving
9. You have to do
 a. an activity b. trekking c. mistake
 d. something different e. diving
10. If someone is active, this means they are not
 a. lazy b. inactive c. foreign
 d. modern e. new
11. The ship left the shore with 500 passengers
 a. abroad b. a board c. aboard
 d. broad e. on board

- MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
1. Unfortunately, the burglar the house.
 a. stole b. took c. robbed d. guarded
 2. 'Ancient' is to as 'boring' is to 'exciting'
 a. excited b. new c. modern d. b & c
 3. "You can a cruise or a boat trip."
 a. decide to b. go away c. go on d. trek into
 4. He escaped prison.
 a. to b. with c. from d. on
 5. It is over, Sama. There's nothing
 a. do b. doing c. to do d. to doing
 6. Fans usually to take selfies with football stars.
 a. crowd b. crowding c. crowds d. crowdedness
 7. People living in a big city suffer from
 a. crowd b. crowded c. overcrowding d. crowded

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading

1. James's blog

(SB page 10)

This is me on our hotel balcony in Sharm El-Sheikh. It's so **amazing** here and there are **loads of** things to do. I'm over the moon visiting Egypt. The weather's really hot so we spend most of the time in the water.

My sister and I are learning to dive with some other **people** at the resort. I love diving; it's so **relaxing** and you can see all these amazing fish in the sea. I want to get an **underwater** camera so I can take photos of them.

Last week, we were in Luxor and visited the **ancient** temples there. I'm not usually interested in history, but I **found them fascinating** and am really **glad** we went there.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) رائع
- (2) كثير من
- (3) مرافقين
- (4) مريح
- (5) تحت الماء
- (6) المعابد القديمة
- (7) لي الواقع
- (8) خلاص
- (9) سعيد

2. Katy's blog

Day 10 of my summer holidays! I'm so **bored** – all my friends are away or busy with their family and I'm **stuck** here at home. The weather's **awful** and there's nothing to do.

Last week, I went to stay with my **grandparents** for a few days, which was nice, but they live in a tiny village with no shops. I was helping Granddad in his garden most of the time. He **grows** all his own **vegetables** – he says it's **cheaper** than buying them.

Maybe I'll try and grow some **lettuce** in our garden when it stops raining. I was watching a programme on TV this morning about **gardening** – maybe I'll have a new **hobby**.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) شاعر بالمثل
- (2) عالق
- (3) فطير
- (4) لجداد
- (5) برز
- (6) خضراوات
- (7) أرخص
- (8) الخس
- (9) عمل الحديقة / لتجهيز
- (10) هواية

2 Listening Tests

Holiday Adverts

(WB page 90)

A beach break

Do you want to **relax** in a quiet and **peaceful** place? **Escape** from noisy streets and leave your busy city life **behind**. Visit this amazing **paradise**. Enjoy the **sunshine** on **isolated** beaches and swim in clean, **clear** water.

Adventure time

Are you tired of the **same** old, **boring** places? Are you looking for an **active** holiday? Then this is the holiday for you. Day one starts with diving, then day two takes you **climbing** in the beautiful **Alpine mountains**.

Eco-trip

Ecotourism is a new way to travel for a new kind of **traveller**. You can go **trekking** through the **Andes** and **explore** ancient Machu Picchu with a local **guide**. You can enjoy **peace** and **quiet** or you can meet the local people, all without **damaging** the environment.

A cruise to remember

Why not take a calm **cruise** around the **Caribbean**? On **board** our modern **cruise ship**, you can enjoy great food and **forget** your **worries** in our relaxing restaurants. We stop at six different islands where you can visit the crowded **markets** and see many unusual sights.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يستريح
- (2) هادئ - ذو صفات
- (3) يهرب
- (4) ظلال / وراء
- (5) صافي
- (6) شواطئ أصوات المدينة
- (7) صعد
- (8) صافى
- (9) هادئ
- (10) جميل
- (11) متعب
- (12) متعب
- (13) جبل الأنديز
- (14) مستكشف
- (15) ممر
- (16) جبال الأنديز
- (17) يستكشف
- (18) هادئ
- (19) مستكشف
- (20) هادئ
- (21) مدمر
- (22) مدمر
- (23) البحر الكاريبي
- (24) متن
- (25) مراكب سياحية
- (26) يسي
- (27) مشاغل - هموم
- (28) أسواق

Part IV Language

Remember

1 Inf. + Ing

كتابة إضافة (ing) لمصدر الفعل :

- visit: visiting

- help: helping

- clean: cleaning

Unit 1

- إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف (e) يتم إضافة (ing) قبل نهاية الفعل
- decide - deciding - live - living - talk - talking
- إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بالحروف (ie) فتكون الحروف (y) وتضاف (ing) لنهاية الفعل
- try - trying - fly - flying - cry - crying
- إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحروف (s) فإن الحروف (s) تضاف (ing) لنهاية الفعل
- pass - passing - run - running - travel - travelling
- لا تطبق هذه القاعدة على الأفعال التي يكون القطع الآخر فيها متحرك في المثال
(unstressed) مثلاً
- open - opening (Not opening)
- listen - listening (Not listening)
- develop - developing (Not developing)
- إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف (e) يتم إضافة (ing) لنهاية الفعل
- panic - panicking - picnic - picnicking

2 The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر

- 1 في الجملة الملبئة :
Subject + was / were + (inf. + ing)
ex. - Ahmed a story.
- Rodayna and Heba lunch
- 2 في الجملة المنقوبة :
Subject + was not (wasn't) / were not (weren't) + (inf. + ing)
ex. - Ahmed a story.
- Rodayna and Heba lunch
- 3 في السؤال الذي يبدأ بفعل مساعد بمعنى «هل» :
Was / Were + Subject + (inf. + ing) ?
ex. - Was Ahmed reading a book?
- Were you eating a cake?

- 4 في السؤال : - كلمة استفهام
Question word + was / were + Subject + (inf. + ing) ?
ex. - What was Ahmed reading?
- 5 في صيغة الفعل للمجهول
Object + was / were + being + P.P.
ex. - A story was being read by Ahmed.

Mini Test 1

- 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
- Some people on the farm from morning to afternoon that day
a was worked b were worked c was working d were working
 - I saw that she on her mobile, so I decided to return later.
a talked b was talked c was talking d wasn't talking
 - It was not polite of him to interrupt what I
a was doing b did c had done d was done
 - What you doing when I called ?
a are b were c did d had
 - Some boys when the teacher entered the classroom.
a fought b were fought c was fighting d were fighting

Uses of the past continuous الاستخدامات

- 1 يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي :
ex. - I was playing on the beach last Friday afternoon.
- 2 يستخدم للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت في الماضي :
جملة ماضى مستمر + جملة ماضى مستمر + While / As / When
ex. - While I was reading a story, Ali was watching TV.
- 3 يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في الماضي وحدث آخر :
جملة ماضى بسيط + جملة ماضى مستمر + While / As / When / Just as
ex. - While he was playing a tennis match, he broke his arm.

1

While + (inf + ing) + جملة تامة

ex. - While playing a tennis match, he broke his arm.

During + (noun) + جملة تامة

ex. - During the match, he broke his arm.

When + (verb) + جملة تامة

ex. - When I was watching a cartoon...

On + (noun) + (inf + ing) + جملة تامة

ex. - On my way to my office, the secretary was checking emails.

While + (verb) + جملة تامة

ex. - While in Alexandria, I ate fish for lunch every day.

للحظ استخدام المبني للمجهول في الصيغة التالية:

While / On + being + P.P.

ex. - While the food was being cooked, it smelled nice.

= While being cooked, the food smelled nice.

في المثال السابق استخدمنا (being cooked) وليس (cooking) لأن الحيلة التالية بدأت بـ (the food) الذي يعتبر مفعول الحيلة الأولى.

يستخدم الماضي البسيط بدلا من الماضي المستمر مع الأفعال التالية:

ex. - Feelings: like, dislike, love, hate, prefer, enjoy, want, wish ... etc.

- Senses: hear, see, smell, feel, sound, taste, appear, seem, look ... etc.

- Mental state: realise, understand, know, mean, think = believe, imagine, recognise, remember, forget ... etc.

- I was hearing a noise outside. (x)

- I heard a noise outside. (✓)

لكن يمكن استخدام الماضي المستمر مع الأفعال السابقة في حالة استخدامها بمعنى آخر غير معانيها الأصلية:

ex. - I was seeing an old friend when you called. (= was meeting)

- I was having some pizza when the phone rang. (= was eating)

تذكر أن الماضي المستمر لا يُستخدم مع الأفعال اللحظية (التي لا تستغرق مدة زمنية)

ex. - My car broke down. (Not: was breaking down)

كما أن (being) لا تُستخدم كفعل أساسي في الماضي المستمر

ex. While we were in the park, our children were playing around us.

(Not: were being)

Mini Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My car down as I was driving to work.
a. breaks b. broke
c. was breaking d. was being broken

2. While I at the club, I played tennis.
a. was b. was being c. am d. am being

3. Nada when I rang the doorbell. I felt sorry for waking her up.
a. slept b. was slept c. has slept d. was sleeping

4. the film, I ate popcorn and drank juice.
a. As b. While c. During d. When

5. watching the film, I ate popcorn and drank juice.
a. As b. While c. During d. As soon as

6. When you called me, I a shower. That's why I didn't answer.
a. was having b. had c. had had d. has had

7. During yesterday's match, most players fit.
a. hadn't been b. weren't c. weren't being d. have been

8. I my toys when I was young.
a. was loving b. am loving
c. was being loved d. loved

9. While I the door of my flat, I heard a loud noise in the street.
a. was shutting b. had shut
c. was being shut d. shutting

General Exercise On Language



التدريبات التالية موزعة بشكل متدرج لتساعدك حسب تعقيد هرو بلوم

تدريج

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. From 9 to 12 last Friday, I an important meeting.
a. had attended b. was attended
c. was attending d. was being attended

2. From 9 to 12 last Friday, an important meeting
a. had attended b. was attended
c. was attending d. was being attended

3. doing when I called you?
 a. Were you b. You were
 c. What you were d. What were you
4. doing homework when I called you?
 a. Were you b. You were
 c. What you were d. What were you
5. I couldn't hear him because two boys loudly.
 a. were talking b. have talked c. had talked d. talked
6. The police arrested the thief while he from the bank.
 a. is escaping b. was escaping c. has escaped d. escapes
7. While I was revising my lesson, my mother dinner.
 a. is preparing b. prepares c. was preparing d. had prepared
8. When I went to the workshop, the mechanic my car, so I had to wait.
 a. repaired b. is repairing c. had repaired d. was repairing
9. While Hanen her homework, the light went out.
 a. did b. was doing c. does d. had done
10. the football match, he broke his leg.
 a. While b. As c. During d. For
11. she was a little girl, she wanted to be an actress.
 a. Before b. After c. When d. On
12. my sleep, I had a nightmare.
 a. While b. As c. When d. During
13. The police arrested him as he the scene of the crime.
 a. had left b. was leaving c. was left d. has left
14. I into a good family in the south of Egypt.
 a. bore b. was born c. was bearing d. have been born
15. When Mariam was young, she used to in London.
 a. lives b. living c. live d. lived
16. On the monkey, my baby was frightened.
 a. was seeing b. had seen c. he was seeing d. seeing

Special cases

17. Alexandria, we met many of our old friends.
 a. While in b. While c. While were d. While we was
18. While the street, Amira saw her friend.
 a. had crossed b. crossing c. being crossing d. was being crossed
19. I did some shopping during to Port Said.
 a. visiting b. a visit c. visited d. was visiting
20. While I ill, I lost a lot of weight and became so thin.
 a. was b. was being c. am d. had been
21. Amira well yesterday.
 a. doesn't look b. didn't look c. wasn't looked d. looks
22. I ready to take the exam, so I postponed it.
 a. didn't be b. don't be c. wasn't d. wasn't being
23. at home when the fire started?
 a. Were you b. You were c. Did you be d. Were you being
24. Everybody was at the office at 08:30 yesterday. The meeting at nine o'clock.
 a. starts b. has started c. was starting d. started
25. I wish I a better time.
 a. have b. had had c. was had d. had
26. I wish I a better time last year.
 a. have b. had had c. was had d. had
27. It's time you back my camera.
 a. gave b. give c. is given d. was given
28. I'd rather here than in Cairo.
 a. live b. lives c. lived d. had lived
29. I'd rather my grandma here than in Cairo.
 a. live b. lives c. lived d. had lived
30. Rokaya always to her first school on foot.
 a. goes b. went c. was gone d. is gone
31. Every day, I my uncle when he was ill.
 a. am visited b. visit c. was visited d. visited

32. ~~touching the hot pan~~, Sama cried in pain.
 a. While b. On c. When d. During
33. ~~on holiday~~, I had a great time.
 a. While b. After c. When d. During
34. I last met Ahmed while he ~~off some of his British friend at the airport~~.
 a. was seeing b. had seen c. was seen d. was seen
35. When I visited my sister, she ~~ill~~.
 a. was seeming b. was seeming c. was seemed d. was seemed
36. When the teacher entered the class, the pupils who ~~a lot of noise soon became calm~~.
 a. were making b. were being made c. were made d. were made
37. While climbing onto the mountain top, I ~~a strange animal~~.
 a. was seen b. saw c. was seeing d. had seen
38. While we were travelling to Luxor, our car ~~down~~.
 a. was breaking b. has broken c. had broken d. broke
39. I couldn't watch the film because my brother ~~a football match~~.
 a. has watched b. was watching c. had watched d. had watched
40. Abdu ~~the tree when he suddenly fell down~~.
 a. had been climbed b. was climbing c. was climbed d. was climbed
41. ~~sleeping~~, I had a nightmare.
 a. While b. As c. When d. During

3 Check your understanding

42. Which of the following is correctly structured?
 a. Was Sama being very tired? b. Was Sama very tired?
 c. Did Sama be very tired? d. Sama was very tired?
43. I used to be overweight. This means I am ~~now~~.
 a. fat b. overweight c. no longer thin d. not overweight

44. I wish I were taller. This means I ~~like my height~~.
 a. would like to be short b. don't like my height
 c. would like to be short d. enjoy being short
45. "While on holidays, she read romantic novels". This is a ~~habit~~.
 a. past b. present c. future d. current
46. I didn't answer the phone because I ~~my shower~~.
 a. had taken b. was taken
 c. was taking d. had been taken
47. While drinking juice, Sama was chatting with her friends online. This means .
 a. Sama was drinking juice.
 b. Sama's friends were drinking juice.
 c. Sama and her friends were drinking juice.
 d. Sama said her friends were drinking juice.
48. "During the football match, he fell and broke his leg."
 This means .
 a. he was a player in that match.
 b. he was one of the fans watching that match on TV.
 c. He was not interested in that match.
 d. His leg was broken soon after the match.



Part I

Vocabulary

هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات الرئيسية في قصة (Treasure Island)، بالإضافة للمفردات الثانوية الموجودة في الوحدة وقوائم ما بين المستور والمدرج. نطلب منك أن تكتب

1 Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

أهم المفردات الثانوية من قصة (Treasure Island) التي نطلب منكم أن تكتبها في نهاية الكتاب. كما نطلب منكم أن تكتب

adventure (n)	مغامرة	hand(ed) (v)	يأخذ (يدويًا) - يسلم
band (n)	كفاح - أعني	hide - hid - hidden (v)	يخفي - يختبئ
Captain	قائد	inn (n)	حانة / نزل (لوكائنة)
cliff (n)	شجر صخري	owe(ed) (v)	يدين بـ ... (عليه دين)
com (n)	قائمة معنية	own(ed) (v)	يملك
dare(d) (v)	يجرؤ	pale (adj)	شاحب اللون
frightened (adj)	خائف	papers (n)	مستندات - جرائد
grab(bed) (v)	يجذب بشدة - يخطف	scar (n)	ندبة - أثر جرح
guard(ed) (v)	يحرس - حارس	sword (n)	سيف
gun (n)	بنادق	terrible (adj)	الظيف

2 Definitions تعريفات

cliff (n)	شجر صخري	a steep piece of land or rock	شدة الانحدار
dare(d) (v)	يجرؤ	to be brave enough to do something	شجاع
grab (bed) (v)	يجذب بشدة	to take hold of someone or something with a sudden or violent movement	مفاجئة أو عنيفة
pale (adj)	شاحب اللون	light in colour	باهت
scar (n)	ندبة - أثر جرح	a mark on skin from a cut or wound	جرح
sword (n)	سيف	weapon with a long, sharp blade	نصل

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He was arrested because of his debts. He money to several people.

a. lent b. borrowed c. owned

d. owed

2. I was frightened when I saw the man with a on his face.

fly b. glasses c. scar d. blood

3. you tell him the news? Are you able to do that?

a. Dare b. Brave c. Able d. Courageous

4. A criminal was punished for killing a man with a

a. gun b. sun c. pun d. fun

5. The strict diet he follows has made him go He has to consult his nutritionist.

a. healthy b. power c. short d. pale

6. A/An is a weapon with a long, sharp blade.

a. gun b. mark c. fork d. sword

7. To is to protect a person, place, or object by staying near them and watching them.

a. kill b. attack c. guard d. donate

8. means unable to see.

a. Blind b. Generous c. Frightened d. Disabled

9. A/An is a small hotel, especially an old one in the countryside.

a. restaurant b. inn c. station d. corridor

10. To is to take hold of someone or something with a sudden or violent movement.

a. scare b. arrest c. grab d. release

Part II

Grammatical Hints

So

so + adj. / adv. .

ex. - You can answer this question. It is not so difficult.

- We have enough time. I don't know why you are driving so quickly.

• نستخدم (so + adj. + that) بمعنى (جدا لدرجة أن)

so + adj. + that + جملة .

ex. - The exam was so easy that all students passed it.

- He ran so slowly that he came last in the race.

UNIT 1

1 نستخدم (so) كبديل للتكرار صفة أو ظرف بمعنى (هكذا ، بهذه الطريقة)
 ex. - The weather is cold and I think it will remain so (= cold) for another two days.

2 نستخدم (so) كبديل للتكرار عبارة بمعنى (الذات)
 ex. - A: Do you think Rokaya will come first?
 B: I think so. (= I think she will come first.)

3 نستخدم (so) في الصيغة التالية بمعنى (وكذلك) .
 فاعل + فعل مساعد أو فاعل + so
 ex. - Mr Helmi felt sick after the meal and so did Mr Ashraf and Fady.
 - My mother likes spicy food. So do I.

4 نستخدم (so) كرابط بين جملتين بمعنى (لذلك / لهذا السبب) ويأتي بعدها صفة نتيجة
 جملة نتيجة + لذلك so

ex. - Mr Abdulrahman was tired, so he went to bed early.
 5 نستخدم (so that) كرابط بين جملتين بمعنى (حتى / لكي) ويأتي بعدها جملة نتيجة .
 جملة غرض + لكي / حتى so that

ex. - I want to get an underwater camera so that I can take photos of the corals.

ing

أحياناً نستخدم (Inf. + Ing) كبديل لعبارة وصل - لاحظ الصيغة التالية :

(Inf. + Ing) + جملة مبنية للمعلوم = who / which / that

ex. - I have a cousin who works for a tourist company.
 = I have a cousin working for a tourist company.

with = who / which / that + have

لاحظ استخدام (with) كبديل لعبارة وصل :

اسم + have / has / had + who / whom / which / that
 = with + noun

ex. - I saw a little girl who has green eyes and long hair.
 = I saw a little girl with green eyes and long hair.
 - They live in a tiny village which has no shops.

when + Ing

يمكن استخدام (Inf. + Ing) بعد (when) بمعنى (عند / حين) بشرط أن يكون الفاعل نفس فاعل الجملة الرئيسية .

when + جملة = when + (Inf. + Ing)

ex. - When I was leaving the office, I heard the manager shouting.
 = When leaving the office, I heard the manager shouting.
 (إنا كنا أظفر وسعدت المدير يصيح)
 = When leaving the office, the manager was shouting.
 (المدير هو من كان يصيح وهو يغادر المكتب)

or / otherwise

يمكن استخدام (or) أو (otherwise) في جملة شرطية بمعنى (وإلا) بدلاً من (if / unless).

ex. - You must study hard, otherwise you won't pass the exam.
 = If you don't study hard, you won't pass the exam.
 = Unless you study hard, you won't pass the exam.

someone / anything ... + adj. صفة

تأتي الصفة بعد الكلمات التالية وليس قبلها :

someone	somebody	something	somewhere	anyone
anybody	anything	anywhere	everyone	everybody
everything	everywhere	no one	nobody	nothing
				nowhere

ex. - I sat next to someone important on the plane. (Not: important someone)
 - Children like everything new. (Not: new everything)

It + verb to be + ... من ...

It + be + adj. صفة + to + Inf. ... من ... إن

ex. - It is difficult to understand this lesson without your teacher's help.
 - It is enjoyable to spend your free time in the club.

It + be + adj. صفة + Ing. ... من ... إن

ex. - It is dangerous walking in the forest alone.

It + be + adj. صفة + of / for + subj. فاعل + to + Inf. ... من ... إن

ex. - It is easy for Ayman to do this work on his own. بطوره
 - It is kind of you to help me solve my problems.

help + inf. / to + inf.

يمكن استخدام (to + inf) او (inf) بعد (help)

- ex. I helped Sama to do the cooking.
= I helped Sama do the cooking.
- The babysitter helps to look after the baby.
= The babysitter helps look after the baby.

busy

busy with + noun اسم

- ex. - The manager is busy with some clients. العملاء.

busy + (inf. + ing)

- ex. - We were busy doing the housework.

verb + object + inf. / ing

الافعال الآتية يستخدم بعدها المصدر ليدل على متابعة الحدث بالكامل ويأتي بعدها (inf. + ing)
ليدل على متابعة جزء من الحدث:

see - watch - hear - notice

- ex. - I saw the sun go down. (شاهدت الغروب بالكامل)
- I saw the sun going down. (شاهدت جزء من الغروب)

including

تستخدم (including) كحرف جزر بمعنى (بما في ذلك / مشتملاً على):

بما عدا excluding بما في ذلك including

- ex. - I called all my family members, including my uncle who lives in Canada.

stop

تستخدم (stop) بمعنى (يتوقف - يُوقف - يمنع) كاتالي:

stop + to + inf. + (بأن يفعل) لكي

- ex. - While Leen was doing homework, she stopped to make herself a cup of tea.

stop + (inf. + ing) (يتوقف عن فعل شيء / يشكّل دائم أو مؤقت)

- ex. - Ashraf stopped chatting with his online friends to revise for the exams.

stop + obj. + (from) + inf. + ing.

(يمنع ... من القيام بـ ...)

- ex. - Mr Ayman stopped us from talking to each other.
= Mr Ayman stopped us talking to each other.

Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ali is busy his homework.
a. to do b. did c. doing d. has done
- When the bank, the manager was calling the police.
a. leaving b. leaves c. leave d. had left
- Children like Tom and Jerry cartoons because they are funny.
a. such b. such a c. so d. so much
- She saw her father for work earlier than usual.
a. leaving b. to leaving c. leaves d. left
- It is nice you to help her.
a. in b. with c. for d. of
- I have to wear the uniform, I won't take part in the game.
a. as b. so c. otherwise d. if
- He writes so that I can't read anything.
a. bade b. badly c. good d. well
- They are busy the preparations of the wedding.
a. from b. to c. for d. with
- Can you suggest to do?
a. a something important b. an important something
c. something important d. important something
- talking to a client, the manager's mobile rang.
a. It b. So c. During d. When
- Mum was tired that she slept in her chair.
a. so b. such c. very d. too
- Mr Magdi helped us the experiment.
a. doing b. do c. to doing d. done
- It is useful us to have a work plan.
a. at b. about c. for d. of

14. He has a villa a swimming pool. out of
 of with into unless he gets enough free
 time.
 a. else b. also c. so that d. so
15. He is very tired. He will remain beautifully before it flew away.
 to sing singing sings b & c
16. I heard a bird in the new project.
 everybody interested interested everybody
 an everybody interested an interested everybody
17. We have told the front door key.
 a b. at c. from d. including
18. I gave her all the keys, He looks pale
 a b. at c. from d. including
19. A: Is Omar ill? B: I think He looks pale
 a b. at c. from d. including
20. It was helpful some days off.
 a. to taking b. take c. takes d. to take
21. The horse by the gate is mine.
 a. stand b. stands c. standing d. to stand
22. Marwa is hard-working and so
 a. I am b. am I c. I do d. do I
23. Shaza helped all of us ready for the competition
 a. to getting b. got c. getting d. to get
24. Be careful you might fall.
 a. if b. unless c. or d. and
25. I know the girl the big nose.
 a. with b. in c. of d. to
26. I am full, I can't eat anything else.
 a. so b. as c. because d. since

Part III Language Skills

Essay Writing كتابة المقال

للمزيد من التمارين ملحق المفردات

Model Essay

Write an essay of about 150 words about voluntary work :

Voluntary work

What is voluntary work? Simply, voluntary work is work that you do for free. You do not expect or ask to be paid money or anything else for doing it. It is a type of help to the whole society or a certain group of people in society.

Voluntary work has always been very important. There are a lot of problems and challenges that face the society. The government cannot face all these problems and challenges without the people's help. We can say that the volunteering role is complementary to that of the government.

What can people volunteer? Most people would say money. That's not an accurate answer. Money is a donation not volunteering. Volunteering is mainly taking part in doing something useful or necessary for the society or the people living in it. Those who volunteer have enough time and experience with which they can help.

Voluntary work is very important. It helps with difficult problems. It creates a type of unity and strength in society. If you haven't volunteered so far, you had better try now.

Translation الترجمة

للمزيد من التمارين ملحق المفردات

Translate into Arabic :

1. Tourism is one of the chief sources of national income. Every citizen has to do their best to help attract more tourists.
2. Ecotourism is a type of tourism that pays great attention to the environment. It is based on enjoying tourists as well as protecting the environment.
3. Some species of animals are endangered in one way or another. Those face the danger of dying out like dinosaurs and other creatures.

UNIT 1

② Translate into English :

١. يولجر النشاط السياحي الآلاف من فرص العمل للمواطنين من مختلف الأعمار، لذا فتشجيع السياحة والعمل على جذب المزيد من السياح واجب وطني.
٢. تضع السياحة البيئية في الاعتبار الحفاظ على البيئة الطبيعية، لذلك يتم تحديد أعداء السياح والأنشطة التي يقومون بها والأماكن التي يزورونها.
٣. إن حماية الأنواع النادرة من الحيوانات والنباتات من الانقراض واجب بيئي، فهذه الكائنات تلعب دوراً حيوياً في التوازن البيئي.

Vocabulary related to translation texts مفردات مترجمة بنصوص الترجمة والانتقال على الوجد

بالشكل الأمثل	in the idealistic way	بالإضافة إلى	as well as
يستثمر	invest	شياء	attention
فرص عمل	job opportunities	يجذب	attract
الآثار	monuments	التوازن	balance
الدخل القومي	national income	رئيسي	chief
ضروري	necessary	مواضي	citizen
الترويج	promotion	يخلق	create
نادر	rare	كثرت / مخلوقات	creatures
مصادر	sources	ينكر	deny
أنواع / سلالات	species	واجب	duty
نوع	type	لانتراض	dying out
دورا حيويا	vital role	للعدية	extremely

Part IV Just for Advanced level

للفائقين فقط

تلويح هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب المتقدمين فقط.

conserve

- conserve (d) (v) = preserve(d) (v) بحفظ / يصون / يحمي
- We should conserve the environment.
- conserve (d) (v) يترشد / يقتصد في
- Everyone must conserve energy. الطاقة
- conserve = jam (n) مربى
- I like peach conserve. مربى الخوخ.
- conservation = preservation (n) حماية أو صيانة (البيئة الطبيعية)
- The conservation of wildlife البرية الحياة is very important.

• conservation (n)

ترشيد / تقليل

- Water conservation is necessary.

- لاحظ التعريفات التالية

- nature conservation حماية الطبيعة
- wildlife conservation حماية الحياة البرية
- conservation groups جماعات حماية الطبيعة

• conservationist (n)

شخص يحافظ على أو صديق للبيئة

- He is one of the conservationists who work hard to protect lions from extinction الانقراض.

ecotourism

• ecotourism (n)

سياحة صديقة للبيئة (تراعى الحفاظ على البيئة والحياة الطبيعية)

- The Red Sea coast is a promising area in ecotourism. ذو مستقبل باهر

• ecotourist (n)

سائح صديق للبيئة

- Some areas are visited only by ecotourists.

danger

• danger (n)

خطر

- Don't expose your life to danger. يعرض

• endanger(ed) (v)

يُعرض للخطر

- Don't endanger your life.

• endangerment (n)

التعرض للخطر

- Child endangerment is a crime. جريمة

• endangered (adj)

مُعرض للخطر / الانقراض

- Some types of animals are endangered.

environment

• the environment (n)

البيئة (الطبيعية)

- لاحظ ضرورة استخدام (the) قبل كلمة (environment) بهذا المعنى :

- Pollution endangers the environment. (Not: endangers environment)

- لاحظ التعريفات والملاحظات التالية :

- protect / conserve the environment يحمي البيئة
- harm / damage / destroy the environment يدمر البيئة
- pollute the environment يُلوث البيئة
- the natural environment البيئة الطبيعية

environment (n)

- In class, students must find a suitable environment to learn.

environmentally (adv)

- Ecotourism is environmentally friendly.

impact

impact (on / upon) (n)

- My friends have a great impact on me.

impact (n)

- The force of the impact made the car turn over.

- have an impact - make an impact

- a positive impact

- a negative / damaging / adverse impact

- a long-term / lasting impact

- a short-term / immediate impact

- an environmental impact

impact (ed / on / upon) (v)

- The internet has impacted on life in the modern age.

isolated

isolate (d) (from) (v)

- Parents always try to isolate their children from bad friends.

isolate (d) (from) (v)

- This machine isolates butter from milk.

isolation (n)

- No one can live in isolation.

isolation (n)

- The isolation of the oasis gives it a unique culture.

isolated (adj)

- He lives in an isolated village.

isolated (adj)

- Working alone on a farm makes him feel isolated.

crowded

crowded (with) (adj)

- The house was crowded with guests.

overcrowded (with) (adj)

- In feasts, streets and parks are overcrowded.

overcrowding (n)

- Overcrowding is a serious problem in cities.

crowd (n)

- There's a crowd of students near the school gate.

crowd (ed) (v)

- Thousands of people crowded to welcome the winning team.

crowd in on + شخص

- Fears crowded in on her and she was very sad.

exotic

exotic (adj)

- This park has some exotic plants.

- I saw some exotic birds on the beach.

lean

lean - (leant - leant) / (leaned - leaned) (v)

- He leaned and looked down from the balcony.

lean ... (on / against) (v)

- I leaned against the wall.

- He leant his bicycle against a tree.

lean (adj)

- Abdulrahman is tall and lean.

lean years

- lean meat

leaning (adj)

- He visited the Leaning Tower of Pisa.

material

material (n)

- Building materials have become expensive.

material (n)

- She bought a good blouse made of soft material.

- This material is made of Egyptian cotton.

material (adj)

- He is only interested in material benefit.

material (adj)

- The police have material evidence against him.

spicy

حريف / حار - مثيل بالبهارات

- **spicy (adj)**
- I like **spicy** sandwiches. (أنا أحب البهارات / بهارات)
- **spice - spices (n)**
- Fast food restaurants depend on **spices** to make food more delicious. (الاعتماد / إثارة (كلمة لا تعد))
- **spice (n)**
- Our teacher of English usually adds **spice** to the reading lesson. (يُثَبِّلُ
- **spice (ed) ... with (v)**
- Mum never forgets to **spice** the food with hot pepper. (يُثَبِّلُ نوع من الإثارة أو التنوع)
- **spice (ed) up (v)**
- Ahmed's funny talks **spiced** (up) the long train journey. (أحدث speed (up) the long train journey.

sustainable

يُحافظ على / يثنى على

- **sustain (ed) (v)**
- It is important that a teacher **sustains** his student's interest. (الاعتماد
- **sustain (ed) (v)**
- Their company **sustained** some losses. (يتعرض للخسارة)
- **sustainable (adj)**
- Bicycles are **sustainable** means of transport. (ملائم للمبنة / صديق للمبنة)
- **sustainable (adj)**
- The government wants to achieve a **sustainable** economic growth. (وسيلة مواصلات دائم / مُستدام / قابل للبقاء)

swell

يتضخم / يلتهب

- **swell - swelled - swollen (up) (v)**
- He hit his head and soon it **swelled** (up). (يتضخم / يزاد في العدد أو الكمية)
- **swell - swelled - swollen (to) (v)**
- Water in the river has **swollen** because of the floods. (الفيضانات)
- **swell with pride** يشعر بالفخر الشديد - **swell with anger** يستعيط غضباً
- **swell-headed** = **big-headed** مغرور
- **swelling (in / on) (n)**
- She has a painful **swelling** in her hand. (لحم / التهاب (في))
- **swollen (adj)**
- His knee is **swollen**. (متورم / ملتهب)

trek

- **trek = hike (n)**
- We went on a long **trek** (hike) through the countryside. (رحلة طويلة غالباً سيراً على الأقدام كخرج من المغامرة)
- **trek(ked) = hike(d) (v)**
- We **trekked** (hiked) through the countryside. (يقوم برحلة طويلة وصعبة سيراً)

unique

- **unique (adj)**
- Everyone has **unique** fingerprints. (فريد من نوعه بصمات أصابع)
- **unique (adj)**
- We had a **unique** time in France. (مُمَيِّز / رائع جداً)

- لا تسحب القصة (unique) في صبح المغامرة والمفضل :

- This horse is more **unique** than that one. (X)

- لا أحد سيعبر الثاني

- **be unique to**
- The Komodo dragon is **unique** to Indonesia. It doesn't live anywhere else. (يتفرد به / لا يوجد إلا في)

volunteer

- **volunteer (n)**
- A lot of **volunteers** work for charities. (شخص متطوع (يقوم بعمل دون أجر))
- **volunteer (ed) (to / for) (v)**
- Yara **volunteered** for looking after the baby. (يتطوع - يعرض القيام بعمل دون أجر)
- **voluntary (adj)**
- She does **voluntary** work for a hospital. (تطوعي (دون أجر))

voluntourism

- **voluntourism (n)**
- We should encourage **voluntourism** because tourists enjoy their time and help the people or the environment. (السباحة الخيرية (أحد أنواع السباحة التي يقوم بها السائح بعمل بدون أجر))
- **voluntourist (n)**
- Some **voluntourists** helped treat poor patients. (سائح يقوم بعمل خيري في الأماكن التي يزورها)

Note these idioms

- over the moon = very excited or happy
- Mum was over the moon when she heard that I came first.
- be stuck = be forced to stay in a place
- I'm stuck here at home and I have nothing to do.
- loads of = a lot of
- I didn't go to the office yesterday, so I have loads of jobs to do.

1 Prefixes

Prefix	Function	Examples
eco-	تعلّق بالبيئة	ecotourism ecofriendly ecology ecologist ecosystem
en-	تكون مع	endanger
teen-	بين سن ١٣ - ١٩	teenager
under-	تحت	underwater

2 Suffixes

Suffix	Function	Examples
-ing	تكون اسم / صفة	relaxing (adj) overcrowding (n)
-ed	تكون صفة	crowded endangered
-ism	تكون اسم	tourism
-ist	تكون اسم فاعل / صفة	tourist

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تكمّل الجمل التالية بملء فمك والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Lung diseases are some of the problems pollution .
a protects b brings c has d takes
- Never interrupt us while the meeting is progress.
a for b with c on d in
- is the air, water, and land on Earth, which is affected by man's activities.
a Orangutan b Orangutang
c Environment d The environment
- Children need to be brought up in a warm family .
a. island b. Sahara c. environment d. weather
- My first teacher has a long-term impact on my life.
a. made b. done c. learned d. protected
- Thoughts in on me and I found it impossible to sleep.
a. encouraged b. isolated c. crowded d. endangered
- This is a /an type of plant here in England. It is common in tropical areas only.
a. conventional b. exotic c. sociable d. spicy
- My granddad sat in his armchair before his stick against the wall.
a. impacting b. isolating c. crowding d. leaning
- Some relations are now based on benefit. People usually think how they can benefit from you.
a. material b. spiritual c. virtual d. emotional
- He always adds to our journeys with his funny comments.
a. treks b. spices c. spice d. isolation

الإنجاجة والتوضيح

No.	Answer & Explanation
1. b	الفعل (brings) هو الوحيد من بين الاختيارات الذي يُكوّن تعبير ذو معنى مناسب للسياق مع (problems). فمن نقول (bring problems) بمعنى (يتسبب لي مشاكل)، أما (has problems) فتعني (لديه مشكلات) وهذا لا يتفق مع المعنى المقصود
2. d	التعبير (in progress) يعني (سُعيد) وهو يصف حدث مستمر لحظة الكلام
3. d	الاختيران (a / b) خاطئان ولا يعطيان أي معنى في هذا السياق، والاختيار (d) صحيح لأن كلمة (environment) بمعنى (البيئة الطبيعية) لابد أن يسبقها (the)
4. c	كلمة (environment) هنا تعني (أق، مُحيط، وَسَط، وضع) وليس البيئة الطبيعية
5. a	الفعل (made) هو الوحيد من بين إختيارات الذي يُكوّن تعبير ذو معنى مناسب للسياق مع (impact)، فمن نقول (made a long-term impact) بمعنى (ترك أثراً عميلاً)
6. c	التعبير (thoughts crowded in on me) يعني (تراجعت عليّ الأفكار أي أنها شغلتني جداً)
7. b	النبات الذي يكون شائعاً في المناطق الاستوائية فقط لابد أن يكون (exotic) بمعنى (غريب / غير شائع) في إنجلترا ذات الطقس البارد
8. d	الفعل (lean) هنا يعني (يستند)
9. a	كلمة (material) هنا هي الإختيار الصحيح بمعنى (مادى / خاص بالمال / غير معنوي)
10. c	التعبير (add spice to) يعني في هذه الجملة (يضيف نوع من الإثارة والجاذبية) وليس (يضيف التوابل)

Exercise on Language

تدربوا : التمرينات التالية تتبعها الإنجاجة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- my arrival home, I saw that no one was there.
a. During b. On c. While d. As
- on holiday, I met a lot of my old friends.
a. During b. Just as c. While d. As
- My elder brother watching a movie on his computer last night.
a. used to enjoy b. was enjoying c. enjoyed d. would enjoy
- I waited at the door for ten minutes until he it at last.
a. opened b. had opened c. has opened d. was opening
- I had my lunch. After that, I to bed.
a. had gone b. went c. go d. gone
- Don't open the door until I you
a. tell b. told c. had told d. was told
- Rodayna to bed. Before that, she finished her homework.
a. go b. went c. had gone d. going
- While, the baby was laughing to the doctor.
a. examining b. was examining
c. being examined d. having examined
- to hospital in the ambulance, the injured man was put on a ventilator جهاز تنفس صناعي
a. While taking b. When taking
c. On taking d. While being taken
- "During the football match, he fell asleep." This means
a. he was a player in that match
b. the match might have been boring
c. that match was very exciting
d. he watched the whole match

No. Answer & Explanation

1. b لا يمكن استخدام (During / As) لأن الوصول حدث لحظي لا يتطلب استمرارية
لا يمكن استخدام (While) لأنه لا يأتي بعدها اسم ولأن الوصول حدث لحظي لا يتطلب استمرارية
لا شك أن (On) هي الاختيار الصحيح بمعنى (عند / في لحظة)
2. c لا يمكن استخدام (During / Just as / As) لأنه لا يأتي بعده (أول - اسم)
تعتبر (While) هي الاختيار الصحيح لأنه يمكن أن يأتي بعدها (أول - اسم)
3. c لا يمكن استخدام (used to enjoy / would enjoy) لأن العادة لا ترتبط بفترة قصيرة (last night)
لا يمكن استخدام (was enjoying) لأن الفعل (enjoy) لا يأتي في الأزمنة المستمرة بهذا المعنى
4. a تعتبر (opened) هي الإجابة الصحيحة وليس (had opened) لأن الانتظار سبق فتح الباب وليس العكس
لا يمكن استخدام (has opened) لأن زمن الجملة الرئيسة مضى بسيط (waited)
لا يمكن استخدام (was opening) لأن فتح الباب في الغالب حدث لحظي لا يتطلب استمرارية
5. b لا يمكن استخدام (had gone) بل نستخدم (went) لأنه بعد (After that) يأتي الحدث الثاني (ماضي بسيط) إذا كان زمن الحدث ماضي
لا يمكن استخدام (go) لأن السياق ماضي
لا يمكن استخدام التصريف الثالث (gone) كفعل دون فعل مساعد قبلها
6. a إذا سبق (until) جملة أمر فإن زمن الجملة التي بعدها يكون مضارع بسيط أو تام (tell / have told)
7. b الحدث المذكور قبل (Before that) هو الحدث الثاني وليس الحدث الأول. لذلك نستخدم الماضي البسيط (went) وليس الماضي التام (had gone)
8. c لا يمكن استخدام (examining / having examined) لأن فاعل الجملة الثانية (the baby) لم يكن ي فحص نفسه
لا يمكن استخدام (was examining) لعدم وجود فاعل بعد (while)
الاختيار الصحيح (being examined) لأنه من المنطقي أن فاعل الجملة الثانية (the baby) هو مفعول الجملة الأولى وهو من كان يفحص
9. d بنفس فكرة الجملة السابقة فإن مفعول الجملة الثانية (the injured man) كان يؤخذ إلى المستشفى (أي أنه مفعول ولا بد من اختيار البني للمجهول)
10. b هذا هو الاختيار الوحيد الصحيح والمنطقي حسب معنى الجملة

Part One



MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. "He lives in an isolated area". The word "isolated" can be replaced by the synonyms
a. close b. nearby c. remote
d. neighbouring e. faraway
2. The antonyms of "pros" are
a. cons b. coins c. demerits
d. cans e. cares

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. work is what people do for no money.
a. Culture b. Hard c. Voluntary d. Bank
4. Tourism is when we protect touristic places.
a. crowded b. sustainable c. unique d. noisy
5. The police have so far failed to down the criminal.
a. track b. tick c. trek d. truck
6. Penguins are animals. They may die out soon.
a. colourful b. dangerous c. endangered d. extinct
7. He was sent to prison as he a lot of money to the bank.
a. won b. gained c. owed d. earned
8. The thief has a on his face.
a. scar b. scare c. scary d. scaring
9. When he went on holiday, he always a lot of photos.
a. takes b. have taken c. took d. has taken
10. We an interesting film last night.
a. watched b. had watched c. watch d. have watched
11. I'd rather you this car. It's a bargain.
a. bought b. will buy c. to buy d. buy
12. When I was in Sharm El-Sheik, I to the beach a lot.
a. have gone b. was going c. would go d. went

13. While Rokaya was cooking lunch, her brother
 a. had slept b. sleeping c. was sleeping d. has slept
14. I couldn't answer the phone because I
 a. praying b. was praying c. prayed d. have prayed
15. While we on our holiday, we played football a lot.
 a. have been b. were c. were being d. being
16. I playing football on Fridays.
 a. was used to b. used to c. has used to d. became used

• Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Trees are beautiful and useful gifts of nature. They are great friends of man. Trees give us flowers, fruits, timber, bamboo, fuels, etc. We can rest under the cool shade of a tree. We get wood from the trees to make furniture, doors, and windows, etc. Trees are also a great source of materials for paper, rubber, gums, herbs and medicine plants. Forests bring clouds and cause rainfall. Trees prevent soil erosion. They protect us from severe weather. Trees are a part and parcel of earthly life. All life directly or indirectly owes its existence to them. Trees release oxygen which we need for our life. They also absorb carbon dioxide gas. Many living species live in trees. Trees form natural habitats of many animals, birds and insects. Trees help make the land fertile. We get good crops out of fertile land. They are the source of the fruits and flowers. They offer us cool shade during summer. During rainy season, we take shelter under trees. Trees and plants are the sources of many life-saving drugs. They prevent land erosion and guard us against pollution. Thus, trees keep up the ecological balance. Trees protect us from inclement wind, too. Seeds, nuts and fruits are food sources for humans and animals. Trees protect the biodiversity of the ecosystem. Tree resins are used in producing varnishes. Essential oils derived from trees are used in medical and aroma industry. Thus, trees play an important role in our life. Felling of trees disturbs the ecosystem. We should preserve trees and plants with great care.

17. Which of the following is NOT correct?

- a. Trees help keep ecological balance.
 b. Trees take in oxygen
 c. Trees provide life-saving drugs.
 d. Trees protect the biodiversity.

18. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

- a. Trees b. Plants c. Insects d. Fruits

19. The word in the passage means "wood used for making things".
 a. timber b. fuels c. stretch d. involve
20. Give a suitable title to the passage.
 a. The cool shade of trees b. Many living species live in trees
 c. Trees are useful gifts of nature d. Essential oils derived from trees
21. How are trees useful in medicine?
 a. Essential oils derived from trees are used in medicinal and aroma industry
 b. Tree resins are used in producing varnishes.
 c. Trees release oxygen which we need for our life.
 d. Trees help make the land fertile and suitable for growing crops.
 e. Trees are sources of many life-saving drugs.
22. How do you think life would be if there were no trees?
 a. There would be a lot of forests.
 b. They would offer us cool shade during summer.
 c. They would keep up the ecological system.
 d. It would disturb the eco-system.
 e. It would disturb the ecological system.
23. All life directly or indirectly owes its existence to
 a. many animals b. trees c. materials
 d. care e. plants

Part Two

1. Translate into Arabic :

The conservation of the environment is a must to protect the future of life on earth. We have to protect it or we will surely die out.

2. Translate into English :

إن أحد أسباب الهجرة من القرى إلى المدن هو الوضع الاقتصادي، فالعمل في الزراعة لا يوفر نفس الدخل الذي يحصل عليه الفرد في المجالات الأخرى.

3. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on :

(اختار الموضوع)

How to protect the environment

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

• للتدريب على اختيار موضوع من قطع القصص بلطام أسئلة MRQ، هناك الأسئلة.

للوه

UNIT 2

Supporting the community

SB pages 16 : 25 WB pages 94 : 99

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

Reading

A text about Egyptian people who help their communities

Writing

write a blog on a famous person, a biography of Dr Leilah Hazzah

Listening

An interview with Dr Leilah Hazzah

Speaking

Discussion about helping people, Making arrangements

Language

Present simple and past simple; Present simple passive

Life skills

Empathy



موقع
التفوق
AllFwok.com

• تلك الأسرة المتكبرة اليومية والشهيرة
• ملحق لمهاجرين العرب
• تدريبات للأشخاص في تلك الأسرة
• Dictation في ملحق تلك الأسرة

PART ONE

1 & 2



Part 1

Vocabulary

• لتدوين حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان)

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

agreement(n)	مرافقة - اتفاق	iron(ed) (n - v)	حديد - سكرات - يكرى
blood(n)	الدم	level(n)	مستوى / نسبة
blood donation(n)	التبرع بالدم	long-term(adj)	طويل المدى
blood pressure(n)	ضغط الدم	pressure(n)	ضغط
desire(d) (n - v)	رغبة - يرغب	prestige (n - adj)	شهرة / فخامة / راحة
donate(d) (v)	يتبرع	roar(ed) (v - n)	هالي الجردة
donation(n)	التبرع	role model(n)	براز - ونس
donor(n)	متبرع	model(n)	قوة - نموذج يحتذى
generous(adj)	كريم - سخيل	speed(n)	نموذج
intelligence(adj)	ذكاء	support(ed) (n - v)	سرعة
iron level(n)	نسبة الحديد في الدم		دعم / مساعدة - يتدعم
transplant(ed) (n - v)	نقل / زراعة أعضاء		

• من المفهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام

2: Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

ability(n)	قوة	inspire(d) (v)	يلهم - يثبث / يثبث
admire(d) (v)	يقعّب به	instead(adv)	بدلاً من ذلك
amongst(preposition)	بين	intelligence(n)	الذكاء
be based in	يوجد مقره في	knowledge(n)	المعرفة
belief(n)	اعتقاد	maker(n)	صانع
benefit(ted) (n - v)	فائدة - يستفيد	movement(n)	حركة
biography(n)	السيرة الذاتية	name(d) (n - v)	اسم - يُسمّى - يذكر اسم
cancer(n)	مرض السرطان	nickname(n)	لقب - اسم شهرة
chance(n)	فرصة	persuade(d) (v)	يُثبث
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية - العمل الخيري	praise(d) (n - v)	المديح - يُثنى على / يمتدح
check(ed) (v)	يُفحص / يتحقق	purpose(n)	غرض
compassion(n)	رحمة	recognize(d) (v)	يتعرف على

UNIT 2

CHARACTER DEFINITION
EXERCISES

regular	منتظم / عادي
iron level	مستوى الحديد
long-term	طويل المدى
prestige	مقام / مكانة
roar	زئير - برار
role model	نموذج
transplant	زرع أعضاء - نقل
reduced	مخفض
agreement	اتفاقية
blood pressure	ضغط الدم
community	مجتمع
desire	رغبة
donate	تبرع
generous	كريم
intelligence	ذكاء
regular	منتظم / عادي
iron level	مستوى الحديد
long-term	طويل المدى
prestige	مقام / مكانة
roar	زئير - برار
role model	نموذج
transplant	زرع أعضاء - نقل
reduced	مخفض
agreement	اتفاقية
blood pressure	ضغط الدم
community	مجتمع
desire	رغبة
donate	تبرع
generous	كريم
intelligence	ذكاء

3 Definitions

تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من جملتي التكملة - مع ريد

Memorize	Understand
agreement	an official document that people sign to show that they have agreed to something
blood pressure	the force with which blood travels through your body
community	all the people who live in the same area, city etc.
desire	a strong hope or wish
donate	to allow some blood or a body organ to be removed from your body so that it can be used in a hospital to help someone who is ill or injured
generous	willing to give money, spend time etc., in order to help people or give them pleasure
intelligence	having a high level of mental ability, and good at thinking clearly and understanding ideas

iron level	the iron is a chemical element (symbol) which exists in small amounts in the blood. The level is the amount or quantity of iron presence
long-term	continuing for a long period of time, or relating to what will happen in the distant future
prestige	the respect and admiration that someone or something gets because of their success or important position in society
roar	(to make) a deep, loud noise made by an animal such as a lion, or by someone's voice
role model	someone whose behaviour, attitudes, etc. people try to copy because they admire them
transplant	the operation of moving an organ, piece of skin etc from one person to another

Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Key vocabulary

- My father is very He always donates money to many charities.
a miserly b cruel c generous d dirty
- Salah's skill provides a model for inspiring young people.
a reel b rule c role d roll
- People can to the Egyptian Food Bank to help others.
a donate b steal c support d call
- High blood pressure is considered a disease.
a long-term b medium-term c short-term d first-term
- It's too cold and I've no to visit anyone.
a desire b identity c problem d prestige
- Blood should be measured regularly.
a pleasure b treasure c pressure d donation

7. The child with a diseased kidney will have a transplant, but we are waiting for a donor. (المتبرع - ماعوي ٢٠٢٠)
a. borer b. mower c. owner d. donor
8. Sir Magdi Jacoub's centre for heart in Aswan is famous for heart (المشغلة - ماعوي ٢٠٢٠)
a. transports b. transplants c. plants d. planets
9. Good education, money and power give people (السلطة - ماعوي ٢٠٢٠)
a. prestige b. hometown c. conservation d. monitor
10. First, you need to be checked carefully before blood to make sure you are healthy.
a. donate b. donor c. donation d. donated
11. He gets much from his brother.
a. support b. supports c. supporter d. supported
12. We heard a lion so we returned quickly to the car.
a. transplanting b. tracking c. printing d. roaring
13. The driver paid a fine because he was driving at a very high
a. support b. speed c. transplant d. prestige
14. Iron is the amount of iron stored in the body.
a. track b. clothes c. tool d. level
15. To succeed and reach your goal, you need to be very
a. intelligent b. intelligence c. stupid d. stupidity
16. What is the suffix which can be added to form the noun from the verb "agree"? (اللاحقة - ماعوي ٢٠٢٢)
a. -uon b. -ness c. -ion d. -ment

2 Important Vocabulary

17. Mohammed Salah's is "the Happiness Maker". (اللقب - ماعوي ٢٠٢٢)
a. surname b. first name c. nickname d. pen name
18. I Aswan in winter as its weather is fantastic then. (أحب - ماعوي ٢٠٢٢)
a. hate b. dislike c. admire d. leave
19. Eight teams play the quarter of a championship. (الدور - ماعوي ٢٠٢٢)
a. rule b. final c. beginning d. role
20. I have a friend who works in a big company in Kuwait. (الموظف - ماعوي ٢٠٢٢)
a. laid b. lied c. based d. basis
21. My parents always me when I do well at school. (المدح - ماعوي ٢٠٢٢)
a. praise b. apologise c. bully d. defend

22. It's my father's success at basketball that me to play the game. (المدح - ماعوي ٢٠٢٢)
a. inspired b. aspired c. conspired d. respire
23. Salah is known as the happiness
a. founders b. volunteers c. conservationists d. maker
24. Unfortunately, the old man died after a short (المرض - ماعوي ٢٠٢٢)
a. fun b. happiness c. condition d. illness
25. It was only later in her life that she found and peace of mind. (الهدوء - ماعوي ٢٠٢٢)
a. happy b. happiness c. sad d. sadness
26. My father spares no efforts me that having a job would give me a prestige. (الهدوء - ماعوي ٢٠٢٢)
a. purchase b. insulate c. persuade d. propose
27. Wildlife is necessary to stop species from dying out. (الانقراض - ماعوي ٢٠٢٢)
a. pressure b. livestock c. intelligence d. conservation
28. are not paid for the work they do.
a. Founders b. Volunteers c. Conservationists d. Teenagers
29. He all other runners and won the race.
a. ran past b. researched c. grew up d. reduced
30. His is so low that he has to look for a second job.
a. compassion b. documentary c. income d. task
31. I look forward to returning to my of Assuit where I was born and educated.
a. workplace b. hometown c. track d. support
32. As a striker, you are supposed to goals, not to lose the ball.
a. miss b. realise c. reach d. score
33. Tourism national income (الدخل القومي - ماعوي ٢٠٢٢)
a. aim b. aims c. benefit d. benefits
34. As a , he has great interest in looking after the environment.
a. founder b. volunteer c. conservationist d. teenager
35. I feel for the old and the sick
a. compassion b. documentary c. income d. task
36. I think I won't Rokaya. She was a little child when I last saw her 20 years ago.
a. reduce b. aim c. recognize d. transplant

UNIT 2

37. She pays visits to her old grandma in Suez.
a. safe b. charitable c. regular d. missing
38. I will lend you the money even if I know you don't have the to pay it back.
a. able b. ability c. inability d. disability
39. Mr Mohammed gave each student a/an to do.
a. compassion b. documentary c. income d. task
40. My uncle is one of the of this charity. They started it in 1998.
a. founders b. volunteers c. conservationists d. teenagers
41. When I I hope I will be able to help myself and my community.
a. run past b. research c. grow up d. respect

3 Definitions

42. A/an is a strong hope or wish.
a. desire b. track c. will d. ability
43. To is to allow some blood or a body organ to be removed from your body so that it can be used in a hospital to help someone who is ill or injured.
a. reduce b. protect c. score d. donate
44. means willing to give money, spend time etc., in order to help people or give them pleasure.
a. Intelligent b. Responsible c. Generous d. Safe
45. means continuing for a long period of time, or relating to what will happen in the distant future.
a. Short-term b. Long-term c. Forever d. For good
46. A is someone whose behaviour, attitudes, etc. people try to copy because they admire them.
a. donor b. biologist c. roleplay d. role model
47. is the respect and admiration that someone or something gets because of their success or important position in society.
a. Prestige b. Generosity c. Support d. Ability
48. A/an is an official document that people sign to show that they have agreed to something.
a. admiration b. agreement c. pressure d. donation
49. A means a deep, loud noise made by an animal such as a lion, or by someone's voice.
a. success b. killing c. roar d. livestock

Part II Vocabulary Study

ساعدكم تعلمكم على الارتقاء بمستواكم عن طريق استكمال هذا الجزء فستتمكن بالمثل حيا ويدا لدرستكم

Verbal Collocations متراكبات لفظية

check	blood pressure	يفحص ضغط الدم	have	a desire to	لديه رغبة أن
	iron level	يفحص نسبة الحديد في الدم		health benefits	دور فوائد صحية
donate	blood	يتبرع بالدم	have	health problems	يعاني من مشكلات صحية
	money	يتبرع بالمال		long-term illness	يعاني من مرض مزمن
get	a job	يحصل على عمل	make	nothing to do	ليس لديه ما يقوم به
	angry with	يعصب من		a game	لديه مباراة
give	... a chance	يمنح ... فرصة	make	the ability to	لديه القدرة على
	a title	يُلقب - يُمنح		friends	يُكزن صداقات
	blood	يتبرع بالدم		movements	يقوم بحركات
	work / jobs	يُشغل	take	part in	يشارك في

2. Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
admire	يُعجب به
benefit	فائدة - ميزة
blood donation	التبرع بالدم
conservation	حماية البيئة
desire	رغبة - يرغب
donate	يتبرع
generous	كريم - سخي - بخيل
happiness	السعادة
long-term	طويل الأمد
long-term illness	مرض مزمن
praise	يُثني على - يمدح
prestige	نفوذ / هيبة / وجاهة
reduce	يُقلل / يُخفض
take part in	يشارك في
	praise / approve of / appreciate / respect
	use, advantage, merit
	giving blood
	preservation
	wish / preference
	give, supply
	open-handed, big-hearted
	joy, pleasure
	durable, lasting
	serious illness
	appreciate, flatter
	influence, esteem
	cut down, decrease
	participate - join - share

UNIT 2

3 Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	المعنى
admire	تُعجب به	disapprove of / scorn	يستفح - يسئ
benefit	نافع - منفعة	harm, disadvantage, demerit	ضرر - سلبية
domestic	محلي	keep receive	يحتفظ به / يتسلم
generous	كريم - سخى - جواد	mean, selfish, miser, stingy	بغيل / أناني
happiness	سعادة	sadness, displeasure, depression	حزن - ضيق - اكتئاب
intelligence	ذكاء	stupidity / dullness	الغباء
long-term	طويل المدى	short-term, temporary	قصير المدى - مؤقت
praise	ثني - يمدح	criticise, disapprove of	ينتقد - يستهجن
reduce	يقلل - يخفف	increase, expand	يزيد
regular	منتظم - موثوق - سلف	irregular / uneven	غير مألوف - شاذ

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary

admire	
admire (v)	يُعجب به - يثني
admiration (n)	الإعجاب
admirer (n)	مُعجب - مُعجب
admirable (adj)	مثير للإعجاب

donate	
donate (v)	يتبرع
donation (n)	التبرع
donor (n)	متبرع

intelligence	
intelligence (n)	الذكاء
intelligent (adj)	ذكي
intelligently (adv)	بذكاء

generous

generosity (n)	الكرم / السخاء	Generosity is good behaviour.
generous (adj)	كريم / سخى - وفير	It is good to be generous
generously (adv)	سخاء	It is good to behave generously.

5 Expressions & Idioms

around the world	حول العالم	happiness maker	صانع السعادة
away on holiday	تسافر في إجازة	in a friendly way	بشكل وودود
be a role model to	يكون قدوة لـ	long-term illness	مرض مزمن
be badly injured	يُصاب بشدة	love-hate relationship	علاقة حب أو كراهية
blood donors	المتبرعين بالدم	regular blood transplants	فقرود شكر منتظم
community centre	مركز اجتماعي	send Egypt to the World Cup finals	يُبعث مصر لنهائيات كأس العالم
earn regular money	يحصل على دخل منتظم	the World Blood Donor Day	ليوم التماسك للتبرع بالدم
giving blood	التبرع بالدم		
working together	العمل معاً		

6 Verb + Preposition

admire ... for	يُعجب به ... بسبب	praise ... for	يُمدح ... بسبب
donate ... for / to	يتبرع به ... لـ	run past	يمر في الجري
find out (about)	يكشف - يعرف (عن)	send (...) to	يرسل (إلى) / يرسل (إلى)
hear (...) about	يسمع (عن) ...	turn from ... to	يتحول من ... إلى ...
hear of	يسمع به / يعرف عن	work with	يعمل مع / على
move to	ينتقل إلى		

7 Clear the confusion

biography - autobiography

- biography (السيرة الشخصية) يكتبها شخص عن حياة شخص آخر
 - I read the biography of President Sadat written by Anes Mansour.
- autobiography (السيرة الشخصية) يكتبها الشخص نفسه عن حياته
 - Al-Ayyam is Taha Hussein's autobiography.

UNIT 2

blood transplant - blood transfusion

- blood transplant (n)
عملية زرع الخلايا الجذعية (التي تنتج الدم)
- It is not easy for a surgeon to do a blood transplant.
نقل الدم (من شخص سليم لشخص مريض أو مصاب)
- blood transfusion (n)
This patient needs blood transfusion.

charity

- charity (n)
جمعية خيرية (اسم يُعد)
- There are some charities that help poor people.
العمل الخيري - التبرعات (اسم لا يُعد)
- charity (n)
Salah donates money to charity in Egypt.

forename - surname - pen name - nickname

- forename = first name (n)
الاسم الأول (اسم الشخص نفسه)
- My Name is Rodayna Mohammed Dueshy. My first name is Rodayna.
اللقب (اسم العائلة)
- surname = last name = family name (n)
My Name is Rodayna Mohammed Dueshy. My surname is Dueshy.
- pen name (n)
اسم مُستعار (يستخدمه بعض الكتاب بدلاً من الاسم الحقيقي)
- She wrote under the pen name of Bint El-Shatei.
- nickname (n)
اسم الشهرة
- 'King of Egypt' is one of Salah's nicknames.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

- MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- Sometimes, doctors ask us to check
a. blood pressure b. research c. an impact
d. iron level e. a nickname
- When there's an accident, it is important that some people blood.
a. go b. give c. do
d. leave e. donate

3. The verb '.....' collocates with the noun 'work'.

give h. make c. do
go e. talk

4. He has to succeed in the next exam.

a. title h. sure c. a desire
d. a nickname e. the ability

5. My sister's success us to do our best.

a. decreased b. encouraged c. inspired
d. discouraged e. informed

6. He donated money to build a school. The synonyms of the word "donated" are

a. grew b. gave c. received
d. supplied e. kept

7. He has a desire to help other people. The synonyms of the word "desire" are

a. link b. wish c. debt
d. preference e. donation

8. "I admire your idea." In this sentence, "admire" is a synonym of

a. praise b. belong to c. disapprove
d. appreciate e. prove

9. To be generous is a good quality. The antonyms of the word 'generous' are

a. stingy b. kind c. cheerful
d. selfish e. disappointed

10. "I am for my lost keys. I don't know where they are." Which of the following verbs can be used in the space to make sense? تعطيني معنى مفيد

a. donating b. looking c. giving
d. preserving e. searching

11. It is kind of you to donate money the poor.

a. with b. in c. to
d. from e. for

12. My mother taught me depend on myself.

a. to b. how c. how to
d. what e. what to

• MCQ: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It is not always easy to new friends.
a do b look c spend d make
2. Some students try to a job during the summer holiday.
a go b do c get d leave
3. Vegetables a lot of health benefits if eaten fresh.
a donate b have c check d pay
4. I admire your idea. In this sentence, 'admire' is an antonym of
a praise b approve of c disapprove of d appreciate
5. "She's a long-term illness." "Long-term" here means
a serious b temporary c short d simple
6. "He donated some blood." The word 'donated' can be replaced by
a received b gave c kept d a & c
7. "I know you are generous." 'Generous' here is antonymous with
a helpful b selfish c mean d b & c
8. "Donate" is to 'receive' as is to stupidity.
a intelligence b intelligent c domestic d tame
9. I can't help my for your mentality *طريقة التفكير*.
a admire b admirer c admiration d admired
10. I really your mentality.
a admire b admirer c admiration d admired
11. First, a blood has to be checked carefully to make sure they are healthy.
a donate b donor c donation d donated
12. First, you need to be checked carefully before you blood to make sure you are healthy.
a donate b donor c donation d donated
13. blood is synonymous with giving it.
a Transplanting b Transfusing c Pressuring d Donating
14. He to live in a large villa in a coastal *ساحلية* town.
a desire b desires c desiring d is desiring
15. His is to live in a large villa in a coastal *ساحلية* town.
a desire b desires c desiring d is desiring
16. What makes people admire him more is his
a genre b generous c generosity d generously

17. What makes people admire him more is the fact that he is ..
a genre b generous c generosity d generously
18. He won't take the race as he is injured.
a place b care of c part in d turns
19. My father praised me helping the poor old man.
a for b of c with d to
20. When I was talking with her for the first time, I found that she is intelligent.
a in b out about c out d b & c
21. In his, Taha Hussein wrote about all that happened to him in his life.
a graphy b autobiography c biography d geography

Part III Reading & Listening

1. Reading Texts

People who help

(58 page 16)

1. Mohamed Salah

Mohamed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous footballers⁽¹⁾. He is admired⁽²⁾ for his speed⁽³⁾ and ability⁽⁴⁾ to score⁽⁵⁾ goals. In 2017, he scored the goal to send Egypt to their first World Cup finals⁽⁶⁾ since 1990.



Salah has been praised⁽⁷⁾ for his kind and generous⁽⁸⁾ donations⁽⁹⁾ to charity⁽¹⁰⁾ in Egypt. He donated⁽¹¹⁾ money to his hometown⁽¹²⁾ of Nagrig to build a school, and he has helped a children's cancer⁽¹³⁾ hospital in Cairo.

Salah's desire⁽¹⁴⁾ to help others is because he wants to give young people a chance⁽¹⁵⁾ to succeed⁽¹⁶⁾. He is a role model⁽¹⁷⁾ to millions of Egyptians who gave him the nickname⁽¹⁸⁾ 'The Happiness Maker'⁽¹⁹⁾.

Check Vocabulary

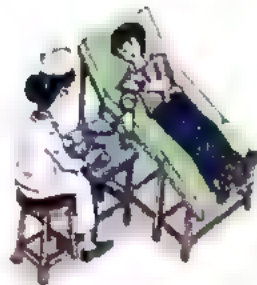
- (1) لاعب كرة قدم
- (2) يُعجب به
- (3) سرعة
- (4) القدرة
- (5) يُحيز
- (6) نهائيات
- (7) يمدح
- (8) سخي / كريم
- (9) تبرعات
- (10) العمل الخيري
- (11) تبرع به
- (12) مسقط رأس
- (13) السرطان
- (14) رغبة
- (15) فرصة
- (16) ينجح
- (17) قدوة
- (18) لقب
- (19) صانع السعادة

2. Blood donors

Every year on 14th June, countries around the world take part in World Blood Donor Day to show information about the importance of giving blood.

Why should people donate blood? Donating blood can help people if they have been badly **injured** or need **regular** blood transplants⁽⁷⁾ because they have a **long-term** illness⁽⁸⁾.

Giving blood can also have health **benefits**⁽¹⁰⁾. All donors have their **blood pressure**⁽¹¹⁾ and **iron levels**⁽¹²⁾ checked before donating⁽¹³⁾, so people who donate blood can **feel** quickly if they have any health problems. Giving blood can **save** **lives**⁽¹⁶⁾ and it is easy to do!



(SB page 17)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) الدم
- (2) المتبرع
- (3) يشارك في
- (4) يشارك
- (5) فصاء
- (6) منظم
- (7) نقل
- (8) مريض - طويل المدى
- (9) مرض
- (10) فوائد
- (11) ضغط الدم
- (12) مستويات الحديد
- (13) (في الدم)
- (14) فحص
- (15) التبرع
- (16) ينقذ
- (17) الحياة

2. Listening Texts

Interviewer: In today's programme, we're talking to Martin Drake about Dr Leelah Hazzah, an Egyptian conservation biologist⁽¹⁾ and founder⁽²⁾ of Lion Guardians, a conservation project in Kenya. Martin, when did Leelah become interested in lions?

Martin: Well, as a child, her father told her stories about how he listened to lions **roaring**⁽³⁾ at night when he was sleeping on the **roof**⁽⁴⁾ of their house during the summer. But when he explained that there weren't any lions left in Egypt, she decided that when she grew up, she would find out how to save them in other countries.

Interviewer: What happened next?



Check Vocabulary

- (1) عالم أحياء
- (2) مؤسس
- (3) نزل
- (4) سطح

1. Martin

She went to America to study conservation biology and then moved to Kenya to research lions **amongst**⁽⁵⁾ the Maasai people. It was there that she saw how quickly lions were disappearing. Did you know that sixty or so years ago there were about 200,000 lions in Africa, but that number is under 20,000 now?

Interviewer: So why are lions disappearing so quickly?

Martin: There are several **reasons**⁽⁶⁾. People have built houses in the areas that lions **traditionally**⁽⁷⁾ hunt, so they can't find enough food to eat and, so they attack the **villager's livestock**⁽⁸⁾, you know, their cows and goats. The **villagers**⁽⁹⁾ get angry with the lions and kill them in order to protect their animals. Another reason is **prestige**⁽¹⁰⁾ - in Maasai **culture**⁽¹¹⁾, young men get a lot of **respect**⁽¹²⁾ from killing a lion. They are even given a lion name which shows that they are no longer a boy, but a man.

Interviewer: What did Leelah do?

Martin: She lived with the Maasai for a year and listened to their views⁽¹³⁾ about lions. She learnt that they have a **love-hate relationship** with⁽¹⁴⁾ lions, they **admire**⁽¹⁵⁾ their **beauty**⁽¹⁶⁾, but hate them for eating their **cattle**⁽¹⁷⁾. She also understood the prestige that came from being a **lion killer**⁽¹⁸⁾ and realised that she needed to **persuade**⁽¹⁹⁾ the young men that keeping livestock and having a job gave them more prestige than killing a lion, so she started to teach them about the **advantages**⁽²⁰⁾ of protecting lions instead.

Interviewer: Is that when she started Lion Guardians?

Martin: Yes. Lion Guardians is an **organization**⁽²¹⁾ that **employs**⁽²²⁾ local people to look for lions in order to protect them. Remember, these young men already have the skills needed to **track**⁽²³⁾ lions in the **wild**⁽²⁴⁾, so they are taught to become lion guardians **rather than**⁽²⁵⁾ lion killers. The organisation gives them a job and teaches them to read and write, so they can help conservations with their research.

- (5) بين
- (6) أسباب
- (7) تقليدياً
- (8) حيوانات المزرعة
- (9) القرى
- (10) مكانة / مكانة
- (11) ثقافة
- (12) احترام
- (13) وجهات النظر
- (14) علاقة حب وكره
- (15) يفتخر بـ
- (16) جمال
- (17) الماشية
- (18) قتل أسود
- (19) يثنى
- (20) مزايا
- (21) منظمة
- (22) توظيف
- (23) يرصد / يتابع
- (24) الحياة البرية
- (25) بدلاً من

Part IV Language



ALFAN KUTUB

Supporting the community

The Present Simple Tense:

(أصن المصارع البسيط)

1 في الجمل الخبرية البسيطة

Subject الفاعل (I, We, They, You) + التصريف الأول للفعل

- eg. - I get up at six o'clock every morning
- They sometimes go for a walk on Fridays.
- (He / She / It) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب
- Ahmed likes football very much.
- (es) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان المصدر متبهاً بـ
- .. (ch - sh - ss - o - x)
- Aya watches action films every day.
- (ies) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان المصدر متبهاً بـ
- .. (y) مسبقاً بحرف ساكن ويحذف حرف (y)
- Mariam studies philosophy at Cambridge University

2 في النفي

Subject الفاعل + don't / doesn't + inf. المصدر

- لاحظ تستخدم (doesn't) مع الفرد الغائب

- ex. - I don't get up at six o'clock on Friday.
- Ahmed doesn't like football very much.
- ونستخدم (never) أحياناً للنفي القاطع وفي هذه الحالة تلي (s/es/ies) في نهاية الفعل مع (he/she/it)
- He doesn't help the poor at all. = He never helps the poor.
- They don't get up late at all. = They never get up late

3 في السؤال بـ «هل»

Do / Does + Subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر ؟

- ex. - Do you get up at six o'clock every morning ?
- Yes, I do. OR - Yes, I get up at six o'clock every morning.
- No, I don't. OR - No, I don't get up at six o'clock every morning
- Does Aya watch action films ?
- Yes, she does. OR - Yes, she watches action films.
- No, she doesn't. OR - No, she doesn't watch action films.

2

Interviewer How successful is the programme ?

Mariam Very successful. Many men now have jobs, a regular income and a sense of purpose. They get to know the lions they are protecting and even give them names and talk about them with kindness.

Interviewer And finally, what can other conservationists learn from Lion Guardians ?

Mariam The importance of listening to people in the community and to recognise how much knowledge local people have. By working together, both the locals and conservationists can benefit.

Interviewer Thank you, Mariam. And at 8 o'clock tonight you can see a ...

- (1) نجاح
- (2) دخل
- (3) هدف / غرض
- (4) مصدر / ربح
- (5) هدف / مصدر
- (6) يعرف على
- (7) معرفة
- (8) سكان المحليين
- (9) يستفيد

3 Video script section

Young people and older people don't always spend a lot of time together. But, they can do a lot to help each other.

In some communities, children and teenagers try to support older people. They sit and watch television with them. They help them with their shopping or other tasks around the house.

They listen to their stories about life a long time ago. The older people don't feel so alone, they get the help they need and they can share interesting information about life in the past with the next generation.

But, what about the young people ? Well, they can learn a lot about the history of their community. They also see that older people were just like them when they were younger.

اطلب من الطلاب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإكمال الأسئلة التالية

- 1 How do volunteers help older people ?
- 2 How does listening to older people help them feel less alone ?
- 3 What can young people learn from older people ?

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مجتمعات
- (2) مرافقين
- (3) يتطوع
- (4) يساعد
- (5) أعمال / واجبات
- (6) جيل

السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Question word + do / does + Subject + Inf. المصدر ... p

- ex. - What do you eat for lunch?
- How often does Mr Ashraf go to the club?

في المبني للمجهول

- عند تحويل زمن المضارع البسيط إلى صيغة المبني للمجهول نستخدم :

Object المفعول + am / is / are + P.P التصريف الثالث

- ex. Farmers grow plants. (معلوم)
- Plants are grown by farmers. (مجهول)
- Some people don't eat meat at all. (معلوم)
- Meat isn't eaten at all by some people. (مجهول)

- لا نستخدم (have / has) كفعل أساسي في المبني للمجهول ويستبدل بفعل آخر حسب المعنى :

Have = own - possess - belong to - suffer - eat - buy - spend - take

- ex. - I have a car. - A car is (possessed - owned) by me.
- She has lunch at two o'clock. - Lunch is eaten at two o'clock by her.

Mini Test 1 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- My son ... football and tennis in the club.
a play b plays c is played d are played
- My sons ... football and tennis in the club.
a play b plays c is played d are played
- Football and tennis ... in the club.
a play b plays c is played d are played
- Football ... in the club.
a play b plays c is played d are played
- These trees ... their leaves in autumn
a isn't lost b don't lose c doesn't lose d aren't lost
- This tree ... its leaves in autumn.
a isn't lost b don't lose c doesn't lose d aren't lost

- The leaves of this tree in autumn.
a isn't lost b don't lose c doesn't lose d aren't lost
- This tree ... its leaves in autumn.
a never loses b don't lose c never lose d aren't lost
- Does Amir ... your birthday parties?
a attend b attends c is attended d attending
- ... you with your homework?
a Anyone helps b Is anyone helped
c Does anyone help d Anyone is helped
- with your homework?
a You help b Do you help c You are helped d Are you helped
- We a nice time by the sea.
a are had b have c are spent d is spent
- A nice time by the sea.
a are had b have c are spent d is spent

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

1 بالنسبة للفعل (be) كفعل أساسي في المضارع البسيط ، نستخدم (am / is / are) بمعنى (يكون / يوجد) ولا نستخدم (do / does) في النفي أو السؤال.

- Ali is at school. (إثبات)
- Ali isn't at school. (نفي)
- Is Ali at school? (سؤال به هـ هل)
- Where is Ali? (سؤال به أداة استفهام)

2 بالنسبة للفعل (have) كفعل أساسي في المضارع البسيط ، نستخدم (have / has) بمعنى (يملك / يتناول / يشترى) ونستخدم (do / does) غالباً معهما كأفعال مساعدة في النفي أو السؤال.

- They have lunch at three o'clock. (إثبات)
- They don't have lunch at three o'clock. (نفي)
- Do they have lunch at three o'clock? (سؤال به هـ هل)
- When do they have lunch? (سؤال به أداة استفهام)

Mini Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Ali ... at home right now. He's at school.
a is b doesn't be c isn't d has

2. A: at home right now? B: No, he's at school.
 a Is Ali b Does Ali be c Ali is d Does Ali have
 3. We lunch before my father returns home.
 a haven't b don't have c aren't d don't be
 4. lunch before your father returns home?
 a You have b Have you c Are you d Do you have

Uses : الاستخدامات

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط (Present simple) في:
 1. التعبير عن حقائق ثابتة:

ex. - The sun gives us light and heat. - People don't live under water.

2. التعبير عن شيء حقيقي في المضارع (حقيقة تدوم لفترة) / موقف دائم

ex. - Yousef lives in Assiut. - My wife is an engineer.

3. يدل المضارع البسيط على المستقبل بعد الربط الزمنية التالية:

قبل - before - بينما - as / just as - عندما - when
 بمجرد أن - once - بعد - after - في اللحظة التي - by the time
 حتى - until / till / as soon as بمجرد أن

جملة مستقبل + مضارع بسيط / تام + رابط زمني Time connector

ex. - When I arrive (have arrived) home, I will take a shower.
 - Before she goes (has gone) to bed, she will kiss her mother.
 - I won't call you until I know (have known) the latest news.

4. بعد (if) في الحالة الشرطية الأولى و الحالة الصغرى:

ex. - If I get information about this subject, I'll tell you.

5. التعبير عن جداول المواعيد الثابتة:

ex. - My train leaves at nine tomorrow morning.

6. يستخدم المضارع البسيط بدلاً من المضارع المستمر للتعبير عما يحدث الآن مع أفعال التقريرية (مثل أفعال الحواس والمشاعر والإدراك...):

ex. - I am seeing some beautiful flowers. (x)
 - I see some beautiful flowers. (✓)

Mini Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Lions meat.
 a eats b eat c don't eat d are eaten
- Lions grass.
 a eats b eat c don't eat d are eaten
- This soup very good.
 a tastes b taste c is tasting d to taste
- My father in a big company. He is an accountant there.
 a works b work c is working d is worked
- After I my lunch, I will take a short rest.
 a will have b have c had d had had
- I will take a taxi if I up late.
 a will get b had got c got d get
- She'll help you as soon as she her work.
 a will finish b finish c finishes d have finished
- According to the timetable, the train the station at seven.
 a will reach b had reached c reach d reaches

Present Habits : عادات المضارع البسيط

فعل في زمن المضارع البسيط + always / usually / sometimes + فاعل Subj.

- Nada usually goes to the shops on Sunday.

It + is + someone's habit to + Inf.

- It is Nada's (her) habit to go to the shops on Sunday.

Subj. فاعل + am / is / are + (in the habit of + (Inf. + ing)

- Nada is in the habit of going to the shops on Sunday.

Subj. فاعل + am / is / are + used to + (Inf. + ing) / n.

- Nada is used to going to the shops on Sunday.

فعل في زمن المضارع البسيط + no longer + Inf. / (Inf. + s, es, lee)

- He no longer eats rice.

Subj. فاعل + don't / doesn't + Inf... + any longer / anymore

- He doesn't eat rice anymore.

Adverbs of frequency with the present simple

نستخدم ظروف التكرار التالية قبل الفعل الحاضر أو بعد **am is are**

- أدوات التكرار - often بانتظام - regularly بانتظام - usually / normally عادة - always دائما
 little - سحيب وأخر - occasionally - أحيانا - sometimes - frequently
 never مطلقا - hardly ever بالكاد - seldom (rarely) - rarely

ex - I always go to school on time. - I am always at school on time.
 كما يمكن أن نستخدم بعض ظروف التكرار هذه في بداية أو نهاية الجملة للتركيز على معنى العرف.
 ex - Sometimes, I play football. - I play football sometimes.

نستخدم تعبيرات التكرار التالية أيضا في بداية أو نهاية الجملة

- once / twice / three times / several times / many times
 + a / an / every + period of time
 - every (morning - day - Monday - week - month - summer - year.....) / on Fridays / in summer

ex - I go for a walk twice a week.
 - Once a month, I visit my parents.
 - I take Arabic lessons on Wednesdays.
 - Every morning, my mother wakes me up.

Mini Test 4

c Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- My father works as a doctor. He very busy examining patients.
 a. often is b. is often c. often has d. has often
- Leen something to do. She is very busy.
 a. always have b. have always c. always has d. has always
- I visit my grandparents month, in the beginning and in the middle.
 a. twice b. once c. once a d. twice a
- Sama is used in Aswan.
 a. to living b. alive c. to live d. living

- It is Omar's habit for walks on Fridays.
 a. going b. to going c. to go d. goes
- Hussein working on the farm.
 is used b. is used to c. used to d. used

The Past Simple Tense: زمن الماضي البسيط

تم شرح الماضي البسيط في الوحدة الأولى.

General Exercise On Language Apply

التجربيات التالية مرتبة بشكل متدرج تصاعديا حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم

c Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- My car always down on the motorway. (٢٠٢٢ طيطا العرب)
 a. is broken b. has broken c. breaks d. was broken
- I think the next train to Aswan at 10 a.m. (٢٠٢٢ الساعات)
 a. will leave b. leaves c. is leaving d. left
- One of the Egyptian scientists awarded the Nobel Prize in 2010. (٢٠٢٢ القاهرة الجديدة)
 a. was b. has been c. were d. had been
- When I was in Sharm El-Sheik, I to the beach a lot. (٢٠٢٢ المرموم - يوسف كوك)
 a. have gone b. was going c. would go d. went
- Yesterday, we some beautiful fish in the Red Sea. (٢٠٢٢ اكرم ابو - أحمد محمد موسى)
 a. saw b. were seeing c. see d. have seen
- Nesma late when she was young. She no longer does now. (٢٠٢٢ إدارة الممر)
 a. usually sleeps b. is used to sleeping
 c. used to sleep d. was usually slept.
- My sister usually to school when she was young. (٢٠٢٢ الساعات)
 a. walks b. was walking c. walked d. has walked
- Money into our country by tourists who come to enjoy our civilization. (٢٠٢٢ إدارة الممر)
 a. is brought b. has brought c. are brought d. is bringing

- 9 Every day, my room while I'm at school.
 a. was tidied b. is tidied
 c. tidied d. was being tidied
10. When he went on holiday, he always a lot of photos.
 a. takes b. have taken c. took d. has taken
11. He committed the crime and away.
 a. runs b. ran c. run d. running
12. Tamer meals outdoors.
 a. hasn't b. never has c. has ever d. isn't had
13. Now, Salah as a role model for all young Egyptians.
 a. is being known b. is known c. knows d. known
14. How much time on social media?
 a. are spending b. you spend c. is spent d. spent
15. He hard work on the farm.
 a. used to b. were used to c. got used to d. didn't use to
16. My friend used to get high marks but now he
 a. don't b. doesn't c. didn't d. isn't
17. He at the club yesterday.
 a. isn't seen b. wasn't seen c. didn't see d. doesn't see
18. Do as you and don't ask questions.
 a. tell b. are told c. are telling d. being told
19. Never to school late. He is so punctual.
 a. he comes b. comes he c. does he come d. is he come

• داخل الصفحة جيداً واستعد للتدريبات الشاملة ضمن الدرسين الثالث والرابع.

للويا



Part I

Vocabulary

• لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيداً ومراجعتها بالنظام (الوثيقة مرفقة في الملحق 1).

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

biologist(n)	party(n)	فريق - جماعة - حزب
cattle(n)	livestock(n)	حيوانات المزارع
community(n)	monitor(ed) (v - n)	مراقب / يرصد - جهاز عرض
famous(adj)	organisation(n)	مؤسسة - منظمة
guardian(n)	track(ed) (v - n)	يرصد - يتابع - مسر
hunting parties		فرق الصيد

• من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2. Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

achievement (n)	إنجاز - نجاح	local(adj)	محلي
aim(ed) (n - v)	هدف - يُهدف	locate(d) (v)	يضع في مكان - يحدد موقع
amazing(adj)	رائع - مُذهل	missing(adj)	مفقود - ناقص
angle (n)	زاوية	nearby(adj-adv)	قريب - مجاور
appearance (n)	ظهور - مظهر	path(n)	مسار - طريق
attack(ed) (n - v)	هجوم - يهاجم	paw print	أثر أقدام الحيوان
disappear(ed) (v)	يختفي - يختلس	paws(n)	أرجل - مخالب الحيوانات
empathy(n)	تفاهت - تقدير ظروف الآخرين	protect(ed) (v)	يحمي
employ(ed) (v)	يوظف - يشغل	recent(adj)	حديث
estimate(d) (v)	يقدّر - يفترض	responsibility(n)	مسئولية
expert(n)	خبير	safe(adj)	آمن
field (n)	مجال - حقل	sense(n)	حاسة
headquarters(n)	مركز القيادة	sign(n)	علامة / إشارة - لافتة
hunting (n)	الصيد	tribe(n)	قبيلة
killings (n)	حالات القتل	villagers(n)	القرى

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق

3 Definitions تعريفات

• تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نطاق التعليم المستهدفة - ص 112

Understand

Memorise

- admire (v) - يعجب به to respect and like someone because they have done something that you think is good, or to respect their qualities or skills
- guardian (n) - حارس - وصي someone who is legally responsible for looking after someone or something
- livestock (n) - حيوانات المزارع animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm
- monitor (v) - يرصد - يراقب to carefully watch and check a situation in order to see how it changes or progresses over a period of time

Exercise On Vocabulary

Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Key vocabulary

1. The child's parents or must give their agreement before she has the operation. (اجازة الآباء بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. designers b. guardians c. donors d. monitors
2. Families should their children's internet activity. (دائرة الشرقية - كتاب ٢٠٢٢)
a. meet b. dick c. monitor d. scam
3. The police managed to down the criminal. (دائرة الشرقية - كتاب ٢٠٢٢)
a. track b. tick c. trek d. truck
4. The international is really very worried about the problem of climate change. (المتن - ديمو ٢٠٢٠)
a. security b. communication c. technology d. community
5. "Farmers keep livestock on their farms." The synonym of "livestock" is (الشرقية - كهر صفر ٢٠٢٠)
a. kittle b. castle c. cattle d. kettle

6. The farmers build fences to protect their from wild animals and thieves.
a. wildlife b. livestock c. parties d. tracks
7. He joined the tourist who visited the Valley of Kings
a. herd b. party c. flock d. community
8. He works for an international that help poor people in Africa
a. organisation b. cancer c. maker d. presentation
9. He is an experienced ذو خبرة
a. biology b. biological c. biologically d. biologist

2 Important Vocabulary

10. I don't have to do your homework; it's your
a. biography b. responsibility c. disease d. illness (الذرة اليسرى - لقد كنت تسمى المسؤولية ٢٠٢٢)
11. A good citizen has a of duty. (الخدمة - القضي ٢٠٢٠)
a. skill b. sense c. responsibility d. charity
12. If there is a supermarket, we can shop easily. (المتجر - رشيد ٢٠٢٠)
a. really b. nearby c. nearly d. rarely
13. "Not all that glitters is gold", this means you shouldn't be deceived by (اليسوى - الذهب ٢٠٢٠)
a. appearance b. personality c. politeness d. character
14. He is really kind. He showed much with my difficult situation.
a. empathy b. donation c. admiration d. charitable
15. She is a doctor. She works in the medical طبي
a. transplant b. party c. field d. interview
16. Most patients are taken to the hospital in our area.
a. local b. missing c. wild d. repeated
17. Winning the gold medal in the Olympics is a great
a. loss b. movement c. achievement d. organisation

3 Definitions

18. A/An is someone who is legally responsible for looking after someone or something.
a. biologist b. guardian c. hunter d. admirer
19. are animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm.
a. Livestock b. Parties c. Viewers d. Guardians
20. To is to carefully watch and check a situation in order to see how it changes or progresses over a period of time.
a. desire b. employ c. monitor d. transplant

Part II Vocabulary Study

ساعدكم في تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية على أفضل وجه ممكن من خلال هذا الكتاب الذي يحتوي على كل ما تحتاجونه

2 Verbal Collocations

do research	تجري أبحاث	have a negative impact on	لها أثر سلبي على
work with	تقوم بالعمل مع	leave school	ينقطع أو ينتهي دراسته
give a sense of responsibility	عطي إحساس بالمسئولية	sure	يتأكد / يتحقق
go missing	سوء / ضل الطريق	make movements	يلوم بحركات

2 Synonyms

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
amazing	رائع - مذهل
disappear	يختفي - يختفي
empathy	تفهم - تفهم ظروف الآخرين
employ	توظيف - توظيف
famous	مشهور
monitor	يراقب / يرصد
nearby	قريب - مجاور
search for	يبحث عن
astonishing, wonderful	رائع - مذهل
vanish, die out / go away	يختفي - يختفي
togetherness, sympathy, understanding	تفهم - تفهم ظروف الآخرين
take on, hire, appoint	توظيف - توظيف
well-known, renowned	مشهور
track, observe, watch, keep an eye on	يراقب / يرصد
close, near, neighbouring	قريب - مجاور
look for, hunt	يبحث عن

3 Antonyms

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
amazing	ordinary, usual, everyday
disappear	appear, come out
employ	fire, dismiss, discharge
nearby	remote, faraway, distant
wild	domestic / tame

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary

biology(n)	علم الأحياء	He is an expert in biology
biologist(n)	عالم أحياء	He is an experienced biologist
biological(adj)	حيوي - حاس بالكمائنات العبد	He is a biological expert.
guard(ed)(v)	يحرس	He guards this farm
guard(n)	حارس	He is a guard of this farm
guardian(n)	حارس - وصي	He is one of the nature guardians

kill(ed)(v)	يقتل	This criminal killed three people
killing(n)	القتل	This criminal is responsible for the killing of three people
killings(n)	حالات القتل / الضحايا	This criminal is responsible for three killings
killer(n)	قاتل	This criminal is the killer of three people

5 Expressions & Idioms

a sense of responsibility	الإحساس بالمسئولية	expert at/in/on	خبير في
all over	في كل أحياء	from different angles	من زوايا مختلفة
as much as	بمقدار الكمية	in groups	في مجموعات
be based in	مقره في (+ مكان)	kill animals for sport	يقتل الحيوانات كرياضة
be based on	قائم على (+ الفكرة)	local communities	مجتمعات محلية
be interested in	يهتم بـ	thanks to	بفضل
early life	مرحلة مبكرة من العمر		

6 Verb + Preposition

bring ... into	يأخذ ... إلى	look after	يرعى - يهتم بـ
compare ... with	يقارن ... بـ	look for	يبحث عن
complete with	يُكمل بـ	play for	يلعب لأجل
deals with	يتعامل مع / يواجه	search for	يبحث عن
encourage ... to	تشجع ... لكي	teach ... (how) to	يُعلم - يُدرب
know about	يعرف عن	worry about	يقلق على

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

be based in / be based on

مبني على / مكانه في

- be based in
 - Our company is based in Cairo.
- be based on
 - This film has been based on a novel by Naguib Mahfouz.

مبني على - قائم فكرياً على

every day - everyday

- every day (adv) = daily
 - I play football every day. = - Every day, I play football.
- everyday (adj)
 - He feels bored because of his everyday routine.

كل يوم (ظرف زمان يأتي غالباً في بداية أو نهاية الجملة)

يومي (صفة تأتي قبل الموصوف)

hear of / about - hear from

يُعرف / يسمع

- hear of / about
 - I haven't heard of / about this writer before.
- hear from
 - I haven't heard from Mr Ashraf lately. I hope he is well.

angle / angel

زاوية - جانيب

- angle
 - A square has four angles.
 - Try to look at the subject from a different angle.
- angel
 - Children are little angels.

ملاك - شخص حسن الخلق

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- We can say someone makes
 - a. blood
 - b. movements
 - c. missing
 - d. friends
 - e. nothing to do
- You can do
 - a. work
 - b. mistakes
 - c. research
 - d. movements
 - e. decisions

3 Suddenly, Ahmed disappeared in the forest. The synonyms of the word "disappear" are

- a. refrain
- b. remain
- c. hide
- d. operate
- e. vanish

4. "We have an outdoor camera to monitor the street outside." The verb 'monitor' in this sentence means

- a. watch
- b. give
- c. wish
- d. look
- e. observe

5. She is expert .. cooking recipes.

- a. of
- b. in
- c. to
- d. on
- e. for

6. "We don't allow hunting parties to kill animals." The word 'parties' here can be replaced by

- a. teams
- b. festivals
- c. occasions
- d. groups
- e. animals

7. 'Wild' is antonymous with

- a. well-known
- b. serious
- c. violent
- d. tame
- e. domestic

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The loss of his job a negative impact on him.
 - a. had
 - b. took
 - c. provide
 - d. did
- We need to more research into coronavirus.
 - a. go
 - b. do
 - c. get
 - d. leave
- Young men join the army after school or university.
 - a. going
 - b. doing
 - c. getting
 - d. leaving
- When I was young, I missing when I was shopping with my mum.
 - a. went
 - b. did
 - c. got
 - d. left
- To wild animals is a crime.
 - a. kill
 - b. kills
 - c. killing
 - d. killings
- wild animals is a crime.
 - a. Kill
 - b. Kills
 - c. Killing
 - d. Killings
- The new wildlife law helped reduce among rare animals.
 - a. kill
 - b. kills
 - c. killing
 - d. killings
- The lion Guardians is an organization based Kenya.
 - a. on
 - b. in
 - c. at
 - d. to

9. This film is based a true story.
 a in b on c of d with
10. He succeeded in his life thanks hard work.
 a for b to c from d about
11. People don't drink as as camels do.
 a long b well c much d soon
12. Doing sport is part of my activities.
 a angel b angle c everyday d every day
13. I do sport
 a angel b angle c everyday d every day
14. Finally, I heard my brother in the USA. He sent me an email.
 a from b of c about d b & c
15. I have just heard your health problems.
 a from b of c about d b & c

Part III

Reading

Reading Texts

1. Working together

(SB page 20)

Check Vocabulary

Lions are **disappearing**⁽¹⁾ all over Africa but there is some hope now after the **amazing**⁽²⁾ work of an organization⁽³⁾ called **Lion Guardians**⁽⁴⁾, which is based in⁽⁵⁾ Kenya, but Guardians help in **nearby**⁽⁶⁾ Tanzania. The aim⁽⁷⁾ of Lion Guardians is to help **local**⁽⁸⁾ people to **protect**⁽⁹⁾ their own **livestock**⁽¹⁰⁾ and **reduce**⁽¹¹⁾ the number of lion **killings**⁽¹²⁾ in the area⁽¹³⁾.

Cattle⁽¹⁴⁾ are important to the **villagers**⁽¹⁵⁾ but they often go **missing**⁽¹⁶⁾ or are **attacked**⁽¹⁷⁾ by lions. Then the lions are killed as⁽¹⁸⁾ villagers **worry**⁽¹⁹⁾ about losing more livestock.



- (1) تختفي
- (2) مذهل
- (3) منظمة
- (4) حراس
- (5) مقرها في
- (6) قريب
- (7) هدف
- (8) محلي
- (9) يحمي
- (10) حيوانات المزرعة
- (11) يقلل
- (12) حالات القتل
- (13) المنطقة
- (14) الماشية
- (15) القرى
- (16) تضل الطريق
- (17) تهاجم
- (18) لأن
- (19) يقلق

Lion Guardians is changing this. The organization works with the community⁽²⁰⁾ to help both⁽²¹⁾ the lions and the livestock and this is done by **employing**⁽²²⁾ local people.

Maasai⁽²³⁾ men are **chosen**⁽²⁴⁾ to become guardians as they understand lions and have the **skills**⁽²⁵⁾ needed to monitor⁽²⁶⁾ their movements⁽²⁷⁾, find **missing**⁽²⁸⁾ livestock and stop **hunting parties**⁽²⁹⁾ who kill the lions for sport. They are taught to be **field**⁽³⁰⁾ biologists⁽³¹⁾ and are given a **sense**⁽³²⁾ of responsibility⁽³³⁾.

Lions are **monitored**⁽³⁴⁾ every day and the information is sent to the cattle farmers who can then make **sure**⁽³⁵⁾ their cows are safe. Lion Guardians are very **successful**⁽³⁶⁾. They help the future of lions as well as⁽³⁷⁾ the local communities.

Check Vocabulary

- (20) المجتمع
- (21) كل من
- (22) يوظف
- (23) شعب الماساي
- (24) يختار
- (25) مهارات
- (26) يراقب
- (27) تحركات
- (28) مفقود
- (29) فرق الصيد
- (30) ميداني
- (31) علماء الأحياء
- (32) إحساس
- (33) المسؤولية
- (34) يتتبع / يراقب
- (35) يتأكد
- (36) ناجح
- (37) بالإضافة إلى

2. Maasai Tracking

Check Vocabulary

The Maasai are experts⁽¹⁾ at **tracking**⁽²⁾ animals and lions are the most well known⁽³⁾ animal that they **follow**⁽⁴⁾. But how do they do it? The lions are tracked by the Maasai, who use all their senses⁽⁵⁾ to follow them.

When a paw print⁽⁶⁾ is discovered⁽⁷⁾, it is checked to see if it is an old paw print or a recent⁽⁸⁾ one. Then the path is followed by the Maasai until the lions are found.

While they are tracking the lions, the Maasai are listening and looking for signs⁽⁹⁾ to help them discover where they are. In the past, the Maasai might kill a lion when they found one. Today, lions are protected by the Maasai from hunting parties and at the same time the local people's cows are safe. Thanks to⁽¹⁰⁾ the Lion Guardians, everyone is happy!

- (1) خبراء
- (2) تتابع
- (3) معروف
- (4) يتابع
- (5) حواس
- (6) آثار أقدام الحيوان
- (7) يكتشف
- (8) حديث
- (9) علامات
- (10) بفضل

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني

تدوين

General Exercise On Language Apply

التدريبات التالية موزعة بشكل متدرج تصاعديا حسب نصف هرم بلوم

تدوين

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Getting started: Check what you have learnt.

1. Leen usually the 8 o'clock train to work.
a. has caught b. is catching c. catch d. catches
2. Aya late for work.
a. never is b. is never c. never has d. has never
3. When you usually finish studying your lessons?
a. are b. have c. do d. does
4. Omar come to work late at all.
a. never b. doesn't c. don't d. isn't
5. Omar comes to work late.
a. never b. doesn't c. don't d. isn't
6. I always the piano after I come home from work.
a. plays b. play c. played d. playing
7. I always the piano after I came home from work.
a. plays b. play c. played d. playing
8. He usually very quickly, so we didn't understand him.
a. speaks b. spoke c. was spoken d. speaking
9. He usually very quickly, so we don't understand him.
a. speaks b. spoke c. was spoken d. speaking
10. My friends often came to my birthday party and me nice presents.
a. have given b. were giving c. give d. gave
11. My friends often come to my birthday party and me nice presents.
a. have given b. were giving c. give d. gave
12. When I was on holiday, I tennis every day.
a. had played b. have played c. play d. played

13. When I am on holiday, I tennis every day.
a. had played b. have played c. play d. played
14. Sama an email to her friend but she has received no reply so far.
a. sends b. is sent c. sent d. was sent
15. Rubbish and burnt.
a. are collected b. collected c. collects d. is collected
16. He often with me in English to become better at speaking.
a. is speaking b. has spoken c. spoke d. speaks
17. We an interesting film last night.
a. watched b. had watched c. watch d. have watched
18. Policemen criminals and arrest them.
a. hunt b. hunts c. are hunting d. hunted
19. They attend the conference last month.
a. wasn't b. weren't c. didn't d. don't
20. According to the timetable, the train at 11 o'clock.
a. is arriving b. arrives c. is going to arrive d. had arrived
21. She the newspaper every morning. It is a habit of hers.
a. is reading b. has read c. read d. reads
22. She the newspaper every morning. It was a habit of hers.
a. is reading b. has read c. read d. reads
23. What time you usually arrive at school when you were a student?
a. do b. would c. did d. does
24. What time you usually arrive at school when you take a taxi?
a. do b. would c. did d. does
25. My son ambitious and he wants to study medicine.
a. is always b. always is c. doesn't always d. isn't always
26. When I finished my work, I closed my office and home.
a. return b. returning c. had returned d. returned
27. His mother his room door while he was studying his lessons.
a. opened b. opening c. was opening d. opens
28. The moon around the earth.
a. has moved b. will move c. moves d. moved

AltFwOk.com موقع التفوق

- 28 He phoned me once he ^{the message.}
had read a. will read c. reads d. read
- 29 He will phone me once he ^{the message}
had read a. will read b. has read c. read
- 30 I was twelve my family moved into this flat.
a. While b. When c. During d. As
- 31 He ^{early}
rarely is a. is rare b. is rarely c. rare is d. rarely is
- 32 He ^{an early}
rarely gets a. gets rarely b. get rarely c. rarely get d. rarely get
- 33 It hardly ^{in Egypt}
is raining a. rains b. have rained c. raining d. raining
- 34 As a schoolboy, my uncle always ^{to school on foot.}
went a. goes b. will go c. goes d. will go
- 35 Mum ^{by all family members.}
is loving a. is being loved b. is loved c. loves d. loves
- 36 I'll phone you as soon as I ^{my work.}
finishes a. finish b. will finish c. had finished d. had finished
- 37 We all ^{in Allah}
believe a. believes b. is believing c. are believing d. are believing
- 38 It is time we ^{home.}
went a. are going b. go c. have gone d. have gone
- 39 ^{the email sent before the office was closed?}
Are a. Was b. Had c. Does d. Does
- 40 During his last holiday, Tamer ^{football every day.}
is playing a. played b. plays c. has played d. has played
- 41 He ^{playing tennis.}
use to a. used to b. used to c. used to d. was used
- 42 As Have you seen her lately?
B: Yes I ^{her when I was on my way to work the other day.}
saw a. had seen b. have seen c. was seeing d. was seeing
- 43 All the information I read in this book ^{very valuable and useful}
is being a. has b. is c. are d. are

- 45 Ten people ^{to have been injured in the crash}
had reported a. have reported b. were reported c. were reporting d. were reporting
- 46 Don't open the door until I ^{you}
told a. had told b. tell c. was told d. was told
- 47 I am sure he ^{a Samsung laptop. He just doesn't want to lend it to you.}
is having a. is going to have b. will have c. has d. has
- 48 When Salma read a story, she ^{interested in its moral}
is usually a. was usually b. usually is c. usually was d. usually was

2 Check your understanding

49. "He used to work as a firefighter." This means
a. he is a firefighter b. he works as a firefighter
c. he is no longer a firefighter d. he never worked as a firefighter
50. "I wish I were tall." What does this mean?
a. I am tall b. I am not short.
c. I used to be tall. d. I am not tall.
51. "It is time Omar paid me back my money." This means
a. Omar had returned my money b. Omar hasn't returned my money
c. Omar returned my money d. Omar has just returned my money
52. "I'd rather Sama hadn't used my cream yesterday." This means
a. Sama used my cream yesterday
b. Sama didn't use my cream yesterday
c. Sama asked to use my cream yesterday
d. Sama agreed to use my cream yesterday
53. "Plants get their food from the sun". This is a
a. present habit b. past habit c. future fact d. fact
54. "We take mid-year exams in January". This is a
a. timetable b. future fact c. habit d. hope
55. "I don't smoke heavily any longer." I mean that I
a. smoke heavily b. used to be a heavy smoker
c. haven't stopped smoking d. didn't use to smoke

يمكن أن يستخدم 'inf + ing' بعد (since) إذا كان الفاعل مفترق في الجملة

- ex. - He has worked for the same company since he left school.
= He has worked for the same company since leaving school.

يمكن استخدام الصيغة التالية قبل (since)

It + is / was / has been / had been + + since

- ex. - It is two days since I last saw Sama.
- It was the first time that I met the manager since last Monday.

نستخدم (since) مع الماضي لتشير للمدى الزمني بين وقتين

- ex. - In 2017, he scored the goal to send Egypt to their first World Cup finals since 1934.

يمكن استخدام (since / since then) دون تغيير زمني بعدها نصبي هذه تلك الحين إذا كان الوقت المشار إليه مشهوراً من السياق

- ex. - I returned home at 3 p.m. I haven't gone out since (since then).

نستخدم (since) بمعنى (لأن) وفي هذه الحالة نستخدم مثل (because)

- ex. - He didn't answer the phone since he was angry.
= He didn't answer the phone because he was angry.
= He didn't answer the phone as he was angry.

- The Causative صيغة المفعول لأجله

- نستخدم صيغة المفعول لأجله (causative) لتعني أن الفاعل أفع أو دفع مالا أو جعل شخصاً آخر يقوم بالفعل.

- نستخدم في هذه الصيغة الفعلين (have / get) حسب الزمن.

- وتتكون هذه الصيغة في المبني للمعلوم كالتالي:

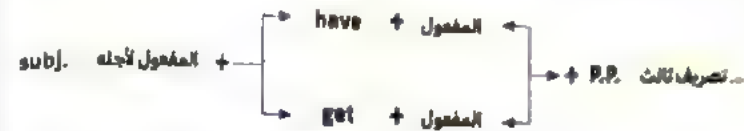


- ex. - I had a doctor check my blood pressure.

(جعلت الطبيب يفحص ضغط الدم الخاص بي)

= I got a doctor to check my blood pressure.

- أما في المبني للمجهول فتتكون هذه الصيغة من:



- I had / got my blood pressure checked (by a doctor).

(لقد تم قياس ضغط الدم لدي عن طريق الطبيب)

- Superlative adjectives صفات التفضيل

1 تتميز صفة التفضيل بين فرد ومجموعة (أي تقارن بين أكثر من طرفين)

- ex. - English is the easiest subject.

- The lion is the most dangerous animal.
- The rabbit is the least dangerous animal.

2 لتحويل الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي:

the + adj. صفة + est / st / lest

- ex. - fast → the fastest - old → the oldest
- large → the largest - close → the closest
- big → the biggest - thin → the thinnest
- lazy → the laziest - healthy → the healthiest

3 لتحويل الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي:

the most / the least + adj. صفة

- ex. - beautiful the most / the least beautiful

4 لا نستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل بعد الأعداد الترتيبية مثل:

first / second / third / fourth ...etc.

- ex. - Cairo is the first largest city in Egypt.

5 لا نستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل عندما يسبقها صفة ملكية أو (s) الملكية:

my - his - her - your - our - their - its -'s

- ex. - Cairo is Egypt's largest city.

- Is Sama your youngest sister?

النحو phrase

العبارة الاسمية تتكون من مجموعة كلمات وتعمل عمل الاسم، ويمكن استخدامها كفاعل أو مفعول أو مخرور

- ex - Salah's desire to help others is because he wants to give young people a chance to succeed. (فاعل)
 - We all respect Salah's desire to help others. (مفعول)
 - I want to know more about Salah's desire to help others. (مخرور)

التصريف الثالث p.p.

أحياناً يُستخدم (p.p.) كبديل لعبارة وصل - لاحظ الصيغة التالية:

التصريف الثالث p.p. + جملة مبنية للمجهول + who / whom / which / that

- ex. - I have a cousin who is called Karim.
 = I have a cousin called Karim.
 - They have the skills which are needed to monitor wild animals.
 = They have the skills needed to monitor wild animals.

as

1. نستخدم (as) بمعنى (ك...) ويأتي بعدها اسم يدل على الوظيفة - المرحلة العمرية - الدور - المظهر:

- ex. - As a student, Sama is very clever.
 - Captain Bassem works as a police officer.

2. يأتي التصريف الثالث بعد (as) ويكون اختصاراً لجملة مبنية للمجهول:

- He works hard as planned.
 = He works hard as it has been planned.

3. نستخدم (as) وبعدها جملة كرابطة بين الجمل بمضارع متكافئة:

- He fell asleep as he was watching a film. (as = when / while)
 - As she was ill, she didn't go to school. (As = Because)

Own

1. نستخدم (own) قبل اسم شيء للتأكيد على أن شخص ما يملك هذا الشيء أو أنه هو من قام بعمله وتأتي (own) بعد صفات الملكية التالية:

my - his - her - your - our - their - its - ...'s

- I relax well in my own room.
 - He can't help you because he is busy doing his own homework.

1. يمكن أن نستخدم (own) كضمير وفي هذه الحالة لا يأتي بعدها اسم

- This is my wife's car. My own is being checked in the garage.

Plural Titles

للغة أن عناوين الكتب والمؤسسات التي في صيغة الجمع تأخذ فعل مفرد:

- Lion Guardians is a success story.
 - One Thousand and One Nights has been translated into several languages.

but / but still

نستخدم (but) للتعبير عن تناقض في الفكرة الرئيسية بين الجملتين:

- I asked for another glass of orange juice, but there was no more.

نستخدم (but still) للتعبير عن تناقض في التوقع أو الرأي بين الجملتين:

- There was no more orange juice, but still she asked for another glass.

Thanks to

نستخدم (thanks to) في سياق إيجابي للتعبير عن السبب لكل (because of):

- thanks to / because of / due to / owing to + اسم (inf. + ing)
 = جملة + لأن as / since / because ...

- We could solve our problems thanks to your help.
 = We could solve our problems because you helped us.

Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- That man had his kidney in his brother.
 a. transplants b. transplanted c. transplant d. transplanting
- I went to the mechanic to have
 a. repaired my car b. my car repaired
 c. my car repair d. my car repairs
- Gulliver's Travels a children's novel.
 a. is b. are c. has d. have
- We have studied English 2010.
 a. at b. on c. since d. for
- I sleep well in room
 a. own b. an own c. owning d. my own

6. a teacher, I have the qualities and qualifications that make my students understand well.
a As b Like c Since d When
7. Rodayna has a cousin Zamzam.
a was called b called c is called d calling
8. It was two years he moved into that flat.
a as b while c when d since
9. What Mr Ashraf does because he has been very ill recently.
a is b are c has d have
10. Mr Nasser is my friend of them all.
a the best b the better c better d best
11. she was busy, she refused to help me.
a Because of b On c As d During
12. Last August, I went to Alexandria for the second time, 2015.
a in b since c for d by
13. I did the job well agreed.
a like b for c since d as
14. We have the equipment for our work.
a needed b needing c need d needs
15. I have my blood pressure every week.
a check b checks c checked d to check
16. Ahmed hasn't gone out since he home last night.
a went b has gone c had gone d. going
17. own car is a KIA.
a Him b His c He d. Himself
18. The last match was Salah's game ever.
a great b greater c greatest d. the greatest
19. I got a plumber the water pump.
a to fix b fixes c fixed d. to fixing
20. She left an hour ago. She hasn't returned ..
a then b since then c already d. just
21. I arrived home mum was preparing lunch.
a before b as c since d on
22. I have my son after the trees in our house's garden.
a to look b look c looks d to looking
23. As, ice is lighter than water.
a know b knows c knew d. known

24. I was very tired, I didn't finish studying unit 2.
a When b While c Since d Because of
25. That isn't my tablet. My is a SAMSUNG.
a own b it c this d ones

Part III Language Skills

1 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

تأليف للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات.

(A) Tips on writing a biography :

* إرشادات خاصة بكتابة السيرة الذاتية :

Early life: المرحلة الأولى من العمر

- Where was he / she born?
- Where did he / she live as a child?
- What did his / her parents do?
- What did he / she study?
- Did anything important happen to him / her as a child?

Description: الوصف

- Describe his / her appearance and her personality.
- How did he / she help the community?
- What did he / she do in the past to help the community?
- Where does he / she currently live and how is he / she helping the community now?

Conclusion: الخلاصة - العنونة

- What is your opinion of him / her?
- Why is his / her work so important?
- What is he / she admired for?
- Why is he / she a good role model?

(B) Tips on writing about a person :

* إرشادات للكتابة عن شخص :

عند الكتابة عن شخص ما ، ينبغي أن نتحدث ببساطة ووضوح عن النقاط التالية:

- 1 Who this person is من هذا الشخص
- 2 What his / her job is ما الوظيفة
- 3 How old he / she is كم العمر
- 4 When he / she lived متى عاش
- 5 Where he / she comes from من أين
- 6 What he / she did ماذا فعل
- 7 When he / she did that متى فعل ذلك
- 8 Why that is important ما أهمية ذلك

Model Essay

Write an essay of about 150 words about the person you admire :

The person I admire

Perhaps you think I am going to write about a football star or a famous actor. These are important people, of course. However, I admire professor Magdi Yacoub. For me, he is the best role model. He is a great man for everything he has done for mankind.

Professor Yacoub was the son of a doctor who had to move to a new town every few years. This helped young Yacoub to adapt to different situations. When his aunt died of a heart problem, he decided that he wanted to be a heart surgeon.

He succeeded in achieving his goal. He became a surgeon. He travelled abroad and worked with great heart surgeons in Britain and the USA. That gave him a lot of experience. He was part of the team that did the first heart transplant. Queen Elizabeth II awarded him the title "Sir" for his great achievements.

When he retired, he returned to Egypt and set up Magdi Yacoub Heart Foundation in Aswan. This foundation helps people with heart problems for free.

In my opinion, Professor Magdi Yacoub is the best example of greatness among people. He doesn't think of himself. Instead, he thinks how to help the people of his own country. He doesn't care for money. He only cares for saving people's lives. He gives heart patient the hope to live. I hope we all do our best to follow his footsteps.

2 Translation الترجمة

المزيد من التدريبات ملحق بالمعروف.

1 Translate into Arabic :

- The Egyptian woman has always been an important partner of man. Women in Egypt are strong, wise, helpful, intelligent and ambitious.
- No one can deny the role Dr Zewail played in science. With his help to his research team, they discovered the femtosecond.
- The use of computer tablets will help students in a positive way. It will enable them to reach the sources of knowledge easily.

2 Translate into English :

- من الممكن أن تكون عظيماً ومشهوراً في أحد المجالات، كل ما عليك هو أن تثق بنفسك وتخطط جيداً للوصول لهدفك.
- لأبد من مساعدة الحكومة في تطوير العملية التعليمية في مصر، فالتعليم الجيد سيوفر لنا العلماء والفكرين الذين سيجعلون حياتنا أفضل.
- يمكن استخدام المياه الجوفية تحت الصحراء الغربية لزراعة بعض المحاصيل، مما سيوفر الكثير من الغذاء للسكان كما سيوفر الكثير من فرص العمل.

Vocabulary related to translation texts مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختيار على الوحدة

achieve	يحقّق	knowledge	المعرفة
ambitious	طموح	population	السكان
chances	الفرص	positive	إيجابي
deny	ينكر	provide	يوفر
development	تطوير	research	بحث
enable	يُمكن	sources	مصادر
fields	المجالات	thinkers	المفكرين
goal	هدف	trust	يثق به
job opportunities	فرص العمل	wise	حكيم

Part IV Just for Advanced level

للفائقين فقط

تنويه: هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب الفائقين فقط

1 Key Vocabulary for Advanced level المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين

admire

- admire (d) (v) يُعجب به (بدون حرف جر)
- I admire the way you teach your students.
- لاحظ أن :
عادة لا يُستخدم الفعل (admire) بهذا المعنى في الأزمنة المستمرة:
- We are admiring Mohammed Salah. (X)
- We admire Mohammed Salah. (✓)
- admire for يُعجب به بسبب ...
- Students admire Mr Hossam for working hard.
- admire (d) (v) ينظر بإعجاب إلى / يستمتع بجمال الشيء أو جودته
- She was admiring herself in the mirror.

- admirers = fan (n)
- Football stars have millions of admirers.

- admiration (for) (n)
- I want to express my admiration for your wisdom. الحكمة

field

- field (n)
- Farmers work in fields. مزرعة / حقل
- field (n)
- Mr Yaseen works in the field of teaching. مجال / نشاط
- field (n)
- The players are warming up on the field. أرض الملعب

- ولاحظ التعبيرات التالية

- on the field داخل الملعب
- off the field خارج الملعب
- take the field = go into the field يدخل الملعب

- field (n)
- I think this opinion won't work in the field. الواقع القلبي

- ولاحظ المصطلحات التالية :

- field research بحث ميداني
- fieldwork عمل ميداني

blood

- blood (n)
- The heart pumps blood all over the body. الدم

- لاحظ المتلازمات التالية :

- blood transplant / transfusion نقل الدم
- blood donation = giving blood التبرع بالدم
- blood pressure ضغط الدم
- blood donor متبرع بالدم

community

- community (n)
- The governor holds a meeting every month to discuss community problems. نختص

- community (n)
- The Egyptian community in France welcomed our team. محلية / صناعة / طائفة

- لاحظ أن
صفة عامة يُستخدم فعل مفرد بعد كلمة (community) لكن في الإنجليزية البريطانية يمكن استخدام فعل جمع :

- The community is / are interested in the new educational system.

- ولاحظ التعبيرات التالية

- the local community المجتمع المحلي
- a community centre مركز اجتماعي
- a community leader قائد مجتمعي
- community services خدمات اجتماعية
- community care رعاية اجتماعية
- a religious community طائفة دينية
- minority communities الأقليات
- international community المجتمع الدولي

- ولاحظ أن

العلاقة بين (community) و (society) هي علاقة بين الجزء والكل، فكلمة (community) تدل على مجتمع أصغر داخل المجتمع الأكبر (society)

desire

- desire (d) (v) = want ... very much يرغب في
- He desires to live in a villa, not a flat.

- لاحظ أن :

لا يُستخدم الفعل (desire) في الأزمنة المستمرة :

- The Egyptians are desiring peace. السلام (X)
- The Egyptians desire peace. (✓).

- desire (to + inf.) / (for + n) = strong wish or hope رغبة / أمنية شديدة
- Sama has a strong desire to succeed.
= Sama has a strong desire for success.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- a strong / great / burning desire رغبة قوية
- have a desire لديه رغبة
- show a desire يُظهر رغبة
- express a desire يُعبر عن رغبة
- satisfy/ fulfill a desire يُبقي أو يُشبع رغبة

donate

- donate (d) (v) = give تبرع
- It is kind of you to donate blood.
- donate + شيء + to + شخص ...
- Salah donates a lot of money to poor people.

- **donation (n)**
- Most charities get money from donations.

- **donation to +** ^{لطرف الذي يحصل على التبرع}
- Salah made a donation to a children's hospital.

- **donation from +** ^{لطرف المرسل منه التبرع}
- A children's hospital got a donation from Salah.

- **donation of +** ^{الشيء الذي يتم التبرع به}
- The donation of blood is something very important.

- **make / give a donation** ^{يتبرع}
- **a generous donation** ^{تبرع كريم / مثل}
- **anonymous donation** ^{تبرع من فاعل غير (المشروع مجهول)}
- **receive a donation** ^{يُقبَل تبرع}
- **charitable donation** ^{تبرع خيري}

- **donor (n)**
- Blood donors must be healthy people

empathy

- **empathy (with) (n)** ^{القدرة على إظهار التعاطف مع - الرأفة أو تقدير ظروف الآخرين}
- His empathy with poor people is clear. واضح
- **empathetic = empathic (adj)** ^{تتعاطف مع - مُراعٍ أو مُقدِّر لظروف الآخرين}
- Mr Helmi is empathetic with my opinion.

generous

- **generous (adj)** ^{جواد - كريم - سخيل}
- People who donate money and other things are generous.
- **generous + to +** ^{شخص} ^{كريم مع}
- He is generous to the poor. الفقراء
- **generous + with +** ^{(adj) الشئ} ^{كريم +}
- Rodayna is generous with her effort. الجهد
- **generosity (n)** ^{الكرم - الجود - السخاء}
- The people of Aswan are famous for their generosity.
- Giving money to charities is an act of generosity. تصرف يتم عن الكرم

hunt

- **hunt (ed) (v)** ^{يصاد (حيوانات وطيور)}
- It is known that lions hunt in packs. في قطعان
- **hunt (ed) = search (v)** ^{يبحث عن - يفتش عن}
- She hunted for an hour but she couldn't find the lost ring. خاتم

- **hunt (ed) ... down (v)** ^{يطارِد - يمتقب - يلاحق}
- The police hunted the gang down and arrested them.

- **hunt (n)** ^{البحث - التفتيش عن}
- Some people helped in the hunt for the missing boy.

- **hunter (n)** ^{صياد - قناص}
- It is not allowed for hunters to kill lions.

intelligence

- **intelligent (n)** ^{ذكي}
- To be good at maths and physics, you need to be very intelligent.
- **intelligence (n)** ^{الذكاء - البطنة}
- To be good at maths and physics, you need much intelligence.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والملاحظات التالية :

- **show intelligence** ^{يُظهر ذكاء}
- **high / low intelligence** ^{ذكاء عالي / صغور}
- **artificial intelligence** ^{الذكاء الاصطناعي (الحاسوبي)}

- **intelligence (n)** ^{المخابرات}
- Our intelligence has found out a lot of secret plans. الحطط السرية

livestock

- **livestock (n)** ^{حيوانات المزارع - الماشية (تأخذ فعل مفرّد أو جمع)}
- The livestock needs more care. رعاية
- The livestock need more care.

cattle

- **cattle (n)** ^{أنعام / ماشية (تأخذ فعل جمع)}
- Cattle are kept for meat and milk.

long-term

- **long-term (adj)** ^{بعيد المدى / على المدى البعيد (تستخدم قبل الاسم فقط)}
- This plan is long-term. (X)
- This is a long-term plan. (✓)

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- a long-term plan ^{خطة طويلة المدى}
- a long-term strategy ^{استراتيجية طويلة المدى}
- in the long term ^{على المدى البعيد}
- a long-term illness ^{مرض مزمن}

monitor

- monitor (ed) (v)
 - The situation is monitored carefully.
 - It is not legal to monitor people's phone calls.
- monitor (n)
 - Don't look at the computer monitor for a long time.
- monitor (n)
 - There are peace monitors between the two countries.

party

- party (n)
 - I invite you to my birthday party.
 - have a party
 - attend a party
- party (n)
 - I have never joined any political party.
- party (n)
 - I saw a tour guide and a party of tourists.

track

- track (ed) (v)
 - The police are tracking the terrorists.
 - The enemy planes were tracked and attacked.
- track (ed) (v)
 - Teachers must track the progress of their students.
- track (n)
 - I followed the track down the mountain.
- track (n)
 - The first runner to reach the end of the track wins the gold medal.

transplant

- transplant (n)
 - My uncle had a heart transplant surgery.
- transplant (ed) (v)
 - His kidney was transplanted in his brother.
- transplant (ed) (v)
 - I transplanted an apple tree next to the old palm tree.

support

- support (ed) (v)
 - You must support people when they need you.
 - I support your opinion.
- support (n)
 - Your support helped me a lot.

2 Prefixes

Prefix	Function	Examples
bio-	خاص بعلم الأحياء أو الحياة	biology biography
dis-	تكون العكس	disappear
inter-	بين	interview
trans-	عبر	transplant

3 suffixes

Suffix	Function	Examples
-ation	تكون اسم	admiration
-ce	تكون اسم	intelligence
-er / -r	تكون اسم الفاعل	villager
-ion	تكون اسم	donation
-ist	تكون اسم الفاعل	biologist artist scientist
-or	تكون اسم الفاعل	donor
-ure	تكون اسم	pressure
-ment	تكون اسم	agreement

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct Answer from a, b, c or d.

- All Egyptians Salah for his skill and generosity.
 - inquire
 - admire
 - derive
 - role play
- The Egyptian handball team in London welcomed and supported the Egyptian
 - Frequency
 - stadium
 - Maasai
 - community
- Which of the following is correct?
 - A society is a part of a community.
 - A community is bigger than a society.
 - A society is a part. A community is a whole.
 - A society is a whole. A community is a part.
- We all know that water has become a must.
 - wasting
 - donating
 - conservation
 - support
- Although he is rich, he works hard to his desire for success.
 - satisfy
 - donate
 - conserve
 - monitor
- When we do not know who paid the money, we say it is a donation.
 - antonym
 - synonym
 - synonymous
 - anonymous
- All fans cheered when the players the field.
 - ploughed
 - took
 - lost
 - missed
- The livestock on this farm looked after by three workers.
 - is
 - are
 - is or are
 - has
- The cattle on this farm looked after by three workers.
 - is
 - are
 - is or are
 - has
- In the , eating too much food causes overweight.
 - long term
 - field
 - hometown
 - desire

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	- الاختيار الأدق والأصح لمسى الجملة هو (admire)
2.	d	- الاختيار الوحيد الذي يعطي معنى في هذا السياق هو (community) بمعنى (جالية)
3.	d	- الاختيار (d) هو الصحيح لأن كلمة (society) أشمل ويتفرع تحتها (community)
4.	c	- كلمة (conservation) بمعنى (الحفاظ على) هي الوحيدة التي تعطي معنى منطقياً للجملة
5.	a	- التعبير (satisfy his desire) يعني (يشبع رغبته)
6.	d	- التعبير (anonymous donation) يعني (تبرع من فاعل خفي)
7.	b	- التعبير (took the field) يعني (أزولوا أرض الملعب)
8.	c	- الاسم (livestock) يمكن أن يتبعه فعل مفرد أو جمع
9.	b	- الاسم (cattle) يتبعها فعل جمع وليس مفرد
10.	a	- التعبير (In the long term) يعني (على المدى الطويل)

Advanced Exercise on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- He no longer ... as he used to do.
 - smoke
 - smokes
 - smoked
 - doesn't smoke
- He used to smoke but now he
 - isn't anymore
 - doesn't no longer
 - doesn't any longer
 - any longer doesn't
- He was used to smoking, but now he
 - is no longer
 - no longer is
 - does no longer
 - no longer does
- A: Does he smoke? B: No, but he
 - is used to
 - is used to doing
 - used to do
 - used to be
- A: Is he used to smoking? B: No, but he
 - is used to
 - is used to doing
 - used to do
 - used to be

6. A: B: Yes, but he never smokes now.
 a. Is he used to smoking b. Does he get used to smoking
 c. Did he use to smoke d. Was he used to smoke
7. I wish you your time last year.
 a. wasted b. didn't waste c. had wasted d. hadn't wasted
8. to bed before 1 a.m.
 a. Rarely do I go b. Rarely I go
 c. Rarely am I go d. Rarely I go
9. He never used to eating in class.
 a. is b. was c. got d. get
10. It is a habit of to drink a big glass of water when I get up every morning.
 a. I b. me c. my d. mine

الإجابة والتوضيح

1. b. الجملة تدل على عادة كانت موجودة في الماضي (used to smoke) لم تعد موجودة في الحاضر، لذلك استخدمنا الفعل (smokes) لأن الفعل (He).
2. c. لا يمكن استخدام (isn't anymore) لأن الفعل الأساسي في الجملة الأولى هو (smoke) وليس الفعل (be).
 - نفي الفعل الأساسي (smoke) في المضارع يكون (doesn't) ونفي صرف (any longer) وليس قبلها
 - لا يمكن استخدام (doesn't no longer) لأنها حادثة لغوية
3. b. لا يمكن استخدام (does) لأن الفعل الأساسي في الجملة الأولى هو (was) وليس الفعل (smoking).
 - نفي الفعل الأساسي (was) في صيغة المضارع يكون (is) ونفي قبلها (no longer) في هذه الصيغة المختصرة
 - لا يمكن استخدام (is no longer) لأنها حادثة لغوية في الصيغة المختصرة فقط
4. c. الفعل الأساسي في السؤال هو (smoke) وليس (be) فحمل محله (do) وليس (be).
 - لا يمكن استخدام (a / b) لأنهما في المضارع في حين أن السياق بعد (but) يتطلب الماضي

5. d. الفعل الأساسي في السؤال هو (is) وليس (smoking) فحمل محله (be) وليس (do).
 - لا يمكن استخدام (a / b) لأنهما في المضارع في حين أن السياق بعد (but) يتطلب الماضي
6. c. لأنه أن يكون السؤال عن العادة في الماضي لأن الرد (Yes) يدل على أنه كان يحدث في الماضي لكنه لا يفعل الآن.
7. d. بعد (I wish) يُستخدم الماضي التام في حال وجود ظرف زمان ماضي (last year).
8. a. عندما تبدأ الجملة بظرف دال على النفي مثل (rarely) فلا بد أن يأتي الفعل المساعد قبل الفاعل.
 - الاختيار (d) خاطئ: أنه لا يمكن استخدام (am) قبل (go) في المصدر
9. c. لا يأتي ظرف (never) في السياق العادي قبل (is / was).
 - الاختيار (d) خاطئ: أنه لا يمكن استخدام (get) في المصدر بعد (he)
10. d. بعد التعبير (it is a habit of) نستخدم صيغة ملكية (mine).



Part One

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. "He donated some blood". The word "donated" is antonymous with
 a kept b received c gave d admired e sold
2. I this man for his bravery and strong will.
 a press b admire c donate d collect e praise

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. My sister's really She's always buying things for her friends.
 a furious b brave c generous d frustrated
4. The Egyptian in Cameroon welcomed our team in the African cup.
 a peoples b president c community d society
5. Mohamed Salah is a role to millions of young people around the world.
 a example b module c model d figure
6. To your progress, record each day's results.
 a move b monitor c wish d rationalize
7. Magdy to the library twice a week.
 a usually goes b goes usually c usually go d go usually
8. My uncle in 1970.
 a born b was born c bear d bears
9. Leen has a cousin Kenzy.
 a called b was called c calling d is called
10. My grandfather always to work when he was young.
 a walked b walks c is walking d was walking
11. Smart cards everywhere nowadays.
 a use b uses c are using d are used

12. I'll collect you as soon as my car
 a was repaired b had been repaired c is repaired d repaired
13. Who ?
 a was the door opened by b did you open the door c was opened the door d were you opened the door
14. Egyptian cotton clothes all over the world.
 a is sold b sells c are sold d has sold
15. A: Have you visited Ali? - B: Yes, I him last night.
 a have visited b visit c will visit d visited
16. He a smart BMW He has paid too much money for it.
 a had b was had c is had d has

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Who would win in a fight, a lion or a tiger ? Well, if size has anything to do with the matter, the tiger would win. That's because tigers are the largest of all cat species. The tiger is the third largest land meat-eating animal. Tigers are not only large; they are also fast.

You might not think that such large, fast, and wild creatures need help to live, but they do. The tiger is an endangered species. Despite all of the tiger's strengths, the future of the species is uncertain.

Tigers face a very high risk of extinction. Interestingly, the most serious threats that tigers face come from a much smaller species. Humans threaten tigers in primarily two ways: hunting and destroying habitat. Tigers are hunted for many reasons. People have long valued the famous striped skins. Though trading tiger skins is now illegal in most parts of the world, tiger hair is worth around \$ 10,000 on the black-market. Though the fur would be a motivation for most thieves, other parts of the tiger can also bring wealth. Some people in China and other Asian cultures believe that various tiger parts have health benefits. Traditional Chinese medicine calls for the use of tiger bones, amongst other parts to treat some serious diseases. Tigers have also been hunted as game. In other words, people hunted tigers only for the excitement and

2

achievement of killing them. Such killing took place in large scale during the 19th and early 20th centuries, when a single maharaja or English hunter might claim to kill over a hundred tigers in their hunting career. Though this practice is much less popular today than it was in the past, it has not stopped entirely.

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17 It is strange that a lion can easily a tiger despite its size.
a respect b win c beat d gain
- 18 The underlined word "risk" means
a danger b safety c peace d war
- 19 Tiger's have health benefits.
a legs b teeth c bones d hands
- 20 According to the passage, killing tigers can be for some people.
a excitement b boring c dull d miserable
- 21 The writer isn't about the future of tigers.
a uncertainly b surely c uncertain d sure
- 22 The tiger is an endangered species means that it's about to
a retire b stay c die out d remain
- 23 People hunt tigers for their
a horn b nails c skin d nose

Part Two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Egyptian scientists have achieved great successes all over the world. They will achieve more if they are given the due chance.

(العلوم - الدروس الثلاثة الأولى - ٢٢)

2. Translate into English :

تعتبر مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي من أهم إنجازات التكنولوجيا الحديثة، لكن هذه المواقع لها بعض السلبيات الخطيرة التي يجب تجنبها.
(العلوم - الدروس الثلاثة الأولى - ٢٢)

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on :

The role of youth in society



تلاوة • للتدريب على أشكال مختلفة من قطع الفهم بنظام أسئلة MCQ بهذه السلسلة

UNIT 3

Improving lives

SB pages 26 - 35 WB pages 14 - 19

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

○ Reading
A - extract from David Copperfield

○ Writing
A paragraph on a book character
A summary of a story

○ Listening :
A talk about the effect of Charles Dickens' books

○ Speaking :
Discussing a topic

○ Language :
Past simple and present perfect

○ Life skills :
Empathy



موقع
التفوق
ALTfWok.com

• بك الأسبوعية للبراعة اليومية والشهرة
• ملحق المهارات اللغوية
• تدريباً للأشخاص الذين يكملون بك الأسبوعية
• Dictation •

PART ONE 1 & 2

SB pages 26 - 29 WB pages 100 & 101

Part I Vocabulary

• لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيداً ومراجعتها بالنظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان)

تلميح

1. Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

amazing(adj)	مذهل - رائع جداً	owe(d) (v)	يدين - يكون مدين
debt(n)	دَيْن (مديونية)	plump(adj)	مكثّر - ممتلئ قليلاً
earn(ed) (v)	يكسب - يجني مال	prison(n)	السجن
merchant(n)	تاجر	rat(n)	فأر
miserable(adj)	تعبس - بائس	terrible(adj)	نظيع - سيء جداً
miserably(adv)	بتعباس - بشعاً		

• من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأخضر - ومراجعتها بالنظام

تلميح

2. Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

action(n)	حدث - فعل	hide - hid - hidden (v)	يُخفي/يُخفى - يختفي
arrange(d) (v)	يُرتب - يوفّر	high school(n)	مدرسة ثانوية
beliefs (n)	معتقدات	honest(adj)	أمين
borrow(ed) (v)	يستعير - يستلف	hurt - hurt (v)	يؤذي - يُصيب
break - broke - broken (v)	ينحط - يكسر - يكسر	lucky(adj)	محظوظ
brilliant(adj)	رائع - لامع - ممتاز	modern(adj)	حديث
character(n)	شخصية	opportunity (n)	فرصة
childhood(n)	مرحلة الطفولة	penny(n)	بنس (الـ) من الجنيه الإسترليني
criminal(n - adj)	مجرم - إجرامي	realise(d) (v)	يُدرِك - يتوسّع
deserve (d) (v)	يستحق - يمازى	remove (d) (v)	يزيل - يحو
die(d) (v)	يموت	review(ed) (v)	يُراجع
dirty(adj)	قذر	reward (ed) (v/n)	يُكافئ - مكافأة
discover(ed) (v)	يكشف	section(n)	قسم - جزء
empty(ied) (adj - v)	فارغ - يُفَرِّغ	similar(adj)	مشابه - متشابه
entertain (ed) (v)	يُسلّي - يُرفِّه عن	skill(n)	مهارة
entertainment(n)	الترفيه	society (n)	المجتمع
exactly(adv)	تماماً - بالتحديد	spend - spent (v)	يقضي وقت - ينفق مال
extract(ed) (n - v)	مُقتطف/انتقاس - ينتقبس/يقطف	storyteller(n)	بدائي - قاص

factory
floor
baked
health

support (ed) (v/n)
theatre(n)
tired looking(sch)
twins(n)

تفهم - فتم
السكن
يبدو عليه التعب
توائم

3 Definitions

تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من يوضح التعليم المستخدمة - ص 100

Memorise	Understand
community n	people who live in a place or an area and have common interests
debt n	money you must give to someone
earn v	to receive for doing work
merchant n	a person who buys and sells a lot of goods
miserable adj	very sad
owe v	money or things you have to pay back
plump adj	slightly fat in a nice way
prison n	a place to keep criminals for a period of time as punishment
rat n	an animal like a big mouse

Exercise On Vocabulary

Understand

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Key vocabulary

1 He's been looking for an extra job to get out of

a debt b debt c dirt

2 Most football players a lot of money.

a win b beat c earn

إزالة الكلمة والمفهوم (٢٠٢٢)

doubt

الفرق - الفواصلة (٢٠٢٢)

fill

- A lot of people in Africa live due to poverty and lack of education.
a truly b amazingly c sincerely d miserably
- They broke the law and were sent to for a year.
a prisoner b prison c imprisonment d park
- My daughter never stops eating, so she is
a thin b thick c plump d angry
- All I am or can be, I to my great mother.
a owe b admire c dare d fill
- The journey home was Everyone was sad about losing the game.
a miserable b happy c cheerful d enjoyable
- Some say that their sales were affected by the price of the dollar.
a interests b opportunities c merchants d merchandise
- The cruise was really We all enjoyed it.
a amazing b terrible c miserable d b & c
- The cruise was really We all regretted joining it.
a amazing b terrible c miserable d b & c

2 Important Vocabulary

- I read a/an from David Copperfield in Unit 3.
a exact b extract c trick d work
- To be, Sama did not break the vase. I did it.
a honest b brilliant c dirty d criminal
- Shouting at children their feelings.
a realises b hurts c empties d reviews
- Children depend on their parents'
a society b childhood c entertainment d support
- He was for his hard work.
a rewarded b hidden c entertained d deserved
- There is a job in this factory. You can apply for it.
a mistake b view c opportunity d experience
- Although I helped her with the housework, I felt sorry for my mother.
a look-tired b tired-look c tired-looking d looked-tiring

3

18. Don't let the baby crawl on this grass.
a. honest b. brilliant c. dirty d. criminal
19. From the sad look on her face, I realised that there is something wrong.
a. realised b. reviewed c. emptied d. hurt
20. Let the kids have fun and enjoy their society.
a. penny b. childhood c. support d. support
21. This bad car doesn't entertain the price you have paid for it.
a. entertain b. hide c. reward d. deserve
22. In Egypt, students have to finish school before joining university.
a. high b. low c. prep d. primary
23. The sold in this shop are all made in Egypt.
a. work b. works c. goods d. good
24. Salah is an footballer. He is a world-famous star.
a. honest b. brilliant c. dirty d. criminal
25. The child the bottle of water on the floor.
a. realised b. reviewed c. emptied d. hurt
26. Try to be a good member of your society.
a. society b. childhood c. entertainment d. support
27. The thief ran away and in the fields.
a. entertained b. hid c. rewarded d. deserved
28. Sama and Abdulrahman are but they are completely different.
a. unlike b. difference c. twin d. twins
29. There are nice shows to the children.
a. entertain b. hide c. realise d. deserve
30. For you can go to the cinema or the theatre.
a. society b. childhood c. entertainment d. support
31. He the trains timetable before buying a ticket.
a. realised b. reviewed c. emptied d. hurt
32. He was arrested because of his behaviour.
a. honest b. brilliant c. dirty d. criminal

3 Definitions

33. A is money you must give to someone.
a. donation b. prize c. reward d. debt
34. To means to receive money for doing work.
a. earn b. win c. make d. get
35. A is a person who buys and sells a lot of goods.
a. worker b. writer c. merchant d. volunteer

36. To money or things means you have to pay them back.
a. own b. owe c. lend d. donate
37. means very sad or unhappy.
a. Misery b. Miserable c. Cheer d. Cheerful
38. A woman or a child who is is slightly fat in a nice way.
a. plump b. fat c. obese d. overweight
39. is a place to keep criminals for a period of time as punishment.
a. Imprison b. Prisoner c. Imprisonment d. Prison
40. A is an animal like a big mouse.
a. goat b. rabbit c. cat d. rat

Part II Vocabulary Study

ساعد معلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقا بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

become	ill	يمرض	have	no parents	ليس له أبوين
break	the law/rules	يخالف القانون	have	debts	عليه ديون
change	your opinion	تغير رأيك	have	a problem with	لديه مشكلة في
do	the homework	يعمل الواجب المنزلي	have	bad news	لديه أخبار سيئة
	exciting things	يقوم بأشياء مثيرة	have	time	لديه الوقت
earn	money	يكسب مال	have	no opportunity	ليس لديه فرصة
get	a better job	يحصل على وظيفة أفضل	have	a role	له دور يقوم به
owe	money to	يدين بالمال لـ	take	to prison	ينجس - يحنس
pass	exams	ينجح في الامتحانات			

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
earn money	يكسب - يعني مال
honest	أمين
miserable	تعبس - بائس
terrible	فظيح - سيء جدًا
make money	
sincere, trustful	
sad, depressed, unhappy	
awful, horrifying, horrible	

UNIT 3

3 Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)
lose, waste money	يضيع - يهدر	earn money
happy, contented	سعيد - راضٍ	miserable
thin, slender, skinny	رقيق - نحيف	plump
full	متنزه - ممتلئ	empty
lend	يقرض - يُعطي	borrow
dishonest, deceitful	خادع - كاذب	honest
nice, delightful, lovely	جميل - لطيف	terrible
pleasant	سار - ممتع	

Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

earn

- earn (v) يكسب - You can **earn** more money by working hard.
 earning (n) الكسب - There's no problem in earning more money by working hard.
 earnings (n) دخل / مكسبات - Be wise. Don't waste your earnings.
 earner (n) كاسب / عامل - This woman is the only earner for her children.

miser

- miser (n) بخيل / تعيس - He is a miser.
 misery (n) النعاسة / اليأس - Poor people live in misery.
 miserable (adj) تعيس - يائس - Poor people have miserable lives.
 miserably (adv) - Our team failed miserably in their attempts to score a goal.
 miserably (adv) بعبادة - بشقا.

prison

- imprison (v) يبعث - He has been imprisoned because he is a criminal.
 prison (n) السجن - He has been sent to prison because he is a criminal.
 prisoner (n) سجين - He is a prisoner because he is a criminal.
 imprisonment (n) السجن / الحبس - He has been sentenced to life imprisonment because he is a criminal.
 imprisoned (adj) محبوس - He is now imprisoned because he is a criminal.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a boy of four	ولد عمره 4 سنوات	none of them	لا أحد منهم
at this age	في هذا السن	not ... any more	ليس ... مرة أخرى
difference in	فرق في	similar to	متشابه
for the first time	لأول مرة	stay abroad	سعى خارج البلاد
it was not unusual	كان من المألوف	the poor law	قانون الفقراء - قانون بيس
make ... better	يجعل ... أفضل	what kind of person	أي نوع من الأشخاص
make ... worse for	يجعل ... أسوأ		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

continue (up) to	يستمر حتى	learn from	يتعلم من
entertain ... with	يُسلِّي ... عن طريق	look after	يرعى / يعتني به
find out	يكشف	owe ... to	يدين به ... لـ
help ... with	يساعد ... في	pay back	يرد الدين - يرد
know ... for	يعرف ... بـ	take ... away	يأخذ بعيداً

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

earn money / get money / make money

- **earn money** يكسب مال مقابل عمل
 - This doctor earns twenty thousand pounds a day.
- **get money** يحصل علي مبلغ معين من المال في مدة معينة
 - I get 4000 pounds a month.
- **make money** يكسب (كثير من) اموال بطريقة غير تقليدية
 - Footballers make a lot of money.

own / owe / borrow / lend

- **own(ed)** يمتلك
 He owns a farm in the countryside.
- **owe(d)** يدين به
 - I owe Ahmed a thousand pounds.
- **borrow(ed)** يقرض / يستلف / يستعير
 - I borrowed a thousand pounds from Ahmed.
- **lend - lent - lent** يُقرض / يُعطي
 - Ahmed lent me a thousand pounds.

plump / fat / overweight / obese

• plump

- She is a **plump** cheerful little girl.

• fat

- A **fat** person finds it difficult to do a sport.

• overweight

- She wants to follow a diet because she is **overweight**.

• obese

- He was an **obese** teenager.

prison - jail - cell

• prison

- Thieves are sent to prison.

• jail

- He was taken to jail.

• cell

- The dangerous criminal was kept alone in a cell.

General Exercise - On Vocabulary study

• MCQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. I did before watching TV.

a. a decision b. a mistake c. my homework

d. exciting things e. some debts

2. I have to play.

a. a role b. no opportunity c. a problem

d. debts e. no parents

3. My baby sister never stops eating! That's why she looks !

a. slight b. slim c. plump

d. thin e. fat

4. She looked miserable." 'Miserable' here is antonymous with

a. depressed b. happy c. contented

d. poor e. helpless

5. A girl can't look after herself.

a. in four b. of four c. from four

d. four e. who is four

• MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He was sent to prison as he a lot of money to the bank.

a. won b. gained c. owed d. earned

2. The judge assured that the director had the law and sent him to prison.

a. supported b. kept c. broken d. issued

3. I was over the moon after the last exam I had

a. passed b. solved c. made d. earned

4. It is not a bad thing if you your opinion if it is wrong.

a. change b. do c. break d. make

5. You can't say she is fat. She is no more.

a. clumsy b. obese c. plump d. crescent

6. Earn and lose are

a. antonyms b. synonyms c. adverbs d. nouns

7. My job here is customers.

a. help b. to help c. to helping d. being helped

8. If something wrong with the machine, call me.

a. has b. does c. makes d. goes

9. I study hard pass the next exam.

a. so b. because c. in order to d. for

10. Can you take your toys please, Sama?

- The room is in a mess.
a. after b. up c. off d. away

11. I owe some money a friend of mine.

- a. with b. from c. to d. at

12. I will help you this difficult maths lesson.

- a. by b. to c. for d. with

13. My father's are what we live on.

- a. earns b. earner c. earning d. earnings

14. are people who are not generous.

- a. Misers b. Miserly c. Miserable d. Misery

15. Those who break the law must be

- a. prison b. prisoner c. imprisoned d. imprisonment

16. Those who break the law are kept as

- a. prison b. prisoners c. imprisoned d. imprisonment

17. I this flat. It's mine.

- a. owe b. own c. borrow d. lend

18. She her success to her parents.

- a. owes b. owns c. borrows d. lends

19. Will you me the money I need?

- a. owe b. own c. borrow d. lend

20. much money will leave you heavily in debt.

- a. Owning b. Owning c. Borrowing d. Lending

21. The High dam was built the age of President Nasser.

- a. of b. for c. at d. in

22. In prison, that criminal was kept in a small on his own.

- a. jail b. cell c. prison d. a & c

"This is Mr Quinion, David," Mr Murdstone said. "You're going to work for⁽¹⁾ him at Murdstone and Grinby, the bottle merchants⁽²⁾, in London. You'll earn⁽³⁾ enough money to pay⁽⁴⁾ for your food, and I've arranged⁽⁵⁾ a place for you to live."

I was ten years old and I was going to go to work. And it was hard work⁽⁶⁾. I went to a dirty⁽⁷⁾ old house near⁽⁸⁾ the river where rats⁽⁹⁾ lived under the floors.⁽¹⁰⁾ There my job was to wash empty⁽¹¹⁾ bottles with three other boys, and I hated⁽¹²⁾ it.

One morning, a plump⁽¹³⁾ man came to see me with Mr Quinion. "Ah, Master⁽¹⁴⁾ Copperfield!" the man said. "This is Mr Micawber," Mr Quinion told me. "You will be living at his house."

And that evening, Mr Micawber took me home. His wife - a thin⁽¹⁵⁾, tired-looking⁽¹⁶⁾ lady⁽¹⁷⁾ - was sitting with a baby. The baby was one of twins⁽¹⁸⁾, and they had a boy of four and a girl of three.

I soon discovered⁽¹⁹⁾ that the Micawbers were poor⁽²⁰⁾ and that Mr Micawber owed⁽²¹⁾ money to several⁽²²⁾ people. One morning the police came and took Mr Micawber away to prison⁽²³⁾ because of his debts⁽²⁴⁾. I went to see him there the next Sunday.

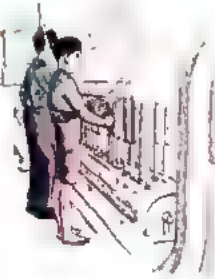
"If a man earns twenty pounds⁽²⁵⁾ a year and spends⁽²⁶⁾ nineteen pounds, he'll be happy," he said. "But if he spends twenty pounds and a penny⁽²⁷⁾, he'll be miserable."

- (1) يعمل لدى
(2) تجار
(3) تكسب
(4) تدفع
(5) ترتيب / يوزن
(6) عمل شاق
(7) قذر
(8) بالقرب من
(9) طراري
(10) أرضيات
(11) فارغ
(12) بكرة
(13) ممتلئ / مكتمل
(14) سيد
(15) نحيف
(16) يبدو عليها التعب
(17) سيدة
(18) توأم
(19) يكتشف
(20) فقير
(21) يدين به
(22) العديد من
(23) السجن
(24) ديون
(25) جنيهات
(26) يُنفق
(27) يسى ... من الجنيه

2. Learning new skills

The book character⁽¹⁾ David Copperfield went to work when he was ten years old. In the 1800s, it was not unusual⁽²⁾ for children to work at this age in England. Poor parents did not have the money to send their children to school. They often needed their children to earn money or they could not pay their debts. Factories⁽³⁾ liked to have children working for them because they did not need to pay them as much as⁽⁴⁾ they paid adults⁽⁵⁾. The children could also do some things the adults could not do. For example⁽⁶⁾, they were 'small' so they could go under machines⁽⁷⁾ when they broke down⁽⁸⁾. The children were often miserable⁽⁹⁾. They worked very long hours and most of them had no opportunity⁽¹⁰⁾ to improve⁽¹¹⁾ their lives. However, some children learned⁽¹²⁾ a skill⁽¹³⁾ when they worked. They were the lucky⁽¹⁴⁾ ones, as these new skills helped them to get better jobs⁽¹⁵⁾ when they were older.

(WB page 100)



Check Vocabulary

- (1) شخصية
- (2) غير مألوف
- (3) مصنع
- (4) بنفس القدر - كثيراً
- (5) مثل
- (6) الكبار
- (7) على سبيل المثال
- (8) صغير الحجم
- (9) آلات
- (10) يتصل
- (11) تكسب / يكتسب
- (12) فرصة
- (13) يُعْمَلُ
- (14) وتعلم
- (15) مهرة
- (16) محظوظ
- (17) يحصلون على
- (18) وظائف أفضل

2. Listening Texts

A. Today millions of people know Charles Dickens for the brilliant⁽¹⁾ books that he wrote. He was a great storyteller⁽²⁾. But, Dickens didn't only want to entertain⁽³⁾ people with his books, he also wanted to change their opinions⁽⁴⁾ about the world they lived in. He hoped his readers would then do something to make the world a better place⁽⁵⁾.



(58 page 29)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) رائع / ممتاز
- (2) سارد القصة
- (3) يسلو
- (4) يغير آرائهم
- (5) يجعل من العالم مكاناً أفضل

Dickens was most interested in helping poor children because of his own difficult childhood⁽¹⁾. When he was 12 years old, Charles' father was sent to prison. Like David Copperfield, he had to leave school and work to support⁽²⁾ his family instead. The Poor Law⁽³⁾ of 1834 removed support for most poor people so their lives were hard.

When he wrote David Copperfield between 1849 and 1850, Dickens wanted to show us that not all poor people were bad. Like his father, Mr Micawber went to prison because he had no money but after he left prison, he wanted to help David because he was a good man. In Dickens' books, people who worked hard were also often rewarded⁽⁴⁾. For example, at the end of the book, David Copperfield becomes a successful writer.

Dickens also wanted to say that rich people needed to do something to help the poor. In David Copperfield, a man called Mr Wickfield helps David by giving him a room. Dickens thought that people like Mr Wickfield were honest and good and deserved⁽⁵⁾ to be rewarded. Other people in the book, on the other hand, were bad and had an unhappy end.

3. Video script

People have always told stories.

Thousands of years ago they told stories about dangerous places to hunt so the people in their community wouldn't go there. Older people told stories about the people who came before them.

They couldn't write the stories down and they didn't want to lose them, so, they painted pictures to tell stories.

If you put your message into a story, people will remember it because they'll feel an emotional⁽¹⁾ connection⁽²⁾ to the people and places in the story. They may even decide to do something to help the people in the story or the people like them.

They say a picture can tell a thousand words, but the words in a story can touch a thousand lives.

اطلب من الطلاب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإلقاء الأسئلة التالية عليهم :

1. Why did people often tell stories in the past ?
2. How did they tell the stories in the past ?
3. Why do stories often have a message ?

Check Vocabulary

- (1) عاطفي
- (2) ارتباط



تم طرح الماضي البسيط في الوحدة الأولى.

تدريسه

The present perfect simple

1 The present perfect simple tense: زمن المضارع التام البسيط

في الجملة الخبرية الملتبة:

Subject فعل + have / has + P.P.

مستخدم (has) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) ونستخدم (have) مع الفاعل الجمع (We / They / You) والضمير (I).

ex. - I have tidied my bedroom. - Ahmed has played tennis for an hour.

في الجملة الخبرية الملتبة:

Subject فعل + hasn't / haven't + P.P.

ex. - They haven't watched the match yet.
- Rodayna hasn't done her homework yet.

السؤال بـ «هل»:

Have / Has + Subject فعل + P.P. ?

ex. - Have you tidied your room?
Yes, I have (tidied my room).
- Has Rodayna done her homework?
No, she hasn't (done her homework yet).

السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام:

Question word + have / has + subject + P.P. ?

- Where have you played the match?
- How long have you stayed here?

في صيغة المبني للمجهول: Object + have / has + been + P.P.

ex. - I have tidied my bedroom. (active)
My bedroom has been tidied (by me). (passive)
- Ahmed has played tennis for an hour. (active)
Tennis has been played for an hour (by Ahmed). (passive)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- It is Sama who my pen.
a. take b. taking c. has taken d. have taken
- The children the window. The pieces of glass are everywhere.
a. broke b. were breaking c. has broken d. have broken
- your teeth, Omar?
a. You have brushed b. Have you brushed
c. Are you brushed d. Were you brushed
- They doing the census الإحصاء السكاني. They're still doing it.
a. have finished b. haven't finished
c. had finished d. hadn't finished
- He carefully.
a. examines b. was examining
c. has examined d. has been examined
- Where before you have come here?
a. do you live b. you were living
c. have you lived d. have you been lived

Uses الاستخدامات

يستخدم زمن المضارع التام البسيط في الحالات التالية:

1 التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف غير منتهية (حدث في الماضي و لم تنتهي بعد):

ex. - I have studied English since 2013. I'm in secondary one.

2 التعبير عن مواقف مرت في الماضي دون ذكر وقت حدوثها ولكن يكون المقصود ضمناً حتى هذه اللحظة/الآن:

ex. - I have visited the Pyramids three times.
- Scientists have discovered medicines for a lot of diseases.

3 التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف منتهية في الماضي و لها اثر على الحاضر:

ex. - I've lost my mobile, so I can't phone my parents.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

Ⓛاحظ الفرق بين:

1. **have / has been to** + مكان ذهب إلى مكان و عاد
- She has been to the market. Now she is in the kitchen putting the vegetables in the fridge.
2. **have / has gone (to)** + مكان ذهب إلى مكان ولم يرجع بعد
- Bassem has gone to the club. He will come back after the match.
3. **have been in** + مكان + **for / since** ... متواجد في (لا يزال هناك)
- I have been in London for three years. (This means I am in London now.)
- Ⓛا يتم ذكر توقيت وقوع الحدث في المضارع التام . وعند ذكر التوقيت تستخدم الماضي البسيط:
- Ahmed has drunk two coffees.
- Ahmed drank two coffees yesterday.
- Ⓛ عند التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف قابلة للتكرار يمكن استخدام تعبيرات زمنية مستمرة حتى الآن مثل:
this morning / this week / this month / today / in the last year ... etc.
- I have sent three emails today.
- Ⓛ يُستخدم المضارع التام مع (ever / never / since) للتعبير عن الخبرات والتجارب السابقة:
- I have never gone camping. (لم يسبق أن عشت هذه التجربة.)
- Sama is the most intelligent girl I have ever seen. (الأول مرة أرى طالبة بهذا الذكاء.)
- I have worked here since 2002. (لقد عملت هنا منذ ٢٠٠٢.)

Mini Test 2

C Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I English since I was in Primary one. I still study it.
a. studied b. had studied c. have studied d. was studying
2. She the High Dam three times. She'll visit it again next week.
a. has visited b. had visited c. was visiting d. has been visited
3. Hussein his leg. He can't walk without a stick.
a. was breaking b. had broken c. has been broken d. has broken
4. Rodayna to the club. I'll join her there.
a. was gone b. has gone c. has been d. had been

5. Your mother to the market. Take the shopping bag to the kitchen.
a. was gone b. has gone c. has been d. had been
6. Mrs Noha this school two years ago.
a. has left b. has been left c. had left d. left
7. Today, I three emails so far. I'm waiting for two more.
a. have received b. was received c. had received d. was receiving

2 Time adverbs: ظروف الزمان

تستخدم ظروف الزمان مع المضارع التام البسيط كالآتي:

Ⓛ ظروف الزمان تأتي بعد الفعل المساعد وقبل التصريف الثالث

من قبل ever - أبدا never - بالفعل already - نوا just

- ex. - My uncle has just arrived at the airport.
- I have never seen a real fox.
This is the tallest tree I have ever seen.
- Have you ever travelled abroad?
- I have already passed the driving test.
= I have passed the driving test already.

Ⓛ لاحظ ما يلي:

has / have + never + p.p.

= hasn't / haven't + ever + p.p.

ex. - Nada has never been to Paris.

- Nada hasn't ever been to Paris.

Ⓛ ظروف زمنية تأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة وأحياناً قبل التصريف الثالث:

حديثاً / مؤخراً lately = recently - حتى الآن up till now - حتى الآن so far

in the last - على مر السنين over the years - لمدة for - منذ since

- على مر السنين throughout the years - في الشهور الأخيرة months

هذا الأسبوع this week

- ex. - I have written two essays so far.
- So far, I have written two essays.

نستخدم (for) في نهاية الجملة المضافة والاستثنائية وندل على أنه من المتوقع حدوث الفعل

- ex - Have you watered the trees yet?
- Marwa hasn't watered the new manager yet

يأتي بعد (since) التعبير الزمني يدل على وقت بداية الحدث على

five o'clock / the morning / Monday / 26th September /
منذ ذلك الحين March / summer / 2013 / yesterday / last month / then
..... / موت death / ميلاد birth / رحيل departure / وصول arrival

- ex - He has been here since April.
- She has lived in Aswan since her birth.

في حالة وجود جملتين مع (since) تكون الجملة بعد since تأتي بسبب والجملة التي بعدها تامة:

- ex - I have lived in this flat since I got married.
= Since I got married, I have lived in this flat.

في حالة وجود جملة واحدة تكون متابع تامة

- ex - I haven't seen him since 2015.
- Since then, we haven't met.

يأتي بعد (for) تعبير زمني يدل على المدة الزمنية التي استغرقها الحدث

a moment / a while / فترة / two seconds / three minutes / half an hour / four hours / five days / six months / two seasons / ten years / a decade / قرن / two centuries / قرون / ages / مدة طويلة / a long time / على قدر ما أتذكر / the last / as long as I can remember

- ex - I've had this mobile for more than 10 years.
- He's been here for 6 months.

Mini Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Marwa to Aswan before.
a. never has been b. has been never
c. has never been d. was never going
- Hossam to Hurgada. He plans to make his first visit next January.
a. hasn't never been b. hasn't ever been
c. has ever been d. has been never
- My parents home yet.
a. don't return b. weren't returning
c. have returned d. haven't returned

4. Wonderful! Have you completed the report? So, you can give it to the manager.
a. already b. yet c. ago d. yesterday

5. I haven't travelled outside Egypt my birth.
for a. since b. before c. last

6. I have felt great pain in my stomach since I a piece of biscuits.
a. eat b. has eaten c. ate d. had eaten

7. I haven't seen my sister ages.
a. for b. since c. before d. after

Notes for more understanding:

1. لاحظ استخدم (ago) بدلا من (just) والعكس:

فاعل + have / has + just + P.P. =

ماضي بسيط + just now a moment ago a short time ago

- ex. - He has just left the office. = He left the office a moment ago.
- Nada has just gone out. = Nada went out just now / a moment ago.

2. لاحظ استخدم (never) في بداية الجملة.

فاعل + have / has + never + P.P. = Never + have / has + فاعل + P.P.

- ex. - I have never played squash. - Never have I played squash.

3. لاحظ استخدم (ever) في بداية الجملة.

= This is the first time + subj + have / has + (ever) + P.P.

= This is the first time + for + subj + فعل مفعول زمني + to + inf.

- ex. - This is the first time I have ever seen such a tall girl.
= This is the first time for me to see such a tall girl.

جملة تفصيل + subject + have / has + (ever) + P.P. =

صفة + Subject + have / has + never + P.P. + such (a/an) + adj. + n. اسم

- ex. - She is the tallest girl I have ever seen.
- I have never seen such a tall girl.

١. للخط اسلخدم (inf + ing) بدلًا من (to + inf) والعكس

Subject + am / is / are + still + (inf + ing) ... yet.
 Subject + haven't / hasn't + finished / stopped + (inf + ing) ... yet.
 ex. - He ~~isn't~~ doing homework. = He **hasn't finished** doing homework yet.
 = It **hasn't stopped** raining yet.
 - It is still raining.

٢. للخط المختلف بين (for) و (since) عند الاستخدم مع عدم تغيير الفعل

أ. عند التحول من (for) إلى (since) اطرح السعة من الوقت المحدد

ex. - He has lived in Aswan for 19 years.
 = He has lived in Aswan since 2019.

ب. عندما لا يمكن حساب السعة تستخدم الصيغة التالية:

It is + مدة زمنية + since + past simple
 ex. - She has stayed with her aunt for a long time.
 = It is a long time since she stayed with her aunt.
 ج. عند التحول من (since) إلى (for) احسب السعة منذ بداية الحدث وحتى الوقت الحاضر:
 ex. - He has waited here since seven o'clock. It is nine now.
 = He has waited here for two hours.
 د. لاحظ التحول من (since) إلى (for) في الصيغة التالية:

It is + مدة زمنية + since + past simple
 = Subject + haven't / hasn't + P.P. + for + مدة زمنية
 ex. - It is five years since I (last) saw Ali.
 = I haven't seen Ali for five years.

هـ. لاحظ استخدام (ago) بدلًا من (since / for) والعكس:

Subject + have / has + P.P. + since / for
 Subject + started / began + (to + inf.) / (inf + ing) + مدة زمنية + ago
 ex. - The boys have played football for two hours.
 = The boys started playing (to play) football two hours ago.
 - He has worked in this hospital since 2010.
 = He began working (to work) in this hospital twelve years ago.

و لاحظ الصيغة التالية:

Subject + haven't / hasn't + P.P. + since + past simple
 = Subject + last + S.C. + in / on / at + تصريف ثان
 = The last time + Subject + S.C. + was + in / on / at + تصريف ثان
 ex. - She hasn't gone shopping since Monday.
 = She last went shopping on Monday.
 = The last time she went shopping was on Monday.

٤. Present Perfect Simple Vs. Past Simple

الفرق في الاستخدام بين المضارع التام والماضى البسيط

المضارع التام Present Perfect	الماضي البسيط Past Simple
١. حدث تم في وقت غير معروف في الماضي: - Someone has broken the window.	١. حدث تم في وقت محدد في الماضي: - Someone broke the window yesterday.
٢. حدث تم في وقت لم ينتهي بعد: - I have received three emails today.	٢. حدث تم في وقت انتهى: - I received three emails last Monday.
٣. حدث تم في الماضي وله أثر على الحاضر: - I have learnt to drive. Now, I can drive my father's car.	٣. حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي: I learnt to drive. Mr Khalid was my driving teacher.
٤. حدث قابل للتكرار أو التعديل: - Salah has scored more than 100 goals in the Premier League. (صلاح لا يزال حياً ويلعب كرة القدم وقد يحرز المزيد من الأهداف)	٤. حدث غير قابل للتكرار أو التعديل: - Naguib Mahfouz wrote a lot of successful novels. (نجيب محفوظ توفي ولا يمكنه أن يكتب المزيد)
٥. حدث أو حالة لازالت موجودة: - I have lived in Aswan since 2002. (وما يزال أعيش هنا)	٥. حدث أو حالة لم تعد موجودة: - I lived in Aswan in 2002. (لم أعد أعيش هناك)

Mini Test 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father is angry because I the door open.
 a. leaves b. left c. have left d. was left

2. My father is angry. I the door open last night.
a. leaves b. left c. have left d. was left
3. He three coffees so far today.
a. drank b. drinks c. had drunk d. has drunk
4. He three coffees yesterday.
a. drank b. drinks c. had drunk d. has drunk
5. I to swim. Now, I swim as well as a swimming champion.
a. learn b. learnt c. have learnt d. was learnt
6. I to swim. That was during the summer holiday.
a. learn b. learnt c. have learnt d. was learnt
7. I a running champion as a child. Now, I can hardly walk.
a. was b. had been c. am being d. have been
8. I a running champion. I will represent Egypt in the following Olympics.
a. was b. had been c. am being d. have been

General Exercise On Language **Apply**

• التمرينات التالية قرئها بشكل متدرج تصاعدي حسب تصيغ صيغة صوم

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I haven't met him he moved to a new house. (الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. for b. yet c. ago d. since
2. Merna has been on holiday the last two weeks. (الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. just b. since c. yet d. for
3. I have lived in Alexandria 2005. (الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. in b. for c. since d. ago
4. They have seen such a wonderful show. (الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. ever b. never c. since d. yet
5. Aya her homework recently. (الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. didn't finish b. have finished c. has finished d. will finish

6. I haven't seen my cousin the last time we met in Cairo.

(الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)

when b. ago c. for d. since

7. The little boy is crying because he his leg. (الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. is broken b. had broken c. was breaking d. has broken

8. We haven't seen her since she to Paris. (الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. went b. goes c. has gone d. had gone

9. During the last ten years, giant projects out all over Egypt. (الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. were being carried b. are carried c. carried d. have been carried

10. Salim two coffees so far. (الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. drank b. has drunk c. drinks d. was drinking

11. Have you ever to London? - Yes, I went there last year. (الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. went b. been c. gone d. arrived

12. Have you sent all the invitations ? You have done a great job! (الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. yet b. already c. just d. ever

13. He couldn't answer the phone he was sleeping. (الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. so b. though c. before d. since

14. At the age of five, I to swim. (الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. learned b. learn c. have learnt d. was learnt

15. Sara hasn't visited Aswan 2 years ago. (الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. so far b. since c. for d. over the ages

16. I was very tired, I didn't finish studying. (الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. During b. While c. Since d. Because of

• تذكر القاعدة جيدًا واستخدم التمرينات الشاملة ضمن الدرسين الثالث والرابع.

ALTfWok.com موقع التفوق

Vocabulary

Part 1

• لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية جيداً وإدراجها في قائمة المفردات الخاصة في المصنفين

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

association (n)	جمعية - اتحاد	plan(ned) (n-v)	خطة - يخطط
community(n)	مجتمع - جماعة	voluntary work	عمل تطوعي
culture	ثقافة	youth (n)	الشباب
food bank	بنك الطعام	youth association	جمعية شبابية

• من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات الخاصة بالمصنفين

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

later (adv)	أخيراً / لاحقاً	later (adv)	فيما بعد
nowhere (adv)	في أي مكان	nowhere (adv)	في أي مكان
brashness(ed) (v)	بشر الفكر	opportunity(n)	فرصة
contact (ed) (v)	يجمع - يضر	pay - paid (v)	يدفع مال
common (adj)	عام - مشترك - شائع	solution(n)	حل
crescent (n)	قمر	solve (d) (v)	يحل
disabled (adj)	مُعاق	stepfather (n)	زوج الأم
dreamer (n)	حالم	steps (n)	خطوات
ending (v)	نهاية - خاتمة	structure(n)	تركيب - بناء
experience (d) (v)	تجربة - يمر بتجربة	surprise(d) (n - v)	مفاجأة / دهشة - يفاجئ
experiences (n)	خبرات / تجارب حياتية	tip (n)	نصيحة
grow - grew - grows (v)	يكبر - يتوسع	trick(ed) (n - v)	خدعة - يخدع
improved (v)	يحسن - يتحسن	trust (ed) (n - v)	ثقة - يثق بـ
include (d) (v)	يشمل / يتضمن - يصن		

3 Definitions تعريفات

• تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلم المستهدفة - هام جداً

Memorise	Understand
culture	ثقافة
food bank	بنك الطعام
voluntary work	عمل تطوعي
youth association	جمعية شبابية
	the beliefs and traditions of a group of people
	a place where people collect food to give to others
	a job that people do for no money
	a group of young people who do things together

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Key vocabulary

- work is what people do for no money.
a. Culture b. Hard c. Voluntary d. Bank
- is the age of activity and livelihood.
a. Old age b. Youth c. Babyhood d. Womanhood
- The teachers' play a great role in society.
a. city b. town c. community d. village
- People in Upper Egypt have a different from that of Lower Egypt.
a. culture b. cultural c. cultured d. culturally
- A youth is a group of young people who do things together.
a. hostel b. hotel c. camp d. association
- The Egyptian plays an important role in feeding poor families.
a. Restaurant b. Kitchen c. Food Bank d. Shop
- We've to spend the weekend in the countryside.
a. indebted b. planned c. earned d. owed

2 Important Vocabulary

- Your shoes will be repaired and ready for you to in five minutes.

a. collect b. walk c. buy d. mend

9. A: Can you tell me about the of the essay?
B: Introduction, body and conclusion.
a. situation b. twins c. structure d. ending
10. The thief stealing my car and selling it for only ten thousand pounds.
a. admitted b. arranged c. included d. stopped
11. He succeeded in back all his debts.
a. repairing b. respecting c. turning d. paying
12. I don't like films that have a sad ending.
a. ends b. an end c. ended
13. Volunteers help the needy their problems.
a. cause b. do c. make d. solve
14. My teacher gave me some useful on how to improve my English.
a. sorts b. kinds c. tips d. types
15. It was not funny playing a on the poor old man. It was impolite.
a. rule b. rule c. goal d. trick
16. I was born and up in a small village.
a. grew b. got c. went d. looked
17. Modern technology has our lives.
a. suggested b. improved c. trusted d. worked
18. Follow these and you will learn how to do the experiment.
a. masters b. mistakes c. repairs d. steps
19. Child labour is a/an against childhood.
a. crime b. opinion c. planning d. master
20. Ayman and I have some interests in We both like reading and fishing.
a. common b. difference c. success d. expert
21. are fully grown-people.
a. Children b. Old people c. Teenagers d. Adults
22. people need more interest and care.
a. Able b. Disabled c. Criminal d. Plump
23. I asked you to do this difficult job because I you.
a. trust b. change c. hurt d. revise
24. The Egyptian Red helps people in difficult situations.
a. Tape b. Association c. Present d. Crescent

3 Definitions

25. is the beliefs and traditions of a group of people.
a. Religion b. Culture c. Law d. Habits
26. A is a place where people collect food to give to others.
a. restaurant b. kitchen c. food bank d. shop
27. work means a job that people do for no money.
a. Voluntary b. Team c. Group d. Paid

Part II Vocabulary Study

تدرب على هذه الكلمات مع طريق استذكر هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

1.4 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	a job يقوم بعمل	make	a difference يخلق فرقاً / يصنع الفارق
	voluntary work يقوم بعمل تطوعي		money يكسب مال - يجمع ثروة
	something to help يفعل شيء - لمساعدة		brief notes يهون ملاحظات قصيرة
follow	the steps يتبع الخطوات	play	a suggestion يقدم اقتراح
get	the main idea يفهم الفكرة الرئيسية		a trick on يخدع
write	a summary يكتب تلخيصاً		a role يلعب دوراً
have	a happy ending ذو نهاية سعيدة	solve	a problem يحل مشكلة
	a suggestion لديه اقتراح	go	travelling يذهب في رحلة
	common interests لديهم اهتمامات مشتركة		wrong يتعطل
	nowhere to live ليس لديه مكان يعيش فيه		

UNIT 3

2. Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
admit	اعترف
adult	نضج - بالغ - راشد
common	عام - مشترك - شائع
miserable	حزين - بائس
voluntary	عمل تطوعي
confess	
mature, grown up	
widespread, usual, ordinary, customary	
unhappy, depressed	
unpaid	

3. Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
admit	deny, conceal, renounce
common	unusual, rare
trust	doubt, disbelieve
voluntary	compulsory, obligatory, paid
اعترف	إنكار / إخفاء / انكار
شائع - مشترك - شائع	نادر / نادر
ثقة - يثق - يثق	يشك / لا يصدق
عمل تطوعي	إجباري / مدفوع

4. Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

association	
associate (v)	- Students and teachers associate El-Moasser with high quality.
association (n)	- I joined a youth association last summer.
association (n)	- There is a clear association between El-Moasser and high quality.
associated (adj)	- El-Moasser is associated with high quality.
مُصاحِب - يترافق	
جمعية / اتحاد	
ترافق - ارتباط	
مُصاحِب - مترافق	

culture	
culture (n)	- It is important to respect other peoples' cultures.
culture (n)	- Culture is the main producer of food.
cultural (adj)	- It is important to respect cultural differences.
cultured (adj)	- Mr Ali is a cultured man.
culturally (adv)	- The Egyptian history is culturally important.
الثقافة	
الزراعة	
ثقافي	
مُثَقَّف	
ثقافي	

5. Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

an idea for	فكرة لـ	in my opinion	من وجهة نظري
at the end of	في نهاية	It's a good idea to	لها فكرة جيدة أن
for no money	مجاناً	It's important to	من المهم أن
free spare time	وقت فراغ	key information	المعلومات الرئيسية
health problem	مشكلة صحية	why don't you	لماذا لا
how about	ما رأيك في	young people	الشباب

6. Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

give ... back to	يرد ... لـ	stop ... from	يمنع ... عن
grow up	يكبر - يتخرج	talk about	تحدث عن
happen to	يحدث لـ	think of	تفكر في
put ... into	يضع ... بداخل	work for	يعمل لـ
return to	يعود إلى	work in	يعمل في
run away	يهرب	work with	يعمل مع / في
send ... away	يطرد	write down	تسجل - تكتب

7. Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

at the age of / in the age of	
at the age of	في سن / في عمر
- I could swim at the age of nine.	
in the age of	في عصر
- In the age of Mohammed Ali, Egypt was a very large empire.	إمبراطورية
work - job	
work	عمل / مكان العمل (كلمة لا تُعد)
- He did much work in the office yesterday.	
- I go to work in my car.	
a work - works	عمل أدبي أو فني أو هندسي (كلمة تُعد)
- El-Kamak is a work by Naguib Mahfouz.	
a job - jobs	وظيفة - مهمة (كلمة تُعد)
- My first job was as a teacher. (Not: My first work)	
- I have finished all today's jobs.	

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

• MCQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- He did during holiday.
 - a. voluntary work
 - b. his opinion
 - c. a happy ending
 - d. exciting things
 - e. a suggestion
- She made during the lecture.
 - a. a job
 - b. a suggestion
 - c. a role
 - d. the law
 - e. brief notes
- If you work harder, you will more money.
 - a. earn
 - b. do
 - c. make
 - d. go
 - e. owe
- You can say that somebody played a
 - a. suggestion
 - b. trick
 - c. law
 - d. rule
 - e. role
- We listened carefully to Rodayna who a good suggestion.
 - a. did
 - b. had
 - c. became
 - d. made
 - e. played
- When something is common, this means it is
 - a. usual
 - b. unusual
 - c. uncommon
 - d. rare
 - e. widespread
- "He admitted making a mistake." Which of the following give opposite meanings to the verb 'admit' in this sentence?
 - a. Denied
 - b. Confessed
 - c. Concealed
 - d. Agreed
 - e. Told
- You can do your hobbies at your time.
 - a. busy
 - b. spare
 - c. congested
 - d. crowded
 - e. free
- Homeless children to live.
 - a. don't have anywhere
 - b. have everywhere
 - c. have somewhere
 - d. have nowhere
 - e. have a flat
- The traffic law didn't solve the problem.
 - a. good
 - b. bad
 - c. poor
 - d. rich
 - e. wealthy
- I asked him to back the money I had lent to him.
 - a. own
 - b. owe
 - c. give
 - d. take
 - e. pay
- In a charity, the poor are helped for
 - a. free
 - b. much money
 - c. some money
 - d. no money
 - e. good

• MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Generous people are always ready to voluntary work.

a. do b. make c. give d. take

- Our relation began to wrong when we met a bad situation.

a. do b. go c. make d. take

- It is not always easy to new friends nowadays.

a. do b. take c. make d. give

- My sister and I common interests.

a. play b. solve c. make d. have

- My wife's a big difference in my life.

a. played b. solved c. made d. had

- Everything will be OK if you the steps.

a. owe b. do c. break d. follow

- This problem must be as soon as possible.

a. lied b. solved c. made d. had

- "He admitted the mistake he'd made." The word 'admit' in this sentence can be replaced by

a. deny b. conceal c. confess d. a & b

- Voluntary is to as miserable is to happy.

a. paid b. unpaid c. expensive d. selfish

- He looks his old parents who really need help.

a. as b. after c. alike d. unlike

- She looks very weak and pale. She must have a problem.

a. wealth b. wealthy c. health d. healthy

- After the deliberate foul الخطأ المتعمد he had made, the referee sent him

a. away b. in c. on d. back

- Flu is usually with cold weather.

a. associate b. associates c. associated d. association

- She was a highly woman.

a. culture b. cultural c. cultured d. culturally

- Which of the following words can mean cultivation?

a. Community b. Section c. Merchant d. Culture

- I have several to do in the office today.

a. work b. works c. job d. jobs

Part III Reading & Listening

1. Reading Texts

1. A summary of David Copperfield (WB page 102)

David Copperfield grew up⁽¹⁾ with his mother and his stepfather, Mr Murdstone.

Then David's mother died⁽²⁾ and Mr Murdstone took him to live with Mr and Mrs Micawber. David had to leave⁽³⁾ school and work in a factory. Then Mr Micawber went to prison and David had nowhere⁽⁴⁾ to live.

Without⁽⁵⁾ a home to live in, David visited Aunt Betsey and she took him to live with her friend, Mr Wickfield. A man called Uriah Heep also lived with Mr Wickfield and his daughter,⁽⁷⁾ Agnes, but David didn't trust⁽⁸⁾ him.

Some time later⁽⁹⁾, Uriah Heep played a trick⁽¹⁰⁾ on Aunt Betsey and took her money and David worked hard to help her.

When David found Uriah Heep, he admitted⁽¹¹⁾ that he took Aunt Betsey's money and David made him give it back⁽¹²⁾ to her. Then David went travelling around Europe⁽¹³⁾.

When David returned⁽¹⁴⁾ to England, he married⁽¹⁵⁾ Agnes and he became a successful⁽¹⁶⁾ writer⁽¹⁷⁾.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يكبر
- (2) زوج الأم
- (3) يتوفى
- (4) لا مكان
- (5) بدون
- (6) ابتداء
- (7) يثق بـ
- (8) فيما بعد
- (9) وينتج
- (10) يتردّد / يعترف
- (11) يردّ
- (12) أوروبا
- (13) يعود
- (14) يتزوج
- (15) ناجح
- (16) كاتب

2. Three Egyptian teenagers

(WB page 103)

Tarek : In my opinion the Egyptian Food Bank⁽¹⁾ (EFB) is making the world a better place because it helps people who haven't got enough⁽²⁾ money for food, and it teaches all of us to think more.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) بنك الطعام
- (2) كافي

Samira : I have experienced⁽¹⁾ the work of Tomorrow's Dreamer⁽²⁾ Youth⁽³⁾ Association⁽⁴⁾.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) تجرب
- (2) عالم
- (3) شباب
- (4) جمعية

In my opinion, it shows⁽⁵⁾ young people that they can make a difference⁽⁶⁾, and it teaches them about other cultures⁽⁷⁾ and communities⁽⁸⁾. They are doing a great job⁽⁹⁾ by helping to educate⁽¹⁰⁾ a lot of young people.

- (5) توضح / تبين
- (6) تحدث فرقاً
- (7) ثقافات
- (8) مجتمعات
- (9) يقوم بعمل رائع
- (10) يعلم

Maher : The Egyptian Red Crescent⁽¹⁾ helps a lot of people every day. When there is a big health problem, we always see the doctors from the Red Crescent on TV. But they also work with communities to stop health problems⁽²⁾ from happening. One day, I want to do some voluntary work⁽³⁾ for them.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) الهلال الأحمر
- (2) مشاكل صحية
- (3) عمل تطوعي

2. Listening Texts

B. Let's talk about how to write (SB page 30)

a great short story⁽¹⁾. It's important to plan⁽²⁾ your story. It should have four parts. At the start, we find out when and where the story is happening and we meet the main characters⁽³⁾.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) قصة قصيرة
- (2) يخطط
- (3) الشخصيات الرئيسية
- (4) يفيد / يستفيد
- (5) مخطط

Don't spend too much time describing places and people - your characters need to do something from the start.

In the second part of the story, the main character has a problem or something goes wrong⁽⁴⁾. It's a good idea to have two or more problems. After that, the problem or problems are solved and everything is OK again. In this third part of the story, there should be a surprise for⁽⁵⁾ the reader. Finally, we find out what the characters do next, so, what happens to them when things are OK again.



General Exercise On Language

Apply

التدريبات التالية فورية بشكل متدرج تصاعدي حسب تصديق مدير اليوم

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. Manager: Hello! I can't find you in your office! Where are you?
Clerk: Sorry, sir. I to restaurant for lunch.
a. will go b. was going c. have been d. have gone
2. Amir lives in Canada, so I haven't seen him the age of ten.
a. for b. since c. already d. ever
3. Soha has never to go to hospital.
a. needed b. needs c. need d. needing
4. Nasser has lived in this house since he a child.
a. had been b. was c. will d. is
5. I only bought my new camera last week, but I 300 photos with it so far.
a. already take b. already took
c. have already taken d. already taking
6. Karim can't play football because he his leg.
a. broke b. has broken c. breaking d. had broken
7. Mona is in Cairo now. She to Alex.
a. has gone b. go c. has been d. goes
8. I for five hours every day last week.
a. has worked b. had worked c. worked d. have worked
9. you enjoyed your time at the museum?
a. Have b. Did c. Do d. Are
10. She has lived in London three years.
a. since b. ago c. for d. during
11. He to Cairo. I'll wait for him until he comes back.
a. goes b. has gone c. has been d. was going

12. Noha has cleaned her room. It looks nice now.
a. already b. yet c. never d. ever
13. We have lived in that house twenty years.
a. in b. ago c. for d. since
14. I haven't met him he moved to a new house.
a. yet b. since c. ago d. when
15. We in Cairo since 1993.
a. had living b. have lived c. lived d. are living
16. He come back home.
a. never b. has just c. already has d. just has
17. A: How long worked in Cairo? B: Since 2008.
a. has he b. he has c. had he d. he had
18. He there for ten years. He intends to retire next year.
a. 'd worked b. worked c. 's working d. 's worked
19. A: yourself today? B: Yes, I've had a great time.
a. Have you enjoyed b. Are you enjoying
c. Do you enjoy d. Had you enjoyed
20. I my exam. I am celebrating my success with my family.
a. 've passed b. 'd passed c. 'll pass d. am passing
21. I Brazil twice up till now.
a. was visited b. visited c. 've visited d. am visiting
22. a long time since I last played football.
a. For b. It's c. It has d. It'll be
23. Nothing interesting since I last saw him.
a. has happened b. happen c. have happened d. had happened
24. The writer his book yet.
a. didn't finish b. has finished c. hasn't finished d. isn't finished
25. Wahid and Mohammed friends all their lives. They are often together.
a. will be b. has been c. have been d. were
26. We each other since we were at school.
a. have been knowing b. have known
c. known d. had known
27. They in the garden for five hours.
a. have worked b. have been worked
c. work d. are working
28. It is since we met.
a. three weeks b. 1980 c. yesterday d. schooldays

29. What has happened to him this morning?
a. for b. ago c. since d. when
30. Mustafa has the club. He is on his way there.
a. been to b. been in c. gone to d. gone in
31. Mustafa has the club. He looks as if he has had a great time there.
a. been to b. been in c. gone to d. gone in
32. Mustafa has the club for three hours. I wonder when he will return home.
a. been to b. been in c. gone to d. gone in
33. I Brazil in 2014.
a. had been to b. have been in c. have been to d. went to
34. I last met him he moved to a new house.
a. yet b. for c. since d. when
35. My secretary three emails today. She will send the rest in a few minutes.
a. was sent b. has sent c. has been sent d. had sent
36. My grandfather ill over the last year. I hope he will get better soon.
a. has been b. had been c. was d. was being
37. Have you finished your homework ? You are very quick!
a. yet b. ever c. already d. just
38. I haven't been to Aswan since 2010. This means that
a. I have been in Aswan since 2010 b. I have never been to Aswan
c. I was in Aswan in 2010 d. I wasn't in Aswan in 2010
39. Ali and his family have never travelled since
a. he gets married b. he marries c. his marriage d. married
40. He's been on holiday the last two weeks.
a. while b. for c. when d. since
41. Now, Huda lives in extreme poverty فقر شديد because all the money she earned lost.
a. had been b. had c. has been d. had has been
42. Have you finished reading that novel ? That's amazing!
a. ever b. just c. already d. yet
43. Since you your homework, you won't be allowed to go out.
a. didn't do b. hadn't done c. haven't done d. had done

44. It has been the main concern اهتمام of parents to maintain a good future for their children.
a. never b. ago c. just d. always
45. I didn't feel that a thief entered the flat since I the match on TV.
a. watched b. had watched c. was watching d. have watched

2 Check your understanding

46. I'm in secondary one. I English for ten years.
a. am studying b. have studied c. studied d. had studied
47. This is my house. I here for three years.
a. have lived b. have been lived
c. had lived d. had been lived
48. That was my house. I there for three years.
a. have lived b. have been lived c. lived d. had been lived
49. He has just taken an aspirin. This means that
a. he has taken an aspirin a moment ago
b. he has never taken an aspirin
c. he has taken an aspirin for ages
d. he took an aspirin a moment ago
50. Yara has never eaten shrimps. This means
a. she doesn't eat shrimps
b. she had never eaten shrimps
c. she hasn't ever eaten shrimps
d. she wasn't ever eaten shrimps
51. I have lived here in this city for ten years. What does this sentence mean ?
a. I no longer live in this city.
b. I didn't live in this city.
c. I have always lived in this city.
d. I still live in this city.

Part I

Vocabulary

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات الرئيسية في قصة (Treasure Island) بالخاصة بالمغامرات اللغوية الموجودة في الوحدة وفوائدها من السطور والجزء المخصص لطبيب المثاقب.

تنويه

Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

أهم المفردات اللغوية في قصة (Treasure Island) كما يمكنكم النطق على نص القصة والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب.

تنويه

attack(ed) (n-v)	يهاجم - هجر	make me laugh	يجعلني أضحك
barrel(n)	برميل	mutiny(n)	تمرد / عصيان
crutch(n)	عكاز - زكوة	note(n)	ملاحظة - رسالة قصيرة
destination(n)	مقصد - وجهة السفر	of different sizes	ذو أحجام مختلفة
empty(ied) (adj-v)	فارغ - مُرَقَّع	parrot(n)	بغا -
finger(n)	إصبع اليد	patient (adj-n)	صبور - مريض
frightened(adj)	خائف	pay - paid(for)(v)	يدفع لمن
gang(n)	عصابة	pirate(n)	قرصان
harbour(n)	مرفأ - مرسى	save(d)(v)	يُقيِّد - يُدخِر
helper(n)	مُساعد	secret (n-adj)	سر - سري

Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In the film, there is a on a ship and the captain has to hide.

- a. mutiny b. stormy c. tiny d. barrel

(القاصصة الجديدة ٢٠٢٢)

2. A is a large container made of wood or metal.

- a. tin b. jug c. jar d. barrel

(قرب ظرف ٢٠٢٢)

3. A/An is a brightly coloured bird which can learn to speak.

- a. crew b. owl c. eagle d. parrot

4. A is a special stick which you put under your arm to help you walk when you have hurt your leg.

- a. gun b. sail c. crutch d. wheel

5. A is a sailor who attacks ships and steals from them.

- a. captain b. pirate c. crew d. lifeguard

6. A/An is an area of water next to the land where ships can stay safely.

- a. pool b. harbour c. airport d. river

7. A is a group of people that causes trouble.

- a. gang b. team c. community d. nursery

8. A/An is an act of violence that intended to hurt a person or damage a place.

- a. element b. lack c. attack d. mutiny

9. A is known about by only a few people and kept from others.

- a. journey b. secret c. harbour d. barrel

10. means able to wait calmly for a long time.

- a. Patient b. Impatient c. Descent d. Elegant



Grammatical Hints

Part II

Extreme adjectives

الصفات القوية

1 هي صفات ذات معنى قوي مثل :

ex - amazing	رائع / مُبْعِل	terrible	رعب / فظيع
- gigantic	ضخم	- furious	ساخط
- ancient	عتيق / قديم جداً	- excellent	ممتاز
- miserable	باتس		

2 لا تستخدم (very / fairly) قبل الصفات القوية :

- fairly miserable (X)

ex. - very amazing (X)

3 لاحظ أن :

صفة عادية + very = صفة قوية

ex. - ancient = very old

- miserable = very unhappy

amazing = very good

4 تستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات القوية

تماماً completely - كلياً utterly / entirely - بشكل مطلق absolutely

ex. - This engine is absolutely excellent. - The temple is utterly ancient.

- كل / لكل a / an

5 تستخدم (a / an) بمعنى (كل) قبل الكلمات الزمنية :

ex. - We go to school five days a week. - This car goes at 130 km an hour.

6 تستخدم (a / an) بمعنى (كل) قبل أسماء المقاييس والوزن :

ex. - The apples are 25 pounds a kilo.

- صفة the + adj.

عند استخدام (the) قبل الصفة التي ليس بعدها موصوف فإنها تتحول لإسم جمع وتأخذ فعل جمع.

الصفة + اسم جمع = the + adj.

- Poor people are not able to buy everything they need.

= The poor are not able to buy everything they need. (Not: The poor is)

- اسم إنسان the

عند استخدام (the) قبل اسم إنسان مضافاً له (s) فإن ذلك يدل على الأسرة كلها وتأخذ فعل جمع

- The Hassans were busy last week. (Not: The Hassans is)

the police

كلمة (police) جمع دائماً وتأخذ فعل جمع :

ex. - The police have arrested some criminals.

one - ones

تستخدم كلمة (one - ones) ككلمات فاعل أو مفعول :

ex. - One should work hard to succeed. (One = A person / A student ...)

- I don't need this tablet. I want the black one. (one = tablet)

- Some children learned a skill when they worked. They were the lucky ones. (ones = children who learned a skill)

- These are not my books. Mine are the ones on the table. (ones = books)

have + agent + inf. / (inf. + ing)

للحظ استخدام صيغة المفعول للجهل (causative) عند قيام الفاعل بتكليف غيره بالقيام بالفعل :

have + obj. + مفعول + inf.

get + obj. + مفعول + to + inf.

have / get + obj. + مفعول + (inf. + ing)

ex. - Factories liked to have children work for them.

- Factories liked to get children to work for them.

- Factories liked to have / get children working for them.

- make + obj. + inf. / adj -

للحظ استخدام الفعل (make) في التصيغ التالية بمعنى (يجعل) :

Subj. + فاعل + make + obj. + مفعول + adj. + صفة

= obj. + مفعول + be + made + adj. + صفة

ex. - Sama's birth made them happy. = They were made happy by Sama's birth.

Subj. + فاعل + make + obj. + مفعول + inf.

= obj. + مفعول + be + made + to + inf.

ex. - I make Ahmed water the flowers. = Ahmed is made to water the flowers.

make + adj. + صفة + job + وظيفة

ex. - A sportsman makes a good police officer.

Nouns ending in (i / to)

تحويل المفرد إلى جمع في المفرد إلى جمع في الجمع لبعض الكلمات - جمع المفرد المفرد

half	نصف	halves
knife	سكين	knives
leaf	ورقة	leaves
life	حياة	lives
thief	سارق	thieves
wife	زوجة	wives
wolf	ذئب	wolves
dwarf	قزم	dwarves / dwarfs
scarf	يشيرت / عرصة	scarves / scarfs
calf	صغير البقر (عجل)	calves

وهذه استثناءات لهذه القاعدة مثل :

ex. - belief - اعتقاد - beliefs

- safe - آمن - safes

- roof - سقف - roofs

- gulf - خليج - gulfs

- chief - رئيس - chiefs

- brief - مختصر - briefs

Making suggestions

Let's + inf. مع يا

ex. - Let's go to the cinema.

We / You could + inf. يمكننا / يمكنك أن

ex. - We / You could go to the cinema.

I suggest + (inf. + ing) أقترح

ex. - I suggest going to the cinema.

I suggest + (that) + subj. + inf. / (should + inf.) أقترح أن

ex. - I suggest (that) we / you go to the cinema.

What / How about + (inf. + ing) ما رأيك في ... ؟

ex. - What / How about going to the cinema?

Why don't we / you + inf. لماذا لا ... ؟

ex. - Why don't we / you go to the cinema?

On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- ... are a small family.
a Ragab b Ragab's c Ragabs d The Ragabs
- The poor man is miserable.
a fairly b absolutely c absolute d fair
- I suggest the Plants' Island in Aswan.
a visit b visiting c to visit d visited
- Your success has us happy.
a made b caused c let d allowed
- The police looking for some escaping criminals.
a is b has c are d have
- This man is He is really unhappy.
a miserably b not miserable c miserable d miser
- Why don't you a dentist?
a to see b seeing c saw d see
- Rodayna has two aunts. is a teacher and the other is a doctor.
a Another b One c Ones d Other
- I suggest Sama to the park with us.
a go b went c has gone d was going
- This baby girl is easily made
a laugh b to laugh c laughing d laughs
- The disabled more care and interest.
a needs b has needed c need d were needed
- How about the match in the stadium?
a to watch b watch c watching d to watching
- We have a gardener after the trees in our garden.
a looks b to look c looked d look
- I go to the park once week.
a in b a c at d on

UNIT 3

- 15 A: What do you suggest for the weekend?
B: We ^{do some voluntary work.} ^{didn't} ^{don't} ^{had to} ^{could}
- 16 The old man made me ^{his bag} ^{to carry} ^{carry} ^{carried}
- 17 The poor never ^{enough money} ^{has} ^{are} ^{is}
- 18 An accountant ^{a good manager.} ^{does} ^{scores} ^{gives}
- 19 They had a mechanic ^{their car engine} ^{to check} ^{to checking} ^{checks} ^{check}
- 20 My mobile rings at least three times ^{hour.} ^{at} ^{all}

Part III Language Skills

1 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

تأليف للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المصبرات

- عندما يُطلب منك الكتابة عن قصة ، يمكنك التركيز على النقاط التالية :
- Which story have you chosen? ما القصة التي قمت باختيارها ؟
 - Who is the main character in the story? What is he/she like? من هي الشخصية الرئيسية في القصة ؟ كيف يبدو / تبدو ؟
 - Where does he / she live? What is his /her life like? أين تقيم تلك الشخصية ؟ وكيف هي حياته / حياتها ؟
 - Who are the other characters? How did they know the main character? من هي الشخصيات الأخرى ؟ كيف عرفوا الشخصية الأساسية ؟
 - How does the story start? What happens first? What happens next? And then? كيف تبدأ القصة ؟ ماذا يحدث أولاً ؟ ماذا يحدث بعد ذلك ؟
 - What is the moral of the story? ما هو الدرس الأخلاقي في القصة ؟

Write an essay of about 150 words about a story you have read :

The Old Man and the Sea

Reading is one of my favourite hobbies. In fact, I find reading both interesting and useful. I like reading novels. In this essay I'm going to write about a great novel called "The Old Man and the Sea".

The novel was written by Ernest Hemingway. It is about an old fisherman called Santiago. This fisherman was very poor. He wanted to catch a big fish to sell it for a lot of money.

Santiago had to sail far away into the sea. He was alone in his boat. The rod caught a very big marlin. The marlin was bigger than the boat itself. It was impossible for Santiago to pull the fish into the boat.

Santiago waited until the fish was tired and pulled it behind the boat. Unfortunately, some sharks attacked the marlin and ate it. When Santiago reached the beach, the marlin was just a skeleton. Santiago was very tired. He went home and slept.

I like this story because it has a moral. One should be patient. We should have determination. Despite being old and weak, Santiago tried and didn't give up. We also learn that people need cooperation. To succeed in life, you need to work with others.

2 Translation الترجمة

تأليف للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المصبرات

1 Translate into Arabic :

- After Shakespeare, Charles Dickens is probably the most famous writer in the English literature. The former wrote great poems and the latter was the author of fabulous novels.
- Reading works of art like novels, plays and poems is very beneficial. It widens our horizons and gives us useful experience.
- Success is not something that occurs out of the blue. To be successful, you must work hard to a plan.

2 Translate into English:

- 1- عليك أن تعمل بكل جد لكي تنجح في الوصول لهدفك في الحياة، فاحرص الجميع على حد سواء من المثابرة والعمل الطموح.
- 2- من الأفضل أن تقول الصدق في كل المواقف وإن أغضب الآخرين، فالكذب من الصفات السيئة غير المقبولة دينياً أو اجتماعياً.
- 3- إن أطفال الشوارع قضية موقرة قد تعجز في أي وقت، وعلى كل فرد أن يحس بما يصح من أجل حل هذه المشكلة الخطيرة.

Vocabulary related to translation tests

author	مصنف	perseverance	المثابرة
beneficial	مفيد	position	موقع
experience	خبرة	religiously	دينياً
explode	تفجر	socially	اجتماعياً
fabulous	رائع	success	النجاح
homeless	شرد	the former	الأول
horizon	أفق	the latter	الأخر
individual	فرد	timed bomb	قنبلة موقرة
literature	آداب	unacceptable	غير مقبول
may	قد	widen	يوسع
out of the blue	لغواً		

Part IV Just for Advanced level

للمتقدمين فقط

1 Key Vocabulary for Advanced level

هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب المتقدمين فقط

life

- life - lives (n) حياة - حيوات
 - My goal in life is to be a successful doctor.
 - Prices have an effect on people's lives.
- live (d) (v) يعيش / يحيا - يتنكب
 - I think people who lived in the past were happier.
 - Mohammed lives in Aswan.

- alive (adj) حي / علي قيد الحياة (لا تأتي قبل الموصوف)
 - This fish is alive. (Not: This is an alive fish)
- live = living (adj) متب = dead = حي / علي قيد الحياة (قبل الموصوف فقط)
 - People don't eat live animals. (Not: ... animals that are live)
- live (adj) مسجل prerecorded = مباشر / علي الهواء مباشرة
 - We all prefer watching live matches on TV.
- lively (adj) مليء بالحياة والنشاط
 - Sama is a lively child.
- livelihood (adj) مصدر دخل - مصدر رزق
 - Farming is the source of livelihood in villages.

association

- association (n) إتحاد / شراكة / نقابة
 - This youth association helps poor people.
- associate (n) = colleague زميل عمل / شريك
 - You need to work with your associates to finish the report.
- in association with مصاحبة / بالتزامن مع
 - The green colour of trees usually comes in association with spring.
- associate (d) (v) يلازم / يصاحب / يأتي مع
 - Bad cough associates smoking.
- associate(d) ... with (v) مرتبط بين ... و ...
 - People usually associate high price with quality.
- be + associated with + شخص / شيء
 - Overweight is associated with health problems.
- associate with + شخص يلازم / يرافق / يصاحب
 - Don't associate with bad friends.

culture

- culture (n) ثقافة
 - The culture of Arab people is different from European culture.
- culture (n) حضارة
 - We are all proud of ancient Egyptian culture.
- culture = cultivation (n) الزراعة
 - Rice culture needs a lot of water.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والتعابير اللغوية التالية:
- western culture الثقافة الغربية
 - local culture الثقافة المحلية
 - national culture الثقافة الوطنية
 - common / dominant culture الثقافة السائدة
 - culture shock صدمة ثقافية

- ثقافي
- cultural (adj)
 - There are cultural differences between countries

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:
- cultural heritage الموروث الثقافي
 - multicultural society مجتمع متعدد الثقافات

- ثقافت
- cultured = cultivated (adj)
 - Mr Nasser is a cultured person.

debt

- دين
- debt (n)
 - He found a second job to pay back his debts.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والتعابير اللغوية التالية:
- be in debt to
 - The old man can't retire because he is in debt.
 - He was in debt to the bank.

- عليه ديون كثيرة
- be + heavily / deeply + in debt
 - The old man can't retire because he is heavily in debt.

- يصبح مديناً
- get / fall / run into debt
 - The old man can't retire because he got / fell / ran into debt.

- مدين بالشكر أو الامتنان
- owe debt of gratitude / thanks
 - I owe a debt of gratitude to my parents.

- لاحظ المتلازمات اللغوية التالية:
- have a debt عليه دين
 - pay off debts يسدّد الديون
 - clear the debts يسدّد كل الديون
 - service a debt يسدّد فوائد الديون
 - write off / cancel a debt يتنازل عن الديون
 - a heavy debt دين كبير

- مدين / غارم
- indebted (to) (adj)
 - He is indebted to a car company.

earn

- يكسب مال مقابل عمل
- earn (ed) (v)
 - Not many farmers earn a lot of money.

- ربح / يحقق أرباح
- earn (ed) (v)
 - This book earned two million dollars.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والتعابير اللغوية التالية:
- earn (respect / a reputation ...)
 - He has earned the respect of all his friends.

- يكسب رزقه من / مصدر رزقه هو
- earn a living
 - He earns a living by selling fruit and vegetables.

- ولاحظ أيضاً:
- earn good money يكسب الكثير من المال
 - earn a fortune يكسب ثروة

- كاسب / ذو أمر / مصدر دخل
- earner (n)
 - My father is the only earner in our family.
 - This shop is our chief earner.

- دخل / ربح (دائماً جمع)
- earnings (n)
 - His earnings are not enough for his family.

experience

- تجربة حياتية / موقف (كلمة تُعد)
- experience (of / with) (n)
 - I learned a lot from my childhood experiences.

- الخبرة (كلمة لا تُعد)
- experience (of / in / with) (n)
 - Mr Ashraf has a lot of experience in teaching.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والتعابير اللغوية التالية:
- have experience لديه خبرة
 - get / gain experience يكتسب خبرة
 - lack experience تنقصه الخبرة
 - past / previous experience خبرة سابقة

- يسر بتجربة - يتأثر بموقف / مشكلة - يُتَجَرَّب
- experience (d) (v)
 - People should experience things to learn from them.

- عديم الخبرة / غير مُتَجَرَّب ≠ مُتَحَدِّث / ذو خبرة
- experienced (in) (adj)
 - Ashraf is an experienced teacher.

merchant

- تاجر (شخص / شركة)
- merchant (n)
 - He makes a lot of money as a merchant.

- بضائع - سلع
- merchandise (n)
 - His stores are full of high-quality merchandise.

miserable

- بائس / تيمس / شقي
- miserable = very unhappy (adj)
 - She has lost her job and family. She looks miserable.

- منهزل / سي - جداً (قبل الاسم فقط)
- miserable = very little / very bad (adj)
 - His miserable income isn't enough for his family.
 - I was angry because of my team's miserable performance.

UNIT 3

• misery (n)

- You don't know the misery of war and poverty. الفقر والحرب / بؤس / معاناة

• miser (n)

- I'm sure he won't donate any money. He is a miser. بخل

owe

• owe (d) + شخص + مبلغ مالي

- Omar owes Ali ten pounds. = Omar needs to pay ten pounds to Ali. يدين لـ ...

• owe (d) + شخص + to + مبلغ مالي

- Omar owes ten pounds to Ali. يدين لـ ...

• owe (d) + شخص + for + شيء

- You owe me for the drink. يدين لـ ... مقابل ...

لاحظ التعبيرات والملاحظات للنقطة الثانية

owe + شخص + a debt

- We owe our parents a debt. يدين بالفضل لـ

owe everything (it all) to + شخص

- I owe everything to my family. يدين بكل شيء لـ

owe + شخص + a lot / a great deal

- She owes her mother a great deal. يدين لـ ... بالكثير من الفضل

prison

• prison (n)

- Prison is the right place for criminals. (Not: The prison ...)

لاحظ عدم استخدام (the) قبل كلمة prison، عند الحديث عنه كمكان لعقاب المجرمين كـ: في المثال السابق، لكن يمكن استخدام (the) في أي سياق آخر

- Visitors to the prison wait here.

لاحظ التعبيرات والملاحظات للنقطة الثانية

- go to prison

- put ... in prison

- be released from prison

- let ... out of prison

- get out of prison

- a prison sentence (term)

• prisoner (n)

- In this prison, there is a library for prisoners who like reading. سجين

• imprisonment (n)

- No one has seen him since his imprisonment. عقوبة الحبس - مدة الحبس

• imprisoned (v)

- He was imprisoned for selling drugs. المخابرات

يحبس / يسجن - يقيد حرية

youth

youth (n)

- I was very fit in my youth.

مرحلة الشباب (لا تُعد)

youth (n)

- The youth of Egypt are ready to help their country. الشباب بوجه عام (اسم الجمع)

youth - youths (n)

- A group of youths were arrested for troublemaking last week. شباب - شباب (تُعد)

2: Prefixes بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
dis-	تكوين العكس	disabled مُعاق
mis-	تعطي معنى بطريقة خاطئة	mistake خطأ - يخطئ misunderstand يُسيء فهم misspell يتفهم بطريقة خاطئة
re-	يُعيد	review يُراجع rewrite يُعيد كتابة
step-	أحد الأقارب (نتيجة الزواج من أحد الوالدين)	stepfather روح الأم stepmother زوجة الأب stepfamily أسرة روح الأم أو زوجة الأب

3: Suffixes ناهية

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
-able	تكوين صفة	miserable تعبس - يائس
-er	تكوين اسم فاعل	dreamer حالم
-ful	تكوين صفة	successful ناجح
-ing	تكوين صفة / اسم	ending (n) نهاية amazing (adj) متفاجئ
-ly	تكوين ظرف	exactly تماماً - بالتحديد
-al	تكوين صفة / اسم	criminal مجرم - إجرامي factual (adj) واقعي - متعلق بالحقائق arrival (n) وصول refusal (n) رفض

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تدريبات التتبع التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The police his sudden fortune with the bank robbery.
a. paid b. mistook c. planned d. associated
- Fishing is the only source of for people living here.
a. community b. experience c. misery d. livelihood
- animals are kept on farms.
a. Alive b. Live c. Life d. Lives
- Egypt was famous for cotton
a. culture b. association c. capture d. section
- There was a between Egypt and high-quality cotton.
a. culture b. association c. opportunity d. section
- I a feeling of nausea when I am on a boat.
a. pay b. brainstorm c. feel d. experience
- Being very old and not able to walk, he feels in his house.
a. joked b. imprisoned c. lived d. reviewed
- This cream will renew the of your skin.
a. youth b. culture c. crescent d. beliefs
- He applied for as a tour guide in a tourist company.
a. work b. a work c. job d. a job
- Don't buy goods that a trademark.
a. haven't b. hasn't c. don't have d. a & c

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	- في إطار معنى الجملة فإن كلمة (associated) بمعنى ارتبطا هي الوحيدة التي تتفق مع السياق خاصة في وجود حرف الجر (with)
2.	d	- كلمة (livelihood) تعني (مصدر دخل) هي التي تعطي معنى مقيد في سياق الجملة، فصيد السمك ليس المصدر الوحيد للبؤس (misery) ولا الخبرة (experience) ولا المجتمع (community)
3.	b	- لا يمكن استخدام الصفة (alive) قبل الاسم الموصوف - لا يمكن استخدام (life) كصفة قبل كلمة (animals) فهي ستعطي معنى (حيوانات الحياة) وهو ما لا يتفق مع سياق الجملة - لا يمكن استخدام (lives) كصفة قبل كلمة (animals) لأنها اسم جمع كما أنها ستعطي معنى (حيوانات الحياة) وهو ما لا يتفق مع سياق الجملة

4.	a	- كلمة (culture) بمعنى (أزاعة) هي الوحيدة التي تعطي معنى منطقي في سياق الجملة
5.	b	- كلمة (association) بمعنى (الارتباط) هي الوحيدة التي تعطي معنى منطقي في سياق الجملة
6.	d	- الفصل (experience) بمعنى (يشعر به / يعايش) هو الوحيد الذي يعطي معنى منطقي في سياق الجملة
7.	b	- الصفة (imprisoned) بمعنى (محبوس) هي الوحيدة التي تصف إحساس رجل عجز لا يستطيع السير
8.	a	- لا يمكن استخدام الاسم (culture) لأنه لا يعطي معنى في هذا السياق - لا يمكن استخدام (crescent) التي تعني (هلال) ولا كلمة (beliefs) التي تعني (معتقدات) في سياق هذه الجملة
9.	d	- لا يمكن استخدام (work / a work) لترصيف (a tour guide) لأنها وظيفة محددة
10.	d	- لا يمكن استخدام (job) بدون (a) لأنها اسم مفرد معلوم - لا يمكن استخدام (hasn't) مع الاسم الجمع (goods)

Advanced Exercise on Language

تدريبات التتبع التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I injured my knee and I haven't played football
a. already b. never c. for d. since
- We have lived here fall.
a. yet b. already c. since d. for
- They for ten years when I met them. It was in Paris in 2016.
a. married b. had been married
c. have married d. have been married
- This is the first time I have ever travelled alone. I mean to say that
a. I'm travelling alone for the first time.
b. I have ever travelled alone.
c. I haven't never travelled alone.
d. I travelled alone only once.
- Omar is the cleverest student I have ever seen. This means that
a. I have seen many clever students like Omar
b. I have seen many students as clever as Omar
c. It is the first time for me to see a student who has this degree of cleverness
d. Omar is not as clever as the students I have ever seen

6. Nouran hasn't finished doing her homework yet. That means
 a. Nouran didn't start doing her homework
 b. Nouran is going to start doing her homework
 c. Nouran is still doing her homework
 d. Nouran finished doing her homework
7. It is still raining. I mean to say that
 a. it has rained
 b. it was raining
 c. it has stopped raining
 d. it hasn't stopped raining yet
8. It's a month since I last went for a walk. This means
 a. I have gone for a walk for a month
 b. I haven't gone for a walk a month ago
 c. I haven't gone for a walk for a month
 d. I have gone for a walk since a month
9. I have lived in Edfu since 2002. I mean to say that
 a. I started to live in Edfu about 20 years ago
 b. I stopped living in Edfu about 20 years ago
 c. I have lived in Edfu for ten years
 d. I have lived in Edfu before 2002
10. I last ate fish on Friday. This sentence means that
 a. I didn't eat fish since Friday.
 b. I haven't eaten fish since Friday.
 c. I had eaten fish on Friday.
 d. I didn't eat fish on Friday.

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1	d	لا يمكن استخدام (already) لأنها لا تتفق مع معنى الجملة لا يمكن استخدام (never) في نهاية الجملة لا يمكن استخدام (for) لعدم وجود مدة زمنية بعد الطرف (since then) منذ ذلك الحين وهو يدرى (since then)
2	c	تستخدم (since) قبل أسماء الفصول ومبدأ (fall) بمعنى (أصفر لخرم)
3	b	الفعل الماضي البسيط (married) غير مناسب للمعنى خاصة في ظل وجود (for) وبمدها مدة زمنية
4	a	لا يمكن استخدام (c / d) لأنها مضارع وبارد والماضي في الجملة معنى
5	c	الجملة تعني أنني سأبذل قصارى جهدي بالعمل للمرة الأولى
6	c	الجملة تعني أنها المرة الأولى التي أرى فيها طليبا بهذه الدرجة من الذكاء
7	d	الجملة تعني أن نوران بدأت بالعمل في عمل الواجب ليكنه لم تنتهي بعد
8	c	الجملة تعني أن المطر لم يتوقف بعد
9	a	الجملة تعني أنني ذهبت للتبرع سيرا منذ شهر ولم أعمل ذلك مجدداً منذ ذلك الحين
10	b	الجملة تعني أنني بدأت أسكن في أدفو عام ٢٠٠٢ الجملة تعني أنني لم أتناول السمك منذ يوم الجمعة

Part One

MCQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the 4 options given :

1. My sister and I some problems.
 a. played b. owed c. solved
 d. had e. did
2. Voluntary work is of great importance. The antonyms of "voluntary" are
 a. optional b. exceptional c. compulsory
 d. obligatory e. obligation

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. He was arrested because of his debts. He money to several people.
 a. lent b. borrowed c. owned d. owed
4. I don't much money as a carpenter.
 a. win b. hate c. earn d. pay
5. It is kind of you to do work.
 a. abroad b. miserable c. paid d. voluntary
6. He died heavily in
 a. promise b. debt c. ditch d. pit
7. Have you finished your homework? Wonderful!
 a. yet b. ever c. just d. already
8. It's two months since we our uncle in the village.
 a. had visited b. visited c. have visited d. visit
9. Sadly, he has been ill he was a young man.
 a. for b. when c. ago d. since
10. Mona isn't here, she to the shops.
 a. had gone b. go c. has been d. has gone
11. Finally, my mother how to use the internet. Now, she can send emails.
 a. learns b. has learnt c. had learnt d. was learning
12. Bassant gets up early while on holiday.
 a. don't b. isn't c. doesn't d. never

13. I have passed this test
 a already b yet c just d so far
14. He lives in Paris, he has there since 2001.
 a gone b been c come d done
15. My car is similar Ali's. Both are red.
 a from b to c as d like
16. Who's the of this big house? - He must be a wealthy man.
 a owner b guide c tourist d parrot

• Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

(المصدر: سيد زكريا الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)

Statistics show that the rapid growth in population creates problems for developing countries. So, why don't people have fewer children? It has also been found that only when people's education and living standards begin to rise, birth rates begin to fall. Now poor countries can't afford social services and old age pensions, and people's incomes are so low that they have nothing to spare for savings. So, people need their children to provide them with security in their old age. Having a large family can be a form of insurance. Even when they are still young, children can help on a small farm. Improvements in public health services and medical care have assured that many more babies survive infancy and grow up. It has also helped the parents to live longer. No wonder populations are being added to both ends. These people have to be convinced that with smaller families, there will be more food, better schools, more employment and thus a better standard of living. This means changes in attitudes.

17. decreased the number deaths among babies.
 a. Education b. the standard of living
 c. Birth control d. Medical care
18. We have to convince people to
 a. build houses b. go to school
 c. have smaller families d. work on farms
19. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to
 a. people b. people's incomes
 c. social services d. children

20. The best title for this text is
 a Family planning b Family food
 c Developing countries d Statistics
21. The underlined word "survive" means
 a stay alive b fight c try d go e exist
22. Pension means money you get after you
 a become older b retire from work
 c work hard d have free time
 e go abroad
23. Why did people like to have many children in the past ?
 a To help the parents to live longer
 b To provide them with security
 c To convince them to plan the family
 d To afford social services
 e Children can help on a small farm when they are still young

Part Two

1. Translate into Arabic :
 The city has advanced systems to manage transportation, housing and communication. However, the countryside has fresh air and water as it is less polluted.

2. Translate into English :
 لكي تحقق أهدافك عليك أن تعمل بجد وأن تتحلى بالصبر، فالنجاح الحقيقي في الحياة لا يأتي عن طريق الحظ أو بأحلام اليقظة.
 (الأسبوعية ٢٠٢٢)

3. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on :

How to improve our lives

• للتدريب على أشكال مختلفة من قطع الفهم بنظام أسئلة MRQ، بنك الأسئلة

تلويح

1 Based On Units 1, 2 & 3

للتقوية
للتقوية في
هذا الأسلوب

الامتحان الرئيسي على كل ثلاث وحدات في الدراسة الشخصية

Part I Vocabulary

1. Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

admire (d) (v)	lie - lay - lain (v)	يخدع / يفتن
adult (n - adj)	lie - lied (v)	يكذب
beat - beat - beaten (v)	lying (adj)	مخدع - راقع
beginning (n)	marine life (n)	الحياة البحرية
bite - bit - bitten (v)	marry (ied) (v)	يتزوج
blood pressure (n)	monitor (ed) (v) (n)	يراقب - جهاز عرض
boyhood (n)	move (d) (v)	ينتقل
champion (n)	national team (n)	المنتخب الوطني
character (n)	pay - paid (v)	يدفع مال
compare (d) (v)	pharaoh (n)	فرعون
competition (n)	pocket (n)	جيب
completely (adv)	puzzle (n)	لغز
desire (d) (n - v)	reach (ed) (v)	يصل إلى
donate (d) (v)	recording (n)	التسجيل
dream - dreamed / dreamt	run - ran - run (v)	يدير - يجري
end (n)	score (d) (v)	يحرز
final (n)	squash (n)	رياضة الاسكواش
follow (ed) (v)	strange (adj)	غريب
footballer (n)	success (n)	النجاح
generous (adj)	tiring (adj)	مُتعب
imagine (d) (v)	top (n)	أفضل - قمة
include (d) (v)	twice (adv)	مرتين
inspire (d) (v)	volunteer (n)	متطوع
isolated (adj)	vote (d) (v - n)	يُصوّت / يفتقرع
join (ed) (v)	wild (adj)	تصويت / اقتراع
junior (n) (adj)		ثوري
lay - laid - laid (v)		

2. Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

Arsenal (n)	نادي أرسنال الإنجليزي	readers (n)	القراء
Basel (n)	مادي بازل السويسري	still (adv)	لا يزال
describe (d) (v)	يصف	Switzerland (n)	سويسرا
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش	team (n)	فريق
interesting (adj)	شيق	times (n)	مرات
low (adj)	منخفض	turtle (n)	سلحفاة بحرية
main (adj)	رئيسي	wife (n)	زوجة

Part II Language Study

1. Verbal Collocations مثلزمات لفظية

do	puzzles	يحل ألغاز	make	notes	يكون ملاحظات
go	wrong	يتعطل - يغل	reach	the final	يصل للمرحلة النهائية
become	friends	يصبحون أصدقاء	run	the country	يمير البلد
have	a strong desire	لديه رغبة قوية	tell	a story	يحكي قصة
	a vote	يجري الاقتراع/تصويت	win	a competition	يغوز بمسابقة
include	information	يتضمن معلومات			

2. Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات

at the same time as	في نفس الوقت	play for	يلعب لـ
be good friends with	يكون على صداقة قوية بـ	since the beginning	من البداية
be married to	متزوج من	squash World Open Championship	بطولة العالم المفتوحة للاسكواش
be well paid for	يحصل على مبالغ جيدة على	student volunteers	متطوعين من طلاب
find out	يكشف	that's why	لذا السبب
follow ... to	يتبع ... إلى	the first person	أول شخص
in fact	في الحقيقة	too low	منخفض جداً
in groups	في مجموعات	top player	أفضل لاعب
in pairs	في ثنائيات	work as volunteers	يعملون كمطوعين
main characters	الشخصيات الرئيسية	world champion	بطل العالم
move to	ينتقل إلى	World Junior Champion	بطل العالم للشباب
plan a short story	يضع تصور للقصة القصيرة		

Reading & Listening Texts

1 Reading Texts

1. Raneem El Welily

Raneem El Welily is one of Egypt's most famous faces.⁽¹⁾ She was world champion⁽²⁾ of the squash⁽³⁾ World Open in 2017, when she beat⁽⁴⁾ another Egyptian, Nour El Sherbini. She also twice⁽⁵⁾ reached⁽⁶⁾ the final⁽⁷⁾ in 2014 and 2016 and was the world's top⁽⁸⁾ women squash player in 2019. Raneem was born in Alexandria in 1989. She first played for Egypt's squash team⁽⁹⁾ when she was only ten. She became World Junior⁽¹⁰⁾ Champion in both 2005 and 2007 before winning her first competition⁽¹¹⁾ as an adult⁽¹²⁾ in 2009. She is now married⁽¹³⁾ to another top squash player, Tarek Momen. When she is not playing squash, she likes to listen to music and do puzzles,⁽¹⁴⁾ but it is her success⁽¹⁵⁾ at squash that has inspired⁽¹⁶⁾ many young Egyptians to play the game.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) شخصيات
- (2) بطل
- (3) رياضة الاسكواش
- (4) هزم
- (5) مرات
- (6) وصل الي
- (7) نهائي
- (8) افضل
- (9) فريق
- (10) الناشئين
- (11) مسابقة
- (12) راشد / بالغ
- (13) متزوجة
- (14) رجل اطفال
- (15) النجاح
- (16) يلهم

2. Mohamed Elneny

Mohamed Elneny is a famous Egyptian footballer⁽¹⁾. He is a strong⁽²⁾ player, and he has played for the Egyptian national team⁽³⁾ more than 60 times.⁽⁴⁾ He has scored⁽⁵⁾ more than six times for Egypt, and he is often on television. Elneny was born in 1992 and moved⁽⁶⁾ from his boyhood⁽⁷⁾ club⁽⁸⁾, Al Ahly, in Cairo, to Al-Mokawlon in Nasr City in 2010.

He played for Al-Mokawlon at the same⁽⁹⁾ time as Mohamed Salah, and the two footballers became good friends. In 2013, Elneny went to Switzerland⁽¹⁰⁾ and joined⁽¹¹⁾ Basel,⁽¹²⁾ one year after Salah went to the same club. Then Elneny went to London, England to join Arsenal.⁽¹³⁾

He is still⁽¹⁴⁾ good friends with Salah. "I'm happy to have been with him since the beginning⁽¹⁵⁾ and he has not changed,⁽¹⁶⁾" he says.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) لاعب كرة قدم
- (2) قوي
- (3) المنتخب الوطني
- (4) فترات
- (5) وحجز
- (6) ينتقل
- (7) صبياً
- (8) نادي
- (9) نفس
- (10) سويسرا
- (11) انضم الي
- (12) نادي بازل
- (13) نادي ارسنال
- (14) لا يزال
- (15) بداية
- (16) يتغير

3. How to write a short story

Why you write a long book when you can write a short story?⁽¹⁾ A short story can have 200 words or less.⁽²⁾ The writer can't describe⁽³⁾ many people or places and so there aren't so many adjectives⁽⁴⁾ in a short story. However, we still need a beginning, a middle⁽⁵⁾ and an end⁽⁶⁾ to the story. And the story needs to be interesting,⁽⁷⁾ so we include⁽⁸⁾ important information and an interesting main⁽⁹⁾ character, but perhaps⁽¹⁰⁾ only one. In fact,⁽¹¹⁾ it can be interesting to write in the first person⁽¹²⁾ (I did this ...) and then the person telling the story is the main character.⁽¹³⁾

Readers⁽¹⁴⁾ can't learn much about this character, perhaps not even their name, but something has to happen to them. This might be a surprise,⁽¹⁵⁾ a problem or something that goes wrong.⁽¹⁶⁾ Readers don't always find out⁽¹⁷⁾ what the character does in the end, but they need to be able to imagine⁽¹⁸⁾ the end of the story.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) قصة قصيرة
- (2) أقل
- (3) يصف
- (4) صفات
- (5) وسط
- (6) نهاية / خاتمة
- (7) شيق
- (8) يضم
- (9) رئيسي
- (10) ربما
- (11) في الحقيقة
- (12) صيغة المتكلم
- (13) شخصية
- (14) القراء
- (15) مشكلة
- (16) يتعطل - يحدث
- (17) يتكششف
- (18) يتخيل

2 Listening Texts

Presenter : Many people want to work with animals or to help the environment. A good way to get experience of this kind of work is as a volunteer. This means working without money, sometimes in another country, and it can be very hard work, but most young people love the experience. We spoke to three young student volunteers to find out what they did during their summer holidays last year.

Adam : Hi, my name's Adam. I spent the summer working with an organisation based on the Red Sea coast in Egypt. It's a beautiful place and many people go there for a holiday. Most tourists like to go diving to see the colourful fish. However, there are so many tourists now that some of the fish are finding life difficult. My job was to help monitor the impact tourists are causing. So, while the tourists were at the beach, or swimming in the sea, I was on a boat counting and monitoring marine life in different areas. It's important to know where the fish are and how many there are of them. Then, at the end of

the day, while the tourists were eating in restaurants, I was with a team helping to clean the beaches. It was hard work, but I really enjoyed it. I'm sure my work has helped people to understand the impact tourists have on the Red Sea.

Lara : My name's Lara and I've recently returned from Greece. I spent most of my time on a quiet beach watching big turtles! These beautiful animals visit the same beach every year to lay their eggs. They lay a lot of eggs, but many of the eggs are taken by birds, or flooded by the rain and the sea. These turtles are endangered, so each one of their eggs is important. It was my job to help protect the eggs and to stop tourists visiting the areas where the eggs lie in the sand. It can be a bit of a disaster when tourists visit and put sun umbrellas in the same place as the turtle eggs! The work was very tiring because we often worked at night. So, when my friends were sleeping, I was there on the beach! But it was a great place and I loved observing the big, slow turtles when they left the beach and slowly swam off into the sea. In my opinion, it's a great project and I've learned a lot more about conservation, too.

Munir : I'm Munir and I've just spent an amazing few weeks in the north of Thailand. It's a very isolated area and I had to take an internal flight to get there. Thailand is known for its elephants, and many farmers use them on their farms. The elephants are also used to carry tourists. Not all the elephants have an easy life, so I worked with conservationists who were trying to help elephants return to a more natural life in the wild. The elephants are very intelligent and it was amazing helping to feed them. It was not easy work, though. The rainforest was very hot, and there were a lot of dangerous snakes and insects. On one day, a spider bit me on the hand when I was putting something in my pocket. My hand swelled up and I thought, Oh, no! I have a big problem! But local people told me that the spider wasn't a dangerous one, and after a day or two my hand was fine. I don't think everyone would find life in Thailand easy, but I loved it. I've even learnt some Thai. Now, I can communicate with Thai people as well as the elephants!

Making new friends

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

58 pages 42 : 51 WB pages 110 : 115

- Reading :
A magazine article about moving to a new town
- Writing :
An email to a magazine's problem page
- Listening :
A radio phone-in about bullying at school

- Speaking :
Having a debate
- Language :
Articles, Countable/uncountable nouns
- Life skills :
Respect for diversity Communication



Part 1

Vocabulary

تلاوة • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيداً ومراجعتها بانتظام لتتقن فهمها في الامتحان

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

advice (n)	نصيحة	noticeboard (n)	لوحة الإعلانات
advise (v)	ينصح	populate (v)	يُستعمَر مكان / يُقطن
communicate (v)	يتواصل - يتصل	population (n)	(عدد) سكان
communication (n)	تواصل - اتصال	produce (v)	يُنتج
connected (v)	يرتبط - يوصل	production (n)	إنتاج
connected (adj)	مرتبط - متصل	pronounce (v)	يُنطق
connection (n)	ارتباط - اتصال	pronunciation (n)	النطق
inform (v)	يُعلم - يُخبر	salutation (n)	تحيةة
information (n)	معلومات / معلوميات	take ... for granted	... يتقبل / ... يُستلم به كأمْر مُستلم به

تلاوة • من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باليونان - ومراجعتها بانتظام

Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

allowed (v)	يسمح به	grade (n)	تقدير - مرتبة
allowed (adj)	مسموح به	greeting (n)	تحيّة
article (n)	مقال	header (n)	رأس الصفحة
avoid (v)	يتجنب - يتحاشى	join (v)	ينضم إلى
body (n)	مُتْن (مُتْن الموضوع)	optional (adj)	اختياري
closing (n)	إنهاء - ختام	personal (adj)	شخصي
conversation (n)	محادثة	practice (n)	ممارسة - تدريب
cool (adj)	عظيم / جليل / جليل	recipient (n)	مُتلقي
diversity (n)	التنوع	relax (v)	يستريح
enjoy (v)	يستمتع	serious (adj)	خطير - جاد
extra (adj / adv)	إضافي - آخر	stressed (adj)	مُضطرب (نفسياً)
face (n - v)	وجه - يواجه	teammates (n)	زملاء الفريق
favourite (adj)	مُفضل	teenager (n)	مراهق
feel - felt (v)	تدرك / تُعطي إحساس	wear - wore - worn (v)	يرتدي

3 Definitions تعريفات

تلاوة • تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلم المُستهدفة - هام جداً

Memorise	Understand
advice	نصيحة
connection	رابط - علاقة
noticeboard	لوحة الإعلانات
take ... for granted	يُستلم به / يتقبل ... كأمْر مُستلم به
	an opinion someone gives to help you
	something that brings people together
	a board on a wall that people put information on
	to think something is true or will stay the same

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Key vocabulary

- The between smoking and cancer is very clear. (الترابطة القوية ٢٠٢٢)
a. transplant b. donation c. connection d. conservation
- It is taken for that bullying is a bad behaviour which we all must change. (المعروف - الشائعة ٢٠٢٢)
a. denial b. refusal c. granted d. decided
- They all have smartphones, so they are all to the internet. (المعروف - الشائعة ٢٠٢٢)
a. decorated b. donated c. disconnected d. connected
- Our teacher always us to study hard to get high marks. (الاستشارة ٢٠٢٢)
a. advises b. devise c. device d. advice
- Our teacher always gives us to study hard to get high marks.
a. advises b. devise c. device d. advice
- Lack of in a marriage causes serious problems. (الشيء المفقود ٢٠٢٢)
a. communication b. bullying c. conservation d. experiments
- The lecture table of this term has been put on the (الجدول الجديد ٢٠٢٢)
a. noticeboard b. noticeable c. noticeably d. notable
- This problem needs urgent solutions. (حل عاجل)
a. serious b. useful c. cool d. concerned

9. The ancient Egyptians the banks of the Nile thousands of years ago.
a. communicated b. populated c. pronounced d. produced
10. Use electronic dictionaries to know how to new words.
a. communicate b. populate c. pronounce d. produce
11. Use electronic dictionaries to know the of new words.
a. production b. pronunciation c. population d. salutation
12. Most of the world's live in cities.
a. production b. pronunciation c. population d. salutation
13. This factory high quality TV sets.
a. communicates b. populates c. pronounces d. produces
14. Learn foreign languages to with tourists from different countries.
a. communicate b. populate c. pronounce d. produce
15. I was that I got the best marks in the exam.
a. advised b. informed c. connected d. populated
16. The of solar energy depends on light from the sun.
a. production b. pronunciation c. population d. salutation
17. You start an email with the opening
a. production b. pronunciation c. population d. salutation

2 Important Vocabulary

18. I hate using social media. They make me
a. pleased b. stressed c. dressed d. praised
19. If you want to good health, avoid smoking.
a. follow b. be c. enjoy d. having
20. After the match, he preferred to with a glass of orange juice.
a. stress b. sleep c. worry d. relax
21. If you can leave a question in an exam, this question is
a. social b. advisory c. optional d. compulsory
22. It is important to respect the of opinions and ideas, even if they are different from yours.
a. leader b. friendship c. diversity d. punctuation

23. Did you form any close while you were at school?
a. friendly b. a friend c. friendships d. friends
24. Some parents have bad memories of their own years.
a. teenage b. teenager c. marvellous d. splendid
25. You won't succeed if you don't have support from other
a. contractions b. diversity c. salutations d. teammates
26. He becomes nervous when he a difficult situation.
a. stresses b. faces c. welcomes d. drops
27. a club and doing a team sport help you make new friends.
a. Joining b. Pointing c. Closing d. Calling
28. His clothes make a lot of people admire him.
a. fashioned b. fashionable c. cold d. old-fashioned
29. People who are sociable find it easy to start with others.
a. contractions b. problems c. conversations d. diversity
30. My school bag is full. There's no room for books.
a. this b. no c. less d. extra

3 Definitions

31. A/An is something that brings people together.
a. cheating b. phone-in c. address d. connection
32. A/An is a board on a wall that people put information on.
a. list b. noticeboard c. circle d. contraction
33. When you think something is true or will stay the same, then you
a. find it difficult b. find it easy c. take it easy d. take it for granted
34. is an opinion someone gives to help you.
a. Advice b. A belief c. Practice d. A debate

Part II Vocabulary Study

تدوين: تساعد فعلك على الارتقاء، بمسؤول عن طريق استذكر هذا الدرس مسبقاً، فكل تذكير يذكرك

1: Verbal Collocations

do	take extra practice	يقوم بمزيد من الممارسة	get easier	يصبح أسهل
do	team sports	رياضة جماعية	give advice on	يشرح بخصوص
do	a sport	بممارسة رياضة	go online	يدخل على الإنترنت
face	a problem	يواجه مشكلة	join clubs	ينضم لنادية
	better	يشعر بتحسن	make friends	يتكون صداقات
	at home	يشعر بالراحة	a connection	يربط / يترك العلاقة
feel	connected to	لديه ارتباط بـ	pass an exam	يجتاز امتحان
	like	يحب / يود - يشعر كـ	a conversation	محادثة
	so hard	تدور صعوبة / صعبة جداً	a new school	ينتقل للمدرسة الجديدة
	stressed	يشعر بضغوط		

2: Synonyms

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
closing (n)	إنهاء - ختام
connection (n)	ارتباط - اتصال
cool (adj)	عالي الموضة / جميل / جذاب
conclusion, end, ending	
link, relationship, relation	
fashionable	

3: Antonyms

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
agree (d) (v)	يرفض
angry (adj)	راضٍ - سعيد
borrow (ed) (v)	يقتطف
busy (adj)	حر - غير مشغول
forget - forgot - forgotten (v)	يتذكر
kind (adj)	سوء / قاسي
optional (adj)	إجباري
personal (adj)	عام
disagree, refuse, turn down	
contented, satisfied, pleased	
lend - lent	
free	
remember (ed)	
unkind	
compulsory, obligatory	
public	

4 Expressions & Idioms

a serious problem	مشكلة خطيرة	part of a team	مكون من فريق
address ... by name/title	يعاطب ... بالاسم / باللقب	pieces of advice	نصائح
ask ... to your house	تدعو ... لمتزلتك	read aloud	يقرأ بصوت عال
at breaktime	في الفسحة	respect for diversity	احترام التنوع
Here's some advice	هنا هي بعض النصائح	revise for exams	راجع بالامتحان
instead of	بدلاً من	show the reason for	يوضح السبب
make it easier	يجعل من الأسهل	spend time with	يقضي وقت مع
nursing people	مرضى / رعاية الناس	stressed about	مضطرب بشأن
on my own	بمفردي	who else	من يضاف

5 Verb + Preposition

address ... by	يعاطب ... بـ	go out (with)	مخرج (مع)
ask for	يطلب	move to	ينتقل إلى
check ... for	يبحث ... من أجل	revise for	راجع من أجل
come out	يخرج - تفسر	talk about	تحدث عن
connect with	يرتبط بـ - يربط بـ	talk to	تحدث إلى
focus on	يركز على		

7 Clear the confusion

practice / practise	
- practice (n)	ممارسة - تدريب
- You need more practice to achieve more progress.	تحتاج المزيد من التقدم.
- practise (v)	يمارس - يتدرب
- I practised / practiced speaking English by talking to my online English friends.	لاحظ أنه في الإنجليزية الأمريكية تستخدم (practice) كاسم وفعل:
- do / take practice	يؤدي تمرين
- He did the guitar practice.	

advise, advice / a tip

- advise (on/about) (v)
- I advised her to work hard
- advice (on/about) (n)
- I gave him advice about his future.

لاست أن كلمة (advice) لا تعد تعامل معاملة لعد

- I gave him one advice. (x)
- I gave him some advice. (x)
- I gave him several advices. (x)
- I gave him two advices. (x)
- I gave him some advice. (✓)
- I gave him a piece of advice. (✓)
- I gave him pieces of advice. (✓)

- tip - tips (n)
- I gave him a tip about his future.

noticeboard (n)

- noticeboard (n) لوحة الإعلانات (في الإنجليزية البريطانية)
- You can find the company's email on the noticeboard.
- bulletin board (n) لوحة الإعلانات (في الإنجليزية الأمريكية)
- You can find the company's email on the bulletin board.

nursing (n)

- nursing (n) التمريض / رعاية المرضى
- It is known that nursing is very important for patients.
- nursery (n) حضنة (مكان تعليمي)
- My wife had to find a nursery for our little daughter.
- nursery (n) حضنة
- After Ahmed was born, he was put in a nursery because he had difficulty in breathing. كان لديه مشكلة في التنفس
- nursery (n) شغل (مكان لزراعة النباتات والأشجار ليومها)
- I went to a nursery to buy some plants for my garden.

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

MCQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- I thanked my sister when she me to use her mobile.
a. allowed b. let c. borrowed
d. permitted e. warned
- "You should avoid what hurts you." The antonyms of "avoid" in this context are
a. improve b. confront c. ignore
d. face e. follow
- One can say that one practice.
a. sells b. makes c. admits
d. does e. takes
- You can say that someone has started a
a. police b. new school c. point of view
d. conversation e. good marks
- After some time, I started to feel and I calmed down.
a. at home b. better c. stressed
d. so hard e. like
- "My father is angry with my brother." The adjective "angry" here is antonymous with
a. contented b. discontented c. satisfied
d. dissatisfied e. hungry
- You can address someone by their
a. dress b. money c. title
d. skill e. name
- I asked my father to give me
a. an advice b. advice c. advise
d. a piece of advice e. a few advice

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- He can't a connection between them.
a. do b. make c. have d. take
- I don't online until I have finished all my jobs.
a. do b. go c. have d. make
- I can't sleep. I so stressed
a. fight b. feel c. give d. take

Altwork.com موقع التنوع

- team sports helps you mix ^{تختلط} with others and be sociable ^{اجتماعي}.
4. Doing mistakes. Making
5. You need to check your essay with by for at
6. Here's advice on how to speak English well. an some any many
7. I spend a nice time my cousins in the countryside. on in with as
8. Civilized people show respect diversity. a for b from c at d. without
9. We went to a to buy flowers. nursery nursing c. planets d. plants
10. You need some more to be better at goalkeeping. practice practise c. practises d. practised
11. patients in hospitals is an important job. a Nursery b. Nurses c. Nursing d. Nursed

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

A. New in town

(58 page 43)

It's day one at a new school in a new town. You've got all the paper⁽¹⁾ and pens you need. You're wearing⁽²⁾ cool⁽³⁾ new clothes. But, you don't know anyone and you're not sure where to go. Starting at a new school feels⁽⁴⁾ so hard because you don't have any friends there to help you. It's very easy to feel stressed⁽⁵⁾, but life will get easier. Here's some advice to help you.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) ورق
(2) يرتدى
(3) جميل / جذاب
(4) يبدو / تفضل إحساس
(5) مضغوط (نفسياً)

Don't take it for granted⁽⁶⁾ that other students will start a conversation.⁽⁷⁾ Ask other people questions about themselves. Everyone likes talking about themselves. Try⁽⁸⁾ asking them about their favourite⁽⁹⁾ subjects⁽¹⁰⁾ or which sports they like and don't ask too many personal⁽¹¹⁾ questions.

You can only make friends⁽¹²⁾ if you spend⁽¹³⁾ time with them! The best way to do this is to join⁽¹⁴⁾ clubs or do team sports⁽¹⁵⁾ you like. Go online⁽¹⁶⁾ or look at the noticeboard⁽¹⁷⁾ at your school and find out what's happening. If you're part of a team, your teammates⁽¹⁸⁾ will feel connected⁽¹⁹⁾ to you and that connection⁽²⁰⁾ could become a friendship.⁽²¹⁾

While you're busy⁽²²⁾ talking to other students, don't forget⁽²³⁾ to study. Remember⁽²⁴⁾ to do your homework, so you don't have any problems with your teachers. Those teachers can also give you some advice on how to make friends and enjoy life in your new town. Talk to them too.

- (6) لا تأخذ على محمل الجد / بغير
(7) تبدأ من التحدث به
(8) محاولة
(9) مفضل - مفضل
(10) مواضيع
(11) شخصية
(12) تكوين صداقات
(13) يقضي
(14) ينضم إلى
(15) رياضات جماعية
(16) يتصل على الإنترنت
(17) لوحة الإعلانات
(18) زملاء الفريق
(19) مرتبط
(20) الارتباط
(21) صداقة
(22) مشغول
(23) ينسى
(24) يتذكر

B. To : problems@teen-magazine.com (58 page 44)

Subject : Help! I don't have any friends at my new school!

Dear Aunt Carol,

I think it is difficult to make friends. I don't have any friends at my school. I am always on my own⁽¹⁾ at break-time⁽²⁾. Yesterday, I talked to a girl in my class. I asked her if she wanted to do some homework with me, but she said no.

I need some advice about how to make friends. Do you have any advice for me?

Check Vocabulary

- (1) علة / خالة
(2) وجبة
(3) وقت المساحة

C. To : problems@teen-magazine.com (58 page 44)

Subject : Help! I'm really stressed!

Dear Aunt Carol,

I always work very hard at school, but I'm really stressed⁽¹⁾ about some exams⁽²⁾ I have next week.

The first two exams are 3 hours long and will be very challenging. The last exam is in a subject⁽³⁾ I'm not very good at. I've spent a lot of time studying in the library this week, but that hasn't helped me feel better.

I need some advice about how to relax⁽⁴⁾, please.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مضغوط
(2) امتحانات
(3) موضوع / مادة
(4) يسترخي

2

(WB page 111)

A. If you want to pass ⁽¹⁾ your exams, my advice is to always do your homework. Remember the information that your teacher gives you about the exam because it will help you. For a week or two before any exams, don't go out with your friends. Save ⁽²⁾ your money and do some extra ⁽³⁾ practice instead. It'll be really useful!

Check Vocabulary

- (1) اجتاز
(2) وفر - وفر
(3) زائد - إضافي

B. It is not easy to be a teenager ⁽¹⁾ and students (WB page 111) often need some help when they are at school. So, what problems do they have? Some students feel like ⁽²⁾ they don't have time to revise ⁽³⁾ for exams. They can also feel stressed about the work they get for homework.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مراهق
(2) يشعر بأنه
(3) يراجع

So, who can they ask for some advice? They can always ask a teacher or their family. If they have a good friend, he or she can help too.

Part IV

Language



وزارة التعليم

تحتوي الوحدة على قاعدتين رئيسيتين. لذلك تم تقسيم الشرح إلى جزئين مستقلين كل منهما له تدريباته الخاصة

تدريبات

Countable and Uncountable Nouns

1 Countable Nouns: الأسماء المعدودة

- الأسماء التي تعد يكون لها مفرد وجمع وهي تجمع بإضافة (s/es) مثل:
- | | | | | | |
|--------|---|-------|-----------|---|-----------|
| a girl | → | girls | an egg | → | eggs |
| a bus | → | buses | a library | → | libraries |

هناك جمع غير منظم مثل:

Singular مفرد	Plural جمع
child طفل	children أطفال
crisis أزمة	crises أزمات
datum معلومة	data معلومات
foot قدم	feet أقدام
goose غوز	geese غوز
man رجل	men رجال
medium وسيلة إعلامية	media وسائل الإعلام
mouse فأر	mice فئران
oasis واحة	oases واحات
ox ثور	oxenثيران
phenomenon ظاهرة	phenomena ظواهر
tooth سنّة	teeth أسنان
woman امرأة	women نساء

قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد يمكن أن نستخدم التي:

a / an	- My father bought a car. - I've just seen an accident.
one	- One student got the full mark.
every / each	- Every player in the team should train hard. - Each tourist has a camera.
this / that	- This girl is my daughter. - That motorbike belongs to me.

قبل الأسماء الجمع يُمكن أن نستخدم التي:

قليل - a few - كثير - many - أي - any - بعض - some - أولئك - those - هؤلاء - these
a lot of - كثير من - lots of - several - عند - two - three

- ex. - I met several friends in the party.
- I have a few books in my bag.
- These boys are my cousins.
- Five nurses are helping the surgeon.

2 Uncountable Nouns :

الاسماء غير المعدودة لا يوجد لها صيغة جمع وتعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد وتشمل ما يلي

1. Liquids السوائل

water - juice - tea - coffee - oil - milk - soup - blood ... etc.

2. Gases الغازات

oxygen - hydrogen - nitrogen - carbon dioxide ثاني أكسيد الكربون ... etc.

3. Meals الوجبات

breakfast - lunch - dinner - supper

4. School subjects

history - mathematics - physics - الفيزياء - biology - الأحياء ... etc.

5. Languages اللغات

English - Arabic - French - German ... etc.

6. Different activities الأنشطة المختلفة

reading - smoking - writing - studying - shopping - eating ... etc.

7. Sports الرياضات

football - volleyball - basketball - swimming... etc.

8. Materials أسماء المواد عندما تستخدم بوجه عام

coffee - glass - gold - iron الحديد - lime stone الحجر الجيري - sand - soil - sugar - tea - wood ... etc.

9. Natural phenomena الظواهر الطبيعية

lightning البرق - heat - snow - thunder الرعد - light - rain ... etc.

10. Abstract nouns الأسماء المجردة

honesty امانة - hope - beauty - help - love - hatred كراهية - confidence ثقة - courage شجاعة - experience خبرة - progress تقدم - evidence دليل - patience الصبر - peace السلام - poverty الفقر etc.

11. Other nouns

jewellery مجوهرات - money - laughter ضحك - rubbish - equipment المعدات - furniture أثاث - cash نقديّة - work - clothing اللبس - electricity الكهرباء - traffic مرور - baggage حقائب - luggage أمتعة - machinery ماكينات - news - information - oil - advice - water - music - bread - cloth.... etc.

1 نستخدم هذه الكلمات مع الاسم الذي لا بعد :

a lot of - lots of - much - a little / little - some - any - all - most - none - no - this - that....

ex. - I'd like to have a little juice.

(Not : a few juice)

- How much money do you need?

(Not : How many)

2 لا يمكن استخدام (these - those - one - a - an) قبل الاسم غير المعدود :

ex. - This equipment is very necessary.

(Not : These equipment)

- I bought bread at the baker's.

(Not : a bread)

3 يمكن استخدام (a - an) مع بعض الأسماء التي لا تعد إذا سبقها صفة مثل :

ex. - I spent an enjoyable time in the countryside.

- He had a good education at Oxford.

4 الأسماء غير المعدودة تأتي معها فعل مفرد :

ex. - Meat is cooked better at home.

- Has milk got a lot of proteins ?

- Does exercise make you healthy ?

Quantifiers:

1. **a lot of - lots of** + جمع plural + كثر من
- تستخدم (a lot of - lots of) في الجمل مع الاسم الذي تعد و الجمع التي لا تعد.

ex. - I have a lot of books.
- She bought a lot of sugar.

2. **many** + جمع plural + كثر من
- تأتي قبل اسم يعد في صيغة الجمع وتفضل في النفي والاستنكار.

ex. - Have you got many books?
- Yes, I have got a lot of books.
- No, I haven't got many books.

3. **much** + كثر من + uncountable
- تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد وتفضل في النفي والاستنكار.

ex. - Did you drink much coffee?
- Yes, I drank a lot of coffee.
- No, I didn't drink much coffee.

4. **a few - few** + جمع plural
a few = some / a small number
few = not many / almost none
- تأتي قبل اسم يعد وتشير إلى عدد قليل.

ex. - There are a few people sitting at the back of the hall.
- He has few interests outside his work.

5. **a little - little** + uncountable
a little = some / a small amount
little = not much / almost nothing
- تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة.

ex. - There is a little cheese in the fridge. I'll make you a sandwich.
- I have little money in my pocket. I need to borrow some.

6. **some** بعض
- تستخدم (some) قبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد في الحالات التالية:

1. Affirmative

ex. - There are some apples in the kitchen.
- The doctor gave me some medicine.

2. Offering في حالة تقديم عرض

ex. - Would you like some sandwiches and some juice?

3. Request في حالة الطلب

ex. - Can you give me some paper and some pens?

7. **any** أي

- تستخدم (any) قبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد في الحالات التالية:

1. Negative النفي

ex. - He didn't have any sandwiches or any juice.

2. Interrogative الاستفهام

ex. - Is there any cheese in the fridge?

3. **hardly any = almost no**

ex. - There is hardly any milk left.

4. **any at all**

ex. - I don't have any money at all.

- لاحظ ما يلي

no + فعل مثبت = any + فعل منفي

ex. - He hasn't got any friends. = He has got no friends.

اسم + verb to be + no = اسم + فعل منفي + verb to be

ex. - I am not a teacher. = I am no teacher.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

1. عندما نربط كلمة (and) اسمين أو ضميرين فإن الفعل بعدها يكون جمعاً في كل الأحوال:

- Meat and chicken are sources of protein.
- You and I have to leave early.

2. الأفعال التي تستخدم مع فاعل أو متعول مفرد أو لا تعد هي (is / was / has / (inf. + s / es / ies)

- This man is kind.
- The car was repaired.
- Milk makes us healthy.

3. الأفعال التي تستخدم مع فاعل أو متعول جمع هي (are / were / have / infinitive)

- These men are kind.
- The cars were repaired.

Notes for advanced level ملاحظات للمتفوقين

- يمكن أن تستخدم (many - much) في الجملة السالبة في الحالات التالية:
 1. تستخدم (many - much) في الجمل السالبة إذا جاء قبلها ما يلي:

so / very / as / too + much

- I have **so much** work to do.
- She has put **too much** salt in the soup.

so / as / too / a good / a great + many

- I saw **a great many** people in the street.
- He has **so many** friends on Facebook.

ب. إذا كانت many / much فاعل الجملة أو تصف فاعل الجملة:

- Many students find maths difficult.
- = Many find maths difficult.

بعض الأسماء لها نفس الشكل في المفرد والجمع ويصرف معها الفاعل حسب المعنى المقصود:

طائرات aircraft / سمكة - سمك fish / غزال - غزالان deer / غنم - غنم sheep / مركبة فضاء - مركبات فضاء spacecraft

- A tiger is running away from a tiger.
- Some deer are standing in the shade of a tree.

عند استخدام the قبل صفة دون وجود موصوف تتحول الصفة إلى اسم جمع وتأخذ دائما فعل جمع:

... المعاقين بالصمم the deaf / المعاقين البصيرة the disabled / الأغنياء the rich / الفقراء the poor

- The poor are in need of our help.
- = Poor people are in need of our help.

هناك أسماء دائما في صيغة الجمع وليس لها صيغة مفرد مثل:

cattle	ماشية	pliers	زبدية
clothes	ملابس	police	الشرطة
congratulations	تهنئة	scissors	مقص
glasses	نظارة	shorts	بنطلون قصير
jeans	بنطلون جينز	trousers	بنطلون
people	الناس		

- Your clothes are dirty.
- Many congratulations, Rody.

1. الأسماء المكونة من جزئين مكملين لبعضها البعض دائما تأخذ فعل جمع (الأمثلة في الجدول السابق):

- My **classmates** were broken yesterday.
- Your **trousers** are very fashionable.

ويمكن استخدام (a pair of) قبل الأسماء المكونة من جزئين وفي هذه الحالة يكون الفعل مفرد أو جمع حسب كلمة (pair):

- A pair of sunglasses was on the table.
- Five pairs of socks were bought for me.

2. بعض الأسماء يمكن أن تعد أو لا تعد حسب المعنى مثل:

Uncountable (لا تعد)	Countable (تعد)
business	a business - businesses
chicken	a chicken - chickens
coffee	a coffee - coffees
cold	a cold - colds
experience	an experience - experiences
glass	a glass - glasses
hair	a hair - hairs
iron	an iron - irons
light	a light - lights
orange	an orange - oranges
paper	a paper - papers
time	a time - times

- I don't like orange. I like green.
- I ate an orange.
- Iron conducts heat and electricity.
- I need an iron to press my shirt.

3. يمكن تحويل الأسماء التي لا تعد إلى أسماء تعد كالتالي:

- أ. استخدام (a bit - a piece of) كإضافة تعزلة عامه في المفرد وفي الجمع (bits - pieces):
- She gave me a piece (a bit) of advice.
- She gave me pieces (bits) of advice.

به استخدام ألفاظ تجزئة تشير إلى كميات محددة مثل :

A tube of toothpaste	سنة معجون أسنان	A slice of meat	شريحة لحم
A box of matches	علبة كبريت	A loaf of bread	رغيف خبز
A sheet of paper	ورقة ورق	A grain of sand	حبة رمل
A drop of water	قطرة ماء	A bottle of milk	زجاجة حليب
A glass of lemonade	كوب عصير ليمون	A bar of soap	قطعة صابون
A jar of jam	برطمان مربى	/ chocolate	شوكولاتة /
A lump of sugar	مكعب سكر		

ج. وعند الجمع نجمع لفظ التجزئة ولا نجمع اسم المادة :

- four sheets of paper
- six jars of jam
- two slices of meat
- five cups of coffee
- five pairs of shoes
- two loaves of bread
- six bars of chocolate

General Exercise On Language

Apply

التدريبات التالية فُرِّدَتْ بشكل متدرج لتساعدك حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt.

- Ahmed bought a lot of for his new flat.
a. new furnitures b. new furniture c. a new furniture d. furnitures
- Yara asked me for advice about how to study well.
a. a b. an c. a few d. some
- Can you give me sandwiches?
a. little b. a c. some d. any
- Hassan earns money. He is in need of your help.
a. little b. many c. a few d. much
- How meat do you need, Madam?
a. long b. many c. much d. often
- How kilos of meat do you need, Madam?
a. long b. many c. much d. often

- Hossam doesn't like city life as there's always too much
a. voices b. noise c. cars d. shops
- Will you buy a of toothpaste for me, honey?
a. piece b. glass c. tube d. plate
- people live in the country today than in the past.
a. Little b. Less c. Few d. Fewer
- I can hear too many in the living room. Do you have guests?
a. noise b. sounds c. voice d. voices
- I've had so many jobs to do and so time.
a. a few b. few c. a little d. little
- There three pairs of scissors in the drawer.
a. is b. are c. was d. has
- How do you have?
a. much money b. few money c. money d. many money
- He bought blue shorts.
a. a b. an c. some d. any
- There plenty of sugar but we need some more coffee.
a. is b. are c. was d. were
- He gave the police a lot of about the criminal.
a. few information b. an information c. informations d. information
- I don't have time to speak to you. I have to leave right now.
a. few b. much c. no d. many
- My trousers some holes in them.
a. has b. have c. is d. are
- Can you help me with my ?
a. luggages b. baggages c. a baggage d. luggage
- Could I have only orange to eat?
a. some b. no word c. many d. an
- There a lot of people who are interested in what you are doing.
a. is b. was c. have d. are
- I gave Rodayna advice about doing better at English.
a. an b. some c. any d. a few
- there many hotels in Aswan?
a. Has b. Was c. Are d. Had
- I haven't got my camera, so I can't take photographs.
a. a b. some c. any d. many



- 25 Her clothes ^{to be moved} ^{need} ^{is needing}
has needed ^{needs} ^{is} accommodation ^{is} available in this hotel.
- 26 There ^{only a little accommodation} ^{do} ^{is}
are ^{were} ^{do} ^{is}
- 27 We met ^{interesting people at the party} ^{much} ^{a little}
some ^{any} ^{much} ^{a little}
- 28 Asraf has a lot of good ^{ideas} ^{some ideas}
an idea ^{idea} ^{ideas} ^{some ideas}
- 29 I haven't got ^{money left. I need to borrow some.} ^{little} ^{much}
a few ^{many} ^{little} ^{much}
- 30 I must buy some bread. I hardly have ^{left in the kitchen.} ^{some}
much ^{any} ^{many} ^{some}
- 31 Two hundred pounds ^{enough for today's spending.} ^{is} ^{were}
are ^{have} ^{is} ^{were}
- 32 Try to reduce the ^{of cups of tea you drink a day.} ^{number} ^{some}
amount ^{quantity} ^{number} ^{some}
- 33 There is ^{juice for everyone to drink a little.} ^{little} ^{enough}
too much ^{too many} ^{little} ^{enough}
- 34 There aren't ^{in this town. Only two.} ^{many hotels} ^{much hotels}
some hotels ^{any hotels} ^{many hotels} ^{much hotels}
- 35 The money of the books ^{on the table.} ^{is}
are ^{were} ^{has} ^{is}
- 36 There aren't ^{seats for everybody. Some people will have to sit on the floor or stand.} ^{enough}
all ^{much} ^{any} ^{enough}
- 37 How ^{are coming to the party?} ^{any people}
many peoples ^{many people} ^{much people} ^{any people}
- 38 The police ^{questioning some people.} ^{have}
is ^{was} ^{are} ^{have}
- 39 He failed to carry out his duties ^{as a manager as he didn't have} ^{much experience}
many experience ^{few experiences} ^{much experience}
some experiences ^{much experience}
40. ^{congratulations! I'm very happy to hear your good news.} ^{Many}
A ^{Any} ^{Much} ^{Many}

41. There wasn't ^{traffic on the road. Only a few private cars} ^{many} ^{much} ^{little} ^{a few}
- 42 My ^{are in my bag.} ^{a glass} ^{pair of glasses} ^{glass} ^{glasses}
43. A: How ^{sugar do you want in your coffee?} ^{much} ^{many} ^{little} ^{few} B: Two spoons.
44. Those sheep ^{fat.} ^{is} ^{are} ^{was} ^{has been}
45. There ^{a lot of rubbish in the kitchen.} ^{is} ^{are} ^{has} ^{were}
46. My reading glasses ^{missing.} ^{had} ^{was} ^{is} ^{are}
47. This poor woman has ^{child} ^{a few child} ^{little children} ^{much children}
48. We hardly heard ^{news of him since he left the company.} ^{any} ^{some} ^{many} ^{much}
49. Mathematics ^{not very easy to understand.} ^{are} ^{were} ^{is} ^{has}
50. Knowledge of foreign languages ^{necessary} ^{is} ^{are} ^{have} ^{were}

2 Check your understanding

51. "Little children travel on the train for free." This means
a not many children travel on the train for free
b a few children travel on the train for free
c little number of children travel on the train for free
d young children travel on the train for free
52. "I have got no money left." I mean that
a I have little money left b I have very little money left
c I don't have any money left d I have some money left
53. "Ali is not a doctor." Which of the following gives the same meaning?
a Ali is no doctor. b Ali has no job.
c Ali doesn't like doctors. d Ali is a professor.
54. Some people like watching basketball, but ^{prefer football} ^{any} ^{many} ^{people} ^{everyone}

3 Definitions تعريفات

تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية التي يوافقها معظم المتعلمين - 30

تدريج

Memorise	Understand
bully (n)	bully (n) to threaten or hurt someone or frighten them, especially someone smaller or weaker
bully (v)	bully (v) someone who uses their strength or power to frighten or hurt someone who is weaker
bullying (n)	bullying (n) the use of strength or power to frighten or hurt someone who is weaker
cheat (v)	cheat (v) to act in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
cheat (n)	cheat (n) someone who acts in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
cheating (n)	cheating (n) acting in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
nurse (d) (v)	nurse (d) (v) to look after someone who is ill or injured
nurse (n)	nurse (n) someone whose job is to look after people who are ill or injured, usually in a hospital
nursing (n)	nursing (n) the job or skill of looking after people who are ill, injured, or old
phone-in (n)	phone-in (n) a radio or television programme in which you hear ordinary people expressing opinions or asking questions over the telephone
police (d) (v)	police (d) (v) to keep control over an area to make sure that laws are obeyed and that people and property are protected using a police force
police (n)	police (n) the people who work for an official organisation whose job is to catch criminals and make sure that people obey the law
suffix	suffix a group of letters added to the end of a word to form a new word

PART TWO 3&4

Part 1 Vocabulary

تدريج - 1. تدريج المفردات الرئيسية التي يوافقها معظم المتعلمين - 30

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

bully (n)	bully (n)	bully (n)	bully (n)
bully (v)	bully (v)	bully (v)	bully (v)
bullying (n)	bullying (n)	bullying (n)	bullying (n)
cheat (v)	cheat (v)	cheat (v)	cheat (v)
cheat (n)	cheat (n)	cheat (n)	cheat (n)
cheating (n)	cheating (n)	cheating (n)	cheating (n)
nurse (d) (v)	nurse (d) (v)	nurse (d) (v)	nurse (d) (v)
nurse (n)	nurse (n)	nurse (n)	nurse (n)
nursing (n)	nursing (n)	nursing (n)	nursing (n)
phone-in (n)	phone-in (n)	phone-in (n)	phone-in (n)
police (d) (v)	police (d) (v)	police (d) (v)	police (d) (v)
police (n)	police (n)	police (n)	police (n)
suffix	suffix	suffix	suffix

تدريج - 2. تدريج المفردات الرئيسية التي يوافقها معظم المتعلمين - 30

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

bully (n)	bully (n)	bully (n)	bully (n)
bully (v)	bully (v)	bully (v)	bully (v)
bullying (n)	bullying (n)	bullying (n)	bullying (n)
cheat (v)	cheat (v)	cheat (v)	cheat (v)
cheat (n)	cheat (n)	cheat (n)	cheat (n)
cheating (n)	cheating (n)	cheating (n)	cheating (n)
nurse (d) (v)	nurse (d) (v)	nurse (d) (v)	nurse (d) (v)
nurse (n)	nurse (n)	nurse (n)	nurse (n)
nursing (n)	nursing (n)	nursing (n)	nursing (n)
phone-in (n)	phone-in (n)	phone-in (n)	phone-in (n)
police (d) (v)	police (d) (v)	police (d) (v)	police (d) (v)
police (n)	police (n)	police (n)	police (n)
suffix	suffix	suffix	suffix



Exercise 4 On Vocabulary

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d or e.

1. Vocabulary

1. Mr. Mohammed has turned him into a liar.
 - a. cheat
 - b. cheating
 - c. a cheat
 - d. cheated
2. Unfortunately, a lot of teenagers are bullied at school.
 - a. powered
 - b. respected
 - c. greeted
 - d. bullied
3. It isn't allowed at this school to use muscles or power to hurt others.
 - a. Pulling
 - b. Bullying
 - c. Pulling
 - d. Bull
4. Students who fail this exam will be excluded and will face severe punishment.
 - a. achieve
 - b. cheat
 - c. cheat
 - d. succeed
5. The use of guns and other weapons must be limited.
 - a. closed
 - b. connected
 - c. connected
 - d. policed
6. These employers force the poor workers to work for them.
 - a. bully
 - b. bullies
 - c. bullying
 - d. bully's
7. Don't look at the dictionary during the exam. That's cheating.
 - a. cheat
 - b. cheat
 - c. cheating
 - d. cheated
8. A good woman my uncle when he was ill in hospital.
 - a. nursery
 - b. nursing
 - c. nurse
 - d. nursed
9. A good woman looked after my uncle when he was ill in hospital.
 - a. nursery
 - b. nursing
 - c. nurse
 - d. nursed
10. She chose as a profession because she wanted to help patients.
 - a. nursery
 - b. nursing
 - c. nurse
 - d. nursed
11. The managed to arrest the murderer.
 - a. policy
 - b. policing
 - c. policed
 - d. police
12. is one of the most important things in societies.
 - a. Policy
 - b. Policing
 - c. Policed
 - d. Police

2. Important Vocabulary

13. Staying up late may have an effect on your performance the next day.
 - a. affect
 - b. effect
 - c. impacted
 - d. effective

14. It is not wise to bullies because they have nothing to lose.
 - a. call
 - b. populate
 - c. fight
 - d. avoid
15. Although I live in a big city where there are lots of people, I often find myself feeling lonely.
 - a. only
 - b. unique
 - c. single
 - d. lonely
16. Santa gave her father's car keys in her bag.
 - a. wore
 - b. hid
 - c. saluted
 - d. fought
17. Tell this unkind person that he is not welcome in our organisation.
 - a. personal
 - b. concerned
 - c. physical
 - d. welcome
18. In this programme, we have two scientists to debate the issue.
 - a. debate
 - b. believe
 - c. think
 - d. agree
19. I can't give you my opinion about this player as I am not a favourite.
 - a. concerned
 - b. useful
 - c. fortunate
 - d. favourite
20. have made communication easier.
 - a. Facebook
 - b. Twitter
 - c. WhatsApp
 - d. Social media
21. Our company offered to host the conference in a five-star hotel.
 - a. stress
 - b. highlight
 - c. host
 - d. express

3. Definitions

22. A/An is someone who hurts or frightens someone who is smaller or less powerful.
 - a. expert
 - b. bully
 - c. archaeologist
 - d. role model
23. To is to threaten to hurt someone or frighten them, especially someone smaller or weaker.
 - a. bully
 - b. promise
 - c. pull
 - d. dare
24. A/An is a group of letters added to the end of a word to form a new word.
 - a. noun
 - b. adverb
 - c. suffix
 - d. prefix
25. is the use of strength or power to frighten or hurt someone who is weaker.
 - a. Bullying
 - b. To bully
 - c. A bully
 - d. Bully
26. is someone who acts in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
 - a. A cheat
 - b. To cheat
 - c. Cheat
 - d. Cheating
27. means to act in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
 - a. A cheat
 - b. To cheat
 - c. Cheat
 - d. Cheating

UNIT 4

28. ... means acting in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
 a. Cheating
 b. To cheat
 c. Cheat
 d. A cheat
29. ... is someone whose job is to look after people who are ill or injured, usually in a hospital
 a. Nursing
 b. Nurse
 c. To nurse
 d. A nurse
30. ... is the job or skill of looking after people who are ill, injured, or old.
 a. Nursing
 b. Nurse
 c. To nurse
 d. A nurse
31. A ... is a radio or television programme in which you hear ordinary people expressing opinions or asking questions over the telephone.
 a. talk show
 b. phone-in
 c. programme
 d. film
32. To ... is to keep control over an area to make sure that laws are obeyed and that people and property are protected, using a police force.
 a. police
 b. policed
 c. the police
 d. policing

Part II Vocabulary Study

تتويج: تساعد فيمكنك على الترتيب، يستلزم عن طريق استخدام هذا الجزء، مسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريجياً

1 Verbal Collocations

different to / from	an effect on	له أثر على
be not welcome here	exams	لديه امتحانات
have	a class debate	يُنظَّم مناظرة بين الصُّلَّاب
right to	a class vote	يجري اقتراع بين الطُّلاب
feel safe	... clear	يوضَّح
fight the bullies	a photo	بالتقط صورة
get good marks	take	يتبادلون الموارد لكي
along with	turns to	
give an opinion		

2 Synonyms

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
cheat(ed)	deceive, trick
concerned (adj)	interested, involved, affected, connected
nurse(d)	care for, take care of, look after
police(d)	control, keep in order, keep under control, regulate

3 Antonyms

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
effect(n)	cause, reason
exciting(adj)	boring
positive(adj)	negative
right(adj)	wrong
save(d) (v)	endanger
save(d) (v)	waste
with (prep. - adv)	without

4 Expressions & Idioms

a radio phone-in	make us all laugh
angry with	on social media
any more	on the line
as far as I'm concerned	physical abilities
cheating in exams	save money
debate the good things and the bad	sure about
things about	the main idea
find advice for	where to go
good at	
good for	

ALTfWok.com موقع التفوق

5. Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

get along (with)	يتعامل مع (مع)	point at / to	يشير إلى
get to	يصل إلى	reply to	يرد على
list ... in	يذكر في	say ... about	يقول ... عن

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

• MCQ: Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

- The antonyms of the word 'advantages' are ...
a. merits b. pros c. disadvantages
d. benefits e. demerits
- The class we had was interesting.
a. debate b. device c. vote
d. bully e. effect
- I was asked to give ...
a. the bullies b. a problem c. advice
d. a sport e. an opinion
- Positive is to negative as ... is to endangered.
a. safe b. save c. danger
d. endanger e. secure
- "Smoking has bad effects on health." The noun 'effects' here is the antonym of ...
a. cause b. result c. outcome
d. reason e. product
- "Parents are always concerned with their children's future." The adjective 'concerned' in this context is a synonym for ...
a. contented b. connected c. fashionable
d. cool e. interested
- "It is a crime to cheat others." The verb 'cheat' here is synonymous with ...
a. trek b. track c. trick
d. deceive e. chat

8. The little boy pointed ... the picture of the bully who frightened him

- a. at b. of c. off
d. to e. from

9. It took me about half an hour to ... my home.

- a. arrive at b. go out c. get to
d. come out e. talk to

• MCQ: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tourism plays a ... role in our national income.

- a. positive b. passive c. negative d. destructive

2. My sister and I usually ... turns to do the washing up. قبل الأثرى

- a. are b. feel c. give d. take

3. He left his job because the manager told him that he ... not welcome there.

- a. was b. felt c. gave d. took

4. "You must not waste your time." In this sentence, the words 'not waste' can be best replaced by ...

- a. rescue b. spend c. save d. waist

5. "This area is policed by the army." الجيش The verb "policed" here means ...

- a. disagreed b. controlled c. nursed d. freed

6. Optional and compulsory are ...

- a. opposites b. antonyms c. synonyms d. a & b

7. "She nurses her old mother." "Nurses" here is a synonym of ...

- a. looks for b. takes turns c. looks after d. takes off

8. Wait a moment and I will tell you where ... good clothes.

- a. to buy b. buy c. do you buy d. b & c

9. Don't believe everything people post social media.
a. of b. on c. out d. down
10. I sometimes call this radio phone-
a. on b. in c. at d. off
11. As as I'm concerned, money is not his only problem.
a. soon b. well c. far d. a & c

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

C. Maged : Hassan is a good friend. Last week, however⁽¹⁾, he borrowed⁽²⁾ my phone without⁽³⁾ asking. Then he dropped⁽⁴⁾ the phone. Fortunately⁽⁵⁾, the phone did not break⁽⁶⁾, but I was very angry⁽⁷⁾ with him. Now, he's not talking to me.

Omar : Fawzi always gets good marks⁽⁸⁾ at school, but he is not always a good student. He often tries to make us all laugh.⁽⁹⁾ Last week, he was talking in a lesson and the teacher was angry with him. He had to leave the classroom⁽¹⁰⁾. Now, he doesn't want to make us laugh any more⁽¹¹⁾.

Hoda : There is a girl in my class and she always says unkind⁽¹²⁾ things about me. My friend tells me that she is also saying things about me on social media.⁽¹³⁾ Last week, she took a photo of me without asking. Today, she was pointing⁽¹⁴⁾ at me and laughing with her friends. It makes me feel very unhappy.

(WB page 112)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مع ذلك
- (2) يستعير / يستأجر
- (3) بدون
- (4) سقط
- (5) لحسن الحظ
- (6) يتكسر
- (7) غاضب
- (8) درجات
- (9) يضحك
- (10) حجرة الدراسة
- (11) بعد الآن / مرة أخرى
- (12) سيء / قبيح
- (13) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
- (14) يشير

D. Salem : Do you think it is a good or bad thing to move to a new school in another⁽¹⁾ town? (WB page 113)

Sayed : As far as I'm concerned⁽²⁾ it can be a good thing. You can meet new people and learn different things.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) آخر
- (2) بغير اهتمامي
- (3) مختلف
- (4) من رأيي
- (5) هذا صحيح

Salem : I'm not so sure about that. I think I'd find it very difficult at a new school. Everything would be new and different⁽³⁾.

Sayed : I agree, but new things can be exciting, and you'll soon have new friends too.

Salem : In my opinion⁽⁴⁾ your old friends are your best friends.

Sayed : Yes, but I think, you can never have too many friends. One day, your new friends will be your best old friends !

Salem : That's true⁽⁵⁾.

2 Listening Texts

A. Radio phone - in about bullying (SB page 46)

Radio show host : Good evening, everyone. Welcome to the show. Tonight, we're talking about bullying⁽¹⁾. Unfortunately⁽²⁾, a lot of teenagers⁽³⁾ are bullied at school, and this can have some very negative effects⁽⁴⁾ on them.



We're going to talk to a 15-year-old boy called Ali, who is being bullied. Ali... are you on the line⁽⁵⁾?
Ali : Hi Seleem. How are you?

Check Vocabulary

- (1) بطلية / قتل
- (2) أسوأ الحظ
- (3) المراهقين
- (4) آثار سلبية
- (5) متصل / على الخط

Radio show host : I'm well, thank you. How are you this evening?

Ali : I'm OK, but last week was really hard. Two boys in my class are bullying me because I am not very good at football. I like to play chess more than football. Last week they had my rucksack⁽⁶⁾. It had all my school books in it. I hate going to school now!

Radio show host : Oh no! That's terrible. Did you tell a teacher?

Ali : No, I didn't. I was too scared. I've just moved to this town, so I don't know the teachers very well.

Radio show host : Well, Ali, I really think you should talk to a teacher. Your teacher can talk to the bullies⁽⁷⁾ and make it clear⁽⁸⁾ that they shouldn't behave⁽⁹⁾ like this. If you do nothing, the bullying will just continue.

Ali : Yes... you're right... There's one teacher that I get along well⁽¹⁰⁾ with. I'll talk to him.

- (6) حقيبة الظهر
(7) المتنمرين / المتنمرين
(8) يوضح
(9) يتصرف / يتسلط
(10) يتوافق مع

B. Ola and Lina giving their opinions (SB page 47)

Ola : So, do you think moving to⁽¹⁾ a new school in another town is a good thing or a bad thing for teenagers?

Lina : As far as I'm concerned⁽²⁾, it's not a good idea. If you move to a new school, you have to leave your old friends behind and it's really difficult to make new friends⁽³⁾.

Ola : I'm not so sure about⁽⁴⁾ that. I think you can make new friends if you're nice to other people and start conversations with⁽⁵⁾ them. For example, I'm sure you would make lots of new friends!

Lina : That's true. It is possible to make new friends, but it takes time⁽⁶⁾. You'll be really lonely⁽⁷⁾ for the first few months.

Ola : In my opinion, it's a good experience⁽⁸⁾ to have because it makes you stronger⁽⁹⁾.

Lina : I know that it can make people stronger, but I would prefer to just stay with the people I know.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) انتقل إلى
(2) على حد علمي / في رأيي
(3) يكون صديقات جديدة
(4) متأكد من
(5) يبدأ حديث مع
(6) يستغرق وقت
(7) منعزل
(8) تجربة جيدة
(9) تجعلك قويا

Part IV

Language



معلم

تعليم وتعلم

Making new friends

Articles a / an and the with singular nouns :

a / an

تستخدم (a/an) في الحالات التالية :

- 1 قبل اسم مفرد معدود يتم ذكره لأول مرة.
ex. - I saw a cat in front of the door.
- There is an apple on the table.

- 2 قبل اسم وظيفة معدود مفرد عند التحدث عن وظيفة شخص ما.
ex. - Mustafa is a doctor.
- My uncle is an astronaut.

- 3 قبل الاسم المعدود المفرد الدال على عدد.
a pair - زوج
a couple - زوج
a dozen - دسنة
a hundred - مائة
a thousand - ألف
a million...etc.

- ex. - He paid a million dollars for this car.

- 4 مع تعبيرات السرعة والزمن والنسبة والمسافة والأمن :
ex. - 80 kilometres an hour - ٨٠ كم في الساعة
two days a week - يومان في الأسبوع
10 pounds a kilo - ١٠ جنيهات للكيلو

- 5 قبل الحقة إذا سبقت اسم مفرد معدود
ex. - We have got a new car.

- 6 لاحظ أن (a - an) لا تستخدم قبل الأسماء الجمع و الأسماء غير المحدودة.
ex. Cats eat fish and drink milk. (Not A cats....)
- The bottle is full of oil. (Not; an oil. ...)

كيفية الاختيار بين (a, an)

- 1 تستخدم (a) قبل اسم مفرد معدود يبدأ بصوت ساكن
a table - a house - a boy - a girl - a doctor - a plant - a window etc.

- 2 تستخدم (an) قبل اسم مفرد يبدأ بالحروف (u - eu - ew) عندما تُنطق كحرف (y)
a university - a uniform - a union - a useful book -
a European team - a eweetc.

UNIT 4

- 1 تستخدم (an) قبل اسم محدود مفرد بعد يبدأ بصوت متحرك :
ex. - an egg / an orange / an apple / an eagle / an elephant.....etc.
- 2 تستخدم (an) قبل اسم مفرد بعد يبدأ بحرف ساكن لا ينطق به صوت متحرك :
ex. - an hour / an honest person
- 3 يمكن استخدام (a/an) قبل اسم محدود مفرد لإعطاء تعريف للكلمات :
ex. - A doctor is someone who works in a hospital to help and treat patients.
- 4 قبل الاختصارات التي تنطق ككروف منفصلة نستخدم (a/an) حسب بداية نطق الحرف :
ex. - My friend sent an SMS to me.
- There is an "m" letter in the word "man".
- 5 قبل كلمة (one) كصفة نستخدم (a) لأن (one) تبدأ بصوت ساكن :
ex. - I found a one-dollar banknote on the floor.
- This is a one-way street.

The

- نستخدم (the) في الحالات التالية :
- 1 قبل اسم سبق ذكره في سياق الحديث :
ex. - His father works in an office. The office is in the city centre.
- She bought a book by Dickens yesterday. The book is called Oliver Twist.
 - 2 قبل اسم لا يوجد منه سوى واحد فقط :
the sun - the moon - the sky - the country -
the countryside - the ground - the world - the horizonetc.
ex. - The moon goes around the Earth. (هناك قمر واحد وأرض واحدة)
 - 3 قبل اسم معروف للقارئ، أو السامع :
ex. - "Make the bed and open the window," said mum.
(معروف بالنسبة لك أي فراش سترتب وأي نافذة ستفتح)
 - 4 قبل صفات التفضيل والاعداد الترتيبية :
the tallest - the oldest - the most beautiful - the least expensive -
the first - the second - the millionth - the only - the last.....etc.
ex. - That's the best film I've ever seen.
- The Nile is the longest river in the world.
- The first letter of the alphabet is A.

لكن في حالة وجود صفات الملكية (my / his / her / its / your / our / their / 's) قبل صفات التفضيل والاعداد الترتيبية فلا نستخدم (the) :

- Nasser is my best friend. (Not: the best ...)
- Omar is Sama's oldest uncle. (Not: the oldest ...)

- 5 قبل أسماء المحيطات والبحار و معظم أسماء الأنهار والقنوات (لكن ليس قبل أسماء البحيرات) :
- البحر المتوسط the Mediterranean - المحيط الهادي the Pacific
- قناة السويس the Suez Canal - نهر النيل the Nile - نهر الأمازون the Amazon
- بحيرة فيكتوريا Lake Victoria - بحيرة ناصر Lake Nasser etc.

6 لا نستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الدول :

Egypt - Britain - France - Spain - Germany - Iraq etc.

أما إذا احتوى اسم الدولة أو العيلة على إحدى الكلمات التالية فهي تأخذ (the) :

- (State - ولاية - ملكة Kingdom - اتحاد Union / Federation - جمهورية Republic) etc.)
- | | |
|--|----------------------------|
| the Arab Republic of Egypt (the ARE) | جمهورية مصر العربية |
| the United Arab Emirates (the UAE) | الإمارات العربية المتحدة |
| the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia (the KSA) | المملكة العربية السعودية |
| the United States of America (the USA) | الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية |
| the United Kingdom (the UK) | المملكة المتحدة |
| the United Nations (the UN) | الأمم المتحدة |

- Egypt is a great country.
- The Arab Republic of Egypt is a great country.

- و أيضا إذا كان اسم الدولة جمع فهو يأخذ (the) :

الفلبين the Philippines - هولندا the Netherlands

- لاحظ أنه كان في السابق يوضع (the) قبل أسماء هذه الدول ولكن حسب قائمة أسماء الدول في الأمم المتحدة لم يعد يسبق الاسم (the) :

Lebanon - Ukraine - Yemen - Sudan

7 نستخدم (the) قبل أسماء السلاسل الجبلية :

جبال روكي the Rocky Mountains - جبال الهيمالايا the Himalayas
.....etc. جبال الألب the Alps

أما أسماء القمم الجبلية المنفردة فعادة لا تأخذ (the) :

..... etc. جبل كليمنجارو Kilimanjaro - قمة إفرست Mount Everest

Extra Notes ملاحظات إضافية

نستخدم (the) في الحالات التالية أيضًا :

- 1 نستخدم (the) قبل اسم مفرد بعد للدلالة على النوع بوجه عام خاصة مع فصائل الحيوانات والطيور :
- The giraffe is my favourite animal.
- Giraffes are my favourite animals.
- 2 نستخدم الاسم الجمع بدون (the) للدلالة على النوع بوجه عام :
- The computer is the most important invention.
- لكن عند الحديث عن الأجهزة في أي سياق آخر نطبق القواعد العامة :
- I have bought a tablet and a laptop. The tablet is white, but the laptop is black.
- 3 نستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الاختراعات المفردة للدلالة على النوع بوجه عام :
- The computer is the most important invention.
- لكن عند الحديث عن الأجهزة في أي سياق آخر نطبق القواعد العامة :
- I have bought a tablet and a laptop. The tablet is white, but the laptop is black.
- 4 نستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الآلات الموسيقية المفردة مع أفعال مثل :
(play / practise / learn / study / appreciate / listen to)
- Can you play the guitar ?
- The piano is my favourite instrument.
- أما عند الحديث عنها في أي سياق آخر نطبق القواعد العامة :
- My brother has a guitar and a piano. The guitar is old and doesn't work well.
- 5 نستخدم (the) قبل الكلمات (theatre / cinema / radio / post office / internet / shops) ولا نقصد مكان أو شيء محدد :
- Do you go to the theatre ?
- We listen to the news on the radio.
- 6 نستخدم (the) قبل بعض الصفات التي لا يتبعها اسم لنندل على اسم جمع دائمًا و تأخذ فعل جمع :
the rich / the poor / the blind / the disabled / المعاقين / المكفوفين / الأغنياء / الفقراء etc.
- The disabled are in need of our help.
- He is collecting money for the blind.
- 7 نستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الأقاليم والبلدان :
the Middle East / the Far East / the north of Egyptetc.
- 8 نستخدم (the) قبل بعض الأماكن الجغرافية مثل :
the Sahara الصحراء الكبرى / the Gobi صحراء حوبي

1 نستخدم (the) غالبًا قبل الاسم الذي تتبعه عبارة وصل أو الاسم المُعرّف بحرف الجر (of)

- The man who lost his son was very sad.
- He opened the door of the room.

- لكن لاحظ أنه توجد استثناءات :

- Do you have a dictionary that I can borrow ?
(هذا يقصد بها أي قاموس (أحد القواميس))
- Ashraf told me about a man who can eat glass.
(هذا يقصد بها أحد الرجال)

2 نستخدم (the) قبل العدد الذي يدل على فترة عشر سنوات :

التسعينيات / the nineties / الخمسينيات / the fifties

3 نستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات والألقاب والمناخ وبعض الأسماء الأخرى :

الطقس / the weather / المناخ / the climate / الحكومة / the government / الشرطة / the police / الصحافة / the press / البيئة / the environment / الجيش etc.

4 نستخدم (the) مع العبارات الدالة على المقارنة (صيغة كلما كلما) :

- The more you practise, the better you get.
كلما تدربت كلما تحسنت.

لا نستخدم (the) في الحالات التالية :

- 1 لا نستخدم (the) قبل الاسم الجمع إذا كنا نقصد المعنى العام :
- Rabbits are nice animals. (not : the rabbits)
(هذا يقصد الأرانب بشكل عام)
- 2 لا نستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الأماكن العامة إذا كانت تستخدم للفرض الأساسي منها :
prison / school / university / college / church / hospital / market / court / mosqueetc.
- He went to university. He studies medicine there.
- أما إذا استخدم المكان لفرض آخر فيأخذ (the) :
- Marwa went to the hospital to visit her uncle.
(She didn't go there as a patient)
- 3 غالبًا لا نستخدم (the) قبل الكلمات (bed / work / home) :
- He went to bed. - She left work. - I arrived home.

لا تستخدم (a - an - the) في الحالات التالية:

1 قبل أسماء المواد (المواد):

wood wool metal milk iron / plastic / meat etc

2 قبل أسماء القارات:

Asia Africa Europe North America etc.

3 قبل أسماء المدن:

Cairo / New York / London / Madrid etc.

4 قبل أسماء الوجبات:

- We have lunch at three o'clock. (Not: the lunch)

- لكن عند وصف الوجبة نستخدم (a/an/the):

- The breakfast I ate yesterday was horrible.

5 قبل أسماء اللغات:

Arabic / English / Chinese / Turkish etc.

- لاحظ أنه إذا جاءت بعد اسم اللغة كلمة (language) نستخدم (the):

the English language / the French language

6 قبل أسماء المواد الدراسية:

mathematics biology political science

7 قبل الألقاب المشهورة باسم شخص:

- King Ramses built a lot of temples (Not: the king Ramses ...)

- President Sadat was a great politician (Not: the President Sadat ...)

8 قبل كلمة (space) عندما تعني الفضاء:

- NASA sends spaceships into space.

- عندما نستخدم (the) قبل كلمة (space) فهي تعني مكان فارغ:

- The space in the class isn't enough for ten more students.

9 لا نستخدم (a/an/the) قبل الاسم المشهور برقم كبير له:

- I booked seat 25 in carriage 2.

General Exercise On Language

Apply

التدريبات التالية مرتبة بشكل متدرج تصاعدي حسب تصعبه هرمي

تلاوي

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

- ... sun has been shining all day.
a. A b. An c. The d. No article
- In today's lesson, we have known about a brave man. ... brave man's name is Hossam El-Rasheedy.
a. A b. An c. The d. No article

3. My grandma cannot walk easily, so she has to use ... stick.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

4. Salah is one of ... best footballers in the world.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

5. I've bought ... new computer.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

6. We're staying in ... room on the first floor of our large villa.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

7. The injured man was taken to a hospital. Doctors at ... hospital told him that he would be OK.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

8. My uncle was staying in a new hotel which overlooks ... Red Sea.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

9. This building is going to be ... tallest one in the area.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

10. His cousin is ... journalist. He works for a newspaper in Cairo.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

11. She wants to have ... holiday next to the sea.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

12. I had ... dream last night. In the dream, I was a bride in a white dress!
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

13. Adel is a space scientist. At the moment, he is studying ... moon.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

14. The best way for a person to get fit is to do exercises two or three times ... day.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

15. My friend is ... sportsman. He plays squash.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

16. He has ... meat and soup for lunch.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

17. Could you close ... front door, please?
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

18. There were no ... chairs, so we had to sit on the floor.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

19. There are two cars parked outside, ... expensive one and a cheap one.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

20. In my opinion, most important invention has been the mobile.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
21. The plane has made world a smaller place.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
22. Where is pen that I bought yesterday.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
23. Omar, man you and I met yesterday, is an honest man.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
24. Rodayna is very nice girl.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
25. mobile phone was invented in 1973.
a. A b. An c. The d. No article
26. The moon is round object that moves around a planet.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
27. We have a house with garden.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
28. When I leave school, I want to be tourist guide.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
29. It wasn't your fault. It was bad luck.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
30. She has Italian name.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
31. Rodayna gave me encouraging reply.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
32. When I was at school, I loved history.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
33. On our trip to America, we crossed Atlantic Ocean.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

2 Special cases

34. If the Earth had a blue moon and a white moon, I'd prefer white one.
a. a b. an c. the d. some
35. Egypt has unique location in the world.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

36. There is going to be 300-seat dining room on the second floor of the hotel.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
37. water is essential for all people.
a. A b. No article c. The d. An
38. There were two fashionable shirts in the shop. I chose one that was up to the latest fashion.
a. an b. some c. a d. the
39. Yesterday, my father bought useful story. It had useful pieces of advice to follow.
a. an b. a c. the d. no article
40. For lunch, I made an order for half chicken and some salad.
a. some b. a c. the d. no article
41. I think exams we have next week will be difficult.
a. the b. a c. an d. no article
42. My uncle will arrive on Sunday which is after my birthday.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
43. He gave me a pen and a ruler, but pen didn't work.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
44. When dealing with difficult situations, one should be patient.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
45. Come on, Rodayna. It is time to go to bed.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
46. We always go on holiday in July.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
47. They all went to lunch organized by their aunt.
a. any b. an c. the d. no article
48. I remember day when we went to the seaside.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
49. I want you to choose day we can meet.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
50. A new spaceship will be sent into space next month.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

51. ... space in my room is not enough for another bed.
a. a b. an c. The d. no article
52. The Sun went down ... horizon.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
53. Britain is ... European country.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
54. You will find the information you need at the top of ... page 41.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
55. Fear is ... universal weakness.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
56. I dislike ... towns, but I love the countryside.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
57. ... pomegranates (رمان) are good for health.
a. A b. An c. The d. no article
58. Look at ... oranges on that tree.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
59. My son has started ... school this year.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
60. My father went to ... school to meet my teachers.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
61. ... youth play important roles in the progress of all nations.
a. A b. An c. The d. No article
62. ... teachers in my school work hard.
a. A b. An c. The d. No article
63. For this job, you need ... experience with the computer.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
64. I asked ... professor Mohammed about his early life.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

3 Check your understanding

65. "Doctors help people who feel sick." This means
a. the doctors help people who are sick
b. doctors help the sick
c. a doctor helped the sick
d. the sick need help

66. "People should help those who are homeless." This means
a. people should help homeless
b. people should help a homeless
c. people should help the homeless
d. people should have a home
67. "This film is exciting." I mean that ...
a. this is an exciting film b. this is an excited film
c. this film makes me exciting d. this film is excited
68. "All lions are meat-eating animals." This is the same meaning as ...
a. the lions are meat-eaters b. the lions are meat-eating animals
c. the lions eat meat d. the lion is a meat-eating animal
69. "He is hard working." What does this mean?
a. He does work that is hard. b. He is hard-working person.
c. He is a hard-working person. d. He hardly does any work.
70. "I can speak English well." This means ...
a. I can speak an English well
b. I can speak English language well
c. I can speak an English language well
d. I can speak the English language well
71. "China is the largest country in Asia." This sentence tells us that ...
a. China is one of the largest countries in Asia
b. China is a largest country in Asia
c. China is Asia's largest country
d. China is one of Asia's largest countries
72. "Hard work makes you more successful." What does this mean?
a. If you work hardly, you will be more successful.
b. Unless you work hardly, you won't be more successful.
c. Hard work makes you less successful.
d. The harder you work, the more successful you are.

Part THREE

Part I

Vocabulary

• اختر الكلمة المناسبة من القائمة في الفقرة التالية. **تلوذ**
 المودورة في الودعة ولوجت به من المصاحف والى المصاحف لطلب العلم.

Key Vocabulary: Idioms & Collocations

• اختر المصردات الشوية في الفقرة التالية. **تلوذ**
 والمزيد من التدرجات في الفقرة المخصص لك في نهاية الفقرة.

blow a whistle	hold - held (v) (onto)	بشيت
branch (n)	know (ad)	مُتَنَفِّس
climb (ed) (v)	mark (ed) (v)	يُتَنَزَّه - يُتَنَزَّه
climb out of	marked (adj)	مُتَنَزَّه
close (to)	organise (d) (v)	يُنظِّم
count (n)	relax (ed) (v)	يسترخي
count (ed) (v)	rocky (adj)	صخري
discovery (n)	shore (n)	شاطئ
expression (n)	thought (n)	فكرة
fight-fought (v)	trust (ed) (n - v)	يثق - ثقة
forever (adv)	whistle (d) (n - v)	صفارة - يُصَفِّر

Exercise On Vocabulary Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
1. He fell off the horse and ... his arm.
 a. shouted b. whistled c. blew d. hurt
 2. The fox has the ability to ... high walls.
 a. build b. climb c. destroy d. guard
 3. You need to ... You look dead tired.
 a. work b. hurry c. relax d. excite
 4. Don't leave petrol ... to a cooker or there will be a fire.
 a. away b. close c. far d. distant
 5. Two of the sailors from the sinking boat managed to reach the ...
 a. sure b. ocean c. sea d. shore

6. Her facial ... changed once she heard of her success.
 a. expression b. experiment c. disease d. coast
7. The referee pointed to his ... , which means that the players can't play unless he blows it.
 a. whistle b. red card c. yellow card d. ear peas
8. It is necessary to talk in a ... voice when you are in a library.
 a. screaming b. shouting c. high d. low
9. I ... the students on the bus and found that we missed two of them.
 a. taught b. counted c. learnt d. shouted
10. You'll do better. We all ... you.
 a. doubt b. kill c. trust d. mark

Part II

Grammatical Hints

Giving instructions

1. إعطاء الأمر المثلث (الفعل) تستخدم الصيغة التالية :

Inf. المصدر +

- ex. - Stop.
 - Remember to do your homework.
 - Put your lunchbox in the bag.

إعطاء قوة للمعنى أو إعطاء نصيحة قوية للفرد تستخدم (Always) قبل الصيغة السابقة

- ex. - Always follow your parents' advice.

2. إعطاء الأمر المنفي (لا تفعل) تستخدم الصيغة التالية :

Don't - Never + Inf. المصدر +

- ex. - Don't Stop.
 - Don't forget to do your homework.
 - Never break the law.

3. يمكن وضع الفندقي (المخاطبة) في بداية أو نهاية الجملة كالتالي :

- ex. - Don't waste your time, Ahmed.
 - Ahmed, don't waste your time.

Indefinite pronouns

1. يتم استخدام فعل مفرد مع الكلمات التالية ولكن عند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير جمع :

(Someone / somebody - anyone / anybody - everyone / everybody - no one / nobody).

- ex. - Someone is knocking on the door. I'll see who they are.
 - Everybody has prepared themselves to the meeting.

ينطبق لضمير الغني على التسمية غير محددة الجنس التي تحمل التذكير وتناوب مثل
a child - a person - a teacher - a traveller ... etc.

ex. - A traveller has parked his car in front of my house. They must have entered the opposite restaurant.

يمكن استخدام اضمير مفرد مذكر مضافا اليه ضمير مفرد مؤنثا ليحل محل ضمير الجمع
ex. - Someone is knocking on the door. I'll see who he or she is.

يمكن استخدام اضمير مفرد مذكر فقط او ضمير مفرد مؤنث فقط في حالة معرفة الجنس الذي نتحدث عنه
ex. - This child will do better if he joins a school for boys only.

another

another + اسم مفرد

آخر / أخرى

ex. - We found another shop in a small street.
- I want another bag of macaroni, please.

another + (few - number: two, three, ...)

ex. - Give me another two days to finish the report.
- She has another few jobs to do.

other

other + اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد

آخر / آخرين

ex. - Ahmed likes helping other people.
- Any other knowledge will be available online.

- وتستخدم (other) أيضا بعد الكلمات الآتية :

the - some - every - each - many - any - no - two, three,etc.

ex. - Five chairs will be in the office. The other chairs will be moved to the teachers' room.
- Like any other child, Rodayna wants to play.

ضمير (أحد محل فاعل أو مفعول)

الأخرين

ex. - Some children like fish. Others prefer chicken.

compound adjectives with numbers

يمكن استخدام رقم وبعده تمييز مفرد ثم صفة وبعدها (-) كلمة
ex. - Omar is a forty-year-old man.

1 يمكن استخدام رقم وبعده تمييز مفرد وبعدها (-) كلمة مركبة لاسم يأتي بعدها
ex. - We're going on a two-day trip.

2 مع التسمية الدالة على مسافة يمكن استخدام رقم وبعده تمييز جمع ينتهي بـ -
ex. - My work is an hour's drive from here.

- We have three hours' walk every weekend.

3 في حالة وجود كلمة time بعد الكلمات السابقة نستخدم (s) في حالة المفرد و (s) في حالة الجمع
ex. - In two weeks' time, I will travel to Aswan.

own

on + (my - his - her - its - your - our - their) + own = alone
= without help بمفرده - دون مساعدة

ex. - I did the housework on my own.

= I did the housework alone / without help.

ملكه - خاصه by (my - his - her - its - your - our - their) + own

ex. - I have a car of my own.

right

be right to = have the right to محق في

ex. - She is right to ask for a break.

- She has the right to ask for a break.

Asking for and Giving Advice

Asking for Advice طلب النصيحة

Can you give me some advice about ...? 1 ... يمكنك أن تصحني بخصوص ...

Can I ask your advice about ...? 1 ... أيمكنني أن أسألك النصيحة بخصوص ...

What should I do about ...? 1 ... ما الذي يمكنني فعله فيما يتعلق بـ ...

Giving Advice إعطاء النصيحة

You should / shouldn't + inf. ... ألا ... ينبغي أن / ينبغي أن

You ought to / ought not to + inf. ... ألا ... ينبغي أن / ينبغي أن

If I were you, I would / wouldn't + inf. ... لو كنت مكانك ، (ما) كنت ...

You'd (had) better + inf. ... من الأفضل لك أن ...

I advise you (not) to ... ألا ... أنصحك أن / أنصحك أن

The best thing to do is (not) to ... ألا ... الأفضل شيء. تفعله هو أن / الأفضل شيء.

Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The two girls stopped talking to one another.
 - other
 - another
 - others
 - the others
- The police could arrest two of the robbers and shot one of them.
 - the other
 - others
 - another
 - else
- I'd like to know about Seif's desire to help ...
 - others
 - other
 - another
 - the other
- You can take this pen. I have one.
 - other
 - others
 - the other
 - another
- You can take this pen. I will use one.
 - other
 - others
 - the other
 - an other
- You can take this pen. I have two ones.
 - other
 - others
 - the other
 - another
- You can take this pen. I have two ones.
 - other
 - others
 - the other
 - another
- Some people like meat. ... like chicken or fish.
 - Other
 - Others
 - The other
 - Another
- Amir made this cupboard ... his own. I didn't help him.
 - from
 - off
 - of
 - on
- Amir has a cupboard ... his own. No one else uses it.
 - from
 - off
 - of
 - on
- You both should do this activity on ... own.
 - you
 - your
 - yours
 - yourselves
- A: Who ... joined the trip? B: I did.
 - two
 - else
 - too
 - either
- You ... right to slow down when you drive on these ups and downs.
 - are
 - is
 - has
 - have

- You ... the right to ask for help.
 - are
 - is
 - has
 - have
- ... sure your tablet is updated.
 - To make
 - Making
 - Make
 - Made
- Never ... your secrets to anybody.
 - telling
 - tell
 - told
 - to tell
- Rokaya is a nine- ... - old girl.
 - year
 - years
 - years'
 - year's
- Someone rang the doorbell. When I opened the door, ... there.
 - he was
 - she wasn't
 - they weren't
 - I wasn't
- Somebody ... taken my glasses.
 - have
 - has
 - is
 - are

Part III

Language Skills

1 Email Writing كتابة البريد الإلكتروني

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

تكملة

- * Write an email of about 150 words to your friend Reda about "Something that makes you stressed."

To : reda2020@elemoasser

From: aliselim@gmail.com

Subject: Something that makes me stressed!

Dear Reda,

How are you? I hope you are well. I'm writing to tell you about something stressful I have to face. I've started my secondary school recently and things aren't so easy or smooth as they used to be. I am supposed to work hard not only at school but at home as well.

It's completely new routine. The school subjects are not that easy. I meet new teachers and new classmates that I must get along with. I find it difficult to keep up with this new community yet not impossible. I made few friends anyway. However, I've got some problems with quite a few

students who are difficult somehow and the new subjects I have to study and understand. The lessons are so many that I can't get back home until late in the afternoon. What a nuisance!

In addition, the school has no room for activities which makes matters worse and as a result, most students get bored and even frustrated.

At home, life is not that easy one as it was when I was at prep school.

Parents argue with me to study all the time, there is no space for play or entertainment. They believe that entertainment or practising activities should be during summer holiday only.

Isn't it a problem? Send me your advice. I'm badly in need of your help. I'm waiting for your replay.

Yours,
Ali

2 Translation الترجمة

للمزيد من التمرينات ملحق المهارات. تنويه

1 Translate into Arabic :

1. When you have too many jobs to do without having some rest and entertainment, you feel stressed. That feeling kills the joy of life and the willingness to work.
2. Once you start to get used to your new life in a different place, your stress gradually disappears. At that time, you will start to find out the advantages of your new life.
3. There must be respect to the diversity of opinions and ideas. Different people have a variety of ideas and opinions that enrich life in a community.

2 Translate into English :

1. إن التعليم الجيد هو حجر الأساس لبناء مجتمع عصري يتمتع بالرخاء، فالأهم تتقدم بالعلم والثقافة والتخطيط السليم والعمل الجاد من كل المواطنين.
2. حياة أي إنسان لابد أن يكون له جانبان هما العمل الجاد والترفيه، فمنه لن نكون سعداء إلا بالترفيه ولن نكون ناجحين إلا بالعمل.
3. يخشى الكثير من الناس من الهدايا في كل شيء يفعلونه، فالهدايا دائما تكون صعبة وتحتاج إلى الكثير من المغامرة والثقة بالنفس.

Vocabulary related to translation texts مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والمقالات على الترتيب

adapt to	يتأقلم مع	joy	بهجة
bedrock	حجر الأساس	modern	عصري
by nature	بطبيعته	once	بمجرد أن
citizen	مواطن	prosperity	الرخاء
creature	كائن	self-confidence	الثقة بالنفس
enrich	يثرى	sociable	اجتماعي
entertainment	الترفيه	stress	الضغط
especially	خاصة	variety	عديد
fear	يخشى	willingness	الاستعداد - الرغبة
gradually	بالتدريج		

Part IV Just for Advanced level

للمتقدمين فقط

هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب المتقدمين فقط

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

bully

- bully (n) المظلم
 - We called the police to arrest the bullies.
- bully (ied) (v) يُظلم - يبتز
 - Older children usually bully younger or weaker ones.
- bully (... into) (v) يبتز - يُلوم
 - The manager bullied me into leaving my job.
- bullying (n) البلطجة
 - Bullying is a big problem in slums. المناطق العشوائية.

cheat

- cheat (at / in) (v) يخش
 - He used a mobile to cheat in the test.
- cheat (v) يخدع - يحتال على - يخون
 - He was arrested because he cheated an old woman out of her money.
- cheat (n) غشاش - نصاب
 - Don't trust this cheat.
- cheating (n) غش - نصب
 - Cheating is a crime.

connect

- connect (to / with) (v) ربط - يربط
- Connect the charger to the mobile, please. (الشارج) (إلى) (الموبايل، من فضلك).
- connect (with) (v) يربط - يكون على علاقة به
- This parliament member connects with his voters. (الناخبين).
- connected (to / with / by) (adj) متصل به / مرتبط - على علاقة به
- The computer is connected to the internet.
- connection (to / with / between) = link (n) اتصال - ارتباط - علاقة
- The connection between the computer and the printer has failed.

- لاحظ الملاحظات السابقة

- have a connection to / with على علاقة به - متصل به
- see a connection between ... and ... يربط بين ... و ...
- make a connection يربط بين - يوجد علاقة
- stop a connection ينهي العلاقة - يفصل

address

- address (n) عنوان السكن أو العمل
- He changed his address.
- address (n) خطبة رسمية - كلمة رسمية
- The Prime Minister's address was clear and direct. (واضح ومباشر) رئيس الوزراء
- address (v) يتعزّن - يضع عنوان
- He addressed the letter and sent it by post.
- address (to) (v) مخاطب - يوجه الحديث أو الطلب رسميًا إلى
- Don't address these tourists in French. They're English.
- You must address the application to the manager. (طلب الالتحاق)
- address (by) (v) مخاطب ... به (الاسم / اللقب)
- It is impolite to address an older person by their name.
- address ... as (v) مخاطب ... كـ / يُلقب ... به
- Why do you address him as Mr not Dr?
- address (v) يلقى خطبة أو كلمة
- The President addressed the parliament. (البرلمان)
- address (v) يناقش - يلقى الضوء على
- This essay does not address the real causes of the problem.
- address yourself to (v) يتذكر لي كيفية التعامل مع موقف أو مشكلة
- We need to address ourselves to the water pollution problem.
- addressee (n) المُخاطَب - المُتلقّي
- Make sure that the addressees have received the letters.

debate

- debate (over / about / between) (n) مناقشة / مناقشة
- The new law is still under debate in the parliament.
- There's a debate over the solutions of the traffic problem.
- debate (with) (v) يتباحث / ساقش - يفكر بحرص
- The new law is still debated in the parliament.
- He debates with his friends on how to spend the weekend.

nurse

- nurse (n) ممرضة - ممرض
- She is still a student nurse in the local health care centre.
- nurse (d) (v) يمرض مريض - يمرض
- He was nursed by a good woman called Hana.
- nurse (d) (v) تعمل بالممرضين
- She nurses in a big hospital in Cairo.
- nurse (d) (v) ترضع - تقوم بإرضاع
- Mothers nurse their babies until they are two.
- nurse (d) (v) يربص
- Babies nurse until they are two.
- nursing (n) التمريض
- She studies nursing at Assuit University.

police

- police (n) الشرطة
- The police have arrested some criminals.
- لاحظ: الاسم (police) دائما جمع، بأحد فعل جمع: فرض القانون
- The police are responsible for law enforcement. (لاحظ الملاحظات السابقة)
- اتصل بالشرطة / يستدعي الشرطة
- tell / inform the police يُبلغ الشرطة
- report ... to the police ... يُبلغ الشرطة عن ...
- police (d) (v) يمرض الأمن والانضباط - يتحقق من تطبيق الضوابط والمعايير
- The officer asked for more soldiers to police the city centre.
- policing (n) فرض الأمن والانضباط - التحقق من تطبيق الضوابط والمعايير
- Policing is the responsibility of the government.

UNIT 4

2 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix	Function	Examples
dis-	عكس	disagree(d)
extra-	خارج	extraordinary
pre-	بادئة	prefix
semi-	نصف نهائي	semi-final

3 Suffixes مقاطع لاحقة

Suffix	Function	Examples
-hood	تكون اسم	boyhood
-tion	تكون اسم	pronunciation information production
-ess	تكون اسم مؤنث	hostess waitress
-ion	تكون اسم	connection communication population
-ship	تكون اسم	friendship

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
- Getting the Nobel Prize was the of Naguib Mahfouz's life.
a addressee b project
c highlight d punctuation
 - He is still what to do. It isn't easy for him to decide.
a debating b preferring
c expressing d believing
 - The flowers and plants on my balcony have been bought from a nearby
a contraction b concern
c nursing d nursery

- It is the right of a baby to
a contain b nurse c fight d host
- The use of guns and other weapons must be
a connected b closed c policed d listed
- It is known to all of us that are usually cowards. They only look strong against the weak.
a bullying b bullies c teammates d friendships
- One can say that one or takes practice.
a sells b makes c gives d does
- A secretary is supposed to have the ability to with all staff members.
a police b pronounce c connect d salute
- We have to ourselves to the problem of water shortage.
a address b allow c list d practise
- I used the cursor to the title of the essay.
a experience b decide c inform d highlight

No. Answer & Explanation

No.	Answer	Explanation
1.	c	الاسم (highlight) بمعنى الجزء الأبرز) هو الاختيار الذي يتوافق مع مضمون الجملة
2.	a	العمل (debating) بمعنى (يناقش / يفكر في) هو الذي يتناغم مع معنى الجملة
3.	d	الاسم (nursery) بمعنى (مشتل) هو الاختيار الصحيح
4.	b	العمل (nurse) بمعنى (يضع) هو الاختيار الذي يناسب الجملة
5.	c	العمل (policed) بمعنى (يضبط / يسيطر على / يقن) هو الاختيار الذي يناسب الجملة
6.	b	الاسم (bullies) بمعنى (يلطخ) هو الاختيار الصحيح حسب سياق الجملة
7.	d	كل من الفعلين (does / takes) يكونان متلازمة لفظية مع الاسم (practice) ليكون المعنى (يقوم بالتدريب)
8.	c	العمل (connect) بمعنى (يتواصل / يجيد التعامل) هو الاختيار الذي يناسب الجملة
9.	a	التعبير (address ourselves to) بمعنى (نذكر في كيفية التعامل مع) مما يجعل الفعل (address) هو الاختيار الصحيح
10.	d	العمل (highlight) بمعنى (يبرز / يحدد) هو الاختيار الذي يناسب الجملة

Advanced Exercise on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- The dead man's include no will
a paper b a paper c papers d newspaper
- Everyone should depend on
a itself b himself c herself d themselves
- Be patient, please. We will talk about the matter in just bit.
a no article b the c an d a
- The poor from high prices.
a suffers b suffer c was suffering d has suffered
- A: How television do you watch a week? B: About ten hours.
a much b many items of c many d few items of
- He was sent to prison for a year for stealing only two
a slices of clothing b pieces of clothing c clothes d clothings
- I think you can't sit in this row as there isn't room for you.
a no article b the c an d a
- Mandela was in prison for before he became president.
a some time b any time c duration d years' of time
- The new digital camera is a very complex
a item of technology b technology c technology pieces d bar of technology
- I can't go out with you today. I've got too and it all has to be finished by nine o'clock.
a many tasks b much work c many jobs d many pieces of work

Answer & Explanation

- c كلمة (papers) صحيفة في صيغة الجمع لأنها تعني (وثائق / مستندات) وليس (ورق)
- d أول الناجح (everyone) من الممكن أن يكون مذكر أو مؤنث لأن الضمير الذي يعود عليه هو (themselves)
- d كلمة (bit) تعني (وقت قصير) هي اسم مفرد معدود يبدأ بحرف ساكن فتسبقه أداة التنكير (a)
- b الصفة (poor) التي يسبقها (the) ولا يسبقها اسم موصوف تعتبر اسم جمع وتأخذ فعل يتفق مع الجمع
- a السؤال هنا عن كم مشاهدة وليس عدد الأجهزة بذليل أن كلمة (television) لم يضاف لها (s) الجمع
- b الاختيار الوحيد الصحيح لغوياً هو (pieces of clothing) لأن كلمة (clothing) غير معدودة فتستخدم قبلها لفظ التجزئة (pieces) ولا يمكن استخدام (slices) التي تعني (شرائح)، كما أن كلمة (clothes) لا تستخدم بعد رقم
- a كلمة (room) بمعنى (مكان / فراغ / مجال) هي اسم غير معدود ولا تستخدم قبله أداة في هذا السياق
- a كلمة (time) هنا تعني (مرة) وهي اسم غير معدود بهذا المعنى ولا تستخدم قبلها أداة في هذا السياق
- a بعد الظرف والصفة (very complex) الموصوفين بأداة التنكير (a) لابد من استخدام لفظ تجزئة مناسب قبل كلمة (technology) وهي اسم غير معدود
- b الضمير (it) بعد (and) يجعل من الضروري استخدام اسم مفرد أو غير معدود



Part One

• **MRQ :** Choose the TWO correct answers out of the four options given :

1. He was asked to give ... on the issue of pollution. (12-22)
 a. information b. advice c. problem d. debate
2. I can't send an email because the laptop is not ... to the internet. (12-22)
 a. hacked b. connected c. detached d. linked

• **MCQ :** Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. It is taken for ... that bullying is a bad behaviour which we all must change. (12-22)
 a. denial b. granted c. refusal d. decided
4. No doubt that there is a ... between smoking and cancer. (12-22)
 a. communication b. contact c. collection d. connection
5. The use of guns and other weapons must be ... (12-22)
 a. listed b. closed c. policed d. connected
6. The names of the top ten students are announced on the ... (12-22)
 a. noticeboard b. chat board c. guard room d. changing room
7. ... one way road is needed to be established on the west bank of Aswan. (12-22)
 a. A b. An c. The d. No article
8. Students often need ... help when they are at school. (12-22)
 a. a b. an c. the d. some
9. ... people live in the country today than in the past (12-22)
 a. Much b. Fewer c. Little d. A little
10. ... women play a very important role in developing their countries. (12-22)
 a. A b. An c. The d. No article
11. ... River Nile is the longest river in the world. (12-22)
 a. A b. An c. The d. No article

12. France and England are European countries. (12-22)

- a. a b. an c. the d. No article
13. He doesn't have money. (12-22)
 a. many b. few c. a lot d. much
14. Two injured persons were taken to hospital. (12-22)
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
15. He played well., he lost the match. (12-22)
 a. Luckily b. Luck c. Fortunately d. Unfortunately
16. They sent "SOS" when the ship began to sink. (12-22)
 a. no article b. a c. an d. many

• Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Dolphins have become a popular attraction at zoos in recent years. They are more and more interesting than lions and tigers because they are livelier and perform tricks like circus animals. But, although they are more willing to cooperate with the trainer than other mammals in captivity, they get bored if they are asked to do the same trick twice. This is one reason for believing they are very intelligent.

Dolphins are regarded as the friendliest creatures in the sea and stories of them about helping drowning sailors have been common since the Romans. We now have more reliable evidences of their usefulness than sailors' tales. In South Africa, two dolphins have been trained to help swimmers in difficulties and drive sharks away from the beach. The more we learn about dolphins, the more we realize that they are better organized and their society is more complex than people have previously imagined. They look after other dolphins when they are ill, care for pregnant mothers and protect the weak as we do.

Some scientists have suggested that dolphins have a language system which is similar to bats one and man cannot hear. It is much more probable that they have an echo-location. Could any of these mammals be more intelligent than man? The question cannot be answered.

17. Dolphins are
 a. as intelligent as man b. more intelligent than man
 c. more intelligent than sea animals d. the most intelligent of all

- 18 The synonym of the word "popular" is
 strange unknown common different
- 19 The underlined word "they" refers to
 sharks dolphins bats elephants
- 20 The antonym of the word "intelligent" is
 stupid smart creative wise
- 21 Dolphins get bored when they are asked to do same trick
 once only just once twice
- 22 Dolphins look after other dolphins when they aren't
 well sick ill bad
- 23 Dolphins are more interesting than lions and tigers because
 a. they are livelier
 b. they don't cooperate with their trainer
 c. they perform tricks like circus animals
 d. they drown sailors
 e. they organise tricks

Part Two

1. Translate into Arabic :
 It is high time people enjoyed peace. We have had enough of wars, so we look forward to solving problems through talks as civilized peoples do.
 (النموذج - التمرين اللغوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
2. Translate into English :
 يساعدنا السفر في التعرف على ثقافات ولغات وعادات المجتمعات الأخرى. كما أن السفر يعطينا الفرصة للاشتعاع بأشياء غير موجودة في بيئتنا المحلية.
 (النموذج - التمرين اللغوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
3. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on :
 Friendship

تأويله • للتدريب على أشكال مختلفة من قطع الفهم بنظام أسئلة (MCQ) بنك الأسئلة

Communication

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

58 pages 52 61 WB pages 116 121

- Reading :
 A science article on how we may communicate in the future
- Writing :
 An essay on IoT; a blog on how to stay safe online
- Listening :
 A radio discussion about the dangers of the internet

- Speaking :
 Giving a presentation
- Language :
 Future forms will be going to and present continuous
- Life skills :
 Self-management, Decision making



Part I

Vocabulary

• لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدا ومراجعتها بانتظام (الواجبة حفظها من الامتحان)

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

app = application	تطبيق (رسمي)	Internet of Things (IOT)	إنترنت الأشياء
break into	يتغلب	link(ed) (n - v)	رابط - يربط
communication	اتصال - تواصل	security(n)	الأمن
connect(ed) (v)	يربط	smartphone(n)	الهاتف الذكي
hack(ed) (n - v)	يتغيب - يتغيب	technology(n)	التكنولوجيا
hacking (n)	اختراق - القرصنة	the internet (n)	الإنترنت

• من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية خاصة المفردات التي في البيت - ومراجعتها بانتظام

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

accident(n)	حادثة	introduce(d) (v)	يُقدم / يطرح (موضوع/ فكرة)
book(ed) (v)	يحجز	lighting(n)	الإضاءة
business(es)(n)	شركات	major(adj)	كبير
camping(n)	الإقامة في معسكر	management(n)	إدارة
cause(d) (n - v)	سبب - يُسبب	medicine(n)	الطب - دواء
control(ed) (v)	يتحكم في	network(ed) (n - v)	شبكة - يتصل عن طريق
create(d) (v)	يخلق / يبتكر	online (adj / adv)	الشبكة
creative(adj)	مبدع - خلاق		تصل بالإنترنت - على
criminal (n adj)	مجرم - إجرامي		الإنترنت
develop(ed) (v)	يتطور	organisation(n)	المؤسسات
device(n)	جهاز	particular (adj)	محدد - معين
driverless(adj)	بدون سائق	petrol(n)	البنزين
electric(adj)	كهربائي	possibility(n)	إمكانية
electronic(adj)	إلكتروني	power station(n)	محطات توليد الطاقة
empty(ied) (v - adj)	يُفْرغ - فارغ	recent(adj)	حديث
evidence(n)	دليل	rubbish(n)	القمامة
expert (n - adj)	خبير	safe(adj)	أمن
flexible(adj)	مرن	self-management(n)	إدارة الذات

heal(n)	التدفع	survey(n)	بحث استقصائي
illegally (adv)	بشكل غير قانوني	system(n)	نظام
imagine(d) (v)	يتخيل	tablet (n)	كمبيوتر لوحي
intent(n)	نية	use(d) (n - v)	استخدام - يستخدم
steal - stole - stolen (v)	يسرق	worldwide (adj)	عالمي / دولي

3 Definitions تعريفات

تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من بونج التعلم المستهدفة - هام جدا

Memorise	Understand
app(n)	a computer programme designed to perform / do a specific function
communication(n)	systems to send and receive information
connected(adj)	when more than one thing is joined or linked
hack(ed) (n - v)	to break into a computer system illegally
the internet(n)	a worldwide computer network
link(n)	a place in an electronic document that takes you to another page or website
security(n)	protecting a place or person
smartphone(n)	a device that can connect to the internet
technology(n)	the use of science to create devices for everyday use

Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- If someone into a computer system, they break into it to get secret information.
 - contacts
 - communicates
 - hacks
 - scams

لكون إلكتروني - أحد هذه موهبي بيتا ٢٠٢٢

2. Karim's new smart phone has a lot of
 a clouds b liquids c medicines d apps
3. A thief broke the old man's house yesterday
 in b into c onto d on
4. The IOT is internet of things.
 refer to b abbreviate to c short for d abbreviation
5. The has made information exchange very easy.
 a satnav b app c advert d internet
6. The of the manager's ideas to the staff is important.
 a communicate b communication c communications d communicative
7. The of citizens is the responsibility of the police.
 a secure b insecure c security d insecurity
8. Your computer has very important information. Protect it against
 a hack b hacking c hacker d hacked
9. If you have a/an, you can surf the internet on it.
 a smartphone b technology c advert d online
10. Modern has affected all fields positively.
 a password b link c internet d technology
11. My laptop is to the internet through Wi-Fi.
 a commented b communicated c connected d contacted

2 Important Vocabulary

12. Sugar is a cause of tooth decay.
 a major b minor c remote d distant
13. Self- is necessary to the success of any person.
 a manage b manager c managed d management
14. In the past, people burnt wood for and cooking.
 a expert b power c heating d lighting
15. A team of researchers are doing a/an
 a network b organisation c evidence d survey
16. I think a car is not safe to travel in.
 a modern b driverless c strong d big

17. Watching too many videos the battery of the mobile
 a imagines b steals c empties d charges
18. New laws have been to stop cyberbullying.
 a taken b warned c done d introduced
19. Mr Ashraf is a/an in teaching English
 a expert b power c heating d lighting
20. Electricity is produced in stations.
 a expert b power c heating d lighting
21. I have strong that this thief has stolen my motorbike.
 a network b organisation c evidence d survey
22. I two train tickets to Cairo.
 a tested b rang c embarrassed d booked
23. Small help young people to have jobs and start their lives.
 a businesses b business c diaries d messages
24. In some situations, you should behave in a/an way to avoid
 making matters worse.
 a flexible b electric c electronic d recet
25. El-Moasser is published by a great educational
 a network b organisation c evidence d survey
26. The smart mobile is a wonderful
 a website b device c blog d helmet
27. "The battery is empty." In this sentence, the word 'empty' is a/an
 a noun b verb c adjective d adverb
28. The internet is a/an that connects millions of computers and
 other smart devices all over the world.
 a network b intention c evidence d survey
29. I like this writer because he has a/an style.
 a recent b electric c electronic d creative
30. Reading in poor affects your sight badly.
 a expert b power c heating d lighting

3 Definitions

31. are systems to send and receive information.
 Possibilities b Organizations
 Accounts c Communications
32. is the use of science to create devices for everyday use.
 Technology b Management c Evidence d Document
33. When more than one thing is joined or linked, they are
 created b developed c connected d performed
34. The is a worldwide computer network.
 a security b internet c presentation d environment
35. A is device that can connect to the internet.
 web b smartphone c network d blog
36. A / An is a computer programme designed to perform/do a specific function.
 a satnav b advert c app d IOT
37. To is to break into computer illegally.
 a hack b download c upload d lock
38. is things that are done to protect a place or person.
 a Danger b Hacking c Technology d Security
39. A/An is a place in an electronic document that takes you to another page or website.
 a. blog b website c link d. online

Part II Vocabulary Study

تدوين: ساعدتكم على التوثيق بمستويات عن طريق استكمال هذا الجزء فسيبدأ بشكل جيد وحل تدريجاً

1 Verbal Collocations

check	my satnav	أتحقق من التوجيه بالقمر الصناعي	collect	someone	بسطح/يوصل بسيارة
make	life better	تجعل الحياة أفضل	information		جميع معلومات
	a decision	أأخذ قرار	lose	money	أفقد مال
be	known as	يكون معروف كـ	send	messages to	أرسل ...

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
app	تطبيق application
book	يحجز reserve
recent	حديث new, modern, late

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	المعنى
correct	صحيح	incorrect, wrong	غير صحيح
major	كبير - هام - رئيسي	minor, little, unimportant	صغير - غير هام
online	متصل بالإنترنت - على الإنترنت	offline, disconnected	غير متصل بالإنترنت - ليس على الإنترنت
send	يرسل	receive	يستقبل

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

app	
apply(led) (v)	يطبق - يتقدم - It is difficult to apply this design. - She applied for a job.
application (n)	طلب انضمام - I sent my application by mail.
application = app (n)	تطبيق - The application of this design is difficult
applied (adj)	تطبيقي - We study applied maths in secondary two.
communication	
communicate(d) (v)	يتواصل - يتواصل - We communicate with foreign customers in English.
communication (n)	اتصال - تواصل - We use English as the language of communication with customers.

connect	
connect(ed) (v) يربط - يوصل - يتصل	- You need to connect to the internet to send the file.
connection (n) اتصال - صلة / علاقة	- Connection to the internet is necessary to send the file.
connected (adj) متصل	- You need to be connected to the internet to send the file.
hack	
hack(ed) (v) يخترق - يُقرص	- Protect your computer or it will be hacked into.
hacking (n) اختراق - القرصنة	- Protect your computer from hacking .
hacker (n) قرصان إلكتروني	- Protect your computer from hackers .
hack (n) عملية قرصنة	- Some important files have been stolen in a hack .
hacked (adj) مُخترق - مُقرص	- Our computer system is hacked .

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

as often as I can كثيرا لأقصى حد ممكن	on all our flights على جميع رحلاتنا الجوية
be able to يكون قادر على	on the computer / smartphone على الكمبيوتر / الهاتف الذكي
be based on guesswork فانه على لظن	on the moon على القمر
be connected to يكون مُصل أو مُرتبط بـ	particular tasks مهام مُعينة
be known as معروف كـ	possible problems مشاكل محتملة
daily life الحياة اليومية	posting photos إرسال الصور
decision making صناعة القرار - اتخاذ القرار	talking to one another يتحدثون إلى بعضهم البعض
flying taxi التاكسي لاهوائي	the outside world العالم الخارجي
major security problems مشكلة أمنية كبيرة	true for you صحيحة بالنسبة لك
no longer لم يعد	with no evidence دون دليل
no more driving لا مزيد من القيادة	worldwide web الشبكة الدولية

5 Verb - Preposition فعل - حرف جر

break into يخترق - يُقرص	hack into يعيش على - يتفدى على
communicate with يتصل بـ / يتواصل مع	live on يسرق ... من
connect ... to يربط ... بـ	steal ... from (dis) advantage to/of ميزة / عيب لـ
connect to يتصل بـ	

7 Clear the confusion تخطئ الفارق

app = application	
• app = application تطبيق (برنامج يقوم بعمل معين على الكمبيوتر أو الهاتف)	
- Google play is full of free apps / applications.	
• application طلب التحاق (بنادي أو جامعة أو وظيفة ... إلخ)	
- To join this club, fill in this application form.	
communicate - contact	
• communicate يتصل / يتواصل (عن طريق اللاسلكي / الهاتف / الرسائل ... إلخ)	
- I usually communicate with my friends by phone.	
• contact يتصل بـ / يتواصل مع (عن طريق الهاتف / الرسائل ... إلخ لطلب أو إعطاء معلومة)	
- When I saw the smoke, I contacted the fire brigade.	
security - safety	
• security الأمن / التأمين (يتعلق بحماية الأشخاص والممتلكات)	
- The match was postponed for security reasons.	
• safety الآمان (عدم الخوف وعدم وجود خطر)	
- The airline is taking steps to ensure safety on its aircraft.	

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

- MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :
- Something that is recent is
a. late b. ancient c. modern
d. old e. traditional
 - To have a Facebook account, you have to download and install Facebook on your phone.
a. ad b. app c. population
d. application e. advert

- MCQ: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
- Decision _____ needs knowledge and experience.
a doing b having c making d saying
 - I don't know where I am. I'll _____ my satnav.
a stay b check c go d take
 - It is important for a manager to _____ his ideas to his staff.
a communicate b communications c communicative d communicable
 - _____ help some people work from home.
a Communicate b Communication c Communications d Communicative
 - I don't know how he _____ passwords.
a hack b hacking c hacker d hacks
 - The police forces broke _____ the cave and arrested the criminals.
a in b out c into d onto
 - I have the latest applications _____ my smartphone.
a at b from c to d on
 - The thief stole a lot of money _____ a supermarket.
a of b from c with d for
 - I connected his absence _____ from school _____ his illness.
a at b on c by d to
 - What is true _____ you may be wrong from my point of view.
a as b of c for d at
 - Someone has hacked _____ my Facebook account and posted false news about me.
a into b from c of d about
 - There're some disadvantages _____ modern technology.
a into b to c on d a & c
 - I handed my _____ form to the secretary.
a app b application c apply d a & b
 - She _____ me about the time of the meeting.
a communicated b attached c connected d contacted

1. Reading Tests

A. The Internet of Things

(SB page 52)

1. Linking⁽¹⁾ the world

Communication⁽²⁾ is no longer⁽³⁾ about people talking to one another, but about machines⁽⁴⁾ talking to machines. This is known as⁽⁵⁾ the Internet of Things (IOT).⁽⁶⁾ Technology⁽⁷⁾ is developing⁽⁸⁾ so fast that experts⁽⁹⁾ believe everyone will be connected to⁽¹⁰⁾ the IOT in a few years.



2. Connecting our homes

Many things in our own homes are going to be connected to the IOT. Already⁽¹¹⁾, people can control⁽¹²⁾ their heating⁽¹³⁾ and lighting⁽¹⁴⁾ from their phones, but in the future computers will make the decisions⁽¹⁵⁾ for us. They'll even be able to say when the rubbish⁽¹⁶⁾ bins need to be emptied⁽¹⁷⁾ and control how much water we use!

3. No more driving

Cars can already connect to the internet using smartphones,⁽¹⁸⁾ but imagine⁽¹⁹⁾ if you can get a driverless⁽²⁰⁾ car to come and collect⁽²¹⁾ you using an app⁽²²⁾ on your phone. All driverless cars will be electric⁽²³⁾ and much cleaner⁽²⁴⁾ than petrol⁽²⁵⁾ ones. Experts think our roads will be safer⁽²⁶⁾ as there will be fewer accidents⁽²⁷⁾ using driverless cars.

4. Possible problems

Many people don't think IOT is safe enough yet.⁽²⁸⁾ Computers collect information about people and businesses⁽²⁹⁾ which criminals⁽³⁰⁾ can steal⁽³¹⁾. They use this information to hack⁽³²⁾ into organisations⁽³³⁾ like hospitals, power stations⁽³⁴⁾ and airports, and cause⁽³⁵⁾ major⁽³⁶⁾ security problems⁽³⁷⁾.

Check Vocabulary

- الاتصال
- تواصل / التحدث بـ
- لا يزال
- تحدث
- مضغوط
- تحدثت الآلة
- التكنولوجيا
- تتطور
- الطبيب
- متصل بـ
- بالصحن
- يتصلهم في
- التخزين
- الإنترنت
- القرارات
- التحكم
- يترج
- القرارات المتخذة
- يتناول
- مكون مستقل
- يختصر - يجمع
- تطبيق
- كهربائي
- أفضل
- البنزين
- أكثر أماناً
- جولات
- حتى الآن
- المركبات
- موتورين
- جسدي
- مخاطر
- المستشعرات
- مخطط المخطط
- سحب
- إلكتروني / رقمي
- مشاكل أمنية

2 Listening tasks

- A. Boy: I don't think we'll ever live on the moon. (SB page 34)
 Carl: Lots of people are going to study online in the future.
 Boy: Did you know that in 2039 the worldwide web will be 50 years old?
 Girl: I can't find the restaurant. I'll check my satnav.
 Boy: My mum is buying a new flexible smartphone next week.

3 Video script section

Sometimes teenagers experience⁽¹⁾ bullying⁽²⁾ because they look different, have different abilities⁽³⁾ or different opinions⁽⁴⁾ and experiences.

If you think someone is being bullied⁽⁵⁾, what should you do?

Parents and teachers are there to give advice⁽⁶⁾ when bullying happens. If you know someone is being bullied, you should tell the teacher. You can also offer⁽⁷⁾ to help the person tell their parents.

You can keep a note⁽⁸⁾ of any bullying you see so that you have plenty of information⁽⁹⁾ to tell your teacher. The teacher can then talk to the bully⁽¹⁰⁾ about everything they have done.

Be kind to the person who is being bullied. Make sure⁽¹¹⁾ that they know you support them and do not like the bully's behaviour⁽¹²⁾. Spend time talking and socialising⁽¹³⁾ with them to help them build new friendships⁽¹⁴⁾. Invite them to join your friends.

Agree with your friends that you will make it clear to the bully that you do not like their behaviour.

اطلب من الطلاب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإلقاء الأسئلة التالية عليهم

1. What can you do to help yourself remember what the bully has done?
2. How can you help a person who is being bullied?
3. What can you do with your friends to help stop the bully?

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يجرب
- (2) القهر
- (3) قدرات
- (4) آراء
- (5) يتم التنمر عليه
- (6) يعطي نصيحة
- (7) يعرض
- (8) يحول ملاحظات
- (9) معلومات كثيرة
- (10) المتنمر
- (11) تأكد من
- (12) سلوك
- (13) يشارك اجتماعياً
- (14) صداقات

Part IV Language

Future Forms

1 The "will" Future

Formation التكوين

يتكون المستقبل البسيط أو (will + inf.) في هذه الصيغة في المبني للمعلوم من:
 Subject فاعل + will / shall + Inf. ...
 في الجمل الخبرية المبنية

- لاحظ استخدام (will) مع كل الضمائر ويمكن استخدام (shall) مع (I / we) فقط.

- ex. - I will (shall) help you do your homework.
 - Nada will be four next March.

2 عند النفي

Subject فاعل + will not (won't) / shall not (shan't) + Inf. ...

- ex. - We won't be ready before he comes back.
 - Ahmed won't attend the party.

3 عند السؤال بـ "هل...؟"

Will / Shall + subject فاعل + Inf.?

- ex. - Will you wait for the bus? - Yes, I will (wait for the bus).
 - No, I won't (wait for the bus).

4 عند السؤال بـ "كلمة استفهام...؟"

Question word أداة استفهام + will / shall + Subject فاعل + Inf.?

- ex. - When will you go to bed? - What will they do next?

5 يتكون المستقبل البسيط المبنى للمجهول من:

Object المفعول + will / shall + be + p.p.

- ex. - A camera will be bought (by Rodayna) tomorrow.

Mini Test 1 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She will ... 21 next Monday.
 a am b is c be d being
2. show me your new tablet?
 a You will b What will you c You won't d Will you
3. show me on your tablet?
 a You will b What will you c You won't d Will you

UNIT 5

- a I think he will punish
c won't punish
b will be punished
d is punishing

Uses الاستخدامات

- التعبير عن الحقائق المستقبلية الأحداث ليس الحاضر أو رغبته أو إرادته دخل فيها
- ex. - It's my birthday next Tuesday. I'll be 17.
- The school will be ten years old this year.
- التعبير عن قرار سريع أرد فعل لحظي وقت الكلام
- ex. - Oh, that's the doorbell. I'll open it.
- التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلا في حالة عدم وجود دليل ويمكن في هذه الحالة ان تبدأ الجملة بعبارات تحتوي على أفعال مثل :
- think / expect / hope / أمل / be sure / متأكد / be afraid / يخشى
يظن / يفترض / suppose / يتساءل / wonder
- ex. - I expect Lucy and Jim will stay for dinner.
- I think it will rain.
ومن الممكن ان يصاحب ذلك بعض الظروف مثل :
- ex. - Perhaps I'll go home early today.
- She will probably refuse to take any money.
- عند عرض عمل شيء أو تقديم خدمة أو الدعوة
- ex. - You look very thirsty. I'll get you a cold drink.
- عند طلب خدمة :
- ex. - Will you let me use your mobile, please?
- التعبير عن الوعود :
- ex. - My father has promised that we will spend a month in Sharm El-Sheikh.
- لوجهه لهدايا :
- ex. - Do your homework or I'll punish you.

2 The going to + Inf. form

- في الجمل العائنة
- Subject فاعل + am / is / are + going to + Inf.
- ex. - Mohammed is going to play tennis.
- I'm going to study medicine.
- عند التنبؤ
- Subject فاعل + am not / is not (isn't) / are not (aren't) + going to + Inf.
- ex. - Walid isn't going to play squash.
- عند السؤال
- Am / is / Are + Subject فاعل + going to + Inf. ?
- ex. - Is Rodayna going to attend the meeting?
- Yes, she is (going to attend the meeting).
- No, she isn't (going to attend the meeting).
- السؤال ب - كلمة استفهام :
- Question word + am / is / are + Subject فاعل + going to + Inf. ?
- ex. - Where are you going to spend the summer holiday?
- في صيغة المبني للمجهول
- Object المفعول + am / is / are + going to + be + P.P.
- ex. - Tennis is going to be played (by Ali).

Mini-Test 2

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
- The Ashrafs the next summer holiday in Alexandria.
a will be spent b going to spend
c are going to be spent d are going to spend
 - the office ?
a When are you going to leave b You are going to leave
c Are you going to be left d You are going to be left

UNIT 5

3. This man is going to send the letter to prison for this crime.
 a. is going to send
 b. going to send
 c. will send

Uses الاستخدامات

التعبير عن الخطط الشخصية المسبقة "plans"

- ex. - I am going to decorate my house.
 = I have planned to decorate my house.
 = I have made a plan to decorate my house.

التعبير عن النية (intend / intention) فعل شيء في المستقبل

- ex. - He is going to study medicine at university.
 = He intends to study medicine at university.
 = He has the intention to study medicine at university.

التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلاً في حالة وجود دليل أو بؤنة بالضرورة مع صيغة "going to"

- ex. - His leg is broken. He is going to have an operation.

- وبهذا المعنى يمكن استخدام "going to" بعد أفعال مثل

be sure / be afraid / believe / think

- ex. - Mum is very ill. I think she is going to see a doctor.

- لاحظ أن الصفات الشخصية لا تعد دليلاً وتستخدم مع (will).

- ex. - He will win the running race. He's very fast.

وتستخدم أيضاً للتعبير عما سيحدث في المستقبل إذا كان هناك قرار مسبق وبمثل على ذلك كلمة

decided / have decided / made a decision / made up ... mind

- ex. - He is going to have lunch outdoors.
 = He has decided to have lunch outdoors.
 = He has made a decision to have lunch outdoors.
 = He has made up his mind to have lunch outdoors.

وتستخدم أيضاً للتعبير عن أشياء على وشك الحدوث

be going to + inf. = be about to + inf. + علي وشك

- ex. - I'm going to leave right now.
 = I'm about to leave.

3 The Present Continuous for Future Arrangements

Affirmation الإثبات	Subj. + am / is / are + (inf. + ing) + المستقبل - Hany is visiting our school tomorrow.
Negation النفي	Subj. + am not / isn't / aren't + (inf. + ing) - Hany isn't visiting our school tomorrow.
Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)	Am / Is / Are + Subj. + (inf. + ing)? - Is Hany visiting your school tomorrow?
'Wh_ ' Q. السؤال بأداة استفهام	Q.W. + (inf. + ing)? - When is Hany visiting your school?
Passive المبني للمجهول	Obj. + am / is / are + being + P.P. - Our school is being visited (by Hany) tomorrow.

Mini Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- Malak some friends tomorrow evening
 a. meets b. will meet c. going to meet d. is meeting
- your birthday party tomorrow?
 a. What are you giving b. Are you giving
 c. You are giving d. Are you being given
- Our guests at the airport by the manager himself
 a. are welcoming b. are going to welcome
 c. are being welcomed d. will welcome

Uses الاستخدامات

التعبير عن المستقبل القريب في حالة وجود ترتيبات نهائية مسبقاً، و يدل على ذلك كلمات مثل

arranged / made arrangements / prepared / made preparations

- ex. - I'm taking Salma on a trip tomorrow. Everything is arranged.

١ لاحظ أن المصاحبات الاجتماعية من حفلات وأعياد ميلاد وغيرها تستلزم ترتيبات. لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر

ex - My brother is getting married next Thursday

٢ لاحظ كذلك أن الأنشطة التي ستقوم بها المؤسسات مستقبلاً تستلزم ترتيبات. لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر

ex - My class are going on a school trip next week

٣ إذا منعك شيء من القيام بشيء آخر في المستقبل القريب فإن ما يمنعك يكون مرتبطاً به وبالتالي تستخدم المضارع المستمر.

ex - I can't go out with you tonight because I'm meeting my uncle at the airport.

٤ لاحظ أن المضارع المستمر لا يدل على المستقبل إلا في حالة وجود تعبير زمني أو سياق يدل على المستقبل.

ex - I am having lunch with my uncle. (حدث مستمر الآن)
- I am having lunch with my uncle tomorrow. (ترتيب مستقبلي)

٥ The Present Simple for Timetables

يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن الأحداث أو المواعيد المرتبطة بجداول مواعيد معينة مثل قطارات والقطارات والمباريات والحصص والتمتحانات ومواعيد العمل

ex - My train arrives at 7:15 tomorrow morning.
- The match starts at 9 p.m. next Friday.

Important Notes on Future Forms

١ التعبيرات الزمنية التالية تدل على المستقبل، وتأتي في نهاية الجملة، لكن عندما تأتي في بداية الجملة تستخدم الفاصلة السلي (,) بعدها:

tomorrow / in the future / soon / one day / next (year / month / week / Friday.....) this time (في مثل هذا الوقت) (next week / tomorrow.....) in (a year, month, week.....) بعد / خلال (by next week / tomorrow morning / 2030.....) بحلول / قبل

- She will do the shopping tomorrow.
- Next Monday, I am visiting my uncle.

١ يستخدم المضارع البسيط والمضارع التام للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد أدوات الربط الزمنية:

مستقبل / جملة أمر — حدث أول (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) + After / as soon as / When / the moment

- After I arrive (have arrived) home, I'll take a rest.

- Tell Ahmed to call me the moment you see (have seen) him.

مستقبل / جملة أمر — حدث ثان (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) + Before

- Before we leave (have left) the office, I'll phone some clients.

- Don't leave here before you finish (have finished) all your jobs

حدث أول مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام + until / till + حدث ثان مستقبل بسيط منفى (غالباً) / جملة أمر

- Mum won't set the table for lunch until my father arrives (has arrived) home.

- Don't put the bread in the shopping bag until it completely cools (has cooled).

٢ أعمال الحراس والمشاعر والإدراك والتفكير وكذلك (be) لا تستخدم في المضارع المستمر كأفعال أساسية، وفي هذه الحالة تستخدم (will + inf.) ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:

المشاعر Feeling	like, dislike, love, hate, prefer, enjoy, want, wish.
Senses الحواس	hear, see, smell, feel, taste, sound, يبدو appear, يبدو seem, look يبدو.
Communication التواصل	promise, satisfy, surprise, deny, يتكبر agree, disagree.
Perception الإدراك	realize, يفكر understand, know, mean, think = believe, يفكر imagine, يتفكر recognize, remember, forget.
Other verbs أفعال أخرى	be, belong, concern, depend, يشمل involve, يخصم matter يهم, need, owe, يدين own = possess يملك

- I think she's agreeing with me. (X)

- I think she will agree with me. (✓)

موقع التفوق AltFwok.com

Notes for more understanding ملاحظات هامة

ⓐ لاحظ استخدام (will)

Subject + promise / offer / threaten + to + inf.
= Subject + will + inf.

- I promise to lend you the money you need.
- I will lend you the money you need.

Subject + have / has just decided + to + inf.
= Subject + (have / has) made a quick decision + to + inf.
= Subject + will + inf.

- I have just decided to watch a film on TV.
- I will watch a film on TV

.... don't / doesn't want + to + inf.
= hope / hopes + won't + inf.

- Mum doesn't want my brother to get bad marks.
- Mum hopes my brother won't get bad marks.

.... predict / expect + to + inf.
= Subject + will + inf.

- We expect Bassem to win the gold medal.
- Bassem will win the gold medal

ⓑ لاحظ استخدام (going to)

Subject + intend / have intentions / plans / have plans + to + inf.
= Subject + am / is / are + going to + inf.

- She has plans to study physics at university.
- She is going to study physics at university

Subject + (have / has) decided + to + inf.
= Subject + (have / has) made a decision + to + inf.
= Subject + am / is / are + going to + inf.

- We have decided to move to another flat
- We are going to move to another flat

Subject + have / has made up mind + to + inf.
= Subject + am / is / are + going to + inf.

- He has made up his mind to find another job.
- He is going to find another job.

Subject + am / is / are + about to + inf.
= Subject + am / is / are + going to + inf.

- He is collecting his things. He is about to leave the office.
- He is collecting his things. He is going to leave the office.

ⓐ يُستخدم المضارع البسيط أو العام وليس (will / be going to) بعد الروابط الزمنية مباشرة ولكن يمكن استخدامها في الجملة الرئيسية (الثانية)

- After I (will arrive - am going to arrive - arrive) home, I will take a shower.
- Before she (has left - is going to leave - will leave) the office, she is going to send the emails

ⓑ لاحظ استخدام المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الترتيبات المستقبلية

Subject + (have / has) arranged / prepared / made arrangements + to + inf.
= Subject + am / is / are + (inf. + ing)

- I have arranged to take a course in English next month.
- I am taking a course in English next month.

ⓐ لاحظ استخدام المضارع البسيط أو المضارع العام بعد الروابط الزمنية: (When) (After) (Before) (until)

- She will buy some fruit. Then, she will return home.
- When she buys (has bought) some fruit, she will return home.
- After she buys (has bought) some fruit, she will return home.
- Before she returns (has returned) home, she will buy some fruit.
- She won't return home until she buys (has bought) some fruit.

General Exercise - On Language



• التمرينات التالية مُرتبة بشكل متدرج تصاعدي حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم.

الترتيب

ⓐ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Ali 17 next month.

a is going to be b. will be

c. going to be

d is

(الاستجابة ٢٠٢٢)

2. It is very hot in the house. I ... on the air conditioner.
a. will turn b. am turning
c. turn d. am going to turn
3. Watch out! The child ...
a. will fall b. is going to fall
c. is falling d. would fall
4. Those bags look heavy. I ... you carry them.
a. help b. am helping
c. will help d. am going to help
5. Look! It is very windy. I ... the windows.
a. will close b. am going to close
c. close d. am closing
6. Malak ... some friends tomorrow evening on her birthday.
a. meets b. will meet
c. going to meet d. is meeting
7. I will see her after she ... back.
a. comes b. came
c. will come d. had come
8. A party ... in celebration of the end of the school year tomorrow.
a. is giving b. gives
c. is being given d. is going to give
9. They ... a party tomorrow. Everything is arranged.
a. are having b. will have c. have d. can have
10. This museum ... at 9:00 am tomorrow.
a. will open b. opens c. open d. is going to open
11. I ... be at school early tomorrow morning.
a. 'll probably b. 'm probably going to
c. probably go d. 'm probably
12. According to the timetable, the train ... at 11 o'clock.
a. have left b. leaving c. leave d. leaves

13. My friend is highly intelligent. He ... the test easily.
a. is going to pass b. will pass
c. is passing d. would pass

14. I ... my cousins at the weekend. I've arranged it.
a. will visit b. am visiting
c. going to visit d. visit

15. Hany ... to France tomorrow. He's got the ticket.
a. will be travelled b. will travel
c. is travelling d. travels

16. I ... the faculty of education when I grow up; it's my intention.
a. join b. am going to join
c. will join d. am joining

17. After he ... his homework, he will watch the match.
a. had done b. did c. will d. does

• تذكر مساعدة جيداً واستعد للتدريبات الشاملة ضمن الدرسين الثالث والرابع.

تدريبات



Part I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

• لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية جيداً ومراجعتها بانتظام اليومية خصوصاً في المصطلحات

advert =	إعلان	malware (n)	البرمجيات الخبيثة
advertisement =		password (n)	كلمة المرور
anti-virus (adj)	مُكافح الفيروسات	personal details (n)	التفاصيل الشخصية
click(ed) :	نقرة - ينقر	phishing (v)	النصب الإلكتروني
cyberbullying (n)	التنمر الإلكتروني	post(ed) (v)	يرسل
download (v)	مُلف مُنزل	satnav (n)	الترجيبة بالقرص الصناعي
download(ed) (v)	يُنزل	scam (n)	احتيال - غش
downloading (n)	التنزيل	software (n)	برامج - برمجيات
google (n)	مُحرك البحث جوجل	upload (n)	مُلف مرفوع
google(d) (v)	يبحث على جوجل عن	upload(ed) (v)	يرفع مُلف
lock(ed) (n - v)	يقفل - يقفل	uploading (n)	الرفع

2. Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

• من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات بحرفين كالمص - ومراجعتها بانتظام

accounts (n)	حساب (مصرفي أو على الإنترنت)	impossible (adj)	مستحيل
almost (adv)	تقريباً	join(ed) (v)	يلتحق به - ينضم إلى
careful (adj)	حرص / حذر	media (n)	أجهزة الإعلام - وسائل الإعلام
change(d) (v)	يُغيّر - يتغير	mention(ed) (v)	يذكر
comment(ed) (n - v)	تعليق - يعلق	properly (adv)	بشكل صحيح
credit card (n)	بطاقة ائتمان	provide(d) (v)	يؤدّد - يُمنح
delete(d) (v)	يمسّح - يُلغى	recognise(d) (v)	يتعرف على

details (n)	تفاصيل	remove(d) (v)	يزيل - يُبعد
dishonest (adj)	غير أمين - مُخادع	rude (adj)	وقح / غير مهذب
document (n)	وثيقة	scary (adj)	مُخيف / مُرعب
embarrass (v)	يُخجل	share (d) (v)	يشارك - يشر
employment (n)	توظيف / تشغيل - استغلال	socialise(d) (v)	يختلط (بالآخرين)
excited (adj)	سعيد - متحمس	support(ed) (n - v)	دعم - يدعم
fly - flew - flown (v)	يطير - يُطير - يُسرع	trick(ed) (n - v)	خدعة - يخدع
free (free (of sth) (adj)	مجاني	trouble (n)	سأزق / مشكلة
frighten(ed) (v)	يخيف	ugly (adj)	قبيح المظهر
furious (adj)	ساحط / غاضب جداً	unwanted (adj)	غير مرغوب فيه
horrible (adj)	فظيع	website (n)	موقع على الإنترنت

3 Definitions تعريفات

• تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من لوائح النظم المستخدمة - هام جداً

Memorise	Understand
anti-virus software (n) برنامج مُكافح الفيروسات	software that removes unwanted programs from a computer برامج غير مرغوب فيها
click (v) ينقر	to press a button زر on a computer mouse in order to choose something from the screen شاشة that you want the computer to do
cyberbullying (n) التنمر الإلكتروني	sending messages online to frighten or worry someone
downloading malware تنزيل البرامج الخبيثة	putting software from the internet onto a computer that will damage it
lock (v) يقفل	to do something to stop other people using your phone or social media accounts
phishing (n) النصب الإلكتروني	- trying to trick a person into giving information over the internet to take money from them - a dishonest plan to get money
posting photos إرسال الصور	putting photographs online
scam (n) احتيال - غش	a dishonest plan to steal money
uploading personal details تحميل البيانات الشخصية	copying information such as your address and phone number to the internet

Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1 Key vocabulary

- My friend keeps photos all day.
a logging in b posting c lighting d connecting
- To protect your data, you need a strong software.
a website b anti-virus c malware d blog
- He didn't realise he had been until after he had used his credit card.
a scammed b managed c advertised d announced
- He asked me about details of my credit card. It's a
a scan b scam c scar d skim
- He is a bad person who gets a lot of money through
a fishing b fisherman c phishing d phisher
- Captains of ships and car drivers use to know where they are and how to reach a place.
a adverts b satnav c IOT d ID
- This webpage is full of job I found my current job here.
a anti-virus b malware c adverts d satnav
- There must be a law to criminalize
a technology b satnav c cyberbullying d internet of things
- My tablet is protected. No one else can use it.
a website b internet c password d virus
- My tablet has powerful anti-virus
a hardware b hardwares c software d softwares
- When I heard the of the gun parts, I knew the man was about to shoot.
a direct b object c check d click
- programs can cause your device not to work properly.
a Software b Malware c Security d Hardware

- You shouldn't ask strangers questions.
a scientific b legal c public d personal
- A scam is an online trick used to
a legally take someone's money b win a match c rob someone of their money d destroy a building
- You can someone you have recently met to see what information is available about them on the internet.
a google b download c upload d hack
- I want to some apps to my new smart phone.
a load b download c upload d unload
- Don't worry, sir. The door of the room is
a lock b locked c locks d a lock
- I have already the file to the website.
a downloaded b downloads c uploaded d uploads

2 Important Vocabulary

- Although he was in disguise, I was able to him.
a concept b release c realise d recognise
- Most people find it to ask others for money.
a embarrassing b furious c free d unwanted
- Black cats some babies.
a socialise b frighten c comment d mention
- "I must" she said. "My train leaves in ten minutes."
a flow b flee c fly d flea
- One must always their password to keep their accounts safe.
a change b charge c recharge d exchange
- He was because his new tablet had just been broken.
a embarrassing b furious c free d unwanted
- It is important for a child to with other people.
a socialise b frighten c comment d mention
- He is a short-tempered person, so be about what you say to him.
a careless b care c cares d careful

- 27 He wants to **remove** a malware from his tablet.
 a) recognise b) develop c) design d) design
- 28 Children under six have their meals **of charge** in this restaurant.
 a) free b) unwanted c) mentioned d) mentioned
- 29 She **embarrassing** that she turned off the laptop before leaving the office.
 a) furious b) tracked c) mentioned d) mentioned
- 30 You need to protect your Facebook **account** evidence of the accident.
 a) network b) intention c) networks d) networks
- 31 The officer asked me about the **details** of the accident.
 a) offers b) networks c) mention d) mention
- 32 Millions of followers **on Salah's posts** comment.
 a) socialise b) frighten c) mention d) mention
- 33 This programme deletes **unwanted data** to save memory.
 a) free b) unwanted c) unwanted d) unwanted

3. Definitions

- 34 **is tracking** someone into giving information or money over the internet or by e-mail.
 a) Malware b) Phishing c) Antivirus d) Password
- 35 A/A software **removes unwanted programs** from a computer.
 a) hacker b) database c) virus d) anti-virus
- 36 To **is to press a button** on a computer mouse in order to choose something from the screen that you want the computer to do.
 a) cause b) link c) click d) network
- 37 To stop other people using your phone or social media accounts, you should **them**.
 a) offer b) lock c) post d) design
- 38 **personal details** means copying information such as your address and phone number to the internet.
 a) Downloading b) Uploading c) Protecting d) Embarrassing
- 39 **malware** means putting software from the internet onto a computer that will damage it.
 a) Recognising b) Solving c) Protecting d) Downloading

Part II Vocabulary Study

تذكر: ضع علامة على الكلمات المتشابهة من طريق اختيارك هذا الجزء مسبقاً بحيث تتركه جاهزاً للإجابة

1. Verbal Collocations

build	friendships	تكوّن صداقات	like	سبح كأنه / يشبه
do	wrong	تخطئ	look heavy	تبدو ثقيلة
get	money	يحصل على مال	right	يسمى على ما يرام
give	personal details	يعطي تفاصيل شخصية	stay safe	يبقى بأمان
go	a presentation	يقوم بعرض تقديمي	study online	يدرس عبر الإنترنت
keep	online	يدخل على الإنترنت	take photos	يلتقط الصور
	a note of	يحتفظ بملحوظة عن	win a prize	يحرز بجائزة
			write a blog	يكتب منشور في مدونة

2. Synonyms

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
advert	إعلان
malware	برمجيات خبيثة
satnav	الملاحة بالقرص الصناعي
scam	احتيال - بئس
advertisement, ad	
malicious software	
satellite navigation	
fraud, trick	

3. Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	المعنى
download	تنزيل - يُغفل (من الإنترنت)	upload	الرفع - رفع (على الإنترنت)
honest	أمين	dishonest	غير أمين - متخادع
lock	يقفل	unlock - open	يفتح
security, safety	الأمن	danger / insecurity	الخطر / انعدام الأمن
similar	متشابه	different	مختلف

موقع التفوق AltFwok.com

Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

advert

- advertise(d) (v) يعلن عن - We pay a lot of money to advertise our products.
 advert = ad =
 advertisement (n) إعلان - We pay a lot of money for adverts for our products.
 advertiser (n) مُعلن - We pay a lot of money for advertisers to promote our products.
 advertised (adj) مُعلن عنه - This product is advertised on TV

cyberbullying

- cyberbully(ied) (v) يتنمر على الإنترنت - It is a crime to cyberbully people.
 cyberbullying (n) التنمر الإلكتروني - Cyberbullying is a crime.
 cyberbully (n) متنمر إلكتروني - It is a crime to be a cyberbully.

download

- download(ed) (v) يُنزل - يتم تحميله - The file downloaded slowly.
 download (n) ملف مُنزل - I keep all downloads in this file.
 downloading (n) التنزيل - Downloading large files take some time.
 downloadable (adj) قابل للتنزيل - This file is not downloadable.

lock

- lock (v) يقفل - I use a symbol to lock the screen.
 lock (n) قفل - I use a symbol as a lock for the screen.
 locked (adj) مقفول - The screen is locked with a symbol.

scam

- scam(med) (v) يخون / يغش - She was scammed by an online friend.
 scam (n) احتيال / غش - She was the victim of a scam.
 scammer (n) محتال / غشاش - She was the victim of a scammer.

Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات

- a comment about على
 an advert for إعلان عن
 an example of مثال على
 careful about حريص على
 disadvantages to مساوئ لـ
 in trouble في مأزق
 key points النقاط الرئيسية
 nothing happened لم يحدث شيء
 on the internet على الإنترنت
 on the other hand, من الناحية الأخرى
 plenty of كثير من
 Social Media وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
 stop it working جعله يتوقف عن العمل
 the space provided مراعاً المساحة
 to conclude/ in conclusion والاعلان هي
 write in clear simple words بكتابة كلمات بسيطة وواضحة

Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

- choose from يختار من
 click on يقر على
 complete ... with يكمل
 delete ... from محو من
 remove ... from يزيل من
 socialise ... with يتواصل مع
 تتواصل مع وسائل التواصل مع

Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

scam - spam

- scam نصب / احتيال على الإنترنت (للاستغلال على أموال الغير)
 - The police have warned people about internet and phone scam.
 spam رسائل البريد الإلكتروني التي تحتوي على إعلانات غير مرغوب فيها
 - I don't know how to delete all this spam.

advertisement

- advertisement / advert / ad إعلان عن سلعة / خدمة (كلمة عامة)
 - Don't believe adverts. Ask people who have already bought the products المنتجات.
 commercial إعلان تجاري (في التلفزيون / الإذاعة)
 - This actress started her career in commercials.
 trailer إعلان عن فيلم
 - This web page is full of trailers.
 promotion حملة دعائية (الترويج لمنتج معين)
 - The company spent 2 million dollars on promotions for the new product.
 announcement إعلان / تنبيه (أشهر تنبيهات - تعليمات - تعذيرات - قرارات)
 - We are waiting for the announcement of the decisions.

virus - anti-virus - malware - hacker

- فيروس (كائن ذلي يسمى المص)
 He is infected with a virus. (الفيروس)
 فيروس إلكتروني (مسبب ضرر للأجهزة الحاسوبية)
 A virus has destroyed the data on my tablet.
 برنامج مكافحة الفيروسات (برنامج لإزالة البرامج الضارة)
 anti-virus software
 Don't trust a free anti-virus software.
 البرمجيات الخبيثة (برنامج يقوم بتدمير وإتلاف أجهزة الحاسب والهواتف الذكية)
 malware
 My laptop is a malicious software.
 برنامج إلكتروني (شخص يحترق خصوصية أجهزة الكمبيوتر والرمز المجهول)
 hacker
 A hacker has deleted the data from the central computer.

software - hardware

- برنامج ماسوي (يؤدي غرض معين على الكمبيوتر أو الهاتف الذكي)
 software (uncountable noun)
 I bought this anti-virus software.
 مكونات / أجزاء / أدوات (الحاسب أو غيره)
 hardware (uncountable noun)
 I need some kitchen hardware.

General Exercise - On Vocabulary study

• MCQ Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

- The verb 'make' collocates with
 a. wrong b. like c. a decision
 d. right e. life better
- I was asked to give
 personal details b. heavy online
 a presentation c. sat-nav
- You can
 give b. go c. do
 take e. study
- "PP" is short for advertisement.
 a. PP b. Ad c. DOB
 d. AD e. Advert
- Scam is a synonym of
 a. trick b. trick c. found
 d. fraud e. afraid
- "I locked the front door." The verb 'lock' here is an antonym for
 a. open b. repair c. fix
 d. paint e. unlock

• MCQ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Show me the photo you've just
 a. stayed b. done c. gone d. taken
- Apologise when you
 a. do b. look c. make d. write
- Keep at home
 a. Stay b. Check c. Go d. Take
- Her face is pale. She does not
 a. do b. look c. make d. lock
- I'm very busy, so I rarely
 a. stay b. check c. go d. take
- The blog I had
 a. done b. looked c. made d. written
- Danger is antonymous with
 a. safe b. safety c. secure d. insecurity
- Scam is to
 a. fried b. trick c. trust d. a & b
- "I have just uploaded a video." In this sentence, the word 'uploaded' is
 the antonym of
 a. unloaded b. overloaded c. downloaded d. a & c
- "Be careful of malicious software." The speaker is warning us
 against
 a. software b. hardware c. antivirus d. malware
- My children keep the
 a. downloaded b. downloads c. uploaded d. cyberbullying
- Don't worry, sir. The door of the room is
 a. lock b. locked c. locks d. a lock
- He is a bad person who gets a lot of money through
 a. fishing b. fisherman c. phishing d. phisher

14. He is a bad person who gets a lot of money as a
a. fishing b. fisherman c. phishing d. phisher
15. I had given him 5000 pounds before I realised that he was a
a. scam b. scams c. scammed d. scammer
16. I pressed the red button to stop the machine
a. working b. to working c. work d. to work
17. Sama asked me to remove the peel ... the orange.
a. with b. for c. from d. at
18. ... conclude, hard work is necessary for success in life and work.
a. In b. By c. Of d. To
19. The processor of the computer is part of its
a. software b. hardware c. malware d. a & b
20. I got tired of the ... that is sent to my email.
a. spam b. scam c. download d. upload

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Tests

B. Hassan's blog

(58 page 57)

Last week, I was playing online when I saw an advert⁽¹⁾ for a free⁽²⁾ game. I clicked⁽³⁾ on the link⁽⁴⁾ and wrote my name, address and some bank details.⁽⁵⁾ When I tried to download⁽⁶⁾ the game, nothing happened. It was a scam!⁽⁷⁾

My dad was furious⁽⁸⁾ because they stole⁽⁹⁾ money from his bank account⁽¹⁰⁾ and my computer stopped working properly⁽¹¹⁾. Don't click on links you don't recognise⁽¹²⁾ and never give your personal details on a strange⁽¹³⁾ website. Oh, and remember to use anti-virus⁽¹⁴⁾ software⁽¹⁵⁾ to stop thieves!⁽¹⁶⁾

Check Vocabulary

- (1) إعلان
(2) مجاني
(3) انقر
(4) رابط
(5) تحميل
(6) تنزيل
(7) خداع - غش
(8) غضب / فاضب، جدا
(9) سرقة
(10) حساب
(11) بشكل صحيح
(12) لا تعرف علي
(13) غريب
(14) مضاد فيروسات
(15) برنامج حاسوبي
(16) لصون

C. Stay safe online

(58 page 57)

- Don't add your personal details to a website.
Do change your password⁽¹⁾ often.
Don't click on a link⁽²⁾ you don't recognise⁽³⁾.
Do lock⁽⁴⁾ your phone.
Do lock your social media accounts⁽⁵⁾.
Don't upload embarrassing⁽⁶⁾ photos.
Don't save bank details on a website.
Do use anti-virus software.
Do use different passwords on different websites.
Don't write unkind comments⁽⁷⁾ about other people.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) كلمة سر
(2) رابط
(3) لا تعرف علي
(4) قفل
(5) حسابات مواقع
(6) مؤذي
(7) تعليقات سيئة

Internet use in Egypt

(WB page 116)

Every year, more and more people are connected to the internet in Egypt. A recent⁽¹⁾ survey⁽²⁾ found that around 50 million people use the internet on a computer or smartphone.

In the survey, many people said that they used the internet every day, usually for communication, so they could talk to friends or family. Many used apps on their phones, so they can listen to music or watch films.

Other people said they never used the internet. This was usually because they did not understand the technology. Many people also said they did want to use the internet when shopping. They were worried about security and the possibility⁽³⁾ that their devices might be hacked.





B Hassan: Last week, I was reading about (58 page 56) a new online game⁽¹⁾ and saw an advert⁽²⁾ that said I could get this game for free. All I had to do was complete a form⁽³⁾ with my name, email address⁽⁴⁾ and credit⁽⁵⁾ card details⁽⁶⁾. I don't have a credit card, but I sometimes use my dad's card to buy things. Of course, it was a scam⁽⁷⁾. They just wanted the credit card details so they could steal money, but it looked just like a real advert. I think lots of kids would be so excited to get a free game they wouldn't think carefully about it.

I aila: I'm leaving school this year and I want to get a job in a bank. My teacher told me that employers⁽⁸⁾ often look online to see what we've posted⁽⁹⁾, so I decided to google⁽¹⁰⁾ my name to see what they might find. It was scary. All the photos and the "funny" comments⁽¹¹⁾ I'd ever posted were there and I couldn't delete⁽¹²⁾ them. I didn't realise⁽¹³⁾ it's almost impossible to remove personal data⁽¹⁴⁾ from the internet.

Saeed: I love reading my friend's social media posts⁽¹⁵⁾, but some people write really horrible⁽¹⁶⁾ things about other teenagers. One of my friends posted a photo of himself on his new bike and he got lots of rude comments⁽¹⁷⁾ about how he looked and how ugly⁽¹⁸⁾ his bike is. I couldn't believe it! These kids would never, never bully⁽¹⁹⁾ my friend at school, so why they do online? I'm really careful about what I say on the internet now!

Check Vocabulary

- (1) لعبة على الإنترنت
- (2) إعلان
- (3) نموذج / بطاقة استمارة
- (4) عنوان
- (5) مصداق / بنكي
- (6) تفاصيل
- (7) احتيال / خداع
- (8) أصحاب العمل
- (9) يرسل منشور
- (10) يبحث على جوجل
- (11) تعليقات
- (12) يمحى
- (13) يدرك
- (14) بيانات شخصية
- (15) منشورات مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي
- (16) قبيح / ردي
- (17) تعليقات
- (18) قبيح
- (19) يذم / يهين

Part IV Language



راجع شرح القاعدة من التمرين قبل هذا

تكملة

General Exercise On Language Apply

التدريبات التالية مرتبة بشكل متدرج تصاعديا حسب تصديق هرم بلوم

تكملة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Getting started: Check what you have learnt

- 1 I am not doing anything until I something to eat.
a have b will have c had had d had
- 2 Oh, the water is boiling. I off the gas.
a will turn b am going to turn c am turning d turn
- 3 A: We haven't got any sugar. B: I know I some this evening.
a will buy b am going to buy c will be buying d will have bought
- 4 A party in celebration of the end of the school year tomorrow.
a is giving b is being given c gives d is going to give
- 5 It's the first time I've ever seen this hotel. I've decided that I in it next month.
a am going to stay b will stay c am staying d have stayed
- 6 The ceiling of this room doesn't look very safe. It looks as if it down.
a will fall b is falling c is going to fall d falls
- 7 We tomorrow. We have booked our tickets.
a are travelling b will travel c travel d going to travel
- 8 A: How old are you? B: I 44 next February.
a am b am going to be c will be d am being
- 9 I have made up my mind. I a new house.
a am going to buy b will buy c am buying d buy

UNIT 5

10. A: I don't know how to use this camera.
B: It's quite easy. I you.
a am showing b am going to show
c will show d show
11. Our school part in the sports competition next week. That has been arranged.
a. will take b takes
c. is taking d. is going to take
12. I expect that Reem married next year.
a get b. will get c. has got d. gets
13. Watch out! You the flower vase.
a would drop b are going to drop
c drop d. are dropping
14. I work early today. I have arranged that with the manager.
a. leave b. am going to leave
c. am leaving d. will leave
15. The train Aswan at 8:00 o'clock. It's on the timetable.
a. is going to leave b will leave
c is leaving d leaves
16. I expect that my team the match.
a. is winning b. is going to win
c. will win d wins
17. A: Why are you taking down all the pictures? B: I the room.
a. paint b am going to paint
c. will paint d am painting
18. My English lesson at four o'clock this afternoon.
a. start b. has been starting
c starts d is stating
19. I've decided to buy a mobile. I a smart one.
a will buy b buy
c. am going to buy d am buying
20. They a party next Monday. Everything is arranged.
a would have b has
c. have d. are having

21. The agent says my flight at 7 o'clock tomorrow
a is b. shall be c will be d is being
22. She looks extremely pale. I think she
a will faint b is fainting
c is going to faint d faint
23. I think my cousin law. He is keen on defending people.
a. would study b is going to study
c studying d will study
24. A: I've decided to set up a business.
B: Oh, have you? When start?
a. shall you b. do you
c are you going to d. will you
25. I dinner today, mum. You look tired
a prepare b will prepare
c am preparing d. am going to prepare
26. A: What arrangements have you made for next week?
B: I to Alexandria with my father.
a. will travel b am travelling
c. am going to travel d. travel
27. A: What are your personal plans for the next two years?
B: I a new house.
a build b. will build
c. am building d am going to build
28. Twenty years from now, I think my country a fantastic place.
a is b. is going to be
c. will be d shall be
29. He is going to catch the bus when it
a. arrives b. will arrive c. arrived d arrive
30. When you arrive, me at once.
a. are going to call b are calling
c. will call d call
31. Don't wash the dishes if you in a hurry.
a were b. are being c are d will be
32. I can't go out with you this afternoon. I the doctor at 5 pm.
a see b. going to see c will see d am seeing

33. A: When are you going to leave for Rome?
B: I _____ tomorrow on the 6:00 o'clock plane. Here is the ticket.
a. leave b. am leaving
c. am going to leave d. will leave
34. It is raining heavily. Don't go out or you _____ wet.
a. get b. will get
c. are going to get d. are getting
35. A: Make a prediction about your life ten years from now.
B: I _____ married.
a. will be b. am
c. am getting d. am going to get
36. He is brave by nature. He _____ the problem.
a. face b. facing
c. is going to face d. will face
37. You won't leave the office until the manager _____ you.
a. called b. had called c. has called d. call
38. After the manager has called you, you _____ the office at once.
a. will leave b. won't leave c. have left d. left
39. In ten years' time, my father _____ even older.
a. will look b. is looking c. going to look d. looks
40. As soon as my son _____ for school, I'll do the housework.
a. will leave b. have left c. leaves d. had left

2 Check your understanding

41. "I won't go to bed until my father returns home." I mean that ...
a. I will go to bed before my father arrives home.
b. once I go to bed, my father will arrive home.
c. once my father arrives home, I will go to bed.
d. I won't go to bed after my father arrives home.
42. "Everything is arranged for my brother's wedding tomorrow." What does this mean?
a. My brother will get married tomorrow.
b. My brother gets married tomorrow.
c. My brother will be got married tomorrow.
d. My brother is getting married tomorrow.

43. "My father has made up his mind about selling the old car to the mechanic for 70,000 pounds." What does this mean?
a. My father is going to sell the old car to the mechanic.
b. My father won't sell the old car to the mechanic.
c. My father isn't selling the old car to the mechanic.
d. My father sells the car to the mechanic.
44. "I am about to leave soon." This means ...
a. I'm being left soon.
b. I am going to leave soon.
c. I will leave soon.
d. I leave soon.
45. "Omar has decided to redecorate his flat." This means ...
a. Omar will redecorate his flat.
b. Omar is going to redecorate his flat.
c. Omar is redecorating his flat.
d. Omar redecorates his flat.
46. "I'm going to look for a better job." This is a / an
a. prediction b. threat c. intention d. promise
47. "Karim will come first this year." This is a / an
a. prediction b. threat c. intention d. promise
48. "I will buy you a tablet for your birthday." This is a / an
a. prediction b. threat c. intention d. promise
49. "Keep calm or I'll send you out." This is a / an
a. prediction b. threat c. intention d. promise
50. "This school will be 70 years old next year." This is a / an
a. fact b. future fact
c. plan d. arrangement
51. Watch out! You're going to step into a hole. This means that the addressee into a hole.
a. will step b. will be stepped
c. is about to step d. has stepped

PART THREE

Story Vocabulary Skills and Advanced exercises

Part I

Vocabulary

هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات الرئيسية في قصة Treasure Island. انظروا الكلمات الجديدة الموجودة في الوحدة وقولوا ما ترون المصور وفهم المفردات الخاصة بالقصة

تأليف

Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

أهم المفردات النحوية في قصة (Treasure Island) كما يمكنكم التطلع على نص القصة والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب

تأليف

bottoms (n)	فرد	fresh (adj)	طازج - طيب
burn - burned burn (v)	حرق - يحرق	kneel down - knelt (v)	سجد / يركع
dark (n - adj)	ظلمة - مظلم	leader (n)	قائد
directions (n)	اتجاهات	on your own	بفردك
dry (adj)	جاف / جفت	realise (d) (v)	يذكر - يفهم
explained (v)	شرح - يشرح	sail (ed) (n - v)	سارح المركب - يبحر
fight-fought (v)	بذل	spade (n)	جاردل
flag (n)	علم - راية	start (ed) (n - v)	بداية - يبدأ
		voice (n)	صوت إنسان

Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- People down when they pray.
a kneel b knee c knead d kneel
- The police forces the terrorists killing some of them and arresting the rest
a caught b honoured c fought d realised
- I won't help you with the cooking. You will have to do it your own.
a about b from c of d on
- The new coach won the Super Cup in his first match, which was a good
a spade b start c sail d fight
- We had to lower the because there was a storm.
a sails b seals c soil d harbour
- I asked my teacher to a maths problem to me.
a think b understand c realise d explain

- Do you want to swim in this stormy weather? Don't be
a correct b right c wise d crazy
- I city life to living in the countryside.
a sail b prefer c explain d start
- Without sun cream, the sun will your skin.
a cool b shower c burn d freeze
- President Sadat was an intelligent
a leader b sailor c businessman d pirate
- Don't what he says. He is a big liar.
a lead b burn c believe d prefer

Part II

Grammatical Hints

on

لغة مستخدم حرف الجر (on) مع وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي وبعض المساء الأخرى:

on (TV, the radio, the telephone, the internet, social media, mass media, a social networking site, a website)

ex. - People share information about themselves on social networking sites.

spend + money / time

spend money on + n. / inf. + ing = spend money to + inf.

ex. - He spent a lot of money on (buying) clothes.
= He spent a lot of money to buy new clothes.

spend time + n. / (inf. + ing)

ex. - She spent two days preparing for the party.

It's a waste of time / money + (inf. + ing) ... مضيعة للوقت / المال ...

- It's a waste of money cooking all this food for two people.
- It's a waste of time watching films again and again.

verb + obj. مفعول (inf. + ing)

catch - discover - feel - hear - leave - notice - observe - see -
watch - find - overhear تفتت

ex. - The police caught him hiding the money he had stolen.
- I saw him running in the street.

مع فعل آخر يكون (inf + ing) المختار لـ (by + inf + ing)

ex. - People connect to the internet by using their smartphones.
= People connect to the internet using their smartphones.

yet

نستخدم (yet) بمعنى (حتى الآن) في الجمل السلبية في المضارع التام والتي معناها في العربية (لم يحدث شيء) وهي تدل على توقع حدوث شيء لم يحدث حتى الآن.

ex - My father hasn't arrived yet. (I expect he will arrive.)

نستخدم (yet) بمعنى (حتى الآن) في الجمل الاستفهامية في المضارع التام والتي معناها في العربية (هل حدث شيء) وهي تدل على توقع حدوث شيء لم يحدث حتى الآن.

ex - Has Amara called yet? (I expect she will call.)

نستخدم (yet) بمعنى (حتى الآن) بعد صفات التفضيل.

ex - As a writer, this is my best book yet.

نستخدم (yet) كإضافة ربط بمعنى (لكن) وبعدها تأتي صفة أو فعل في النفي.

ex - He is very intelligent, yet too lazy to do anything.

Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I haven't done the shopping
a. just b. already c. ago d. yet
- She spent the weekend her mother.
a. helping b. helped c. help d. helps
- They spent a lot of money their new flat.
a. on b. to c. with d. of
- Haven't you eaten your dinner ?
a. ago b. after c. yet d. just
- She spent a week for her birthday party.
a. preparing b. prepare c. prepares d. prepared
- She spent all her savings a modern car.
a. buys b. buy c. to buying d. to buy
- This is Salah's best goal
a. never b. yet c. but d. however
- There will be better education modern technology.
a. use b. used c. to use d. using
- It is a waste of time online for three hours.
a. chatted b. to chatting c. chatting d. a chat

- She is stupid very beautiful
yet although since as
- Listen to these people about modern technology
talks be talked talking talked
- You can find information about everything the internet
of on for about

Part III Language Skills

1 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

توجيه • اكتب مقالاً عن خططك للمستقبل.

Write an essay about 150 words about your plans for the future :

My plans for the future

Everyone has his / her future plans. It is a good thing to have your own future plans. These plans are the goals that you want to achieve. In this essay, I'm going to write about both my work and family plans.

My work plans are very simple. I want to have a good job which pays me enough money. My dream job is to be an accountant in a bank. Although accountants work hard for many hours, they earn a lot of money. As an accountant, I won't need to look for extra work. As soon as I leave my work, I will give the rest of the day to my family.

My family plans are very ambitious. I intend to have a small family. My wife must have a good education. I prefer that she should be a housewife, but I don't mind if she has her own job. I wish I could live in a villa, not a flat. I want my villa to have a large garden with a swimming pool.

However, plans don't achieve themselves. I must work hard to reach my dreams. Without hard work and good planning, my plans will stay in the world of dreams.

2 Translation الترجمة

توجيه • اترجم عن العربية إلى اللغة الإنجليزية.

Translate into Arabic :

- Egypt has achieved significant progress in various fields of industry, education and modern technology.
- In the future, the only thing that we can be sure of is that technology is not going to stand still in this ever-changing world.
- Many people now use smartphones which can connect to the internet and send emails. These phones can help you control your personal life as well as your business.

2 Translate into English:

- 1- زيادة الوقت من أهم مميزات استخدام وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي، يجب عليك أن تحدد الوقت من يمكنك أن تقضه على هذه المواقع.
- 2- يعتبر الطلبة المحمول ثورة كبيرة في عالم الاتصالات، فقد جعل من الممكن التوصل مع أي شخص في أي مكان بسرعة كبيرة.
- 3- نتج لأجيال الجديدة من الهواتف الذكية إحصاءات مذهلة، كما أنها شجع الكثير من المصنفات التي تساعدك في دراسة أو عملك.

Vocabulary related to translation texts

achievements	إنجازات	revolution	ثورة
fields	مجالات	significant	مهم / بارز
industry	صناعة		

Part IV Just for Advanced level

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

تلاوة هذه الجزء خاص بالطلاب المتقدمين فقط

click

- click (n) نقر - صوت طقطقة
 - With a single click on the mouse, you can get the information you need.
 - The door shuts with a click.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- at the click of a mouse بسرعة جداً / في لحظة عين
- shut / close - with a click يُغلق صوت ثقل عند القفل
- click (on) (v) ينقر - يُغذي صوت طقطقة على
 - I clicked on the link but it did not open.

communicate

- communicate (with) (v) يتواصل - يتصل مع
 - People from all over the world communicate with each other using emails.
- communicate ... to يُبلغ ... ل / ينقل ... إلى
 - The manager communicated the decisions to the secretary by email.
- communicate (to) (v) يُخبر / ينقل مرض
 - His flu was communicated to all his friends.
- communication (n) اتصال / تواصل - القدرة على التواصل
 - Ayman's good communication makes him successful.

- be in communication with يتكون على تواصل مع
 - a means of communication وسيلة اتصال أو تواصل
 - a lack of communication انعدام التواصل
 - poor communication علامة أو تواصل ضعيف
 - direct communication اتصال مباشر
 - establish communication with يقيم علاقات مع
 - communication skills مهارات التواصل
- كلمة (communications) تعني وسائل التواصل مثل الإنترنت والراديو والتلفزيون وكذلك الطرق والسكك الحديدية. وهذا المعنى فهي جمع دائماً.
- Modern communications help us learn and work from home.

download - upload

- download (v) * upload (v) رفع ملف (على الإنترنت)
 - Sama downloaded some educational videos from EKB. ساما التحمّل بعض الفيديو التعليمية من EKB.
 - He has uploaded some files on Google Drive.
 - download (n) * upload (n) ملف مرفوع على الإنترنت
 - I keep the downloads in a folder called «Internet Files».
 - Some websites pay you money for your uploads.
 - downloading (n) * uploading (n) الرفع على الإنترنت
 - Downloading files from the internet takes less time than uploading them.
- لاحظ الصور التالية:
- download ... from يُحمّل من
 - download to / onto يُحمّل إلى
 - upload ... to يرفع على

hack

- hack (into) (v) يخترق / يقرص (يحاول من الوصول إلى أو تغيير المعلومات على أجهزة الغير)
 - She was able to hack the password.
- hack / hacking (n) عملية اختراق أجهزة الكمبيوتر (تهكير)
 - You need to protect your laptop against hacks / hacking.
- hack (n) سياسي مخبر / كاتب غير معترف
 - The meeting was full of hacks.
- hacker (n) قرصان (هاكر)
 - I don't know how the hacker could get into the system.

AltFwok.com موقع التمرين

the internet

• the internet (n)

- You can find all the information you need on the internet.

- on the internet
- buy ... on the internet
- surf the internet
- internet shopping
- internet banking

link

• link (v)

- Friendship links Mr Nasser and me.

• link ... to / with (v)

- Friendship links me to / with Mr Nasser.
- This road links Cairo to Alexandria

• link ... together (v)

- Friendship links Mr Nasser and me together.

• link / linkage (between ... and...) (n)

- Friendship is the link between Mr Nasser and me.

• link (n)

- I will send you the link of my blog.

lock

• lock (v)

- I locked the front door

• be locked in / into

The player was locked into a three-year contract.

• lock ... in ...

The policeman locked the criminals in a cell.

• lock ... out

- I am locked out because I have lost my keys.

• lock + up / away

The policeman locked the criminals up
The policeman locked up the criminals

• lock + up / away

My mother locks up/ away her jewellery in the safe.

شبكة الإنترنت

لاحظ ضرورة استخدام (the).

ولاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

go on the internet - على الإنترنت
buy ... on the internet - يشتري ... من على الإنترنت
surf the internet - يتصفح الإنترنت
internet shopping - التسوق عبر الإنترنت
internet banking - الأعمال المصرفية على الإنترنت

يربط - يوصل

يربط ... به

يربط ... معاً

رابط / علاقة بين ... و

رابط (الصفحة أو موقع على الإنترنت)

يقفل - يغلّق

تقيّد به

يحبس ... في ...

يحجز ... خارج

يسجن ...

يضع في مكان آمن

الخزنة

= My mother locks her jewellery up / away in the safe.

• lock (n)

- In hotels, there is a lock on each door.

• locked (adj)

- You can't enter the office. The door is locked.

password

• password (n)

- You need to enter your password to check your email.

• password-protected (n)

- All the data on the central computer are password protected.

phishing

• phishing (n)

He was arrested for phishing.

• phisher (n)

- He was arrested because he was a phisher.

scam

• scam (n)

- There was no flat for sale. It was just a scam.

• scam (med) (v)

- It is easy for evil people to scam simple people.

• scammer (n)

- Don't believe him. He is a scammer.

security

• secure (d) (v)

- The police secure citizens and their property.

• secure (d) (v)

- He used his farm to secure the loan.

• secure (adj) (v)

- Your money is secure in the bank.

• security (n)

- The security forces protected the building.

software

• software (n)

- I downloaded the new software.

install software - تثبيت برنامج
anti-virus software - برنامج مكافحة الفيروسات

a piece of software - برنامج حاسوبي

نکته: جهت مطالعه
 - جهت مطالعه
 حکم و جهت از دست
 منظور الکترونیکی
 (مستند) اعتبار نکوب

- Technology is a tool that helps us to do things more efficiently and effectively.
- Technology is a tool that helps us to do things more efficiently and effectively.
- Technology is a tool that helps us to do things more efficiently and effectively.

الترجمة	الاصطلاح	الترجمة
مضاد للفيروسات	anti-virus	مكافحة الفيروسات
مضاد حيوي	antibiotic	دواء حيوي
مضاد للجراثيم	cyberbattling	مكافحة الجراثيم الإلكترونية
جريمة إلكترونية	cyber-crime	جريمة إلكترونية
مضاد للجراثيم	dashonest	مضاد للجراثيم
مضاد للجراثيم	downstairs	الطابق الأسفل
مضاد للجراثيم	download	تحميل - تنزيل (من الإنترنت)
مضاد للجراثيم	malware	برمجيات الخبيثة
مضاد للجراثيم	self-managements	إدارة الذات
مضاد للجراثيم	upstairs	الطابق العلوي
مضاد للجراثيم	upload	رفع - تحميل (على الإنترنت)

الترجمة	Function	Examples
مضاعف	تكرار	cyberbullying (m) embarrassingly (adj)
مضاعف	تكرار	summarise / summarize
مضاعف	تكرار	creative
مضاعف	تكرار	management
مضاعف	تكرار	technology

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- To run this club, fill in this _____
a app b application c malware d bucket
- A device is a machine or tool used for a/an _____ purpose
a particular b popular c connected d online
- If I don't hear the _____ of the lock, you know the door isn't locked
a comment b possibility c post d click
- His intelligence _____ itself to us in everything he does
a contacts b connects c communicates d receives
- You are no more than a _____ who frightens people online
a cyberbullying b cyberbully c phishing d warn
- _____ is a giant digital library
a An internet b Internet c Net d The internet

7. Love of beauty the two writers.
 a. links b. uploads c. bushes d. provides
 8. I can't leave the club. I'm in a five-year contract.
 a. connected b. linked c. locked d. communicated
 9. My father refused to use the family house to my brother's loan
 from the bank.
 a. borrow b. lend c. secure d. endanger
 10. Saudi Arabia buys military like tanks and
 missiles from the USA.
 a. software b. hardware c. presentation d. prediction

No. Answer & Explanation

الإجابة والتوضيح

1.	b	التعبير (fill in an application) يعني (ملاً طلب استخدام) ولا يمكن استخدام (app) لأنها تعني (تطبيق رقمي)
2.	a	التعبير (particular purpose) يعني (غرض محدد)
3.	d	التعبير (the click of the lock) يعني (انكسة القفل)
4.	c	التعبير (communicates itself to us) يعني (يظهر لنا بوضوح)
5.	b	الضمير (who) بعد الفراغ يتطلب استخدام اسم غاقل
6.	d	لا بد أن تُستخدم أداة التعريف (the) قبل الاسم (internet) بمعنى الشبكة الدولية
7.	a	الفعل (links) هنا يعني (يربط / يجمع بين)
8.	c	التعبير (be locked in) يعني (مُلوَّحَم / مُقَيَّد بِـ)
9.	c	الفعل (secure) هنا يعني (يضمن / يُسَخِّم كضمان لـ)
10.	b	الدبابات والصواريخ تعتبر مُعدات مادية (hardware)

Advanced Exercise on Language

توليه : الإجابات التالية بالنسبة للإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. She to the park with us in the evening tomorrow. She knows all about it.
 a. goes b. will go
 c. is going to go d. is going
 2. I can see you are busy, so I long.
 a. am not staying b. will stay
 c. won't stay d. am not going to stay
 3. I some old friends at the club tomorrow evening.
 a. will see b. am seeing
 c. am going to be seen d. see
 4. I'll try to advise her but I know she
 a. doesn't listen b. isn't listening
 c. won't listen d. isn't going to listen
 5. You so lazy. Stop it, please. It's annoying.
 a. will be b. are being
 c. are going to be d. are to be
 6. Being intelligent, she first next year.
 a. comes b. is coming
 c. is going to come d. will come
 7. I here until he returns to tell him the instructions.
 a. will wait b. won't wait
 c. waited d. didn't wait
 8. Not until the manager calls me the office.
 a. I leave b. I have left
 c. will I leave d. d I leave

No. Answer & Explanation

1. d - الذهاب إلى العديفة أمر تم الاتفاق عليه كما يتضح من السياق
2. c - قرار سريع
3. b - لقاء الأصدقاء أمر تم الاتفاق عليه كما يتضح من السياق
4. c - لمجرد تنبؤ حتى لو أنه بعد (I know)
5. b - يمكن استخدام (be) كفاعل أساسي في الأزمنة البعيدة للدلالة على مفعول غير مقبول غالباً لأنه انتهى وقضى وغير دائم
6. d - لمجرد تنبؤ لأن هذه الكلمة تدل على صفة شخصية أولاً تعرف عن دليل (intelligent)
7. a - السياق مستقبل والمعنى يتطلب الإثبات
8. c - إذا بدأت الجملة بـ (Not until) فلا بد أن يتقدم فعل مساعد مناسب للمرض على الفاعل في الجملة الرئيسية وهي هنا:
- ... will I leave the office.
- ولا يمكن استخدام (did I leave) لأن السياق مستقبل

موقع
التفوق
ALTFWOK.COM

Test on Unit 5

Understand

Apply

Create

يمكنك حل
الاختبار وتقييم
الكفاءة



Part One

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. "Security is maintained by the police." The word 'security' in this context is the antonym of ...
a. dangerous b. endanger c. danger
d. insecurity e. secure
2. 'Advantages' is to 'disadvantages' as ... is to ...
a. correct b. greedy c. funny
d. hard e. incorrect

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

3. The company computer system was They lost a lot of money
a. hijacked b. hacked c. kidnapped d. secured
(اختطاف) ٢٢-٢٢
4. A/An is a computer programme designed to do a specific function
a. app b. CV c. advert d. PhD
(تطبيق) ٢٢-٢٢
5. Implementing security at the internet gateway can block email and sites.
a. pushing b. punishing c. phishing d. pinching
(تصيد) ٢٢-٢٢
6. The message to transfer money was fake. It was a big
a. skim b. scar c. scam d. scan
(احتيال) ٢٢-٢٢
7. Next week, she 16 years old.
a. is going to be b. going to be c. will be d. is being
(تكون) ٢٢-٢٢
8. Everything is arranged, so my father to Saudi Arabia
a. travel b. is travelling c. travels d. will travel
(سافر) ٢٢-٢٢
9. The train to Aswan at 7 a.m.
a. leaves b. leave c. is leaving d. will leave
(يغادر) ٢٢-٢٢
10. Amr is a very clever student. I think he the full mark
a. is going to get b. is getting c. gets d. will get
(يحصل) ٢٢-٢٢
11. I will see her after she back.
a. comes b. came c. will come d. had come
(تعود) ٢٢-٢٢

UNIT 5

12. We have some fantastic news. My sister a baby.
a. will have b. is having c. shall have d. is going to have
13. you let me use your mobile?
a. Has b. Does c. Shall d. Will
14. Everything has been prepared for the journey. My family and I to Alexandria tomorrow.
a. will go b. are going to go c. is going d. are going
15. All driverless cars will be
a. electric b. electrician c. harmful d. electrostatic
16. A is a secret word that you use to log into a site.
a. passport b. crossword c. password d. passage

• Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (٢٠ - ٢٢ أسئلة)

Scientists believe that in twenty years from now we will be seeing driverless buses on the streets of major cities. This might seem unbelievable, but bus design experts are working in laboratories trying to design driverless buses. An automated means of transport would not only be reliable but also cheaper and environmentally friendly because the buses would run on electricity or biofuel.

Research has shown that nearly 60 % of the running cost of a bus is spent on the driver. Therefore, the use of a driverless bus would inevitably reduce operating costs. The vehicle is able to navigate by combining satellite technology with a special system. This system uses magnets which are positioned in the road. Driverless buses will probably make our everyday lives easier. However, we must consider what will happen to the bus drivers who will eventually find themselves without a job if this project becomes a reality.

17. Driverless buses will certainly operating costs.
a. decrease b. double c. increase d. raise
18. When something is environmentally friendly, then it doesn't cause to the environment.
a. mistake b. harm c. benefit d. advantage

19. The best meaning of the underlined word "consider" is
a. think about b. remember c. forget d. ignore
20. What is a suitable title for the passage?
a. The inevitable use of driverless buses
b. The merits of driverless buses
c. Bus drivers' future after using driverless buses
d. The merits and demerits of driverless buses
21. The antonym of the word "eventually" is
a. finally b. lastly c. firstly d. mostly
22. Driverless cars will run on
a. unnatural fuel b. biofuel c. non-renewable energy d. nuclear energy
23. Due to driverless bus, bus drivers will find themselves
a. lazy b. jobless c. exhausted d. unemployed

Part Two

1. Translate into Arabic :
Social media wastes not only time, but also destroys health. There must be strict control over the amount of time one spends on social media.

(الترجمة المطلوبة: ٢٢ - ٢٣)

2. Translate into English :
لقد أصبحت البراق الذكاء خطراً كبيراً على الأطفال والشباب لما تسببه لهم من أضرار صحية، كما نعتقد أن القدر على التواصل بشكل جيد.

3. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on:
The effects of modern technology on communication

للوهبة : للتدريب على أشكال مختلفة من قطع الفهم بنظام أسئلة MRQ ، هناك أسئلة

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق

UNIT 6

Learning from Literature

SB pages 62 : 71 WB pages 122 : 127

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

Reading :

A biography on Stevenson. A poem
The Garden

Writing :

A short review of a poem. A book review

Listening :

A conversation about Robert Louis
Stevenson

Speaking :

Polite requests

Language :

Verbs + infinitive or -ing form

Life skills :

Communication, Critical Thinking



موقع
التفوق

AltFwok.com

• تلك الأسئلة للكتابة اليومية والشهرية
• ملحق المهارات اللغوية
• تدريبات للأدب الشفوي وفي تلك الأسئلة
• Dictation وفي ملحق تلك الأسئلة

PART ONE

1 & 2

SB pages 62 : 65 WB pages 122 & 123

Part I

Vocabulary

• لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان)

تلاوة

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

current(n)	التيشي (أحد أصناف العنب الخالي من البذر)	lock(ed) (n - v)	قفل - يقفل
row(n)	صف	novel(n)	رواية
current row	صف من نبات الكيبيش	plot(n)	قطعة أرض - حيازة (مقابر)
dig - dug (v)	يحفر - يفرس	plot(n)	الشيكة (ذروة الأحداث في القصة / الرواية)
gravel(n)	الحصى	plot (ted) (v)	يتواطأ / يتآمر - يخطط
walk(n)	نقسي - ممر	poem(n)	نصيدة
keep the gravel walk	يسير على الطريق لمهد بالحصى	poet(n)	شاعر
hay(n)	نبن / قش	poetic(adj)	شعري
literature(n)	الأدب	poetry(n)	لشعر - النظم

• من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام

تلاوة

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات العامة

adventure(n)	مغامرة	pirate(n)	قرصان
biography(n)	السيرة الذاتية	popular(adj)	ذو شعبية
case(n)	حالة - قضية	publish(ed) (v)	يشر
choice(n)	اختيار	regret(ted) (n - v)	الندم - يندم - يئن
choose - chose -	يختار	request(ed) (n - v)	طلب - يطلب
chosen (v)		romantic(adj)	رومانسي - عالم
compare(d) (v)	يقارن	rule(d) (n - v)	قاعدة - يتحكم
consider(ed) (v)	يعتبر - يفكر في	sailing(n)	الإبحار
discuss(ed) (v)	يناقش	Scottish(adj)	أسكتلندي
discussion(n)	مناقشة	sentence(n)	جملة
feed - fed(v)	يغذي	serious(adj)	جاد
follow(ed) (v)	يتبع / يلي - يتتبع	strange(adj)	غريب
form(n)	شكل - صيغة	suppose(d) (v)	يفترض

improved (v)	تحسين (م)	improved (v)	تحسين (م)
island (n)	جزيرة (م)	island (n)	جزيرة (م)
poet (n)	شاعر (م)	poet (n)	شاعر (م)
poetry (n)	شعر (م)	poetry (n)	شعر (م)
treasure (n)	كنز (م)	treasure (n)	كنز (م)
unwell (adj)	غير جيد (م)	unwell (adj)	غير جيد (م)
warm (adj)	دافئ (م)	warm (adj)	دافئ (م)
well (adj)	جيد (م)	well (adj)	جيد (م)
wish (v)	يريد (م)	wish (v)	يريد (م)
wish (n)	تمنى (م)	wish (n)	تمنى (م)

3 Definitions

تعريفات الكلمات - Match the words with their definitions.

Memorise

Understand

dig (v)	يحفرون - حفر (م)	to break up and move earth with your hands or a machine
gravel (n)	حصى (م)	small stones, used to make a surface for paths, roads, etc.
hay (n)	قش / قشر (م)	dried grass that people use to feed animals
lock (v)	يغلق (م)	to close something using a key
novel (n)	رواية (م)	a long written story in which the characters and events are usually imaginary
plot (n)	قطعة أرض (م)	a small piece of land for growing things on
poem (n)	قصيدة (م)	a piece of writing often arranged in lines that rhyme
poet (n)	شاعر (م)	someone who writes poems
poetry (n)	شعر (م)	a form of literature, or artistic writing, that attempts to stir a reader's imagination or emotions
treasure (n)	كنز (م)	gold, silver, money, etc. that someone has hidden

Exercise - On Vocabulary

Understand

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Key vocabulary

1. The best material for the construction of the garden walks is

- a dig b hay c gravel d plot

2 My friend entered a competition and won a prize last year

- a poetry b poetess c poems d poet

3. language is emotionally effective.

- a Poet b Poets c Poems d Poetic

4. Shakespeare was a great playwright and a

- a. poetry b. poet c. poems d. poetic

5. In addition to plays, Shakespeare wrote great which are still admired.

- a. poetry b. poet c. poems d. poetic

6. There are gravel among trees and plants in parks.

- a walks b. rhymes c. raws d. candles

7. The cow was hungry, so the farmer found it some to eat.

- a. butler b. hay c. water d. cheese

8. I have a small in my garden where I plant some vegetables

- a. rhyme b. farm c. field d. plot

9. Our house was robbed last night since we forgot to the front door.

- a. look b. lock c. unlock d. open

10. Novels, poems and plays are forms of

- a. science b. fashion c. dirt d. literature

2 Important Vocabulary

11. Life is full of situations which we must accept as we have no

- a. appetite b. choice c. desire d. need

12. We call a book about the life of someone a

- a research b. biography c. novel d. poem

13. a hungry family can be very expensive.

- a. Failing b. Feeding c. Falling d. Feeling

14. In you need help, call me at once.

- a. case b. rule c. adventure d. joy

15. Some attacked the ship to steal things from it.

- a pirates b. pilots c. parents d. pioneers

16. A group of words that start with a capital letter, end with a full stop and give some meaning is known as a

- a. word b. line c. sentence d. verse

6

17. "He kept the gravel walk." In this sentence, 'walk' means a
a journey b path c trip d movement
18. She is still the issue. She hasn't made a decision yet.
Kidnapping b supposing c ruling d considering
19. Football is the most game all over the world.
a popular b romantic c unwell d helpful
20. Don't yourself to others. Everyone is different.
a regret b review c compare d request
21. Never anything good you have done to anybody.
a regret b grow c feed d lie
22. This problem needs time and collaboration to be solved.
a handy b easy c simple d serious
23. My father has a/an job as the manager of a bank.
a part-time b full-time c polite d impolite
24. President Sadat started to in 1970.
a Kidnap b suppose c rule d consider
25. She is You can depend on her.
a popular b romantic c unwell d helpful
26. I intend to stay with my aunt in the countryside for
a while b whilst c a while d during
27. He has no health problems. This means he is
a well b will c sick d bad
28. My grandfather's garage is full of which he uses to fix cars.
a barrows b gravels c tools d mice
29. I she went shopping, but I am not sure.
a Kidnap b suppose c rule d consider
30. I think he is because he looks pale.
a popular b romantic c unwell d helpful
31. Good citizens the rules.
a kill b forget c break d follow
32. To make a polite, always say please and excuse me.
a request b tick c phrase d organisation
33. Giving someone a red rose usually creates a/an feeling.
a popular b romantic c unwell d helpful

34. He likes and often does new and risky things.
a case b rule c adventure d fry
35. The child was by a gang of thieves who then asked his parents
to pay a large sum of money.
a kidnapped b supposed c ruled d considered

3 Definitions

36. A person who writes poetry is called a
a. pioneer b. novelist c. poet d. poem
37. A row is a line of plants that have small fruits.
a. fruitless b. bad c. current d. currant
38. A is a long written story in which the characters and events are
usually imaginary.
a. hay b. verse c. line d. novel
39. A is a piece of writing often arranged in lines that rhyme.
a. poet b. poem c. poetry d. poetic
40. is a form of literature, or artistic writing, that attempts to stir
a reader's imagination or emotions.
a. Poet b. Poem c. Poetry d. Poetic
41. To is to move something in or under soil using a tool.
a. lock b. swing c. uncover d. dig
42. is dried grass that people use to feed animals.
a. Plot b. Hay c. Treasure d. Swing
43. The word means gold, silver, money, etc. that someone has
hidden.
a. treasure b. money c. gemstone d. property
44. To is to close something using a key.
a. lock b. close c. shut d. book
45. A is a small piece of land for growing things on.
a. rock b. plot c. ground d. soil
46. is small stones, used to make a surface for paths, roads etc.
a. Sand b. Stone c. Rock d. Gravel

Part II Vocabulary Study

تأليف: مساعد شحاتك على التوثيق، دكتور، مساعد باحث، دكتور، دكتور

Verbal Collocations

be	best known for	مشهور أكثر بـ	improve	(his) health	يحسن صحته
	a job	أودي مهمة - فقه عمل	keep	the gravel walk	يشي على الطريق لمهد بالحصى
					(وليس على التراب)
d.	a favour	بضع معروف		a film	بضع فيلم
	something for	شئ لأجل		a request	بطلب
follow	rules	تبع القواعد	make	a surface	بسطح
				preparations for	يقوم باستعدادات لـ

2 Synonyms

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
lock-up	small prison
walk	route / path
well-known	famous

3 Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
avoid	يتجنب	confront	يراجع
boring	شئ	interesting, exciting	شئ
formal	رسمي	informal	غير رسمي - دارج
full-time	دوام كامل	part-time	جزئي - لبعض الوقت
lock	يقفل	unlock	يفتح
popular	دو شعبية	unpopular	غير شعبي
well-known	معروف - مشهور	unknown, nameless	مغمور - غير معروف

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary

gravel (n)	حصى	The paths in the park are covered with gravel.
gravelled / gravelly (adj)	مغطى بالحصى	The paths in the park are gravelled/gravelly.

lock (v)	يقفل	I locked the door.
lock (n)	قفل	There's a lock on the door.
locked (adj)	مقفل	The door is locked.

poem (n)	قصيدة	I wrote a poem.
poet / poetess (n)	شاعر / شاعرة	I am a poet / a poetess.
poetry (n)	الشعر - النظم	I write poetry.
poetic (adj)	شعري	I like Shawki's poetic language.

5 Expressions & Idioms

a book of facts	كتاب علمي	I'm afraid I can't
a full-time writer	كاتب مفرغ	In particular
a good length for a poem	طول مناسب للقصيدة	its rhythm is too slow
a long time ago	منذ وقت طويل	lines that rhyme
a piece of writing	عمل كتابي	not feeling very well
an adventure story	قصة مغامرة	on his way home
be best known for	مشهور أكثر بـ	similar to
different from/to	يختلف عن	this was where the
faculty of arts	كلية الآداب	travel books
for a while	لفترة من الوقت	wedding party

6 Verb + Preposition

arrange ... in	يرتب ... على شكل	learn from	يتعلم من
break up	يفتح	make ... into	يحول ... إلى
come from	يأتي من	mix with	يختلط بـ
compare ... to	يقارن ... بـ	put ... away	يضع جانباً - يترك
get away from	يتبعد عن	sail from ... to ...	يسافر من ... إلى ...
learn about	يتعلم عن		

Clear the confusion

row / raw

- row
 - In class, I sit in the third row.
- raw
 - People can't eat raw meat.

صف (جاء إلى جنب)

خام / غير مطبوخ / خام

curtain / current

- curtain(n)
 - There are some curtain trees in the garden.
- current(adj)
 - I follow current events on the internet.

نبات الكشمش (الذي ثماره تشبه العنب أو الربيب)

حالي / جاري

General Exercise Vocabulary study

MCQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. Thank you for the you have done for me.
 - a. favour b. home c. rules
 - d. request e. job
2. You will need to make
 - a. a favour b. preparations c. reason
 - d. a request e. health
3. A person who is popular is not
 - a. small b. unknown c. adult
 - d. famous e. unpopular
4. 'Clear' is to 'pure' as 'walk' is to
 - a. route b. go c. step
 - d. path e. come
5. Giza Pyramids are well-known all over the world. The antonyms of the word "well-known" are
 - a. celebrated b. nameless c. well-built
 - d. unknown e. famous
6. Many people left the film before the end because it was very boring. The antonyms of "boring" are
 - a. annoying b. interesting c. terrifying
 - d. exciting e. frightening

(المراد المعروف - لثقت ٢٢ - ٢٤)

(المراد المثير للاشمئزاز - ٢٢ - ٢٤)

7. Some types of sand are into glass.
 - a. thrown b. turned c. fallen
 - d. made e. done
8. I asked my friend to wait for until I get dressed.
 - a. good b. ever c. some time
 - d. while e. a while

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Good citizens always the rules.
 - a. break b. have c. follow d. spend
2. The fresh air of the countryside has my health.
 - a. made b. did c. improved d. stayed
3. He had offered to help even before I a request.
 - a. made b. did c. improved d. stayed
4. Formal and informal are
 - a. synonyms b. antonyms c. lines d. verses
5. "She had a full-time job." "Full" here is an antonym of
 - a. part b. empty c. little d. few
6. In a park, we walk along paths which are covered with
 - a. gravel b. gravelled c. gravelling d. gravels
7. In a park, we walk along paths which are
 - a. gravel b. gravelled c. gravelling d. gravels
8. He used a heavy hammer to break the small rock
 - a. in b. up c. of d. into
9. Look at this shop. This is I saw you for the first time.
 - a. where b. when c. what d. who
10. Being sociable اجتماعي, he likes to mix others.
 - a. with b. by c. from d. of
11. I am very happy in my job.
 - a. currant b. current c. currency d. currently
12. Cotton is a material.
 - a. some b. same c. row d. raw

AltFwOk.com موقع المتفوق

Part III

Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

A. Robert Louis Stevenson

(SB page 62)

Robert Louis Stevenson was born in Scotland in 1850 and died 44 years later in Samoa, a small island in the South Pacific. He was not always well because the weather in Edinburgh was too cold for him. When he was a child, he couldn't always go to school. He studied to become a lawyer at Edinburgh University, but he always wanted to write. At the age of 21, he decided to become a full-time writer.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) فيما بعد
- (2) جزيرة
- (3) المحيط الهادي
- (4) بصحة جيدة
- (5) الطقس
- (6) محامي
- (7) كاتب متفرغ
- (8) أكثر دفئاً
- (9) يُحسّن
- (10) فترة من الوقت
- (11) برغم أن
- (12) مشهور
- (13) روايات
- (14) مختطف
- (15) قضية
- (16) قصائد
- (17) كتب الرحلات
- (18) ناجح
- (19) مغامرة
- (20) قراصنة
- (21) ذو شعبية
- (22) يتحول إلى

He often travelled to warmer places to try to improve his health. For a while he lived in France and this was where he met his wife, Fanny. She was from the United States, so Stevenson also travelled to America with her.

Although he is best known for his novels like Kidnapped and Strange Case of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde, Stevenson also wrote many poems and travel books. His first successful novel was Treasure Island – an adventure story about pirates. His books are still very popular today and many of them have been made into films.

B. The Gardener (SB page 63)

The gardener does not love to talk. He makes me keep the gravel walk. And when he puts his tools away, he locks the door and takes the key.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) بستاني
- (2) الحصى
- (3) أدوات
- (4) يغلق
- (5) مفتاح

Away behind the currant row, Where no one else but cook may go, Far in the plots, I see him dig, Old and serious, brown and big.

He digs the flowers, green, red, and blue, Nor wishes to be spoken to.

He digs the flowers and cuts the hay, And never seems to want to play.

- (6) نبات التوت
- (7) صنف
- (8) مزارع
- (9) الجمع لأرض
- (10) يهمل - يهمل
- (11) حاد
- (12) جاد
- (13) يقطع
- (14) يهمل

2 Workbook Texts

A. Poem 1 My friend's cat

Every day when I come home
I look for my friend's cat
I usually find this cat
Lying in an old hat.
What do you think of that?

Poem 2 The boy's toy

There was a small boy
Who had a wooden toy
He loved that toy.
One day he took it to bed
And slept with it by his head.
He loved that toy.
When the boy was woken
He found the toy was broken
He loved that toy.

(WB page 124)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) صديق
- (2) حذاء
- (3) نمت
- (4) مكسور

B. Sherif : Taha, could you do something for me ?

(WB page 123)

Taha : Yes, of course. What is it ?

Sherif : Can you play football with us tonight ? We need another player.

Taha : No, I am afraid I can't. I hurt my leg last week. I can't run on it.

Sherif : Ok, don't worry. I'll ask Omar.

C. Randa : Good morning. I wonder if you can help me.

Assistant : Certainly. What is it ?

Randa : I don't suppose you could tell me who the manager is ?

Assistant : Yes, of course. It's Mr Mansour

Randa : Could you do me a favour ?

Can you give him my CV ?

I'd really like to work here.

Assistant : No problem, I'll give it to him when I next see him.

Audio-script

(58 page 64)

Teacher: This week we're studying the writer,

Robert Louis Stevenson.

poetry and his novels. Have any of you heard about him or read any of his work?

Nesma: Didn't he write Treasure Island? I tried reading it last year, but it was so boring, so I decided to watch the film instead.

Teacher: Did you like it?

Nesma: Yes, it was really good. I love adventure

and I enjoy reading adventure stories, too. I just found Treasure Island a bit difficult.

Teacher: Well, it was written a long time ago. He was born in 1850 and Treasure Island was published in 1881. And Wafaa, have you read any of his books?

Wafaa: I don't think so. I prefer reading romantic stories⁽⁹⁾ and poems.

Teacher: Well, Stevenson wrote poems too. In fact, he wrote all kinds of things. He began writing stories when he was a child and unwell. Unfortunately, Stevenson was often very ill and he finished writing Treasure Island while he was ill in bed. He continued to write more books, including a collection of poems⁽⁹⁾ called A Child's Garden of Verses and he also travelled a lot to get away from⁽⁹⁾ the cold Scottish weather.

Nesma: Where did he go?

Teacher: As a young man, he went to Europe, France and Switzerland⁽⁹⁾ mainly. In fact, his first book was about his travels in France. He and his family loved sailing and they wanted to sail from America, where they were living, to the South Pacific. The family chose to build a house in Samoa and the Stevenson family lived there until he died in 1894.

Now, for this week's lesson, I want you to choose a story or a poem by Stevenson and bring it to class to discuss. Then ...

Check Vocabulary

- المكتشف المكتشف
- على وجه الخصوص
- محاولة
- إعلام
- بشر
- قصص رومانسية
- مجموعة من القصائد
- هروب من
- دولة سويسرا
- في كتاب إلى حد بعيد

Audio-script

(58 page 65)

Wafaa: I don't have time to go to the library this afternoon. Could you do me a favour⁽⁹⁾ and go for me?

Nesma: Yes, of course. Which books do you want me to get?

Wafaa: Can you find A Child's Garden of Verses? I prefer reading poetry to long stories.

Nesma: No problem. But, could you do something for me when you're in town, please?

Wafaa: Yes, what is it?

Nesma: I don't really enjoy reading, so can you get me a DVD of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde? Then, I won't have to read it!

Wafaa: Nesma!

Check Vocabulary

مفاداة

Listening WB

(WB page 125)

Lesson 4

A sailor went to sea, sea, sea.

To see what he could see, see, see.

But all that he could see, see, see.

Was the bottom of the deep blue sea, sea, sea.

Part IV

Language

Verbs + infinitive / - ing form

1 Verbs + to + inf.

afford to	يتحمل تكاليف	manage to	يتكهن من
agree to	يوافق أن	offer to	يعرض أن
arrange to	يرتب أن	plan to	يخطط أن
choose to	يختار أن	promise to	يعد أن
decide to	يقرر أن	refuse to	يرفض أن
expect to	يتوقع أن	threaten to	يهدد أن
fail to	يفشل في أن	want to	يريد أن
help to	يساعد في	wish to	يرغب أن
hope to	يأمل أن	warn (not) to	يخبر أن / ألا
intend to	ينوي أن	would like to	يريد أن
learn to	يتعلم أن		

- Hazem is planning to go to university next year. He hopes to study medicine.

- بعض الأفعال السابقة قد تأتي بعدها المفعول أولاً ثم to + inf
- I wanted to work hard.
 - They expected me to come first.
- في حالة النفي يمكن أن تستخدم (not to) بعد الأفعال السابقة ويكون معناها منكره عن شيء
الفعل نفسه. لاحظ الفرق
- Ahmed decided not to use my tools.
(أخذ أحمد قراراً ألا يستخدم أدواتي - نفي يستخدمها)
 - Ahmed didn't decide to use my tools.
(لم يقرر أحمد أن يستخدم أدواتي - قد قرر أن يفعل ذلك يوماً ما)
- بعض الأفعال السابقة يمكن أن تأتي بعدها حرف جر آخر غير to بمعنى مختلف. لاحظ
- I agree with you. (أوافق معك)
 - The couple agreed on a time for the wedding. (اتفقوا على)
- بعض الأفعال السابقة يمكن أن تأتي بعدها (that) ثم جملة
- They decided that they won't sell the family house.

Mini Test 1

• Apply

- Choose the correct Answer from a, b, c or d:

- I planned the weekend with my grandparents.
a. spend b. to spend c. spending d. to spending
- I promise I will be always helpful to you.
a. to b. with c. on d. that
- This player intends this year. He can play for two more seasons.
a. retire b. to retire c. not to retire d. retiring

2 Verb + [inf + ing]

avoid	تجنب	include	يشمل / يتضمن
consider	يعتبر في	keep	يظل / يستمر في
deny	ينكر	mind	يمنع
dislike	يكره	practise	يمارس
enjoy	يستمتع	recommend	يوصي به / يُعَيِّن
finish	يهيئ - ينتهي	suggest	يقترح
imagine	يتخيل		

- You should avoid going out late at night.
- She has just finished cleaning her bedroom.

- في حالة النفي يمكن أن تستخدم (not + inf + ing) بعد الأفعال السابقة ويكون معناها
منكره عن شيء. لاحظ الفرق
- He suggested not going to the park.
(اقترح عدم الذهاب إلى الحديقة - لا يريد أن يذهب)
 - He didn't suggest going to the park.
(لم يقترح الذهاب إلى الحديقة - ليست فكرته)
- لاحظ استخدام صيغة (subjunctive) مع الأفعال التالية:
- suggest / recommend / advise / ask ... + (that) + Subject + inf. / should + inf. ...
- I suggest that Sama join the school trip. (Not joins)
 - = I suggest that Sama should join the school trip.

Mid Test 2

- Choose the correct Answer from a, b, c or d:

- Do you enjoy a sport?
a. do b. doing c. to do d. to doing
- He denied me before. He said it was our first meeting.
a. seeing b. to see c. not seeing d. not to see
- I can't imagine in the city. I enjoy its excitement and noise.
a. live b. to live c. living d. not living
- She suggested that her mother another doctor.
a. seeing b. to see c. see d. will see
- Would you mind me a hand?
a. to give b. giving c. being given d. give

3 Verb + [inf + ing] / [to + inf.]

بعض الأفعال التالية تأتي بعدها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) دون فرق في المعنى:

begin / start	يبدأ	like	يحب / يفضل
continue	يستمر	love	يحب
hate	يكره	prefer	يفضل

- ex. - We continued to run / running until we got home.
- The wind began to blow / blowing just as we arrived home from school.
ولكن لاحظ أنه إذا استخدمنا (would) قبل الفعل love / prefer / like يأتي بعدها
غالباً (to + inf.)
- ex. - I'd prefer to finish my work early today.
- I'd love to attend your birthday party.
- لاحظ أن (starting / beginning) تأتي بعدها (to + inf) فقط.
- ex. - The weather is starting to get colder. (Not starting getting)

الفعل المتعدي يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) مع do/does/doing في الماضي
remember, forget, stop, try, go on + to + inf. / (inf. + ing)

1. remember

- remember + to + inf. يذكر أن عمل
ex. - I remember to buy your homework tomorrow.
- remember + gerund يتذكر أنه عمل
ex. - I remember turning up in the middle of the night.

2. forget

- forget + to + inf. ينسى أن يفعل (ها الشيء - لم يتم القاءه)
ex. - She forgot to buy her grandfather's newspaper, so he was angry.
- forget + gerund ينسى أنه فعل (فعل الشيء - لكنه نسي ذلك)
ex. - I have forgot the manager, so I phoned him again.

3. stop

- stop + to + inf. يتوقف عما يفعله لكي يفعل شيء آخر
ex. - On her way home, Dina stopped to talk to her friend Warda.
- stop + gerund يتوقف عن عمل شيء - بشئ تام أو مؤقت
ex. - Dina and Warda have stopped talking to each other.

4. regret

- regret + (inf. + ing) يلم على شيء قد فعله
ex. - I regret wasting my time.
- regret + to + inf. يشعر بالأسف لأنه مضطر لعمل شيء
ex. - I regret to tell you that your arm is broken.

5. go on

- go on + (inf. + ing) يستمر في القيام بنفس العمل أو النشاط
ex. - Rodayna went on studying physics for three hours.
- go on + (to + inf.) ينتقل من عمل إلى عمل آخر
ex. - Rodayna studied physics for three hours, then she went on to study Arabic.

6. try

- try + to + inf. يحاول أن يفعل
ex. - You tried to answer the difficult question, didn't you?
- try + (inf. + ing) يجرب القيام بشئ - ليرى النتيجة
ex. - Try taking an aspirin. It might work.

Mini Test 3

Choose the correct Answer from a, b, c or d:

- It continued for three hours non-stop.
a. raining b. to raining c. to rain d. a & c
- I'd love your birthday party. Surely, I'll be there on time.
a. attending b. to attend c. to attending d. a & b
- Remember off the gas before you go out.
a. attending b. turning c. to turn d. to be turned
- I remember that man before.
a. seeing b. to see c. to seeing d. a & b
- He stopped because it affected his health badly.
a. to smoking b. smoking c. to smoke d. b & c
- He stopped outside because other people on the bus refused to let him smoke while driving.
a. to smoking b. smoking c. to smoke d. b & c

Notes for more understanding

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

- يستخدم المصدر بدون (to) بعد الأفعال الناقصة:
can / could / may / might / must / mustn't / needn't / shall / should / will / would
- She can speak 3 languages.
- جميع حروف الجر يأتي بعد اسم (noun) أو فعل مضارع (ing):
- I will go on working for this company.
- I'm worried about the health of my mother.
- يستخدم اسم مكان بعد حرف الجر (to) عندما يكون معناه (إلى):
- They went to Aswan.
- يستخدم الفعل في المصدر (inf.) بعد حرف الجر (to) عندما يكون معناه (أن - لكي):
- I hope to win the next match.
- We work hard to achieve our goals in life.

1. نستخدم الفعل مضارع له (inf.) أو اسم (noun) بعد حرف الجر (to) في الحالات التالية:
- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------|
| adapt to | يتكيف مع | be opposed to | يعترض على |
| apply ... to | يتقدم بطلب على | contribute to | يساهم في |
| be used to | كان معتاد على | lead to | يؤدي إلى |
| become used to | أصبح معتاد على | look forward to | يطلع إلى |
| get used to | تعود على | object to | يعترض على |
| be accustomed to | أصبح معتاد على | take to | يبتدأ على |

- Pollution is a serious problem.
- Pollution is getting worse.

2. نستخدم (to + inf.) في حالة وجود فعل بعد بعض الصفات مثل:
- happy / sad / glad / ready / willing / unwilling / eager / pleased / lucky / amazed

- She was ready to live in Aswan after getting married there.

3. في حالة وجود فعل بعد (show / learn / teach / tell) نستخدم (to + inf.) أو (to - inf.)

- I don't know how to use this mobile. (X)
- I don't know to use this mobile. (✓)
- I'll show you how to use this mobile. (X)
- I don't show you to use this mobile. (✓)

4. في حالة وجود فعل بعد (what / how / where...) نستخدم (to + inf.):
- He got lost; he didn't know where to go.

5. الأفعال و الظروف الآتية يأتي بعدها inf. فقط بـ to:
- had better / would rather / let / make

- She would rather stay at home.
- She was made to write the essay again.

6. لاحظ استخدام (to + inf.) بعد الكلمات (the first / the second / the last / the next)
- Mona was the last to watch the film.

7. الفعل (help) يأتي بعده المصدر مع (to) أو بدونها:
- He helped me do (to do) the job.

8. لاحظ ما يلي:
- It + be + adj. + (for + subj. / obj. pron.) to + inf. ...
- It was easy for me to do the job.

9. الأفعال الآتية يأتي بعدها (inf. + ing) في حالة عدم وجود مفعول، و يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) في حالة وجود مفعول:
- advise / allow / forbid / recommend / permit / encourage

- We don't allow smoking here.
= We don't allow anyone to smoke here.

10. الأفعال الآتية يستخدم بعدها المصدر ليدل على أننا تابعنا الحدث بالكامل و يأتي بعدها (inf. + ing) ليدل على أننا تابعنا جزء من الحدث:
- hear / see / notice / watch

- I heard Mariam sing a song. = I heard the whole song.
- I heard Mariam singing a song. = I heard part of the song

General Exercise - On Language

تأليف: الأستاذة الدكتورة هبة عبد الحليم

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
1. My mother promised me to finish my school project.

- a. helps b. help c. helping d. to help

2. She avoided her older sister while she was studying.

- a. to disturb b. disturbing c. disturbed d. disturbs

3. Our national team is expected in the next world cup finals.

- a. play b. playing c. to play d. to playing

4. The gardener allowed us in the park.

- a. cycle b. to cycle c. cycling d. to cycling

5. He is very ill, so he stopped

- a. smoke b. smoking c. to smoke d. smoked

6. Do you regret not the museum when you were in Cairo?

- a. to visit b. to visiting c. visit d. visiting

7. They want their new house.
a. to painting b. to be painted c. to paint d. painted (٢٠٢٢ - ٢٠٢٣)
8. My parents suggested to the theatre yesterday.
a. going b. go c. went d. gone (٢٠٢٢ - ٢٠٢٣)
9. He is looking forward to his friends.
a. meet b. meets c. met d. meeting (٢٠٢٢ - ٢٠٢٣)
10. I like football.
a. to play b. playing c. play d. a & b (٢٠٢٢ - ٢٠٢٣)
11. Civil engineers get used to outdoors in extreme conditions.
a. have worked b. working c. works d. worked (٢٠٢٢ - ٢٠٢٣)
12. Don't forget our books with you the next time you come.
a. to bring b. to bringing c. bringing d. bring (٢٠٢٢ - ٢٠٢٣)
13. Since the invention of the internet, I stopped newspapers.
a. to buy b. to buying c. buying d. bought (٢٠٢٢ - ٢٠٢٣)
14. Ali: I have got flu. Bassam: Try an aspirin. It's good.
a. to take b. taking c. to be taken d. to taking (٢٠٢٢ - ٢٠٢٣)
15. I tried my eyes open, but I couldn't.
a. keep b. to keep c. kept d. keeping (٢٠٢٢ - ٢٠٢٣)
16. Many people in our town objected the new bridge.
a. to build b. to building c. build d. building (٢٠٢٢ - ٢٠٢٣)
17. I was made a fine for not wearing the seat belt.
a. pay b. paying c. to pay d. paid (٢٠٢٢ - ٢٠٢٣)
18. When I visit a foreign country, I'd rather in a good hotel.
a. stayed b. stay c. staying d. can stay (٢٠٢٢ - ٢٠٢٣)
19. I recommend that he to English programmes.
a. is listening b. was listened c. listen d. listening (٢٠٢٢ - ٢٠٢٣)

تلميح: تذكر ما تم شرحه في القاعدة جيدًا واستعد للتدريبات الشاملة حصص الدروس الثالث والرابع



Part I Vocabulary

تلميح: تلميح من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان)

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

candlelight(n)	نور الشمعة	line(n)	سطر شعري
contrast(ed) (a - v)	تباين / اختلاف - يقارن	rhyme(d) (n - v)	القافية - بُغْي / تسجع
garden(n)	بستان	rhythm(n)	إيقاع
gardener(n)	بستاني (جنايني)	variety(n)	تنوع - تنمذية
hop(ped) (n - v)	قفزة - يقفز - يعجل	verse(n)	فردة شعرية
		issue(n)	قضية

تلميح: من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

activity(n)	نشاط	especially(adv)	صفة خاصة
author(n)	مؤلف	fair(adj)	عادل
brief(adj)	مختصر	grown-ups(n)	الكبار
broken(adj)	مكسور	issue(n)	قضية
clear(adj)	صافي - واضح	hate(d) (v)	يكره
clearly(adv)	بوضوح	narrate(d) (v)	يسرد - يروي
dedicate(d) (v)	يخصص - يكرس	repeated(adj)	متكرر
describe(d) (v)	يصف	review(n)	عرض نقدي
determine(d) (v)	يحدد - يضمن على	situation(n)	موقف
differently(adv)	بشكل مختلف	subject(n)	موضوع
dress(ed) (n - v)	فستان - يرتدي ملابس	summary(n)	تلخيص

الموقع التفوق AltFwok.com

Definitions تعريفات

تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلم المستهدفة - ص 352

تدريب

Memorise

- hop (pod) (v) يقفز to move by jumping on one foot
rhyme (d) (v) يتطابق في القافية if two words or lines of poetry rhyme, they end with the same sound, including a vowel
rhythm (n) إيقاع a repeated sound in music, poems, etc
verse (n) نقطة شعرية lines that form one part of a poem

Understand

Exercise 1 On Vocabulary

• Understand

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- Does it with sit?
a. read b. rhyme c. write d. roll (المعنى القافية يأت ٢٠٢٢)
- If you some of his early writing with his later work, you can see how much he improved.
a. contrast b. hack c. comment d. lock (البحر - رشيد ٢٠٢٠)
- The word "blue" with "clue"
a. pinches b. rhymes c. includes d. hides
- It was a very long poem. It had about 60
a. verses b. rows c. rhythms d. pleasures
- I had to after the injury I had yesterday.
a. run b. hope c. hop d. happen (السياح - ٢٠٢٠)
- He is interested in social
a. issues b. hopping c. mutiny d. verse
- When the lights go out at night, we usually depend on
a. daylight b. candlelight c. the sun d. darkness
- Children like poems and music that have strong
a. verse b. rhyme c. rhythm d. poem

موقع التفوق
Altfwok.com

Learning from literature

9. We have a small in front of our house in which we plant flowers.

- a. park b. field c. garden d. villa

10. The of taste, shape and colour is what makes one fruit different from another.

- a. variety b. stress c. sentence d. line

11. This poem has twelve verses, four each.

- a. poems b. poets c. rhymes d. lines

2 Important Vocabulary

12. She always in front of the mirror.

- a. dresses b. wears c. puts on d. takes (المرطبة - الوشاح ٢٠٢٠)

13. It was not to play the final match on the other team's home town.

- a. broken b. brief c. fair d. Scottish

14. He expresses his ideas in a way.

- a. clearness b. clarity c. clear d. clearly

15. He expresses his ideas

- a. clearness b. clarity c. clear d. clearly

16. Mr Mohammed has a good style in short stories.

- a. determining b. narrating c. hating d. sailing

17. As a young man, I used to ask for advice because they are wise .
حكما .

- a. teenagers b. infants c. kids d. grown-ups

18. He won't play tomorrow's match because he has a arm.

- a. broken b. brief c. fair d. long-term

19. As a mother, she all her time to her children.

- a. borrows b. takes c. dedicates d. receives

20. His mistakes make me angry. He never seems to learn from them.

- a. pleasant b. popular c. repeated d. enjoyable

21. The police haven't the cause of the accident yet.

- a. determined b. narrated c. hated d. described

UNIT 6

22. Most managers do not like long reports. They prefer notes.
a. broken b. brief c. fair d. Scottish

3 Definitions

23. is a repeated sound in music, poems, etc.
a. Rhythm b. Rhyme c. Verse d. Stanza
24. If two words or lines of poetry they end with the same sound, including a vowel.
a. dig b. rhythm c. rhyme d. swing
25. Lines that form one part of a poem are called a
a. poet b. verse c. rhyme d. rhythm
26. To is to move by jumping on one foot.
a. hope b. hop c. jump d. leap

Part II Vocabulary Study

تأنيبه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تربيته

1 Verbal Collocations

come	home	يعود للبيت	have	a rhythm	به إيقاع
give	a reason for	يُؤدّ	fun		يسرح / يلهو
	a rhythm	تغطي إيقاع	stay	in bed	يلزم الفراش
spend	time reading	يقضي الوقت في القراءة			

2 Synonyms

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
clear	واضح obvious, understandable, direct, uncomplicated, explicit
clear	صافي bright, cloudless
grown-ups	الكبار adults
hate	يكره loathe, detest

3 Antonyms

Word	كلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	المعنى
agree about	يتفق في	disagree about	المتناقض
clear	واضح	vague, unclear, ambiguous	مُحلب في
clear	صافي	cloudy	مُعتص
dress	يرتدي ملابس - يلبس	undress	عانة
fair	عادل	unfair	يسمع ملابس - بُغري
hate	يكره	love, like	حُب - حائر
light	النور	dark, darkness	يُحبب ظلام

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary

clear	
clear(ed) (v) يُفّح - يوضح	- My teacher cleared the difficult point for me.
clearance (n) إزالة	- Clearance of forests is dangerous to the environment.
clarity (n) وضوح	- The clarity of the meaning makes it easy to understand it.
clear (adj) واضح	- It is clear that he is angry.
clearly (adv) بوضوح	- He is clearly angry.

hop	
hop(ped) (v) يقفز - يقبل	- This bird hops.
hop (n) قفزة	- This bird takes short hops.
hopping (adj) القفز - العجول	- This is a hopping bird.

rhyme	
rhyme(d) (v) يسجع - يُفّح	'Tin' rhymes with 'thin'
rhyme (n) النافية - قصيدة	This poem has a nice rhyme.

variety	
vary(ied) (v)	- People vary in size and personality.
يتنوع - يختلف	
variety (n)	- There is a variety of cotton clothes in this shop.
تشكيلة متنوعة - تنوع	
various (adj)	- There're various cotton clothes in this shop.
متعدد - مختلف	
variable (adj)	- The speed of this car is variable.
متغير - مُتبدّل	

Expressions & Idioms

a brief summary	تلخيص موجز	everyday life	الحياة اليومية
a hard work	عمل صعب	feel differently	لديه شعور مختلف
a form of writing	شكل من أشكال الكتابة	I hated it	كُنت أكرهه
a mind map	خريطة ذهنية	in addition to	بالإضافة إلى
at first	في البداية	in my opinion	من وجهة نظري
be outside playing	الخروج للعب	make it easy to say	يجعل من السهل قول
be aware of/about	أن تكون على دراية بـ	quite the other way	على العكس تماماً
be highlighted	مُتسّط	stressed words	كلمات مُتسّدة في النص
in fact	في الواقع	summarize the main points	تلخيص النقاط الرئيسية
compare and contrast	مقارنة وتباين	the part I find boring is ...	الجزء الذي أراه مملاً هو ...
describe how I feel	وصف كيف أشعر	when it is light	في النهار
each other	بعضنا بعض	words that rhyme	كلمات تُقفي مع بعضها البعض
easy to remember	سهل التذكر		

Verb + Preposition

search about	يبحث عن	look for	يبحث عن
rhyme about	يقفي مع	rhyme with	يقفي مع
get up	يقوم/يقبض	stay in	يقيم/يبقى في
go past	يكتب عن	write about	يكتب عن

Clear the confusion

- strong / strange**
- strong (adj)** قوي
 - He has **strong** muscles. عضلاته
 - strange (adj)** غريب
 - People don't like **strange** things.
- feel different / feel differently**
- feel different** يشعر أنه مختلف أو مميز
 - His excellent skills make him **feel different**.
 - feel differently** لديه شعور مختلف
 - Everyone enjoys their time. I don't know why you **feel differently**.

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

MCQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- Global warming is one of the main ... that must be faced and solved.
 - a. issues
 - b. rules
 - c. roles
 - d. problems
 - e. reviews
- In a line of poetry, stressed words ... the rhythm.
 - a. lose
 - b. have
 - c. give
 - d. do
 - e. spend
- "I hate that kind of person." In this sentence, we can replace the verb 'hate' with ...
 - a. love
 - b. detest
 - c. loathe
 - d. admire
 - e. disagree
- "I have expected him to recognise his tablet as the difference is clear." The adjective 'clear' in this sentence is an antonym for ...
 - a. vague
 - b. obvious
 - c. pure
 - d. unclear
 - e. explicit
- 'Hate' is to 'love' as 'light' is to ...
 - a. bright
 - b. sunny
 - c. dark
 - d. darken
 - e. darkness
- Birds are usually active ... day.
 - a. in
 - b. by
 - c. at
 - d. of
 - e. during the
- The jobs we have to do in ... life sometimes make us forget our social duties.
 - a. daily
 - b. every day
 - c. everyday
 - d. all today
 - e. no day

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The doctor advised me to ... in bed until I am completely better.
 - a. make
 - b. do
 - c. improve
 - d. stay

- 2 When your father home, I'll tell him you don't want to study your lessons.
a comes b has c follows d spends
- 3 My children much fun in the park yesterday.
a came b had c followed d spent
- 4 Aya a lot of time watching TV.
a gave b made c broke d spent
- 5 The words "through" and "throw"
a lock b rhyme c rhythm d bare
- 6 Children like listening to and reading
a locks b rhymes c rhythms d bares
- 7 He expresses his ideas in a way.
a clearness b clarity c clear d clearly
- 8 He expresses his ideas
a clearness b clarity c clear d clearly
- 9 It is nothing of your business to agree or disagree what I say.
a in b for c at d about
- 10 Short lines of poetry are easy
a remember b remembering c to remember d remembers
- 11 'Lap' rhymes 'tap'.
a in b on c with d for
- 12 Before electric lamps, people used to read at night candlelight.
a for b from c to d by
- 13 I am not used to this place. It is to me.
a light b popular c strange d strong
- 14 I know why you feel You are not used to the hot weather of Aswan.
a differently b different c clear d row

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

C. Bed in Summer

(SB page 66)

In winter⁽¹⁾ I get up⁽²⁾ at night and dress⁽³⁾ by yellow candlelight.⁽⁴⁾

In summer quite the other way,⁽⁵⁾ I have to go to bed by day.⁽⁶⁾ I have to go to bed and see The birds still hopping⁽⁷⁾ on the tree,

Or hear the grown-up⁽⁸⁾ people's feet⁽⁹⁾ Still going past⁽¹⁰⁾ me in the street.

And does it not seem hard⁽¹¹⁾ to you, When all the sky is clear⁽¹²⁾ and blue, And I should like so much to play, To have to go to bed by day.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) فصل الشتاء
- (2) يقوم من الفراش
- (3) يرتدي ثيابه
- (4) ضوء الشمعة
- (5) في العكس تماماً
- (6) نهاراً
- (7) يقفز على الفروع
- (8) بزر
- (9) القام
- (10) الممر
- (11) صعب
- (12) صافي

D. Khaled's opinion about the poem

(SB page 66)

Khaled, 4 : 04 PM

The words Stevenson has used very clearly⁽¹⁾ describe⁽²⁾ the situations⁽³⁾ he's writing about and I really like that. I also think the poem's subject⁽⁴⁾ is very interesting because everyone feels differently⁽⁵⁾ in different seasons.⁽⁶⁾ In my opinion, poets⁽⁷⁾ should write about everyday life.⁽⁸⁾



Check Vocabulary

- (1) بوضوح
- (2) وصف
- (3) المواقف
- (4) موضوع
- (5) بشكل مختلف
- (6) فصول
- (7) شاعر
- (8) الحياة اليومية

However ⁽⁹⁾ I think the second verse ⁽¹⁰⁾ is too long and its rhythm ⁽¹¹⁾ is too slow. ⁽¹²⁾

Hamid, 5:36 PM

Hamid's opinion about the poem

I love the language in the poem, especially ⁽¹³⁾ the way Stevenson describes the light ⁽¹⁴⁾ at different times of day. ⁽¹⁵⁾ I also think the second verse is great because the rhymes ⁽¹⁶⁾ in it are so clever. However, in my opinion, the poem's subject is quite boring ⁽¹⁷⁾ because going to bed and getting up aren't very interesting activities. ⁽¹⁸⁾ I think poets should write about more exciting ⁽¹⁹⁾ things.

Sara's opinion about the poem

(58 page 67)

My favourite poem is Bed in Summer because it describes how I felt when I was young. In the summer I had to go to bed when it was light and I hated ⁽²⁰⁾ it. Like ⁽²¹⁾ the author ⁽²²⁾ I wanted to be outside ⁽²³⁾ playing and I didn't think it was fair ⁽²⁴⁾ that everyone else was outside having fun.

It's a good length ⁽²⁶⁾ for a poem, only three verses and I like the fact ⁽²⁷⁾ that the words rhyme. ⁽²⁸⁾ I don't like poems which don't rhyme. The first two lines ⁽²⁹⁾ rhyme, 'night' and 'light' and then the next two lines rhyme, 'way' and 'day'. This makes it easy to say and easy to remember!

Robert Louis Stevenson was ill when he was a child and stayed in bed a lot. That's why I think he wrote this poem.



- (9) مع ذلك
- (10) فقرة شعرية
- (11) إيقاع
- (12) بطيء
- (13) خاصة
- (14) الضوء
- (15) النهار
- (16) القوافي
- (17) مممل
- (18) لنشاط
- (19) مثير
- (20) يكره
- (21) مثل
- (22) مؤلف
- (23) بالخارج
- (24) عادل
- (25) يصرح
- (26) بطول
- (27) حقيقة
- (28) يقف
- (29) سطر شعري

2 Video part section

Literature ⁽¹⁾ comes in a variety ⁽²⁾ of forms ⁽³⁾; poetry ⁽⁴⁾, novels ⁽⁵⁾, travel books and biographies ⁽⁶⁾ are just a few.

Reading literature from different times helps us learn about the world we live in, about important modern issues ⁽⁷⁾ and about how much society ⁽⁸⁾ has changed.

When you read any piece of literature, it's helpful ⁽⁹⁾ to consider ⁽¹⁰⁾ your own opinion - why you like or dislike a particular ⁽¹¹⁾ character or whether you have experienced something similar to what you've read in a poem. Discussing this with your friends can also help you learn more about each other and the world around you.

Check vocabulary

- (1) ألب
- (2) تنوع
- (3) أشكال
- (4) شعر
- (5) روايات
- (6) سير شخصية
- (7) قضايا معاصرة
- (8) المجتمع
- (9) مفيد
- (10) اعتبر
- (11) شخصية

تطلب من الطلاب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإلقاء الأسئلة التالية عليهم :

1. What different forms of literature does the video name ?
2. What can reading literature from different times teach us ?
3. What should you discuss with your friends ?

Part IV Language



مملكة
البحرين

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرس الأول والثاني.

كتابة

General Exercise - On Language

التدريبات التالية مرتبة بشكل متدرج تصاعدياً حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم.

كتابة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. You should something good in your free time.
a. does b. do c. did d. done
2. Dr Mustafa has agreed an article about COVID-19.
a. to write b. writing c. to writing d. writes

1. He asked me to read the book that I gave you ?
 a. to read b. reading c. read d. read
2. I have a job next month.
 a. to find b. find c. finds d. find
3. You should avoid friends with such bad people.
 a. to make b. make c. to making d. making
4. I like football matches on TV.
 a. watching b. to watch c. to watching d. a & b
5. I'd like football matches on TV.
 a. watching b. to watch c. to watching d. a & b
6. My uncle has offered me how to drive a car.
 a. teaching b. teach c. to teach d. taught
7. I like in London as it's a beautiful city.
 a. to living b. live c. lives d. living
8. Reem promised and she usually keeps her promises.
 a. she comes b. to come c. coming d. will come
9. Would you helping me? - No, not at all.
 a. think b. mind c. remember d. remind
10. The child started because he was hungry.
 a. crying b. cried c. is crying d. cries
11. The thief denied the money.
 a. stolen b. was stealing c. to steal d. stealing
12. We have arranged at 9 o'clock.
 a. meeting b. will meet c. to meet d. met
13. I wish a car.
 a. to have b. had c. having d. will have
14. I prefer in a swimming pool.
 a. swim b. to swim c. to swimming d. swam
15. I feel like a cold drink.
 a. have b. to have c. having d. to having
16. The little girl playing with her toys until midnight.
 a. wanted b. kept c. decided d. promised

19. One day, I'd like poems myself.
 a. to write b. writing c. to writing d. wrote
20. He hopes the test first time.
 a. passing b. to be passed c. to pass d. to passing
21. Omar has decided with his father when he finishes university.
 a. to work b. to be worked c. working d. to working
22. Our house was robbed last night since we forgot the front door.
 a. locking b. to lock c. locked d. locks
23. When you go diving, you should avoid the coral reefs.
 a. damage b. damages c. damaging d. to damage
24. The naughty boy promised the school principal well in class.
 a. behaving b. to behave c. to have behaved d. behave
- 2 Special cases**
25. Enji is sorry that she was unable to help her mother last night. This means she her mother last night.
 a. regrets helping b. doesn't regret to help
 c. regrets not to help d. regrets not helping
26. I regret to the cinema. It was not a very good movie.
 a. to go b. go c. going d. went
27. I regret that we can't go to the Science Museum next week. There are no more tickets.
 a. saying b. to say c. to saying d. have said
28. Salma was busy the washing up.
 a. does b. doing c. to do d. done
29. Why didn't you remember me the key? How can I open the door now?
 a. to bring b. bring c. bringing d. have brought
30. I suggest that Samy the club.
 a. join b. joined c. has joined d. will join
31. Many people in our town objected the new bridge.
 a. to build b. to building c. building d. built

32. My father often me to drive his car.
a. lets b. makes c. allows d. denies
33. The rules of the library don't allow
a. to smoking b. smoking c. smoke d. to smoke
34. I prefer being jobless to like a slave in such a company.
a. be treated b. treating c. being treated d. treat me
35. We all recommend that book.
a. that read b. that he read c. to read d. to reading
36. After she stopped everyone clapped.
a. to sing b. singing c. sang d. sung
37. I regretted her in public. It was bad for me.
a. criticise b. criticising c. to criticise d. to criticising
38. I regret but it is the law. Tomorrow is my last day at work.
a. to retire b. retiring c. to retiring d. retire
39. Stop You are giving me a headache.
a. to shout b. shouted c. shouting d. to shouting
40. He found the film quite frightening, so he stopped it.
a. to watching b. to watch c. watching d. watched
41. I stopped a shower to refresh myself. It was very hot.
a. to take b. to taking c. taking d. being taken
42. If you want to stay healthy, you should try more exercise.
a. did b. to doing c. to do d. do
43. Try the mobile over there, it might get a better signal.
a. to put b. will put c. putting d. put
44. I tried some medicine but I found that the only chemist's in our area was closed.
a. bought b. buying c. to buy d. to buying
45. I have a stomach ache, so I tried some medicine.
a. taking b. to take c. to be taken d. to taking
46. Please, remember your books with you next time.
a. to bring b. bring c. bringing d. brings

47. I remember the zoo every year when I was young.
a. visiting b. to visit c. visited d. visit
48. Don't forget bread on your way home, Ashraf.
a. buying b. bought c. to buy d. to buying
49. I don't forget my wife for the first time.
a. seen b. I see c. to see d. seeing
50. The gardener let us in the park.
a. cycle b. to cycle c. cycling d. to cycling
51. The gardener allowed us in the park.
a. cycle b. to cycle c. cycling d. to cycling
- 3 Check your understanding
52. I heard Omar talking on his mobile. This means
a. I heard everything he said. b. I heard part of what he said.
c. I heard nothing he said. d. I heard everything he didn't say
53. Try using this cream. This means
a. I know this cream will work. b. I know this cream won't work.
c. I want you to use it and see what will happen.
d. I hope this cream won't work.
54. "He has stopped drinking coffee as it is unhealthy." What does this mean?
a. He wants to drink coffee. b. He didn't drink coffee.
c. He no longer drinks coffee. d. He stopped to drink.
55. "I remember taking an aspirin." This means
a. I took an aspirin. b. I didn't take an aspirin.
c. I remember to take an aspirin. d. I will take an aspirin.

AltFwok.com موقع التتوق



AltFwOk.com موقع التفوق

Part I Vocabulary

هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات الرئيسية في قصة (Treasure Island) بالإضافة للمفردات الثانوية الموجودة في الوندرة وقواعد ما بين السطور والدرج المخصص للطلاب المتقدمين

تلاويته

Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

أهم المفردات الثانوية من قصة (Treasure Island) كما يمكن التطلع على نص المحادثة والمزيد من التدرجات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في صفحة الكتاب

تلاويته

advantage(n)	ميزة	fort(n)	حصن
adventure(n)	مغامرة	get to - got to (v)	وصل إلى
alive(adj)	على قيد الحياة	give ... an advantage	يمنح ... ميزة
arrival(n)	وصول	pick(ed) up (v)	يأخذ - يلتقط
blow - blew - blown (v)	تهب - ينفخ	prevent(ed)(v)	يمنع
cannon(n)	مدفع	put up a flag	يرفع علم
contact(ed) (n - v)	اتصال - يتصل به	race(n)	سباق
defend(ed) (v)	يدافع عن	sink- sank - sunk (v)	يغوص - يفتس
diary(n)	مفكرة يوميات	supplies(n)	مؤن
entry(n)	مدخل مقامة	well- defended(adj)	حصن - منيع
fire(d) at (v)	يطلق النار على	wind(n)	الرياح

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
- When a place is not easy to break into, we say it is well-
a. furnished b. dressed c. known d. defended
 - Climbing Mount Everest is a/an
a. adventure b. diary c. contact d. accident
 - When the wind, a lot of leaves fell from the trees.
a. sank b. stopped c. blew d. fired
 - Wood does not in water.
a. sink b. blow c. defend d. give
 - To the school, you need to cross the street.
a. get from b. get on c. get up d. get to

- It you an advantage to be good with a computer.
a. fires b. gives c. prevents d. puts
- A is a heavy weapon.
a. gun b. knife c. cannon d. sword
- I won't you from defending yourself. You can say why you made this mistake.
a. sink b. blow c. allow d. prevent
- The criminal fired his gun the driver.
a. at b. with c. from d. of
- It is necessary to put a flag on the top of each school.
a. off b. up c. down d. for

Part II Grammatical Hints

home

عند استخدام كلمة (home) كحرف مكان، لا تأخذ حرف الجر (to) مع أفعال الحركة التالية:

go - arrive - leave - reach - return - come

- ex. - I go home at three o'clock. (Not: go to home)
- Mum returned home and prepared lunch. (Not: return to home)

عند استخدام كلمة (home) كقسم بعد الصفات والضمائر، فهي تأخذ حرف الجر (to):

- ex. - I go to my home at three o'clock.
- Mum returned to the family home and prepared lunch.

In addition to / as well as

جملة + بالإضافة إلى ذلك

- He went to the market. In addition, he went to the zoo.

بالإضافة إلى + n. / (Inf. + Ing)

- ex. - In addition to going to the market, we went to the zoo.
- We went to the zoo in addition to going to the market

بالإضافة إلى + n. / (Inf. + Ing)

- ex. - As well as going to the market, we went to the zoo.
- I as well as Ali have a car.
- Eman as well as her brothers likes fish.

ex. - Hala plays the guitar as well as we play the piano.
Rania is talented as well as beautiful.

at the age of عمر

at the age of + العمر = when + subject + was / were + العمر = aged + العمر

ex. - My grandmother died in 2018 at the age of 92.
= My grandmother died in 2018 when she was 92.
= My grandmother died in 2018, aged 92.

Like / Unlike

يمكن استخدام (like / unlike) كروابط:

جملة + اسم + على عكس - Unlike - مثل Like

ex. - Like his father, Abdulrahman works hard.
- Unlike his friends, Ahmed doesn't play football.
- that's why لهذا السبب

جملة نتيجة + so / that is why / as a result / for this reason

ex. - He didn't earn enough money. That's why he travelled abroad.
- I've been feeling tired all week, so I'm going to bed early tonight.
- It's my mother's birthday soon. For this reason, I want to buy her a present.

Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I feel tired. I will home.
a go to b go c arrive to d return to
- football, I also play tennis.
a As b Like c In addition d In addition to
- I play football., I play tennis.
a As b Like c In addition d In addition to

- Nasser his cousins likes chicken.
a as well as b and c in addition d or
- As well as my mother, I did my homework.
a helping b help c helps d a help
- I was so tired yesterday. I went to bed early.
a Because b Although c That's why d In addition to
- her two sisters, Sama is always nervous.
a As b Unlike c Because d In addition
- My grandfather died in 2000, 62.
a since b ago c age d aged
- When I finish the report, I will my home.
a return b go c arrive d go to
- She was very busy preparing for the party, she called me to go and help her.
a in addition b as well as c so d because
- his mother, Ahmed doesn't like noise. They both can't live in a busy city.
a Like b Unlike c As d As well
- I left university in 1994, the age of 22.
a in b at c on d for

AltFwOk.com موقع التفوق

Part III

Language

Police request الطلب المصلي

Making a Request

Formal Requests الطلب بطريقة رسمية

1 Could you possibly + inf. ...?

هل من الممكن أن ...؟

2 I wonder if you could + inf. ...

أتساءل إذا ما كان يمكنك

3 I don't suppose you could + inf.

أظن أنه لا يمكنك أن ...

4 Do you think you could + inf. ...?

أعتقد أنه يمكنك ...؟

Informal Requests الطلب بطريقة ودية (غير رسمية)

1 Can you + inf.?

هل يمكنك أن؟

2 Could you do me a favour, please?

هل يمكن أن تقدم لي مرفوقاً من فضلك؟

3 Could you do something for me?

هل يمكن أن تفعل شيئاً لأجلي؟

Reply

- Certainly.

بالتأكيد

- That's not a problem.

هذا لا يمثل مشكلة.

- Yes, of course.

نعم بالطبع.

- No, I'm afraid I can't.

لا، للأسف لا أستطيع.

- Yes, What is it?

نعم، ماذا تريد؟

- No problem.

لا توجد مشكلة في ذلك.

- Sure.

بالتأكيد.

Would you mind + inf. + ing / noun?

- لاحظ الرد على هذا السؤال:

هل تمانع أن؟

- No, I don't. / No problem. / No, not at all.

(Agreeing)

موافقة

- Yes, I do.

(Disagreeing)

عدم موافقة

2 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

للمزيد من التدريبات فادق المصاحبات

تلويح

Writing Reviews

1- عند كتابة مقال يتضمن عرض نقدي لعمل فني أو أدبي (فيلم / مسلسل / مسرحية / رواية / قصة / قصة / فيلم).

ينبغي تكتب ببساطة ووضح عن النقاط التالية:

• Begin with a brief summary (40-60 words) ... كنيسة ...

• Determine the most important topics / characters / plot.

• Dedicate a paragraph for each idea / topic / character.

• Write a short clear conclusion. The conclusion summarizes the main points of the review in addition to your opinion.

• عند كتابة مقال يتضمن عرض نقدي للفيلم، ينبغي أن تكتب ببساطة ووضح عن النقاط التالية:

• The title العنوان

• The author المؤلف

• Date published تاريخ النشر

• The main idea / topic الفكرة الرئيسية / الموضوع

• What you like about it الشيء الذي يعجبك

• What you don't like about it الشيء الذي لا يعجبك

• Conclusion الخاتمة

Model review

• Write a review of about 150 words about a film or a book you like :

Welad El-Am (The Cousins)

Welad El-Am (The Cousins) is an Egyptian action film. It is a story of love and betrayal directed by Sherif Arafa.

Salwa (Mona Zaki) realizes that her husband, Ezzat (Sherif Mounir), is really Daniel; an Israeli spy who kidnaps her and their two children to Israel to start a new life there.

Mostafa (Karim Abdel Aziz), the Egyptian officer, has been after Daniel for a while. When Salwa asks for help from a man in the street in Israel, her story reaches the Egyptian authorities and Mostafa is sent to collect information on Daniel and rescue Salwa.

There are conflicts of interest. Mostafa's hatred of Daniel is mixed with his need to do things correctly. Salwa's desire to leave is mixed with her belief that Daniel loves her.

The plot also involves Darsen, the Palestinian suicide bomber. There is also the Israeli woman who befriends Salwa in order to watch her.

Mona Zaki's performance as Salwa was strong. Sherif Mounir and Karim Abdel Aziz have done a great job as well.

To conclude, the film is really great. The story, the actors and the direction worked together to make this film which I see deserves watching.

الترجمة Translation

للمزيد من التدريبات اخلق المصارع

تلاوي

1 Translate into Arabic :

1. Novels and stories depend on narration and details. Poetry, on the other hand, depends on rhyme, rhythm and rhetorical phrases.
2. Nature, as it was created, was full of harmony and beauty. When man interfered stupidly with it, he destroyed everything beautiful.
3. One has to do their best at work to achieve their goals. They should also enjoy the beauties of life to ease the pressure of work.

2 Translate into English :

- ١- عندما تتساقط أوراق الأشجار في فصل الخريف وتصبح الأغصان عارية، تتخذ الطبيعة حراً كبيراً من جمالها وجاذبيتها.
- ٢- ليس هناك شك أن قراءة الأعمال الأدبية لها فوائد كثيرة، فهي تربي ثقافة وتغلب حزن كثيرة وتجعلنا نستمتع بالمواقف التي يخففها الكاتب.
- ٣- الشعر يأخذك إلى عالم خيالي ملئ بالسعادة والانسجام الروحي، فهو يخاطب المشاعر الحسنة التي لا يجيد الجميع التعبير عنها.

مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختبار على الورد

address	يعرض	harmony	الانسجام
appealing	جذاب	interfere	يتدخل
attractiveness	الجمالية	literary	أدبي
beauty	الجمال	narration	السر
create	يخلق	paradoxes	معارف
culture	الثقافة	phrase	عبارة
destroy	يهدم	pressure	الضغط
details	التفاصيل	rhetorical	بلاغتي
ease	يخفف عن	spiritual	روحي
enrich	يثرى	there's no doubt	ليس هناك شك
experience	الخبرة	undoubtedly	بلا شك
feelings	الشاعر		

Part IV Just for Advanced level

تلاوي

هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب المتقدمين فقط

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

verse

- verse (n) مقطع من الشعر (جزء من قصيدة يحتوي على عدد من السطور الشعرية)
- This poem has five verses. Each verse includes six lines.
- verse (n) آية (في القرآن أو الكتاب المقدس)
- Helmi recites some verses before he starts his work in the office.
- verse (n) الشعر - النظم
- This play is written in verse.

rhyme

- rhyme (n) القافية
- Traditional poetry always has rhymes.
- rhyme (n) شعر مقفى (له قافية)
- This poem is written in rhyme.
- rhyme (n) منبذ / قصيدة
- I liked rhymes when I was in primary school.
- rhyme (with) (v) سجع / يتكؤ قامة مع
- The word "night" rhymes with "white".

plot

- plot (n) قطعة أرض (مساحة صغيرة)
- I have a small vegetable plot.
- plot (n) مدبر المألة
- My grandfather bought this plot a short time before his death.
- plot (against) (n) مؤامرة / حيلة (مؤامرة)
- There was a plot against the company to make it lose a lot of money.
- plot (n) حيلة المؤامرة أو الفيلم (أدوية الأحداث)
- The plot of the film was exciting.
- plot (against / to) (v) سافر / يكيد (مؤامرة - لئلي)
- He plotted to steal the safe of the supermarket.
- They plotted against their manager.

walk

- walk (v) يمشي / يسير - يمشي سيرا - يمشي (حذاء) سيرا
 - She always walks to school.
 - I like walking in the fields near my country house.
 - She walks her dog in the afternoon.
- walk (v) يوصل (يمشي مع شخص ليضمن أنه وصل لمكان ما بأمان)
 - Don't worry, I'll walk you home.
- walk (n) طريق مشاة (خاصة للتنزه)
 - The walks around the park are covered with gravel.
- walk (n) التنزه سيرا (تمشية للمساحة)
 - I usually go for a walk (go walking) at weekends.

poetry

- poetry (n) الشعر
 - I studied English poetry at university.
- write poetry يكتب الشعر
 - recite poetry يلقي الشعر
 - a line of poetry بيت شعر
 - a piece of poetry مقطوعة شعرية
 - a volume / collection of poetry ديوان شعر
- poet (n) شاعر
 - In Arabic, Hafiz Ibrahim is my favourite poet.
- poem (n) قصيدة
 - Ahmed Shawky wrote great poems.
- poetic / poetical (adj) شاعري - شاعري
 - My daughter has the talent of poetic expression.

literature

- literature (n) الأدب (الروايات والقصص والشعر والمسرحيات ... إلخ)
 - Poetry is the oldest form of Arabic literature.
- literary (adj) أدبي (متعلق بالكتابات الأدبية)
 - I used to read literary criticism. النقد

2 Important Idioms مصطلحات هامة

- keep the gravel walk to stay on the path through the garden
 - بالم الطريق المغطى بالحصى في البستان كي لا تصاب قدمك بالأتربة
- currant row a line of plants that have small fruits
 - صف من نبات الكشمش (نبات شبيه بالعنب أو الربيب)

3 Prefixes بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Meaning المعنى	Examples أمثلة
a-	تكون صفة أو ظرف	aloud awake صوت عال مستيقظ
co-	مساعد / مصاحب	co-pilot مساعد طيار
mis-	خطأ	misunderstand مفهم خطأ
re-	يعيد / يكرر	resend يعيد إرسال

4 suffixes لاهية

Suffix لاهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
-ache	تعطي معنى ألم	headache صداع
-ant	تكون أسماء وصفات	applicant pleasant مقدم ترشيح مستريح
-ible	تكون صفات	sensible عقلاني / حكيم
-ic	تكون صفات	rhythmic در إيقاع قوي
-ical	تكون صفات	rhythmical در إيقاع قوي
-ure	تكون أسماء	pleasure متعة

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary تلوين : التنبهات التالية بنصائح الإجابة والتوضيح

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
 - 1. A: The street is dark and empty.
B: No problem, I'll you home.
a. pinch b. walk c. plot d. lock

2. The desert is the of a lot of animals.
a. house b. hole c. home d. nest
3. The play is written in It has rhymes.
a. verse b. poem c. English d. rhythm
4. The each measure 20 metres by 30 metres.
a. land b. plots c. area d. ground
5. A: Do you mind helping me?
B: What would you like me to do?
a. Sure b. Yes, not at all c. Yes, of course d. No, not at all
6. what way will you pay back your debts?
a. On b. In c. With d. At
7. The word 'time' rhymes with
a. rhythm b. rhyme c. verse d. poet
8. Our parents are to thank for the they do to us.
a. harms b. favours c. damages d. vowels
9. Terrorists against their countries.
a. bare b. hop c. profit d. plot
10. "He has a pleasant character". In this sentence, 'pleasant' means
a. naked b. happiness c. joy d. friendly

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	- التعبير (walk you home) يعني (أرافقك في الطريق إلى المنزل)
2.	c	- كلمة (home) هنا تعني (موطن)
3.	a	- التعبير (written in verse) يعني (مكتوب بصيغة الشعر)
4.	b	- وورد (each) بمعنى (كل منهم) بعد الفراغ يتطلب اسم جمع
5.	d	- الرد بالقبول على الصيغة (Do you mind ...) يتطلب صيغة النفي
6.	b	- التعبير (In what way) يعني (بأي طريقة)
7.	b	- كلمة (time) تسجع أو تكون قافية مع كلمة (rhyme)
8.	b	- كلمة (favours) تعني (فضائل / أعمال طيبة) وهو ما يسترحب الشكر
9.	d	- التعبير (plot against) يعني (بشأن ضد)
10.	d	- حسب لسباق فإن كلمة (pleasant) تعني (friendly)

Advanced Grammar on Language

- اختر الإجابة الصحيحة من بين الخيارات a, b, c or d:
1. I suggested stopping him that old film as it was a waste of time.
a. watching b. watches c. watched d. to watch
 2. Why do you go on the same lies again and again?
a. to tell b. telling c. to telling d. be told
 3. I recommend meals at home.
a. have b. to have c. having d. to having
 4. I recommend my children meals at home.
a. have b. to have c. having d. to having
 5. I don't allow anyone in my office.
a. smoke b. smoking c. to smoking d. to smoke
 6. I don't allow in my office.
a. smoke b. smoking c. to smoking d. to smoke
 7. I go out late at night.
a. wouldn't rather b. would rather to not
c. would rather didn't d. would rather not
 8. I was made my room before I went out.
a. to tidy b. to tidying c. to tidying d. not tidy
 9. It is starting again.
a. raining b. to rain c. rains d. to raining
 10. Fancy you here.
a. seeing b. is seeing c. was seeing d. see

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	- يمكن أن يأتي بعد الفعل (stop) الصيغة (inf. + ing) أو (from + inf. + ing)
2.	b	- الفعل الاحتمالي (go on) عندما يهي (يستمر في عمل نفس الشيء) يأتي بعد (inf. + ing)
3.	c	- بعد (recommend) يأتي (inf. + ing)
4.	a	- بعد (recommend) جملة فإن فعلها يكون إما مصدر أو (should + inf.)
5.	d	- بعد (allow + obj) يأتي (to + inf.)
6.	b	- بعد (allow) دون مفعول بعدها يأتي (inf. + ing)
7.	d	- التعبير (would rather) مع نفي يوضع (not) بعد
8.	a	- المعنى السري لتحويل (be made) يأتي بعد (to + inf.)
9.	b	- بعد (starting) يأتي (to + inf.) وليس (inf. + ing)
10.	a	- بعد (fancy) يأتي (inf. + ing)

Part One

MCQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- "I hate that kind of person." In this sentence, the verb 'hate' is an antonym for ...
a. love b. detest c. loathe
d. admire e. disagree
- "I have expected him to recognise his tablet as the difference is clear." The adjective 'clear' in this sentence is a synonym of ...
a. vague b. obvious c. pure
d. unclear e. explicit

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- In a park, we walk along paths which are covered with ...
a. gravel b. gravelled c. gravelling d. gravels
- ... is the best literary form that expresses emotions.
a. Poetry b. Poet c. Poems d. Poetic
- He went to the ... to visit his dead father.
a. plot b. plotter c. pottery d. plotted
- Please, can you ... the door when you leave the room ?
a. look b. stick c. lock d. dig
- What secret did you regret ... someone?
a. telling b. to telling c. tell d. to tell
- I am looking forward to ... in paradise.
a. live b. living c. lived d. lives
- Hazem is planning ... to university next year.
a. goes b. going c. to go d. gone
- The manager decided ... the reports before he left the office.
a. read b. reading c. to read d. reads
- Sami enjoys ... science fiction novels.
a. read b. to read c. reading d. reader
- They don't allow us ... in the park .
a. to cycling b. cycling c. to cycle d. cycle
- He is used ... up early.
a. to getting b. getting c. to get d. get

AltFwOk.com موقع التفوق

يمكنك حل هذا الاختبار وتدريبه إلكترونياً



- I can't afford ... this expensive flat.
a. to buy b. buying c. buy d. to buying
- Animals usually sleep on ...
a. straw b. stew c. attics d. tunnels
- She doesn't allow ... in her house.
a. to smoke b. smoked c. smokes d. smoking

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

"She's coming. Hide it quickly!" The girls quickly shoved it under the table and acted as if nothing had happened. When Miss Farida entered the classroom, everyone stood up and greeted her. She gave them a smile. The girls noticed that there was sadness in her eyes. Poor Miss Farida!

They wished with all their hearts that they could do something to help her, but there was nothing that they could do. Miss Farida told them that she would miss them. She explained that she would give anything to stay as their teacher, but she had no choice. Her father was gravely ill. Her mother was too elderly to be left alone with him. She simply had to return to her hometown in a neighbouring country.

Looking at the list of email addresses in her hand, she promised she would keep in touch with them. She encouraged them to study and play hard and to always do their best, then she got ready to leave. Our class monitor walked over to her and handed her a small package. With tears in her eyes, Miss Farida opened it. "It's from our trip to Siwa the last term. "Look at it and always remember us," said our monitor. She nodded, "Thank you. I'll frame it and put it up on the wall of my room." Then she left. Miss Farida is one of the best teachers who devotes all her life to people, and she is never forgotten because of her cooperation and tolerance.

- The best title to the passage is ...
a. Miss Farida's departure
b. The good relation between Miss Farida and her class
c. The gift to Miss Farida
d. Miss Farida's good qualities and her strong personality

$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & i \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

Per: James Arthur Wynn

... among students at a secondary school

התחברות אל

... ..

[illegible]

1. $\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{4}$

20 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to

U.S. Graduate's Degree in Education

Mr. Fard's home

* **Interviewed:** Miss Farida's parents

THE NEW YORK FIELD

21. The synonym of the word "devotes" is "....."

1998, 1999, 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009, 2010, 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014, 2015, 2016, 2017, 2018, 2019, 2020, 2021, 2022, 2023, 2024, 2025, 2026, 2027, 2028, 2029, 2030, 2031, 2032, 2033, 2034, 2035, 2036, 2037, 2038, 2039, 2040, 2041, 2042, 2043, 2044, 2045, 2046, 2047, 2048, 2049, 2050, 2051, 2052, 2053, 2054, 2055, 2056, 2057, 2058, 2059, 2060, 2061, 2062, 2063, 2064, 2065, 2066, 2067, 2068, 2069, 2070, 2071, 2072, 2073, 2074, 2075, 2076, 2077, 2078, 2079, 2080, 2081, 2082, 2083, 2084, 2085, 2086, 2087, 2088, 2089, 2090, 2091, 2092, 2093, 2094, 2095, 2096, 2097, 2098, 2099, 2100, 2101, 2102, 2103, 2104, 2105, 2106, 2107, 2108, 2109, 2110, 2111, 2112, 2113, 2114, 2115, 2116, 2117, 2118, 2119, 2120, 2121, 2122, 2123, 2124, 2125, 2126, 2127, 2128, 2129, 2130, 2131, 2132, 2133, 2134, 2135, 2136, 2137, 2138, 2139, 2140, 2141, 2142, 2143, 2144, 2145, 2146, 2147, 2148, 2149, 2150, 2151, 2152, 2153, 2154, 2155, 2156, 2157, 2158, 2159, 2160, 2161, 2162, 2163, 2164, 2165, 2166, 2167, 2168, 2169, 2170, 2171, 2172, 2173, 2174, 2175, 2176, 2177, 2178, 2179, 2180, 2181, 2182, 2183, 2184, 2185, 2186, 2187, 2188, 2189, 2190, 2191, 2192, 2193, 2194, 2195, 2196, 2197, 2198, 2199, 2200, 2201, 2202, 2203, 2204, 2205, 2206, 2207, 2208, 2209, 2210, 2211, 2212, 2213, 2214, 2215, 2216, 2217, 2218, 2219, 2220, 2221, 2222, 2223, 2224, 2225, 2226, 2227, 2228, 2229, 2230, 2231, 2232, 2233, 2234, 2235, 2236, 2237, 2238, 2239, 2240, 2241, 2242, 2243, 2244, 2245, 2246, 2247, 2248, 2249, 2250, 2251, 2252, 2253, 2254, 2255, 2256, 2257, 2258, 2259, 2260, 2261, 2262, 2263, 2264, 2265, 2266, 2267, 2268, 2269, 2270, 2271, 2272, 2273, 2274, 2275, 2276, 2277, 2278, 2279, 2280, 2281, 2282, 2283, 2284, 2285, 2286, 2287, 2288, 2289, 2290, 2291, 2292, 2293, 2294, 2295, 2296, 2297, 2298, 2299, 2300, 2301, 2302, 2303, 2304, 2305, 2306, 2307, 2308, 2309, 2310, 2311, 2312, 2313, 2314, 2315, 2316, 2317, 2318, 2319, 2320, 2321, 2322, 2323, 2324, 2325, 2326, 2327, 2328, 2329, 2330, 2331, 2332, 2333, 2334, 2335, 2336, 2337, 2338, 2339, 2340, 2341, 2342, 2343, 2344, 2345, 2346, 2347, 2348, 2349, 2350, 2351, 2352, 2353, 2354, 2355, 2356, 2357, 2358, 2359, 2360, 2361, 2362, 2363, 2364, 2365, 2366, 2367, 2368, 2369, 2370, 2371, 2372, 2373, 2374, 2375, 2376, 2377, 2378, 2379, 2380, 2381, 2382, 2383, 2384, 2385, 2386, 2387, 2388, 2389, 2390, 2391, 2392, 2393, 2394, 2395, 2396, 2397, 2398, 2399, 2400, 2401, 2402, 2403, 2404, 2405, 2406, 2407, 2408, 2409, 2410, 2411, 2412, 2413, 2414, 2415, 2416, 2417, 2418, 2419, 2420, 2421, 2422, 2423, 2424, 2425, 2426, 2427, 2428, 2429, 2430, 2431, 2432, 2433, 2434, 2435, 2436, 2437, 2438, 2439, 2440, 2441, 2442, 2443, 2444, 2445, 2446, 2447, 2448, 2449, 2450, 2451, 2452, 2453, 2454, 2455, 2456, 2457, 2458, 2459, 2460, 2461, 2462, 2463, 2464, 2465, 2466, 2467, 2468, 2469, 2470, 2471, 2472, 2473, 2474, 2475, 2476, 2477, 2478, 2479, 2480, 2481, 2482, 2483, 2484, 2485, 2486, 2487, 2488, 2489, 2490, 2491, 2492, 2493, 2494, 2495, 2496, 2497, 2498, 2499, 2500, 2501, 2502, 2503, 2504, 2505, 2506, 2507, 2508, 2509, 2510, 2511, 2512, 2513, 2514, 2515, 2516, 2517, 2518, 2519, 2520, 2521, 2522, 2523, 2524, 2525, 2526, 2527, 2528, 2529, 2530, 2531, 2532, 2533, 2534, 2535, 2536, 2537, 2538, 2539, 2540, 2541, 2542, 2543, 2544, 2545, 2546, 2547, 2548, 2549, 2550, 2551, 2552, 2553, 2554, 2555, 2556, 2557, 2558, 2559, 2560, 2561, 2562, 2563, 2564, 2565, 2566, 2567, 2568, 2569, 2570, 2571, 2572, 2573, 2574, 2575, 2576, 2577, 2578, 2579, 2580, 2581, 2582, 2583, 2584, 2585, 2586, 2587, 2588, 2589, 2590, 2591, 2592, 2593, 2594, 2595, 2596, 2597, 2598, 2599, 2600, 2601, 2602, 2603, 2604, 2605, 2606, 2607, 2608, 2609, 2610, 2611, 2612, 2613, 2614, 2615, 2616, 2617, 2618, 2619, 2620, 2621, 2622, 2623, 2624, 2625, 2626, 2627, 2628, 2629, 2630, 2631, 2632, 2633, 2634, 2635, 2636, 2637, 2638, 2639, 2640, 2641, 2642, 2643, 2644, 2645, 2646, 2647, 2648, 2649, 2650, 2651, 2652, 2653, 2654, 2655, 2656, 2657, 2658, 2659, 2660, 2661, 2662, 2663, 2664, 2665, 2666, 2667, 2668, 2669, 2670, 2671, 2672, 2673, 2674, 2675, 2676, 2677, 2678, 2679, 26

1998, 1999, 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009, 2010, 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014, 2015, 2016, 2017, 2018, 2019, 2020, 2021, 2022, 2023, 2024, 2025, 2026, 2027, 2028, 2029, 2030, 2031, 2032, 2033, 2034, 2035, 2036, 2037, 2038, 2039, 2040, 2041, 2042, 2043, 2044, 2045, 2046, 2047, 2048, 2049, 2050, 2051, 2052, 2053, 2054, 2055, 2056, 2057, 2058, 2059, 2060, 2061, 2062, 2063, 2064, 2065, 2066, 2067, 2068, 2069, 2070, 2071, 2072, 2073, 2074, 2075, 2076, 2077, 2078, 2079, 2080, 2081, 2082, 2083, 2084, 2085, 2086, 2087, 2088, 2089, 2090, 2091, 2092, 2093, 2094, 2095, 2096, 2097, 2098, 2099, 2100, 2101, 2102, 2103, 2104, 2105, 2106, 2107, 2108, 2109, 2110, 2111, 2112, 2113, 2114, 2115, 2116, 2117, 2118, 2119, 2120, 2121, 2122, 2123, 2124, 2125, 2126, 2127, 2128, 2129, 2130, 2131, 2132, 2133, 2134, 2135, 2136, 2137, 2138, 2139, 2140, 2141, 2142, 2143, 2144, 2145, 2146, 2147, 2148, 2149, 2150, 2151, 2152, 2153, 2154, 2155, 2156, 2157, 2158, 2159, 2160, 2161, 2162, 2163, 2164, 2165, 2166, 2167, 2168, 2169, 2170, 2171, 2172, 2173, 2174, 2175, 2176, 2177, 2178, 2179, 2180, 2181, 2182, 2183, 2184, 2185, 2186, 2187, 2188, 2189, 2190, 2191, 2192, 2193, 2194, 2195, 2196, 2197, 2198, 2199, 2200, 2201, 2202, 2203, 2204, 2205, 2206, 2207, 2208, 2209, 2210, 2211, 2212, 2213, 2214, 2215, 2216, 2217, 2218, 2219, 2220, 2221, 2222, 2223, 2224, 2225, 2226, 2227, 2228, 2229, 2230, 2231, 2232, 2233, 2234, 2235, 2236, 2237, 2238, 2239, 2240, 2241, 2242, 2243, 2244, 2245, 2246, 2247, 2248, 2249, 2250, 2251, 2252, 2253, 2254, 2255, 2256, 2257, 2258, 2259, 2260, 2261, 2262, 2263, 2264, 2265, 2266, 2267, 2268, 2269, 2270, 2271, 2272, 2273, 2274, 2275, 2276, 2277, 2278, 2279, 2280, 2281, 2282, 2283, 2284, 2285, 2286, 2287, 2288, 2289, 2290, 2291, 2292, 2293, 2294, 2295, 2296, 2297, 2298, 2299, 2300, 2301, 2302, 2303, 2304, 2305, 2306, 2307, 2308, 2309, 2310, 2311, 2312, 2313, 2314, 2315, 2316, 2317, 2318, 2319, 2320, 2321, 2322, 2323, 2324, 2325, 2326, 2327, 2328, 2329, 2330, 2331, 2332, 2333, 2334, 2335, 2336, 2337, 2338, 2339, 2340, 2341, 2342, 2343, 2344, 2345, 2346, 2347, 2348, 2349, 2350, 2351, 2352, 2353, 2354, 2355, 2356, 2357, 2358, 2359, 2360, 2361, 2362, 2363, 2364, 2365, 2366, 2367, 2368, 2369, 2370, 2371, 2372, 2373, 2374, 2375, 2376, 2377, 2378, 2379, 2380, 2381, 2382, 2383, 2384, 2385, 2386, 2387, 2388, 2389, 2390, 2391, 2392, 2393, 2394, 2395, 2396, 2397, 2398, 2399, 2400, 2401, 2402, 2403, 2404, 2405, 2406, 2407, 2408, 2409, 2410, 2411, 2412, 2413, 2414, 2415, 2416, 2417, 2418, 2419, 2420, 2421, 2422, 2423, 2424, 2425, 2426, 2427, 2428, 2429, 2430, 2431, 2432, 2433, 2434, 2435, 2436, 2437, 2438, 2439, 2440, 2441, 2442, 2443, 2444, 2445, 2446, 2447, 2448, 2449, 2450, 2451, 2452, 2453, 2454, 2455, 2456, 2457, 2458, 2459, 2460, 2461, 2462, 2463, 2464, 2465, 2466, 2467, 2468, 2469, 2470, 2471, 2472, 2473, 2474, 2475, 2476, 2477, 2478, 2479, 2480, 2481, 2482, 2483, 2484, 2485, 2486, 2487, 2488, 2489, 2490, 2491, 2492, 2493, 2494, 2495, 2496, 2497, 2498, 2499, 2500, 2501, 2502, 2503, 2504, 2505, 2506, 2507, 2508, 2509, 2510, 2511, 2512, 2513, 2514, 2515, 2516, 2517, 2518, 2519, 2520, 2521, 2522, 2523, 2524, 2525, 2526, 2527, 2528, 2529, 2530, 2531, 2532, 2533, 2534, 2535, 2536, 2537, 2538, 2539, 2540, 2541, 2542, 2543, 2544, 2545, 2546, 2547, 2548, 2549, 2550, 2551, 2552, 2553, 2554, 2555, 2556, 2557, 2558, 2559, 2560, 2561, 2562, 2563, 2564, 2565, 2566, 2567, 2568, 2569, 2570, 2571, 2572, 2573, 2574, 2575, 2576, 2577, 2578, 2579, 2580, 2581, 2582, 2583, 2584, 2585, 2586, 2587, 2588, 2589, 2590, 2591, 2592, 2593, 2594, 2595, 2596, 2597, 2598, 2599, 2600, 2601, 2602, 2603, 2604, 2605, 2606, 2607, 2608, 2609, 2610, 2611, 2612, 2613, 2614, 2615, 2616, 2617, 2618, 2619, 2620, 2621, 2622, 2623, 2624, 2625, 2626, 2627, 2628, 2629, 2630, 2631, 2632, 2633, 2634, 2635, 2636, 2637, 2638, 2639, 2640, 2641, 2642, 2643, 2644, 2645, 2646, 2647, 2648, 2649, 2650, 2651, 2652, 2653, 2654, 2655, 2656, 2657, 2658, 2659, 2660, 2661, 2662, 2663, 2664, 2665, 2666, 2667, 2668, 2669, 2670, 2671, 2672, 2673, 2674, 2675, 2676, 2677, 2678, 2679, 26

☐ **Withdraws**

150

2. The students will remember Miss Farida because of _____.

• ~~the~~ ~~got~~ ~~they~~ gave her

a. the gifts they gave her b. her wealth and happiness

Just Sooner

... her tolerance **d** her care of her parents

THE COMPETITION

23 Miss Fonda encouraged her students

2. not to study well

2. not to study well b to study hard

by **Joe De Sena** and **David**

to do their best **to frame photographs**

• pet photographs on the wall

Part Two

! Translate into Arabic :

Reading gives us the chance to enjoy the beauty of life. It helps us to learn and see the world in a different way.

تیم ملی فوتبال ایران - لیگ ملت فوتبال آسیا ۲۰۱۹

220

— 1994 —

Übersetzt von: *Englisch*

مجلسه اول - ۱۳۸۵

موضوع: بررسی وضعیت اقتصادی و اجتماعی شهرستان خرمین

تاریخ: ۱۳۸۵/۰۴/۲۵

محل برگزاری: سالن اجتماعات شهرداری خرمین

حاضرین: آقایان: ...

غایبین: ...

رئیس جلسه: ...

دبیر جلسه: ...

محورهای بحث:

۱- بررسی وضعیت کلی شهرستان خرمین

۲- بررسی وضعیت بخش کشاورزی

۳- بررسی وضعیت بخش صنعت و معادن

۴- بررسی وضعیت بخش خدمات

۵- بررسی وضعیت زیرساختها

۶- بررسی وضعیت منابع انسانی

۷- بررسی وضعیت محیط زیست

۸- بررسی وضعیت فرهنگ و تفریح

۹- بررسی وضعیت بهداشت و درمان

۱۰- بررسی وضعیت مسکن و شهرسازی

۱۱- بررسی وضعیت ترابری

۱۲- بررسی وضعیت انرژی

۱۳- بررسی وضعیت اطلاعات و ارتباطات

۱۴- بررسی وضعیت ورزش و جوانی

۱۵- بررسی وضعیت رفاه اجتماعی

۱۶- بررسی وضعیت امنیت

۱۷- بررسی وضعیت مدیریت شهری

۱۸- بررسی وضعیت مشارکت مردمی

۱۹- بررسی وضعیت سرمایه گذاری

۲۰- بررسی وضعیت اشتغالزایی

۲۱- بررسی وضعیت تولید ناخالص داخلی

۲۲- بررسی وضعیت بودجه و مالیات

۲۳- بررسی وضعیت اعتبارات و تسهیلات

۲۴- بررسی وضعیت ارزش افزوده

۲۵- بررسی وضعیت مصرف نهایی

۲۶- بررسی وضعیت پس انداز

۲۷- بررسی وضعیت صادرات و واردات

۲۸- بررسی وضعیت تعادل تجاری

۲۹- بررسی وضعیت نرخ ارز

۳۰- بررسی وضعیت تورم

۳۱- بررسی وضعیت بدهی

۳۲- بررسی وضعیت درآمد سرانه

۳۳- بررسی وضعیت فقر و محرومیت

۳۴- بررسی وضعیت امید به زندگی

۳۵- بررسی وضعیت Literacy Rate

۳۶- بررسی وضعیت باروری

۳۷- بررسی وضعیت مرگ و میر

۳۸- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های مزمن

۳۹- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های عفونی

۴۰- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های غوطه وری

۴۱- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های تنفسی

۴۲- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های قلبی عروقی

۴۳- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های دیابت

۴۴- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های فشارخون

۴۵- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های سرطان

۴۶- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های HIV/AIDS

۴۷- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های کبدی

۴۸- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های کلیوی

۴۹- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های گوارشی

۵۰- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های تناسلی

۵۱- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های پوستی

۵۲- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های روانی

۵۳- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های مادر زادی

۵۴- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از آلودگی

۵۵- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود مواد مغذی

۵۶- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود آب

۵۷- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود هوا

۵۸- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود نور

۵۹- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود صدا

۶۰- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود دما

۶۱- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود رطوبت

۶۲- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود اکسیژن

۶۳- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود غذا

۶۴- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود خواب

۶۵- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود استراحت

۶۶- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود تحرک

۶۷- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود فعالیت بدنی

۶۸- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود آموزش

۶۹- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود مهارت

۷۰- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود فرصت

۷۱- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود انگیزه

۷۲- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود اعتماد

۷۳- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود احترام

۷۴- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود عزت

۷۵- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود شرافت

۷۶- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود صداقت

۷۷- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود اخلاص

۷۸- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود وفاداری

۷۹- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود ایثار

۸۰- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود سخاوت

۸۱- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود مهربانی

۸۲- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود درود

۸۳- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود دعا

۸۴- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود نیایش

۸۵- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود صلوات

۸۶- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود تبریک

۸۷- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود تسلیت

۸۸- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود همدردی

۸۹- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود همدلی

۹۰- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود همفکری

۹۱- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود همکاری

۹۲- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود تعاون

۹۳- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود یارگیری

۹۴- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناهندگی

۹۵- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه گرفتن

۹۶- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه بردن

۹۷- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه یافتن

۹۸- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه دهی

۹۹- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه بخشی

۱۰۰- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه پذیری

۱۰۱- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه طلبی

۱۰۲- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه جویی

۱۰۳- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه گیری

۱۰۴- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه بردن

۱۰۵- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه یافتن

۱۰۶- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه دهی

۱۰۷- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه بخشی

۱۰۸- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه پذیری

۱۰۹- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه طلبی

۱۱۰- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه جویی

۱۱۱- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه گیری

۱۱۲- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه بردن

۱۱۳- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه یافتن

۱۱۴- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه دهی

۱۱۵- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه بخشی

۱۱۶- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه پذیری

۱۱۷- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه طلبی

۱۱۸- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه جویی

۱۱۹- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه گیری

۱۲۰- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه بردن

۱۲۱- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه یافتن

۱۲۲- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه دهی

۱۲۳- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه بخشی

۱۲۴- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه پذیری

۱۲۵- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه طلبی

۱۲۶- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه جویی

۱۲۷- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه گیری

۱۲۸- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه بردن

۱۲۹- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه یافتن

۱۳۰- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه دهی

۱۳۱- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه بخشی

۱۳۲- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه پذیری

۱۳۳- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه طلبی

۱۳۴- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه جویی

۱۳۵- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه گیری

۱۳۶- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه بردن

۱۳۷- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه یافتن

۱۳۸- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه دهی

۱۳۹- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه بخشی

۱۴۰- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه پذیری

۱۴۱- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه طلبی

۱۴۲- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه جویی

۱۴۳- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه گیری

۱۴۴- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه بردن

۱۴۵- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه یافتن

۱۴۶- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه دهی

۱۴۷- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه بخشی

۱۴۸- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه پذیری

۱۴۹- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه طلبی

۱۵۰- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه جویی

۱۵۱- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه گیری

۱۵۲- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه بردن

۱۵۳- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه یافتن

۱۵۴- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه دهی

۱۵۵- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه بخشی

۱۵۶- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه پذیری

۱۵۷- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه طلبی

۱۵۸- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه جویی

۱۵۹- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه گیری

۱۶۰- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه بردن

۱۶۱- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه یافتن

۱۶۲- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه دهی

۱۶۳- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه بخشی

۱۶۴- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه پذیری

۱۶۵- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه طلبی

۱۶۶- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه جویی

۱۶۷- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه گیری

۱۶۸- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه بردن

۱۶۹- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه یافتن

۱۷۰- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه دهی

۱۷۱- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه بخشی

۱۷۲- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه پذیری

۱۷۳- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه طلبی

۱۷۴- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه جویی

۱۷۵- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه گیری

۱۷۶- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه بردن

۱۷۷- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه یافتن

۱۷۸- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه دهی

۱۷۹- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه بخشی

۱۸۰- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه پذیری

۱۸۱- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه طلبی

۱۸۲- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه جویی

۱۸۳- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه گیری

۱۸۴- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه بردن

۱۸۵- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه یافتن

۱۸۶- بررسی وضعیت بیماری های ناشی از کمبود پناه دهی

3. We estimate that about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) individuals are

Your Favourite Writer



توجه: - لطفاً برای اطلاع بیشتر به صفحه اختصاصی **MBU** بروید

381

2 Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

action(n)	حركة - حدث	maps(n)	خريطة
almost(adv)	تقريباً	message(n)	رسالة
around(adv)	حول	museum(n)	متحف
arrange(d) (v)	يرتب	situation(n)	موقف
character(n)	شخصية	still(adv)	لا يزال
dangerous(adj)	خطير	successful(adj)	ناجح
decide(d) (v)	يقرر	together(adv)	معاً
example(n)	مثال	true(adj)	صحيح
fantastic(adj)	رائع	warm(er)(adj)	أكثر حمية
farm(n)	مزرعة	wonderful(adj)	رائع
full(adj)	ممتلئ		

Part II Language Study

1 Verbal Collocations متلفزات لفظية

express	ideas	تعبير عن أفكار	send	a message to	يُرسل
have	a penfriend	لديه صديق مراسلة		a long time	يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً
make	friends with	يُصادق / يُصاحب	take	it for granted	يكون على يقين / يرى أنه من الشك فيه

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

an example is	أحد الأمثلة هو	just a pen and paper will do	فقط قلم و ورقة سيبدن بالعرض
and so on	وهكذا	know very well	يعرف جداً
around the world	حول العالم	live on a farm	يعيش في مزرعة
as far as I'm concerned	على قدر اهتمامي	make ... stressed	أجعل ... تحت ضغط
as well as	بالإضافة إلى	not my kind of book	ليس نوعي المفضل من الكتب
different from	مختلف عن	old-fashioned	هو أسلوب قديم - عريقة قديمة
each other	بعضهم البعض	on a ship	على سفينة
events of the story	أحداث القصة	online clubs	نادي / نادي على الإنترنت
for the rest of your life	طوال ما تبقى من عمرك	really fun	ممتع جداً
full of action	مليء بالأحداث		
seventeen-year-old	ذو السبعة عشر عاماً		

2 Based On Units 4, 5 & 6

لغة
تعليمية
تراكيب في
لغة قديمة

Part I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

mysterious(adj)	غامض	name(d) (n - v)	السم - يذكر اسم
old-fashioned(adj)	قديم - عفا عليه الزمن	online (adj - adv)	عبر الإنترنت - متصل
paintings(n)	لوحات	password(n)	كلمة المرور
penfriend (n)	صديق بالمراسلة	perhaps(adv)	ربما
popular(adj)	شائع - ذو شعبية	prefer(red) (v)	يفضل
print(ed) (v)	يطبع	professor(n)	أستاذ جامعي
real(adj)	حقيقي	recommend(ed) (v)	يوصي به / يوصي
relaxing(adj)	تريح	reply(ied) (v)	يرد - رد
rest (ed) (n - v)	باتي - راحة - يستريح	save(d) (v)	يحفظ - يدخر
setting(n)	مكان وزمان الأحداث	smartphone(n)	الهاتف الذكي
software(n)	برامج - برمجيات	strange(adj)	غريب
surprisingly(adv)	من المفاجأة	technology(n)	تكنولوجيا
text(n)	رسالة نصية - نص	trick(ed) (v - n)	يخدع - خدعة

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق

be here to stay
in the 1930s
Informative Dark Age
it's not all good news

continue to
copy ... onto
decide to
encourage ... to
escape with
track into

استمر
نسخ ... إلى
قرر
تشجيع ...
فرار مع
تتبع إلى

that is just the start of
the Dark Ages
travel through
you shouldn't judge
a book by its cover
manage to
move in
send ... away
stay with
take ... away
write to

هذه مجرد بداية ل
عصور الظلام
سافر عبر
لا تحكم بالظاهر
يستطيع / ينجح في
تنتقل
تبع
يقيم مع
يأخذ ... بعيداً
يرسل

Reading & Listening texts

1 Reading Texts

A. Why penfriends are history !

(58 page 72)

Communication is easy today. Many people use apps on their smartphones to talk to their friends. When we send a message to a friend, we take it for granted that he or she will reply very soon.

Before the internet, people wrote letters and many people had penfriends. These were people they did not always meet, but people they chose to write to about their lives. The letters sometimes took a long time to arrive, but penfriends were very popular.

An example is Nellie Roberts and Daphne Meech. These two Australian women are now 90 years old. They first decided to write to each other in the 1930s, and are now perhaps the longest two people ever to be penfriends.

Nellie Roberts first had penfriends when she was 10, but only one penfriend continued to write to her. Like Nellie, Daphne lived on a farm and the two women enjoyed writing about their lives. As well as letters, they sent each other black and white photos. They did not meet until 1962, 30 years after their first letter.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) اتصالات - الاتصالات
- (2) تطبيقات
- (3) الهواتف النكية
- (4) رسالة
- (5) يرد
- (6) أمثلة - مراسلة
- (7) شائع - موصوفة
- (8) مثل
- (9) يقرر
- (10) بعضهم البعض
- (11) ربما
- (12) على الإطلاق
- (13) يستمر
- (14) مثل
- (15) مزارعة
- (16) بالإضافة إلى

Nellie still prefers writing letters, and says that she is never going to use technology to communicate.

Surprisingly, there are now many online clubs for penfriends. They encourage people to write letters to penfriends around the world, and they are very successful. Many say that writing letters is relaxing and a warmer way to communicate than with an email or text. You do not need apps, passwords or anti-virus software. As Nellie says, 'Just a pen and paper will do.'

- (17) يظل
- (18) التكنولوجيا
- (19) يفضّل - يتواصل
- (20) من المفضل
- (21) على الإنترنت
- (22) يشجع
- (23) حول
- (24) دافئ
- (25) مريح
- (26) أشرطة فيديو
- (27) رسالة نصية

B. A fantastic adventure story !

(58 page 74)

In my opinion, Robert Louis Stevenson's Kidnapped is not as great as Treasure Island or as exciting as The Strange Case of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde, but it is full of action and really fun.

I enjoyed it very much. The story happens in 1751 and it begins when seventeen-year-old David Balfour goes to stay with his mysterious uncle in Scotland. His uncle is a cruel man and he tricks David. He arranges for a ship to take David away to America. However, David manages to escape with a friend and that is just the start of their adventures. I recommend this book to everyone who likes adventure stories.

James (UK)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) المصغوف
- (2) شريك
- (3) حادثة / قصة
- (4) مغامرة
- (5) مرافق - صديق
- (6) غامض
- (7) قبيح
- (8) يمتع
- (9) ودي
- (10) يفلح من
- (11) الهروب
- (12) مغامرة
- (13) أوصي - أوصى

C. Not the best book for me

(58 page 74)

As far as I'm concerned, this book is too old-fashioned. The story is interesting and there is a lot of action, but I don't think the characters are very real. David Balfour is a seventeen-year-old boy, but his life is very different from mine. The language is also old-fashioned. I prefer to read more modern books. Kidnapped is just not my kind of book.

Peter (Canada)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مهم
- (2) لشيء شيق
- (3) شيق
- (4) شخصيات
- (5) حقيقي
- (6) أفضل

D. My favourite book!

(SB page 74)

Kidnapped has so much action and adventure! This really is my favourite book. David Balfour's uncle tries to send him away to America on a ship, but David escapes and makes friends with a man called Alan Breck. Together they travel through Scotland and face many dangerous and exciting situations. I love all the details about the places they visit. You can really feel like you are in Scotland. I will definitely read this book again.

Tara (Ireland)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يُسافِر - يُسافِر مع
- (2) مَفَا
- (3) بِمُزَاجِهِ
- (4) خَطِير
- (5) مُوَاقِف
- (6) لِمَاضِي
- (7) بِالْتَّكِيد

2 Listening Tests

(SB page 73)

Interviewer: Hello, today I'm talking to Professor⁽¹⁾ Marwan Shabana,

a history teacher at the University of Cairo. He's just written a very interesting book about the future of



technology. And it's not all good news, is it Professor?

Professor: That's true,⁽²⁾ although no one knows what will happen in the future, of course!

Interviewer: What are you worried about?

Professor: Well, there was a time in history when very few people wrote about what happened in their lives. We call these the Dark Ages,⁽³⁾ because we don't know much about this time. I'm worried that we are going to have an information Dark Age in the future.

Interviewer: Why is that?

Professor: Today we use computer technology for almost⁽⁴⁾ all our information. We use computers for our writing, photographs, music and films. This is fantastic,⁽⁵⁾ of course, but what will happen to it in the future? The technology of today quickly becomes old. I think that we'll lose⁽⁶⁾ a lot of material⁽⁷⁾ because new technology won't be able to read it.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) أستاذ جامعي
- (2) صحيح
- (3) عصور الظلام
- (4) تقريبا
- (5) رائع
- (6) يفقد - يخسر
- (7) محتويات

Interviewer: But, we'll copy⁽⁸⁾ all the important information onto our new technology, won't we?

Professor: I agree, we will. But history teaches us that there are some things we don't think are important today that will be very important in the future. These are the things I worry that we will lose. People won't think something is important to save,⁽⁹⁾ or we will forget the passwords⁽¹⁰⁾ to give us this information.

- (8) ونسخ
- (9) نحفظ
- (10) كلمات مرور
- (11) ونسعى
- (12) نتمنى
- (13) نلج
- (14) نلج
- (15) نلج
- (16) نلج
- (17) نلج

Interviewer: What can we do about this?

Professor: In my opinion, we need to print⁽¹¹⁾ more, like we did in the past. Look in a museum⁽¹²⁾ and you will see wonderful⁽¹³⁾ old paintings,⁽¹⁴⁾ photographs, maps⁽¹⁵⁾ and so on.⁽¹⁶⁾ With care,⁽¹⁷⁾ these will be with us for a long time.

Interviewer: So, do you think old technology is better than new technology?

Professor: I'm not so sure about that! Of course, we need new technology, but will the software that we use today be on the computers of tomorrow. We need old technology as well. For example, my father kept all of his letters to my mother before they married. I don't have any of the emails I sent to my wife, because we don't usually keep emails! I think we need to print more information as well as keeping it on a computer. Then we won't have another Dark Age.

Interviewer: It's an interesting idea. Thank you for talking to us.

AltFwOk.com موقع التفوق

Treasure Island



موقع
التفوق
ALTfwok.com

Main Characters



Dr. Livesey



Jim Hawkins
A young teenage boy



Captain Smollett,
the ship's captain



Mr. Trelawney

The Pirates



Billy Bones



Long John Silver



Captain Flint,
his parrot



Ben Gunn



Pow

Setting

The story takes place at The Admiral Benbow Inn in Bristol on the Hispaniola, a sailing ship on Treasure Island, an island in the Caribbean.



Treasure Island

By Robert Louis Stevenson

CHAPTER 1

موقع
التفوق
AltFwok.com

Vocabulary

adventure (n)	مغامرة	hide - hid - hidden (v)	يخفي - يخفي
blind (adj)	كفيف البصر	inn (n)	ززل اسمق صغيراً
captain (n)	قبطان - قائد	owe (ed) (v)	يدين بـ ... (عليه دين)
cliff (n)	منحدر	own (ed) (v)	ملك
coin (n)	عملة معدنية	pale (adj)	شاحب اللون
danger (n)	الخطر	papers (n)	مستندات - أوراق
dare (d) (v)	يجرؤ	scar (n)	ندبة - أثر جرح
frightened (adj)	خائف	sword (n)	سيف
grab (bed) (v)	يجذب بشدة - يخطف	terrible (adj)	مريع
guard (ed) (n - v)	يحمي - حارس	travel (led) (n - v)	السفر - سافر
gun (n)	بنادقة	weak (adj)	ضعيف - واهن
hand (ed) (n - v)	يعطي (باليد) - يد		

Words and their definitions

scar	: a mark on the skin from a cut or a wound	أثر جرح في الجسم
cliff	: a steep piece of land or rock	منحدر
dare	: to be brave enough to do something	جرؤ
pale	: having a skin colour that is very white or whiter than it usually is	شاحب
sword	: a weapon with a long, sharp blade	سيف

Before You read

Look at the pictures. What do you think the story is about?

Jim Hawkins

I'll start by writing about the time when my father owned⁽¹⁾ an inn⁽²⁾ called the Admiral Benbow, many years ago. I remember the day when a man walked into the inn. He was tall and strong, with an old blue coat and a scar⁽³⁾ on his face.

He looked around⁽⁴⁾ him.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) امتلاك
- (2) منزل - ضيق
- (3) ندبة / أثر الجرح
- (4) نظر حوله

"This is a nice, quiet place. I'll stay here. Please, take this up⁽⁵⁾ to my room," he said, pointing to a large wooden box.

"You can call me Captain. And this is for you," he continued, handing my father three or four gold coins⁽⁶⁾.

The Captain was usually a quiet man. He spent his days walking on the beach or on the cliffs⁽⁷⁾. When he came back, he always asked, "Did any sailors⁽⁸⁾ visit the inn today?" At first, we thought he wanted to find some other sailors, but later we realised⁽⁹⁾ that he didn't want any sailors to find him.

In the evenings, the Captain sometimes told stories about his time at sea. My father was worried that nobody would want to visit the inn because they would be frightened by the Captain's stories, but I think people liked them.

The Captain stayed at the inn for months. He did not give us any more money for his room and my father did not dare⁽¹⁰⁾ to ask him for more.

One morning, the Captain went for a walk⁽¹¹⁾ along the beach. I was helping my mother to make breakfast when another man walked into the inn. He was thin and pale⁽¹²⁾, with three fingers on his left hand. He sat down and asked, "Is this table here for my friend Bill?"

I told him that I did not know Bill and said that the table was for the Captain.

"Well, my friend Bill might say that he's the Captain," he said. "He has a scar on his face and likes to tell a story. Is that him?"

"Yes," I said. "He's gone for a walk." "Which way did he walk?" he asked.

I pointed towards the beach. The man stood up and waited by the door for the Captain to return.

- (5) رفع - إلى
- (6) عملات ذهبية
- (7) منحدرات
- (8) بحارة
- (9) أدرك / فهم
- (10) جدد
- (11) ذهب في تمشية
- (12) شاحب

When the Captain saw the man, he looked pale and ill "Black Dog," the Captain said.

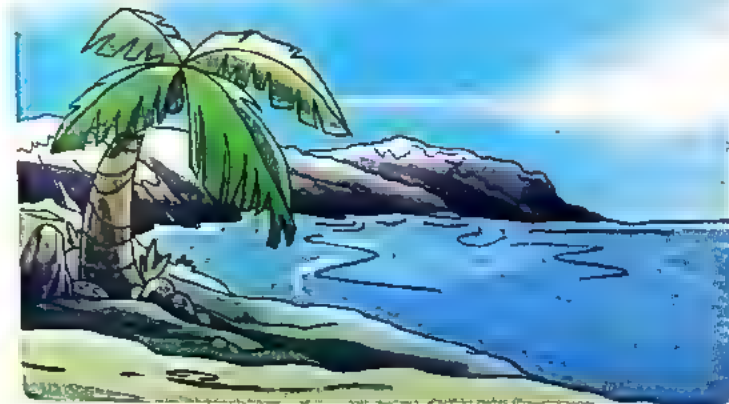
"That's right," he replied⁽¹⁾, "I've found my friend Bill! We've had a lot of adventures⁽¹⁴⁾ since I lost these fingers!"

I left them to talk. Then suddenly there were loud shouts⁽¹⁵⁾ and both men stood up and ran outside. The Captain had a sword⁽¹⁶⁾ and then I saw Black Dog running away with blood⁽¹⁷⁾ on his arm. The man continued running until we could not see him.

The Captain walked back into the inn. He looked ill and suddenly he fell over. I thought perhaps he was hurt from the fight⁽¹⁸⁾. At that moment, the doctor arrived to see my father who was sick. "Help us, Dr Livesey! The Captain is hurt!" said my mother.

The doctor looked at him and said, "He is not hurt, but he is very ill. Help me to take him upstairs⁽¹⁹⁾."

- (1) أجاب / رد
- (14) مغامرات
- (15) صراخات عالية
- (16) سيف
- (17) دم
- (18) معركة / مشادة
- (19) الصعود / التسلق
- (20) مواء



We took the Captain up to his bedroom and the doctor gave him some medicine⁽²⁰⁾. The Captain stayed in bed, but he was not quiet. He told me about his travels at sea, and said that he had something which people wanted. "Black Dog is not as bad as some of the other men," he said. "They all want to find me. Tell me if you see them!"

That evening, my father died. I felt terrible⁽²¹⁾ and forgot all about the strange things⁽²²⁾ that the Captain told me.

Then, a week later, I saw a blind man⁽²³⁾ coming down the road towards⁽²⁴⁾ the inn. He stopped outside the door when he was near and asked, "Where am I? Will a kind⁽²⁵⁾ person help me?" "You are at the Admiral Benbow Inn in Black Hill Cove," I told him.

At that moment, he grabbed my hand⁽²⁶⁾.

"Take me to the Captain!" he said. "Take me to him now!"

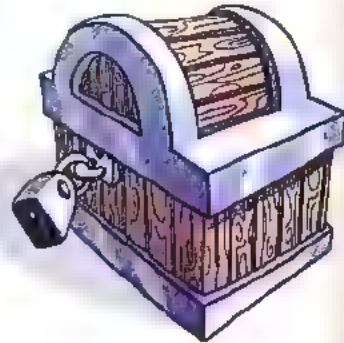
I walked with the blind man into the inn and took him to the Captain. The Captain looked very surprised⁽²⁷⁾ to see him.

"Now, Bill, stay where you are. I can hear you. Take this." He then put something in the Captain's hand, turned around⁽²⁸⁾ and left. The Captain looked at what the man gave him. "Ten o'clock!" he said.

"I have time!"⁽²⁹⁾

Then the Captain suddenly fell to the floor. He was dead. I found my mother and we talked about what we should do. We knew that the Captain had a box in his room and it probably had money in it. The blind man and Black Dog probably wanted this. I thought about taking the box to Dr Livesey, but I did not want to leave my mother. We knew that we were in danger⁽³⁰⁾. We decided to go to the nearest village⁽³¹⁾ and ask our neighbours⁽³²⁾ for help guarding⁽³³⁾ the inn.

However, none of the people in the village wanted to help us. They did not come back with us, but one man went to tell Dr Livesey. Another man said that we could have his gun⁽³⁴⁾.



- (21) شعرت بالسوء
- (22) أشياء غريبة
- (23) رجل كفيف
- (24) تجاه / ناحية
- (25) طيب / لطيف
- (26) أمسك بيدي
- (27) مندهش
- (28) استدار حول
- (29) لديه وقت
- (30) في خطر
- (31) اقرب قرية
- (32) جيران
- (33) حماية
- (34) بندقية

It was dark when we returned to the inn. We found the key to the box in the Captain's jacket. I also saw the message⁽³⁵⁾ that the blind man gave to the Captain. It said, "You have until ten o'clock tonight." We went upstairs and my mother soon opened the box with the key. Inside, we found some clothes, some guns, some papers and other things. We also found a bag with some coins inside.

"We only have time until ten o'clock," I said. "Let's leave before the blind man and Black Dog return."

"I'll only take the money which the Captain owes⁽³⁶⁾ us," my mother said, opening the bag.

We stood up to leave, and I decided to take the papers from the box, too. We walked as quickly as we could back towards the village, but as we walked, we heard the sound of people in the road behind us.

"Take the money and run," said my mother. "I'm too weak⁽³⁷⁾ to continue."

I did not want to leave her, so we stopped under a bridge⁽³⁸⁾, where we could hide⁽³⁹⁾ in the dark.



- (35) رسالة
- (36) يدين له
- (37) ضعيف
- (38) كوبري
- (39) يختبئ



Check your Understanding Chapter 1

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
- You _____ me twenty thousand pounds. Please, I need my money back.
a. own b. owe c. possess d. have
 - The policeman _____ the criminal's arm and pushed him into the police car.
a. hit b. guarded c. released d. grabbed
 - There was a small _____ by the road where we could have a meal and spend the night.
a. beach b. inn c. prison d. pool
 - Being _____, he needs someone to help him cross the road.
a. strong b. indebted c. blind d. wealthy
 - There's a night watchman who _____ our school at night.
a. guards b. steals c. fears d. frightens
 - In ancient times, people usually carried _____ to protect themselves or fight others.
a. tanks b. submarines c. missiles d. swords
 - I wanted to ask my father for more pocket money, but I didn't _____.
a. guard b. dare c. attack d. owe
 - This wound _____ might leave a / an _____ on your cheek.
a. scare b. scar c. inn d. guard
 - His long illness made him go _____.
a. healthy b. powerful c. pale d. strong
 - Be careful! This _____ is steep and very dangerous.
a. cliff b. plain c. lake d. tree

CHAPTER 2



Vocabulary

catch - caught (d) (v)	أُخِذَ / أُصْبِحَ عَلَى	island (n)	جزيرة
clue (n)	دليل / مفتاح كل اللغز	magistrate (n)	قاضي / محقق
cook (n)	طاه - طباخ	map (n)	خريطة
crew (n)	طاقم سفينة / طائرة	rich (adj)	ثري / غني
cross (n)	علامة (+) / طائرة	rob (bed) (v)	يسرق
dead (adj)	ميت	sail (ed) (v)	يسبح
direction (n)	اتجاه	secret (n - adj)	سر - سري
escape (d) (v)	يفرب	servant (n)	خادم
head (n)	رئيس - قائد	the rest (n)	الباقى
include (d) (v)	يشمل / يتضمن - يُشَمِّلُ	treasure (n)	كنز

Words and their definitions

- ▶ **clue** : an object or a piece of information that helps to solve a crime
مفتاح لحل اللغز
- ▶ **crew** : all the people who work on a ship or a plane
طاقم سفينة / طائرة
- ▶ **escape** : succeed in leaving a place when someone or something is trying to stop you
يفرب
- ▶ **head** : the most important person in an organisation
رئيس / قائد
- ▶ **magistrate** : someone who decides if a person is guilty of less serious crimes in a court
قاضي / محقق
- ▶ **rob** : steal something from a person, shop ... etc.
يسرق / يسلب
- ▶ **servant** : someone whose job is to live in another person's house and do jobs for them, such as cleaning
خادم

Before You read

- What do you think will happen next in the story?

I could see the road from where we were hiding, and soon I saw eight men. One of them was the blind man. I saw them walk down the road to the Admiral Benbow Inn. They were surprised to see that the door was open, then they all ran inside. I heard someone shout, "Bill's dead!"

"Go and find his box," said the blind man.

A little later, a window opened from the Captain's bedroom and a man called out⁽¹⁾, "Someone has opened the box!"

"Is it there?" said the blind man.

"Only the money is there," replied the man.

"It's the boy and the woman from the inn!" shouted the blind man. "Let's find them!" The men started to look around the house.

"If you find it you'll all be rich!" said the blind man.

At this time, we heard horses coming down the road. When the men heard the horses, they started to run in all directions⁽²⁾.

The horses arrived, so I ran out to see who was riding them. One of them was the boy who went to get Dr Livesey, and the rest⁽³⁾ were policemen. Two men took my mother to the village, where she soon felt better⁽⁴⁾, and the others tried to catch the men. But it was too late: we heard that they escaped⁽⁵⁾ on a boat.



I returned to the Admiral Benbow with the police.

"What did they want?" said Mr Dance, the head of the police⁽⁶⁾.

"I think that they wanted this," I said, showing him the papers that I still had in my jacket. "I'd like to take them to Dr Livesey"

Check Vocabulary

1. نادى
2. اتجاهات
3. البقية
4. شعر بتحسن
5. هرب
6. رئيس الشرطة

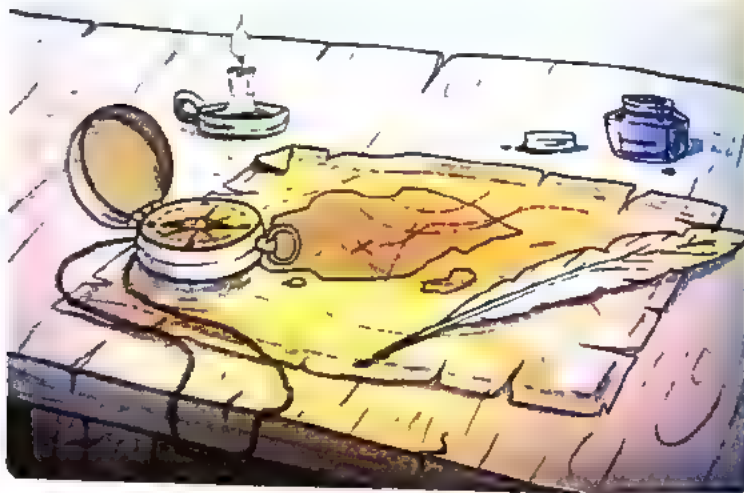
"That's a good idea," said Mr. Dance. "He's a magistrate⁽⁷⁾ as well as a doctor. He'll know what to do. I'll come with you."

We found that Dr. Livesey was not at home, but was eating at the house of Mr. Trelawney, an important rich man. Mr. Trelawney asked us into his house. I showed Mr. Trelawney and Dr. Livesey the papers that the Captain had in his box.

"I think this might be a clue⁽⁸⁾ as to where Flint buried⁽⁹⁾ his treasure," said Dr. Livesey.

"That is why those men were not interested in⁽¹¹⁾ money," agreed Mr. Trelawney. "If you are right, we should take the next boat from Bristol and go and find the treasure ourselves."

"If Jim here agrees," said the doctor, looking at me, "we should look at these papers now."



The doctor looked at the papers. Some of them seemed to describe⁽¹³⁾ the ships that the Captain and his men had rubbed⁽¹⁴⁾ of money. Then we looked at the other papers and saw a map⁽¹⁵⁾ of an island, with a big cross⁽¹⁶⁾ on it next to the words, "most of treasure here."

- (7) قاض / محقق
- (8) دليل / مفتاح
- (9) دفن
- (10) كنز
- (11) في
- (12) واثق
- (13) يصف
- (14) يمسح
- (15) خريطة
- (16) علامة

"Dr. Livesey, we should go to Bristol tomorrow," said Mr. Trelawney. "In a few days, we'll find the best ship in England. Jim Hawkins here can come as our ship's boy. You can be the ship's doctor."

"I agree," said the doctor, "but those men who tried to find the map will now be looking for us. We are not safe anymore. We must not tell anyone else what we know."

It took us longer than we thought to be ready to leave⁽¹⁷⁾ England. While Mr. Trelawney prepared for⁽¹⁸⁾ the journey⁽¹⁹⁾ in Bristol, I stayed at Mr. Trelawney's house with his servant Redruth and spent hours studying the map, thinking about the treasure that we might find.

One day, a letter was sent to me from Mr. Trelawney. It said that a good man called Blandy had a ship called the Hispaniola for us. Trelawney said that he had found a crew⁽²⁰⁾ ready to work on it. The crew included⁽²¹⁾ a man called Long John Silver, who had lost a leg but was a good cook⁽²²⁾. Silver also knew other men who would join us. Trelawney said that everyone was excited by⁽²³⁾ the thought⁽²⁴⁾ of the treasure. I was surprised by this, as I thought we had to keep the news⁽²⁵⁾ of the treasure a secret⁽²⁵⁾.

I was very excited by the thought of the journey and I went to say goodbye⁽²⁶⁾ to my mother at the Admiral Bendow Inn. I was very sad to leave her the next day, when I travelled to Bristol with Redruth. We had just one night in the city before we were going to sail⁽²⁷⁾.

- (17) مستعد للظفر
- (18) ل
- (19) رحلة / سفيرة
- (20) طاقم السفينة
- (21) يشمل / يتضمن
- (22) صانع خبز
- (23) فكر
- (24) فكرة
- (25) معلومة عن شيء
- (26) يودع
- (27) يسافر

AltFwOk.com موقع التفوق

Check your Understanding Chapter 2

1. The judge decided that the man was innocent and set him free.
a. prison b. ruler c. judge d. magistrate
2. I followed the policeman's path to criminals and send them to prison.
a. band b. catch c. hand d. overlook
3. The aim of the new landlord is to clean the house and the garden.
a. master b. landlord c. servant d. captain
4. Dr Zerkow was the head of the team who discovered the femtosecond.
a. head b. hand c. lord d. owner
5. The ancient Egyptians left us lots of hidden treasures.
a. islands b. crosses c. treasures d. crews
6. There are signs along the roads that show us directions.
a. treasures b. directions c. riches d. meals
7. The crew of the plane consisted of a pilot, a copilot and eight passengers.
a. passengers b. wings c. engine d. crew
8. Poor is to wealth as servant is to master.
a. wealth b. wealthy c. poverty d. the rich
9. The police have found a strong clue that helped them solve the crime.
a. clue b. cross c. island d. blind
10. This island is a good tourist attraction for people who like fishing, diving and sailing. Water completely surrounds it.
a. hill b. mountain c. island d. river
11. He was set free after the magistrate had decided that he was not responsible for the crime.
a. captain b. magistrate c. pilot d. sailor

CHAPTER 3



موقع
التفوق
Altfwok.com

Vocabulary

attack (act) (n - v)	هجوم	mutiny (n)	تمرد / عصيان
barrel (n)	برميل	note (n)	ملاحظة - رسالة قصيرة
crutch (n)	عكاز	of different sizes	بأحجام مختلفة
destination (n)	مقصد	parrot (n)	ببغاء
empty (adj) (n - v)	فارغ	patient (adj - n)	مريض - صبور
finger (n)	صبع	pay - paid (for) (v)	يدفع ثمن
frightened (adj)	خائف	pirate (n)	فارسا
gang (n)	عصابة	reach (ed) (v)	يصل إلى
harbour (n)	ميناء	return (ed) (v)	يعود - يرجع
helper (n)	مساعد	safe (adj)	آمن - في أمان
journey (n)	رحلة	sailor (n)	بحار
lose a leg	يفقد إحدى ساقيه	save (d) (v)	يُخّضّر - يَدخّر
make me laugh	يجعلني أضحك	secret (n - adj)	سر - سري

Words and their definitions

harbour	: an area of water next to the land where ships can stay safely	ميناء
mutiny	: when a group of people refuse to obey the person in charge of them and take control for themselves	تمرد
crutch	: a special stick which you put under your arm to help you walk when you have hurt your leg	عكاز
parrot	: a brightly coloured bird which can learn to speak	ببغاء
barrel	: a large container made of wood	برميل
pirate	: a sailor who attacks ships and steals from them	فارسا
gang	: a group of people that causes trouble	عصابة
secret	: known about by only a few people and kept from others	سر
patient	: able to wait calmly for a long time	صبور
attack	: an act of violence that is intended to hurt a person or damage a place	هجوم

Before You read

What do you think life is like on the Hispaniola?

The next morning, Mr Trelawney asked me to take a note to Long John Silver. I went to the inn which Silver owned. It was full of⁽¹⁾ people, but I soon saw a tall, strong man with one leg. He looked very happy and seemed to know all of the people there. I walked up to him and gave him the note. When he saw that it was from Mr Trelawney, he looked surprised and said, "Ah, you must be the new ship's boy!"

At that moment, one of the men in the inn quickly left the room. I saw that he had three fingers on one hand.

"It's Black Dog!" I called. "Stop him!"

"Yes, stop him! He did not pay for⁽²⁾ his food!" called Silver to one of his helpers⁽³⁾. The helper ran out of the door.

"Do you know that man? Black Dog, is it?" Silver asked me.

"Yes, he was one of the men who attacked⁽⁴⁾ my home. Did Mr Trelawney tell you about that?" I replied. "Ah, yes. I've seen him in my inn before. He sometimes comes with a blind man."

"The blind man is called Pew," I said. "He was with Black Dog when they attacked."

"Then we must catch them both," said Silver. However, the helper returned and said he could not catch Black Dog.

"Well, we must return to Mr Trelawney," said Silver.

We walked back along the harbour past boats of different sizes⁽⁵⁾, all preparing to go to sea. Silver told me all about the boats and I knew that he was a great sailor.

We found Dr Livesey with Mr Trelawney when we returned to his hotel, and told them about Black Dog.

"There is nothing we can do now," said Mr Trelawney. "We leave at four o'clock this afternoon. Get your hat, Jim, we'll go on the ship now," he said to me.



Check Dictionary

- ملاحظة
- لم يدفع
- مساعد
- هجم
- مختلف

It took some time to reach the Hispaniola. When we walked onto the big ship, the captain, Smollett, did not look happy to see us.

"What's the problem?" asked Mr Trelawney.

"I don't like the men on this ship and I'm not happy about where we're going," he said. "Why not?" asked Dr Livesey.

"I was told that the destination of the journey was a secret," he explained. "But the crew tell me we're looking for treasure. I know that looking for treasure always means danger. And when I go on a journey, I want to be able to choose my own crew."

"Don't you like the crew we chose?" asked Mr Trelawney.

"I'll sail with them. I want you to stay at the front of the ship for all the journey, and to keep guns with you. And don't show anyone the map," said Smollett.

"Are you worried there will be a mutiny?" asked Dr Livesey.

"I don't like the men on the ship and I'm not happy about where we're going," he said.

"Why not?" asked Dr Livesey.

"It's my job to keep you safe," that's all," said Smollett, and walked to another part of the ship.

"I think you've two good men on the ship," said Dr Livesey. "That's Long John Silver and Captain Smollett."

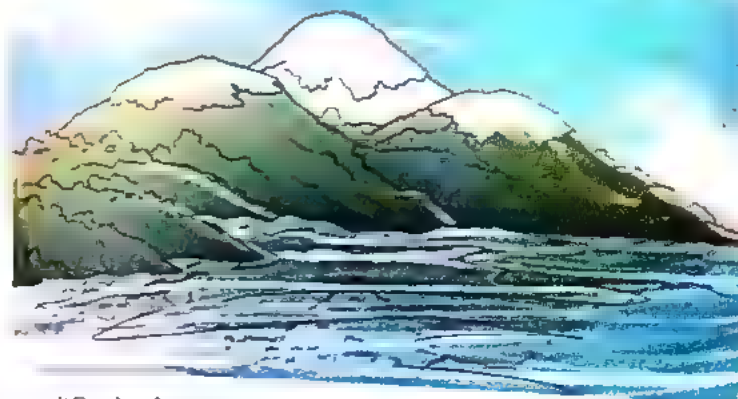
"I know Long John Silver is a good man," said Mr Trelawney, "but I don't think Captain Smollett is." I agreed with Mr Trelawney. I did not like Captain Smollett.

The Hispaniola finally left Bristol and our long journey began. Silver was able to walk around the ship on one leg, using only a crutch⁽¹¹⁾. All the men liked him and he was a good cook, his kitchen always clean. When he wasn't working, he looked after his parrot⁽¹²⁾. He called it Captain Flint and said it was 200 years old. The parrot could talk, too, which always made me laugh⁽¹³⁾.



- (8) وجهة السفر
- (9) تكبر / عصيان
- (10) يفتك على سلامتك
- (11) عصا
- (12) بيقاق
- (13) جعلني أضحك

One night, before I went to bed, I decided to eat an apple. The apples were kept in a big barrel⁽¹⁴⁾ which I climbed inside because it was nearly empty⁽¹⁵⁾. Before I left the barrel, I heard a man talking nearby. It was Silver and what he said was terrible.



"On that journey, Flint was the captain," he said.

"It was then that I lost my leg and Pew became blind. After that journey, I put a lot of money in the bank. It was a great journey, and most of the same crew are on this ship today."

"You won't be able to return to Bristol after this journey," said another sailor called Dick. "What will happen to your inn?"

"I've sold it," said Silver. "My wife has the money and is waiting for me to return in a secret place. And after this journey, you'll have lots of money, too."

Another man joined them and said, "I'm tired of waiting. When can we attack Captain Smollett?"

"You must be patient⁽¹⁷⁾," said Silver. "Trelawney has the map, so we wait until they have found the treasure. We might also want Smollett to take us home before we attack."

- (14) برميل
- (15) فارغ
- (16) قريب
- (17) صبور

The chocolate I made that morning against Peter's
 to be like the others. When Peter returned and
 I said, "That's what Peter and I had wanted!
 I was so sure it was there." Peter is blind and I have to

I said to him, "The silver was not only
 the silver but also the gold and the
 silver was just a part of it."

"Now we can trust that Silver." When
 he was young, I took him to the
 island. Now Duck can you get me an

When I heard these words I was very
 surprised. However before Duck came to
 the house I heard another voice call out "I
 can help."

It was this news that saved me because
 the sailors now all forgot about apples. We
 were near the Treasure Island.



Color
 قوس قزح
 ملون
 لونه

موقع
 التفوق
 AllFwok.com

Check

your Understanding Chapter 3

10 (1) correct answer from a, b, c or d

- My daughter has a ... that can sing and repeat what we say.
 a puppy b parrot c kitten d hen
- What we say here is top ... It is not for publishing.
 a secret b public c score d tip
- The fox that ... and kills the birds on our farm comes from the
 neighbouring desert area.
 a feeds b returns c attacks d protects
- If you go on working hard, you will ... your goal.
 a lose b mistake c fail d reach
- A: What is your next ... ? B: London. I'm going there next
 Friday.
 a secret b barrel c destination d mature
- Don't be ... The lion is in its cage.
 a frightened b frightening c tired d tired
- The coach depends on his ... to find information about other
 teams.
 a sailor b helpers c pilot d cook
- I asked Sama to ... the book she had borrowed from me.
 a return b take c catch d attack
- It is not safe to go sailing in this area because there are
 a rescuers b parrots c patriots d pirates
- One of the ... told his captain that he could see land in the distance.
 a sails b sellers c sailors d seals
- One of the sailors led a ... against the captain, but they failed to
 take the ship.
 a barrel b parrot c crush d mutiny

General Exercises on Chapters 1, 2 & 3

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب وكتاب المدرس

موقع التفوق
Altfwok.com

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The people tried to catch the thief, but he
a. caught b. escaped c. arrested d. managed
- Be careful or you will fall off the ... it's very steep.
a. bottom b. hall c. well d. cliff
- We ... much to our great teachers
a. take b. lend c. owe d. borrow
- Black Dog is ... he has lost his sight.
a. deaf b. blind c. dumb d. crippled
- Outside the building there are two men whose job is to ... and protect us.
a. guard b. attack c. prevent d. own
- The thief had a long curved ... on his cheek, so we could recognize him.
a. skate b. sky c. skin d. scar
- What a brave young man! He was the only student who ... to say the truth.
a. could b. dared c. refused d. disagreed
- A/An ... is a group of people who work against the law.
a. gang b. crew c. staff d. team
- Unfortunately, the burglar ... the house.
a. stole b. took c. owed d. robbed
- The ship ... helped each other to control the situation well.
a. gang b. staff c. crew d. team
- A ... is a bird with brightly coloured feathers that can learn to copy human speech.
a. chick b. duck c. parrot d. pirate

- The ... is the person who is in charge of ... a ship, or a plane.
a. hostess b. sailor c. driver d. captain
- I don't have a lot of money on me; only a few ... in my pocket
a. wealth b. coins c. jewellery d. gold
- Strong is to ... as blind is to sighted.
a. power b. powerful c. weak d. terrible
- My friend went on a journey in the forest. He was looking for
a. adventure b. safety c. sleep d. technology
- Always keep away from ...
a. dangerous b. danger c. safety d. safe
- Afraid and ... are synonyms.
a. terrific b. terrifying c. frightening d. frightened
- He had a ... with which he could shoot the lion dead.
a. sword b. knife c. gun d. stick
- I asked the secretary to ... me the report in person.
a. hand b. owe c. fear d. dare
- The escaping criminal ... in the fields, away from the police
a. left b. fought c. hid d. guarded
- A: "Who ... this villa?" B: It is my uncle's.
a. owes b. owns c. guards d. grabs
- These ... prove that Mr Ashraf has a villa, two blocks of flats and three modern cars.
a. pepper b. peppers c. paper d. papers
- My uncle likes ... He is usually away in one place or another
a. coins b. guns c. travel d. reading
- My cousin works as a ... in a famous restaurant.
a. cooker b. cook c. cooking d. cooks
- The ... on the map shows the place where the ship sank.
a. sail b. island c. cross d. crew
- Catch is to free as ... is to alive.
a. dead b. death c. die d. deadly

27. A group of prisoners were able to from the police van.
a. lock b. catch c. arrest d. escape
28. I asked my mother to hot pepper in the salad.
a. include b. cook c. grow d. sail
29. Some students were playing football. The were sitting under the leafy trees.
a. students b. rest c. whole d. other
30. Keep the password Never tell anyone what it is.
a. popular b. public c. known d. secret
31. The clever captain the ship safely during the storm.
a. sank b. flew c. sailed d. drowned
32. The police are searching for the gang who the money of the bank.
a. robbed b. guarded c. saved d. returned
33. Google help you to know the directions.
a. store b. maps c. cloud d. mail
34. One of the sailors led a against his captain.
a. rescue mission b. mutiny c. murder d. mirror
35. This oil field produces two million a day.
a. pirates b. destinations c. barrels d. parrots
36. I asked one of my secretaries to take a to the general manager.
a. away b. rest c. meal d. note
37. After the accident that hurt his leg, Mr Nasser had to be on for three months.
a. crutches b. prison c. charge d. crew
38. Nothing is left in the fridge. It is completely
a. full b. filled c. empty d. stuffed
39. A learner has to be Learning takes its time.
a. patience b. patient c. ill d. diseased
40. You have to for the drinks. They are not free.
a. call b. drink c. take d. pay
41. Sama cried in pain when her brother shut the door on her
a. finger b. note c. crutch d. harbour

CHAPTER 4



Vocabulary

as usual	بالمعتاد	hurt - hurt (v)	ألم - أضر
blew a whistle	طوى صافرة	kill (ed) (v)	قتل
branch (n)	فرع - حبل	low (adj)	منخفض
climb (ed) (v)	سلق	mark (ed) (v)	علامة - يعلّم
climb out of	سلق خارج من	marked (adj)	معلّم
close (ed)	قريب - ضم	mistake (n)	خطأ
coast (n)	ساحل	organise (d) (v)	تنظيم
count (ed) (v)	عد - أحصى	relax (ed) (v)	يستريح
disease (n)	مرض	rocky (adj)	صخري
excited (adj)	متحمّس - متفهم	shore (n)	شاطئ
expression (n)	عبارات - تعبير	shout (ed) (n - v)	صرخة - صرخ
fight - fought (v)	مباراة - شجار	surprised (adj)	مدهش
forever (adv)	لأبد	thought (n)	فكرة
hill (n)	تلة	trust(ed) (n - v)	ثقة - يثق
hold onto - held (v)	بشدة - يمسك	whistle(d) (n - v)	صافرة - صفّر

Words and their definitions

- ▶ **branch** : a part of a tree that grows out from the trunk
فرع شجرة
- ▶ **disease** : an illness which affects a person, animal or plant
مرض
- ▶ **shore** : the land along the edge of a large area of water such as a sea, an ocean or a lake
شاطئ
- ▶ **trust** : to believe that someone is honest or will not do anything bad or wrong
يثق - يثق
- ▶ **whistle** : a small object that produces a high whistling sound when you blow into it
صافرة

I heard people running to look at the island, and I quietly climbed out of the barrel. I then walked up to join the sailors at the side of ⁽¹⁾ the ship. We could see two low hills, ⁽²⁾ and one big one. The island was now very close ⁽³⁾.

"I've been here before," said Silver. "I know where the ship should stop."

Check Vocabulary

- (1) على جانب
- (2) تلال منخفضة
- (3) قريب

"I have a map here," said Captain Smollett. "Can you take us to that place?"

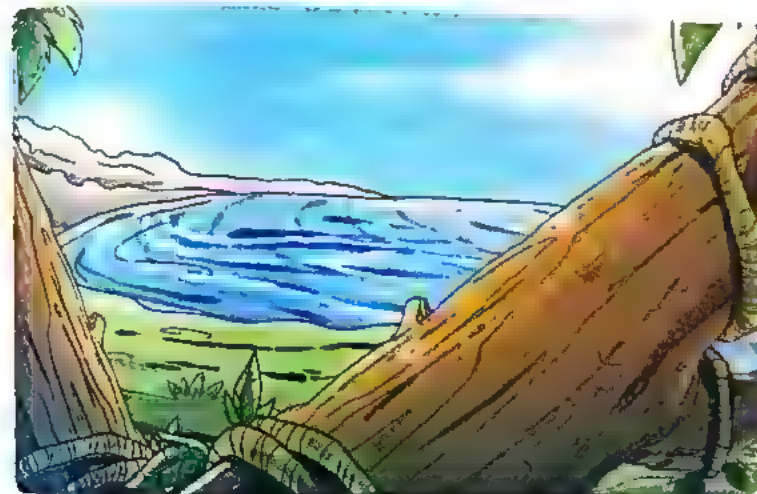
I saw that Silver was excited to take the map, but it was not the one with the treasure marked ⁽⁴⁾ on it. "Yes, I can see it. You must go here," he said, pointing to a place on the map.

Then he turned to me and said, "You'll love this island. You can swim and climb trees and walk up the hills!"

I smiled at Silver, but inside I was very frightened of him now. I could not trust ⁽⁵⁾ anything that he said. I soon found Dr Livesey and quietly said to him, "I must speak to you, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. I have some terrible news."

Dr Livesey's expression ⁽⁶⁾ did not change. He asked me to find his glasses downstairs and walked off to talk to Mr Trelawney and Smollett.

I waited downstairs and soon the three men joined me. "What do you want to tell us?" asked Mr Trelawney.



I told them everything that I had heard in the barrel. When I finished talking, they thanked me. "Captain," said Mr Trelawney. "You were right and I was wrong. What shall we do?"

"I'm surprised too," said Captain Smollett. "They have worked hard and been a better crew than I expected⁽⁹⁾. Now we must continue. We can't go back, or they might attack us immediately⁽¹⁰⁾. I don't think that they will attack us until we find the treasure. Long John Silver did not lead a bad crew, so some of the men are good men. We must wait, watch and attack them when they don't expect it."

"Jim can help us," said Dr Livesey. "The men all trust him. He can listen and find out who we can trust."

I did not like this thought. I counted the men that Silver did not find for the crew. There were seven from a crew of nineteen, and I was one of them.

The next morning, the Hispaniola stopped close to the island. There were many trees, and above the trees I saw the rocky tops⁽¹¹⁾ of the hills. Silver helped Captain Smollett to sail the boat closer to the shore⁽¹²⁾. It was very hot and very quiet. It smelled like⁽¹³⁾ bad eggs.

"This place is only good for diseases⁽¹⁴⁾," said Silver.

The crew worked hard on our journey to the island, but now they did not seem to want to work. I remembered Dr Livesey talking about a mutiny. Perhaps it was near. Only Silver worked as hard as usual⁽¹⁵⁾.

Later, Captain Smollett told us that he had a plan.

"Let's ask the men if they'd like to spend the afternoon on the island. If they go, we can take the ship. If they don't go, we know we need to fight them for the ship."

Mr Trelawney agreed. We decided to tell all the men we could trust about our plan and gave them all guns. Captain Smollett then told the crew that they could all have the afternoon on the island to relax⁽¹⁶⁾, if they wanted to.

"When you hear a gun at the end of the day, it'll be time to come back," he said.

All the crew suddenly looked happy and they all agreed to go. Perhaps they thought that they could find the treasure immediately.

- (9) توقع
- (10) في الحال
- (11) قمم صخرية
- (12) شاطئ (البحر)
- (13) رائحتها مثل
- (14) أمراض
- (15) كالعادة
- (16) يستريح / يستريح

Captain Smollett asked Silver to organize⁽¹⁷⁾ the men. Six men would stay on the Hispaniola and thirteen would take the small boats to the shore. I realised that there were six of Silver's men on the ship. The men in our group would not be able to take the ship, so I decided I would go with Silver onto the island. I got on one of the boats quietly, but Silver saw me. Had I made a big mistake⁽¹⁸⁾?

The boat I was in was fast, and we were nearly on the beach first when I held onto the branch⁽¹⁹⁾ of a tree and jumped out of the boat. I heard someone calling me, but I did not listen and began to run as fast as I could.

When I stopped, I felt happy. Silver did not know where I was. This part of the island was open, with just a few trees. I could see the hills in front of me. As I walked, I saw pretty flowers, snakes and small birds.

Suddenly a cloud of birds flew into the sky and knew that something was coming towards me. I was correct, because I then heard people talking. I decided to hide behind some trees.

I realised that one of the people was Silver, but I could not hear what he was saying. Soon the birds returned, and I knew that the men had gone. I told myself that it was my job to find out what these men were planning to do. So I decided to follow them, without them seeing me. After a few minutes, I saw Silver and another sailor talking near a beach.

"I want you to join us, Tom, because I know you're a good sailor. I'm telling you this to save you!" said Silver.

"Silver," Tom replied, "you're a good man and you shouldn't work with these pirates. I'd prefer to lose my hand than work with them."

I knew then that here was a man that we could trust. Then came news of another. I suddenly heard a terrible shout, then all was quiet.

"What was that?" asked Tom.

Silver smiled and said "That? Oh, I think that was Alan."

"Alan!" cried Tom. "He's a good man. If your men have hurt him, then you are no friend of mine. I won't help you!"

- (17) ينظم
- (18) خطأ
- (19) فرع (شجرة)





Tom began to walk away from Silver along the beach. Silver suddenly threw his crutch at Tom, and it hit him hard on the back. He fell to the ground, and before he could stand again, Silver killed him with a knife.

Silver now ... and I knew that more of his men would soon arrive on the beach. I was very frightened. I walked quietly back into the trees, then ran as quickly as I could.

As I ran, I began to think. What could I do now? When we heard Captain Smollett's gun, could I go back to the beach to be with these men? If I did, I knew that they would kill me. I would have to stay on the island forever.

Check
Vocabulary

سكين
يصلو
إلى الأبد

موقع
التفوق
ALIFWOK.COM

Check

your Understanding Chapter 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A is a part of a tree that grows out from the trunk الجذع and that has leaves أوراق and fruit growing from it.
a. leaf b. root c. branch d. seed
- The is the area where the land meets the sea.
a. shore b. coast c. wave d. harbour
- The is the land along the edge حافة of a large area of water such as an ocean مَبحط or lake. بحيرة.
a. shore b. coast c. wave d. harbour
- A / An is an illness which affects يؤثر على a person, animal, or plant.
a. fight b. expression c. branch d. disease
- A is a small object شيء that produces a high sound when you blow ينفخ into it.
a. mark b. thought c. whistle d. mistake
- To is to rest يستريح or do something that is enjoyable, especially after you have been working.
a. mark b. relax c. exert d. labour
- To is to believe that someone is honest أمين or will not do anything bad or wrong.
a. blow b. doubt c. lie d. trust
- The little child held the leg of a chair to help him stand up.
a. of b. off c. onto d. into
- The referee his whistle and ended the match.
a. blew b. said c. fed d. bit
- When the car hit the man, he gave a loud
a. rhyme b. laugh c. smile d. shout

CHAPTER 5

موقع
التفوق

ALTFWOK.COM



Vocabulary

allow (ed) (v)	سمح -	interested (adj)	مهتم
believe (d) (v)	صدق - يؤمن	kneel down - knelt (v)	ارتفع
bottom (n)	اسفل / سفح - قاع	leader (n)	قائد
burn - burned / burnt (v)	يعرق - يحترق	on your own	بمردك
crazy (adj)	مجنون	prefer (red) (v)	تفضل
dark (n - adj)	الظلام - مظلم	realise (d) (v)	يترك - عي
different (adj)	مختلف	reply (ied) (v)	رد - يجيب
directions (n)	اتجاهات	sail (ed) (n - v)	شراع المركب - يبحر
dry (adj)	جاف / جفن	skin (n)	الجلد
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح - يفسر	spade (n)	حدويف
fight - fought (v)	يقاتل	start (ed) (n - v)	بداية - يبدأ
flag (n)	علم - راية	voice (n)	صوت انسان
fresh (adj)	نضج	worry (ied) (n - v)	القلق - يفتق

Words and their definitions

crazy	: unwell in your mind	مجنون
sail	: a piece of material used to control wind power on a ship or a boat	شراع
leader	: the person who controls other people	قائد
fight	: to hit, kick or fire guns at other people	يقاتل

I finally stopped running and saw that I was close to¹⁾ the bottom of one of the small hills. The air was fresher²⁾ here and the trees were taller. Suddenly, from up the hill, something jumped behind a tree. I did not know if it was a man or an animal but it looked big and dangerous.

I decided to walk back towards the beach, but then I saw him again. I realised it was a man, but he was running very fast from tree to tree. I remembered that I had a gun and this made me feel safer³⁾. I decided to walk towards the man.

Check Vocabulary

تقريب من (1)
أكثر طرا (2)
يشعر أكثر أمانا (3)

When he saw me walking towards him, to my surprise, he came out from behind the tree and stood in front of me. "Who are you?" I asked.

"Ben Gun," he said in a quiet voice. "I've not spoken to anyone for three years."

The man had very long hair and skin that was burnt.

His clothes were dirty and made of old

"What happened to you?" I asked.

"I was left here by a ship," he said. "I've lived on fish and fruit ever since. I dream of eating good food again."

"If I can get back to my ship, I'll give you bread and cheese," I said.

He began to look worried. "If you can get back to your ship?! Why? What's to stop you?" he said. "It isn't a problem with you," I replied.

"I'm a good man," he told me. "I'm very rich, too!" he said in a quiet voice.

مفاجئ
بركع
صوت جاف
مخترق من
الشمس
لشعة الشمس
يخلم بـ
يصق / يفتقد

ALTfwok.com موقع التفوق



I began to think that perhaps Ben Gun was crazy. Ben Gun saw that I did not believe him.⁽¹⁰⁾

"I am rich! And you can be rich too, because you found me!" he said. Then he looked worried and said, "You didn't come on Flint's ship, did you?"

I realised now that this man could help me.

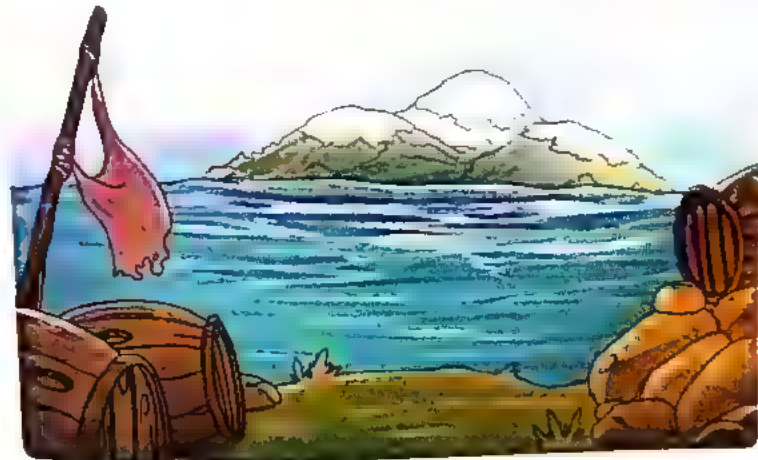
"No, Flint's dead, but some of Flint's crew is on the ship. That is not good for any of us," I told him. "Is there a man with one leg?" he asked.

"Yes, Silver. He's the cook and their leader⁽¹¹⁾," I explained.

"If you work for Silver, I'm finished," he said.

I decided to tell him my story from the start, and he looked very interested.

"You're a good boy," he said at the end. "Don't worry, you can trust me. Do you think that Trelawney would give me money and allow⁽¹²⁾ me to come home on the ship if I helped him?" he asked.



"Of course," I replied. "And he'll need your help on the ship home. I'm sure."

"You're right," he said. "You know, I was on Flint's ship when he had the treasure here. He was with six men and they were on the island for

... on a ship called the Walnut. One day, ...
The other six men were dead ...
... were ...
... You can ...
... heard. But I will be there on your ...

"Then I will go on a different ship. When we ...
... that Flint's treasure was ...
... They were not ...
... one day, they went back to the ship and ...
... here is a gun and a spade." You can look for the ...
... treasure of your own," they said. So, you tell Trelawney, I would prefer ...
... than with a group of pirates."

"I will try, but how can I return to my ship from here?" I asked him.
"I have a boat. I made it myself. We could go to the ship when it's dark!"
Suddenly, we heard the sound of a gun.

"They have started to fight," I said. "We must be quick!"
I began to run back with Ben. He gave me ...
... and ran easily next to me.
We heard more gun, then I saw a flag flying ...
... above some trees.



موقع
التفوق
ALTfWok.com

Check

your Understanding Chapter 5

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
1. A / An ... is the person who controls other people.
a. servant b. pirate c. leader d. an owner
 2. To ... is to hit, kick or fire guns at other people.
a. fight b. help c. assist d. support
 3. ... means unwell in one's mind.
a. Helpful b. Kind c. Sane d. Crazy
 4. A / An ... is a piece of material used to control wind power on a ship or a boat.
a. sail b. row c. engine d. sailor
 5. A ... is a tool for digging that has a long handle and a broad metal blade that you push into the ground.
a. gun b. spade c. note d. map
 6. Your ... stops you thinking clearly and taking the right decision.
a. education b. health c. worry d. experience
 7. When it is ..., it is difficult or impossible to see.
a. dark b. right c. light d. sunny
 8. I ... that the man was a criminal when I saw the gun he was carrying.
a. fought b. sailed c. worried d. realised
 9. Raise your ... so that we can hear you.
a. head b. sound c. voice d. noise
 10. I felt relaxed after the walk in the ... air of the countryside.
a. fresh b. poisoned c. bad d. hot
 11. When the police officer fired his gun, the terrorist ... down to his knees and gave up.
a. led b. believed c. replied d. knelt

CHAPTER

6

موقع
التفوق

ALTfWok.com



Vocabulary

advantage (n)	ميزة	fort (n)	حصن
adventure (n)	مغامرة	get to - got (v)	وصل إلى
alive (adj)	على قيد الحياة	give ... an advantage	يمنح ميزة
arrival (n)	وصول	hit - hit (v)	يضرب - يضرب
attack(ed) (n - v)	هجوم - يهاجم	pick(ed) up (v)	يتناول - يلتقط
blow - blew - blown (v)	نهب - ينهب	prevent(ed) (v)	يمنع
cannon (n)	مدفع	put up a flag	يرفع علم
contact (ed) (n - v)	اتصال - يتصل به	race (n)	سباق
defend(ed) (v)	يدافع عن	sink - sank - sunk (v)	يغوص - يغرق
diary (n)	مفكرة يوميات	supplies (n)	مؤن
entry (n)	مدخل مقدمة	well-defended (adj)	حصين - منيع
fire (ed) a gun	يطلق النار من بندقية	wind (n)	الرياح
fire (ed) at (ed) (v)	يطلق النار على		

Words and their definitions

cannon	: a large gun with wheels	مدفع
contact	: communicate with someone or something	يتواصل مع
defend	: protect someone or something from being attacked	يدافع عن
supplies	: food, clothes etc. that you need to take with you for a period of time	مؤن / تجهيزات

Dr Livesey :

When the boats went to the shore, I talked to Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. There was no wind at all, so we knew we could not take the ship, even if we wanted to attack the six men who stayed on the ship with us. Then we heard that Jim Hawkins was on the island with Silver and his men. We were very worried about him.



I decided to take a boat to the shore with another man we could trust, Hunter. When we reached the island we walked a little way and I saw a small boat. It was big enough for about twenty-five men. It was loaded with food and I heard a voice from the boat.

We went back to the boat and were returned to the Hispaniola. I met Captain Smollett and Mr. Trelawney. We quickly put our men and guns in the boat.

As the boat moved, Captain Smollett and Mr. Trelawney said to Silver, "You men who were still on the ship, 'We have got to get to the beach. Silver, you will be dead'."

I was very surprised. I then took the boat back to the beach with Hunter and another sailor called Joyce. We quickly took everything up to the fort, then I left Hunter and Joyce in the fort and returned to the Hispaniola.

We knew that Silver had more men than us, but we also knew that none of them had guns. We thought that this gave us an advantage⁽⁷⁾. On the Hispaniola, Trelawney helped me to put food and more weapons⁽⁸⁾ into the boat. Then we called for Captain Smollett, Redruth and a good sailor called Abraham Gray, and they climbed into the boat with us.

Our journey back to the island was more difficult than the others. There were more people and supplies⁽⁹⁾ now, so the boat was heavy and very close to the water. We had to be very careful to prevent⁽¹⁰⁾ the boat from sinking⁽¹¹⁾. The wind blew⁽¹²⁾ from a different direction, too, and we were not moving towards the beach near the fort.

"We'll never get to the beach!" I said.
 "We must keep in this direction⁽¹³⁾," said Captain Smollett. "Work hard, be patient, and we will arrive." Then his voice changed. "The cannon!" he called.
 I looked round and realised that the men we left on the Hispaniola were preparing a cannon. We were moving so slowly that we were not far from the ship. It would be easy for them to hit us.

- 1. I took
- 2. I took
- 3. I took
- 4. I took
- 5. I took
- 6. I took
- 7. I took
- 8. I took
- 9. I took
- 10. I took
- 11. I took
- 12. I took
- 13. I took

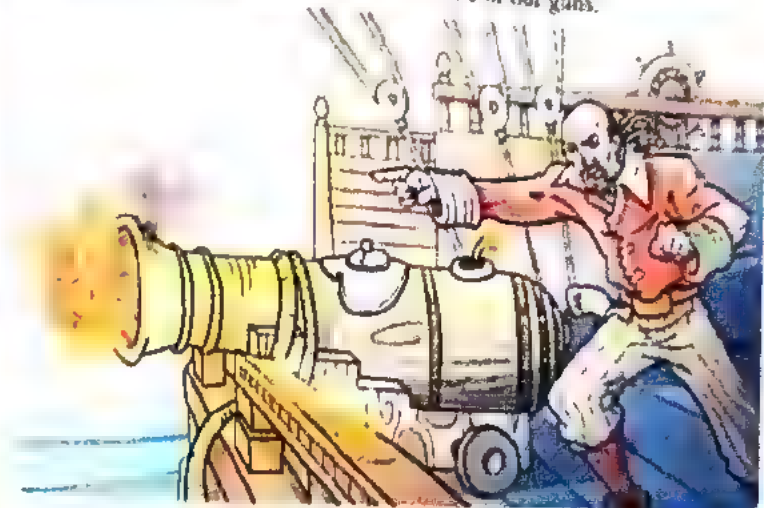
Trelawney stood up with a gun and fired at the pirates, and one of them fell.

We heard a cry from the ship, and another from the beach. We saw that the other pirates were getting into their boats.

"Go as fast as you can," said Captain Smollett. "If we don't get to the beach, we're finished."

"They are only using one boat," I said. "The other men are walking to the beach to wait for us." "It's a long way for them to run," said Captain Smollett. "It's a long way to get there first."

We moved fast, and the wind was not so strong near the beach. However, Trelawney fired his gun again which made us all move to one side of the boat. It started to sink, but we were in just three feet of water. It was not difficult to walk to the beach, but we had lost many of our supplies in the water, including some of our guns.



There were now voices in the trees and we knew that the pirates were near. We had to get to the fort before the pirates got to the beach. We all ran as fast as possible and at last we saw the fort in front of us. At the same time, seven pirates arrived at the other side of it. The pirates looked surprised to see the fort and stopped. This gave us time to fire our guns, and they quickly turned and ran into the trees behind them.

- 1. I took
- 2. I took
- 3. I took
- 4. I took
- 5. I took
- 6. I took
- 7. I took
- 8. I took
- 9. I took
- 10. I took
- 11. I took
- 12. I took
- 13. I took



As we could enter the fort we heard another shot and soon
fell down. We quickly took him and took him into the
fort. It was too late he was dead. Trelawney was very sad. Redruth
to him
inside the fort and
asked me, "How long will
we last?"

انطلاق النار
بالخشب
خادم
يرجع (العلم)
يترك / يهمل (العلم)



"In England, I told Blandy that if we were not back by August, to
come and find us." I explained.

"We need the supplies that were lost in the sea," said Captain
Smollett. "Without them, we have enough supplies until July only."

At that moment, we heard gun fire and the fort was nearly hit. "They
can see the flag," said Trelawney. "We should take it down!"

"No!" said Captain Smollett. "We keep the flag! It will show the
pirates that we are not frightened of them!"

The gun fire continued, but it was almost impossible for them to hit
anyone inside the fort.

Just then, we heard someone calling.

"Doctor! Mr Trelawney! Captain! Are you there?"

I ran to the door of the fort and I found Jim Hawkins, safe and alive!

Check

your Understanding Chapter 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- To is to protect someone or something from being attacked.
a. fire b. pick c. sink d. defend
- are food, clothes etc. that you need to take with you for a
period of time.
a. Supplies b. Communications
c. Diaries d. Entries
- To is to communicate with someone or something.
a. fire b. burn c. contact d. supply
- A is a large gun with wheels.
a. gun b. cannon c. sword d. fort
- A is a strong building or group of buildings used by soldiers or
an army for defending an important place.
a. diary b. gun c. contact d. fort
- A / An is an exciting experience in which dangerous or unusual
things happen.
a. adventure b. advantage c. contact d. connect
- A / An is a good or useful feature that someone or
something has.
a. adventure b. advantage c. contact d. connect
- To means to arrive somewhere.
a. sail b. arrive to c. get to d. leave for
- A is a book in which you write down the things that happen to
you each day.
a. dairy b. diary c. fort d. cannon
- To means to shoot bullets or bombs.
a. fire b. shout c. point d. defend

General Exercises for Chapters 4, 5 & 6

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات.

▶ ④ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. People who suffer from starvation usually need food
a. supplies b. surveys c. reviews d. analysis
2. Our brave army soldiers our country against enemies.
a. offend b. defend c. attack d. fight
3. When did you to your office ?
a. stay b. reach c. arrive d. get
4. I usually my friends by using my mobile phone.
a. communicate b. connect c. contact d. control
5. A is a heavy metal weapon.
a. knife b. cannon c. pistol d. gun
6. What are the and disadvantages of the internet ?
a. advantages b. points c. sides d. demerits
7. My mother down to take the little girl into her arms.
a. broke b. fell c. knelt d. raised
8. I used to depend on myself and do the homework my own.
a. on b. of c. from d. with
9. The young man behaved foolishly, so people believed he was
a. wise b. polite c. active d. crazy
10. Captain Smollett had a to save the ship from Silver and his men.
a. plane b. plan c. plain d. pain
11. Archaeologists try to look for the of the pharaohs.
a. pleasures b. pressures c. treasures d. sessions

موقع التفوق
AltFwOk.com

New Hello!

By A Group Of Supervisors

Questions Bank

بنك الأسئلة والامتحانات
الدرسية طبقاً للنواتج التعلم

الصف الأول الثانوي
الفصل الدراسي الأول



موقع
التفوق

AltFwok.com

El-Moasser
Dictionary

داحل الملحق
قاموس المعاصر
اللغوي



EL-MOASSER

GUIDE

1st Sec.
2023
FIRST TERM

CONTENTS



PART 1 Student's Follow-up page 3
- Follow your progress in vocabulary - تابع مستواك في إتقان المفردات اللغوية

PART 2 Assess yourself page 10
1. Five Monthly Accumulative Assessment Model Tests on all Units (According to the New System)
١. خمس تقييمات تراكمية شهرية للتقييم على كل الوحدات طبقا للنمطومة الجديدة
2. General Exercises collected from SB & WB Exercises
٢. تدريبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات

PART 3 Model Tests & Al-Azhar Tests page 31
1. 15 Assessment Model Tests on the whole curriculum (According to the New System)
١. خمسة عشر نموذج اختبار للتقييم على المسحج بأكمله (طبقا للنمطومة الجديدة)
2. Al Azhar Exams & Exams for students with special needs
٢. اختبارات للأزهر الشريف والدمج
3. Islamic selections
٣. مقتطفات إسلامية لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

PART 4 El Moasser Dictionary page 90
- قاموس المعاصر للمفردات اللغوية

PART

1

Student's Follow-up

المتابعة المستمرة للطالب

موقع
التفوق
ALTfwok.com



- Follow your progress in vocabulary

- تابع مستواك في إتقان المفردات اللغوية باستخدام QR code للتدريب الإلكتروني المستمر.

تابع مستواك أولا
بأول إلكترونيا



Follow your progress in vocabulary

تابع مستواك في اختبار المفردات الإنجليزية باستخدام QR code للتدريب الإلكتروني المستمر

1

استخدم QR code لتتبع مستواك في المفردات الإنجليزية الخاصة بالوحدة



Lessons 1 & 2

عزلة - منعزل	isolated (adj)	
من أعمار حياة البيئة	lean - leaned / leant (v)	
المادة البنية	material (n - adj)	
فضاء	space (adj)	
مستدام	sustainable (adj)	
متورم - متورم	swell - swelled -	
متورم	swollen (up) (v)	
من ناحية	track(ed) (n - v)	
تشمل - تشمل	including (prep)	
فريد	unique (adj)	

marks

Lessons 3 & 4

ضوضاء	noisy (adj)	
قديم - عتيق	over the moon	
قديم	old (adj)	
سليم	peace (n)	
سليم	peaceful (adj)	
مزايا - مزايا	pros and cons	
هادئ - هادئ	quiet (n - adj)	
مسترخ	relax(d) (v)	
مسترخ / مسترخ	relaxing (ad.)	
مستقر	stuck (adj)	

marks

Lessons 5 & 6 Treasure Island

خفي - أخفي	hide - hid - hidden (v)	
قائد	inn (n)	
مضطر صخري	owe(d) (v)	
عملية معدنية	own(ed) (v)	
بهرق	pale (adj)	
حائط	papers (n)	
بعضب بشدة - بعضب	scar (n)	
سيف - سيف	sword (n)	
مخيف	terrible (adj)	
مغامرة (مغامرة)	adventure (n)	

marks

Unit 2

استخدم QR code لتتبع مستواك في المفردات الإنجليزية الخاصة بالوحدة

استخدم



Lessons 1 & 2

مراقبة - مراقب	iron(ed) (n - v)	
الدم	level(n)	
المرح - مرح	long-term (adj)	
ضغط الدم	pressure(n)	
رغبة - رغبة	prestige (n - adj)	
سرعة	roar(ed) (n - v)	
أمر	role model(n)	
نموذج	model(n)	
سرعة - سرعة	speed(n)	
دعم	support(ed) (n - v)	
نسبة الدم في الدم	transplant(ed) (n - v)	

marks

Lessons 3 & 4

عالم أحياء	party(n)	
الماشية	livestock(n)	
المشاهدة	monitor(ed) (v - n)	
منظمة	organisation(n)	
مستور	track(ed) (v - n)	
جاري	aim (n)	

marks

Lessons 5 & 6 Treasure Island

دليل	map(n)	
ثراء - ثراء	rich(adj)	
سارق - سارق	rob(bed)(v)	
علامة (+ / -)	sail(ed)(v)	
أجاء	secret(n-adj)	
خادم	servant(n)	
رئيس - قائد	the rest(n)	
جزيرة	treasure(n)	
نادى - نادى	call out	

marks

موقع المتوق ALTfwoK.com

Unit 3

باستخدام QR code اكتب استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة



Lessons 1 & 2

owe(d) (v)	مُهلل - رائع جداً
plump(adj)	دُين (مديونية)
prison(n)	يكنس - يجن مال
rat(n)	تاجر
terrible(adj)	تعبس - باتس

marks

Lessons 3 & 4

plan(ned) (v)	جمعية - اتحاد
voluntary work	مُتجعب - جماعة
youth (n)	لشافة
youth association	بنك الطعام

marks

Lessons 5 & 6 Treasure Island

make me laugh	بهاجم - دعوم
mutiny(n)	برميل (خسب)
note(n)	عُكار - ركيرة
of different sizes	مُقصد - وُفهة السفر
parrot(n)	فارغ - يُفرغ
patient (adj-n)	إصبع اليد
pay - paid(for)(v)	حاص
pirate(n)	عصابة
save(d)(v)	مُرس - مرفا
secret (n-adj)	مُساعد

marks

Unit 4

باستخدام QR code اكتب استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة



Lessons 1 & 2

noticeboard(n)	بجبة
populate(d) (v)	بصح
population(n)	بتراصل - بتصل
produce(d) (v)	تواصل - اتصال
production(n)	بوصل - برصد
pronounce(d) (v)	مرتبط
pronunciation(n)	ارتباط - اتصال
salutation(n)	بُقل - نُبحر
take ... for granted	معلومة/معلومات

marks

Lessons 3 & 4

nurse(n)	بشتر - بسلط
nursing(n)	بلمبسي - مُنشر
phone-in(n)	لبطبة - أبشر
police(d) (v)	بغش - فبشاش
police(n)	الغبش
policing(n)	بُرس - برعي الرربي

marks

Lessons 5 & 6 Treasure Island

hold - held (v) (onto)	بطلن صالرة
low(adj)	فزع - فُشن
mark(ed) (v)	بسلط
marked(adj)	بسلط حاربنا من
organise(d)(v)	لربب - لصبق
relax(ed)(v)	ساحل
rocky(adj)	بعت - بُمبسي
shore(n)	مرص
thought(n)	بعبرات الوجه
trunk(ed)(n-v)	بفائل - بفشاحر
whistle(d) (n-v)	للأب

marks

موقع
التفوق
ALTfWok.com



1. Five Monthly Accumulative Assessments

1. خمس تقييمات شهرية تراكمية على الوحدات

2. General Exercises collected from SB & WB

2. تمارين عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب والتمرينات

5 Monthly Accumulative assessments

خمس تقييمات شهرية تراكمية

1. Complete test on each two units - اتمموا على كل وحدتين

Appis Create

Test 1 based on Units 1 & 2

Part one



Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. When I was on holiday in the countryside, I sometimes
a. went trekking b. went on a trek c. went on d. trekking e. trekked into
2. The antonyms of "generous" are and
a. helpful b. selfish c. mean d. intelligent e. stupid

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. Your blood should be measured every day.
a. pleasure b. treasure c. pressure d. donation
4. Good doctors have a of duty.
a. skill b. sense c. responsibility d. charity
5. The local have started a charity to help poor children in the neighbourhood.
a. security b. communication c. technology d. community
6. We are in bad need for a/an because the patient needs blood.
a. borer b. mower c. owner d. donor
7. Winning the gold medal a good impact on him.
a. had b. took c. did d. read
8. We are all responsible for our environment.
a. conserving b. confusing c. conversing d. commuting
9. Don't leave until I you.
a. told b. had told c. tell d. was told
10. I am sure he a lot of money. He just doesn't want to lend you any.
a. is having b. is going to have c. will have d. has
11. lunch ready before the guests arrived ?
a. Are b. Had c. Was d. Does
12. I got used to in a small office.
a. work b. working c. works d. worked
13. He allowed to leave until he finished the report.
a. didn't b. isn't c. wasn't d. hadn't
14. I was watching a film and my father arrived. This means that my father arrived the film.
a. during b. before c. while d. after

15. sleeping, I had a nightmare
 a. While b. As c. When d. During
16. Ahmed a glass of milk every morning
 a. always has b. always had had c. has always d. had always

Read the following passage, then answer the questions

I was very interested while listening to my friend telling me the following story which he had read in a newspaper. It was a hot noon, and the few people walking along the street stood struck dumb gazing up a man in the air little by little falling down to the earth. His wide new garment acted as a parachute when his foot slipped off the wooden board he was standing on while painting the front of a high house

It was funny that he fell down on his feet inside the box of a lorry that happened to be passing by at the time. When the people shouted, the lorry driver stopped and the man jumped off delighted at being saved. If the lorry had been a second later, it would have knocked him down dead, so he insisted on giving the driver a treat. He crossed the street to buy him a coca cola. On his way back, he was so excited that he couldn't avoid being struck down by a motorcycle running fast along the street. He fell down on the ground. The people hurried to help him rise to his feet, but they found him dead.

17. The man's garment caused him to
 a. fall down dead b. fall off the board
 c. fall down gradually d. fall down rapidly
18. The idea of the passage is
 a. a story b. an experiment
 c. fancy d. facts
19. The lorry had arrived at the place
 a. when the man's foot slipped off b. while the man was painting
 c. before the man reached the ground d. after the man reached the ground
20. The word "treat" in the passage most likely means
 a. behaving towards someone
 b. an unexpected gift
 c. a cure given for patients
 d. a thing that you buy to remind yourself of a place
21. The man was lucky when
 a. he fell into the lorry box b. people hurried to help him
 c. the motorcycle ran fast d. he fell down on the ground
 e. his wide garment acted as a parachute

22. The word "dumb" means people who can't
 a. listen b. see c. speak
 d. eat e. talk
23. A garment is a kind of
 a. metal b. clothes c. plastic
 d. wood e. clothing

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Tourism increases the opportunity for mutual understanding and peace among nations and it has an effect on bringing nations closer.

2. Translate into English :

إن التبعين عادة سببة تضر الصحة، لذلك لا يُسمح للمبتدئين بالمبتدئين في الأماكن العامة، لأنه من غير المقبول أن يسبب المبتدئين في الضرر لغيرهم كما يشهدون أنفسهم.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Egypt is proud of its distinguished scientists in all fields"

Test 2 based on Units 3 & 4

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. The driver was fined because he had the traffic law.
 a. supported b. kept c. broken d. issued e. disobeyed
2. Voluntary can be antonymous with and
 a. plump b. compulsory c. obligatory d. full e. unusual

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. If something wrong with the car, call the garage.
 a. has b. does c. makes d. goes

4. You don't have to answer this question as it is
a. sexual b. adverse c. optional d. compulsory
5. Instructions are always put on the _____ for everyone to read.
a. communication b. connection c. noticeboard d. forecast
6. The _____ of opinions should be respected, even if you don't like it.
a. leader b. friendship c. diversity d. participation
7. The old family house is _____ by the government.
a. populated b. population c. polluted d. pollution
8. _____ isn't allowed and it is considered a crime.
a. Polling b. Bullying c. Pulling d. Bull
9. Finally, she _____ how to use the smartphone. Now she can surf the net.
a. learns b. has learnt c. had learnt d. was learning
10. Omar _____ wastes his time.
a. don't b. isn't c. doesn't d. never
11. I have had lunch _____
a. already b. yet c. just d. so far
12. France and Italy are _____ European countries.
a. a b. an c. no article d. the
13. _____ there any information about the exam results?
a. Are b. Is c. Were d. Has
14. I'm very busy. I have _____ work to do.
a. a little b. lots of c. a lot d. a few
15. It's the first time I _____ alone.
a. travel b. to travel c. have ever travelled d. have travelled
16. I need _____ information.
a. an b. few c. some d. many

• Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

After having an accident on the high way, a traveller wanted to describe the experience he had. "A first responder is someone who immediately tries to help with some incident that occurs. This could be a response to someone who is hurt or injured, a natural disaster or maybe your pet needs help."

The response might be at your house or in your neighbourhood. When called, the first responder is trained to come right away. A quick response is the surest way that the incident can be resolved in the shortest time and with the least amount of damage to individuals and to property.

A first responder is responsible for the protection and preservation of life, property,

and the environment. They are trained in many areas like emergency management, public health, clinical care, public works and in operating equipment.

Together, they work to provide support services at the "onset" of an incident. "Onset" means at the early stages. They work to help in all response areas of prevention, response and recovery.

Calling for emergency is one way you can ask for help from first responders. You should know when it is appropriate to call this emergency help number. But it should be prevented in cases that are not emergencies. It wastes people's time and takes away resources needed for other emergency situations.

We salute those people who are first responders and thank them for their quick responses to help out in situations when needed.

17. If the first responders didn't answer the call,
a. nothing would happen b. people will go to their place
c. someone may be hurt d. neither a, b nor c
18. The first responders
a. save people in accidents b. call for emergency
c. can't help when a house is burnt down d. neither a, b nor c
19. When there is no emergency, we
a. should go and help first responders
b. should phone to know the work of first responders
c. must not phone first responders
d. should go to thank first responders
20. The first three paragraphs speak about the
a. management b. damage
c. responders d. recovery
21. The best word to replace the underlined word "recovery" is
a. return b. healing c. reply
d. resize e. restoration
22. The best title for the passage can be
a. Emergency b. Neighbourhood c. Protection
d. Car races e. Rescue
23. The word "salute" can have the same meaning as
a. greet b. despise c. care
d. need e. welcome

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic:

Practising activities at school is of great importance. Students should get the chance to participate effectively in such activities as they teach them cooperation, discipline and self-reliance.

2. Translate into English:

تسلل حياتنا اليومية بالكثير من الخدمات التي يسهل الأمر والمجهود والعمل الجهد لتصبح عليها نحقق كل أهدافنا وأملنا.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic:
"Spending free time in a positive way"

Text 3 based on Units 5 & 6

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

- The word "scam" can have the same meanings as ... and .
a. trick b. prison c. fraud d. security e. safety
- Ask people who have already bought the products. Don't believe
a. ads b. advantages c. adverts d. disadvantages e. centres

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Don't believe messages to transfer money. They are always big
a. skims b. scars c. seams d. scans
- Say and ray are two words that
a. rhyme b. verse c. poem d. synonym
- The small road between the fields is covered with
a. gravel b. gravelled c. gravelling d. gravels
- Don't the novel to the film. They are completely different.
a. contrast b. hack c. comment d. lock
- We have a small where we plant some vegetables.
a. plot b. plotter c. pottery d. plotted
- She had to after she had injured her leg.
a. run b. hope c. hop d. happen

CamScanner Monthly Assessment

- A: We haven't got any cheese. B: I know. I this evening.
will buy I am going to buy will be buying I will have bought
- A speech in the meeting by the minister.
is giving is being given gives is going to give
- I've decided that I in a next month.
am going to stay will stay am staying have stayed
- I regret to the beach. It was very cold and windy there.
to go go going went
- I regret the school trip has been cancelled.
saying to say to saying have said
- I was busy the washing up when you called.
does doing to do done
- After doing the shopping, she home.
has gone had gone go will go
- He asked Malak lunch.
prepares prepare to prepare preparing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

What does so much technology do to a child's learning life? Are traditional forms of learning dying a slow death? Today, a teacher should be able to teach more than what Google has to offer. However, while we have technology, we have to be extra cautious as children are highly vulnerable to cyber crime. Students who have laptops must be only under strict vigilance. Instructions on cyber crime are organized to create awareness about the medium and its misuse.

In the 90s, grown-ups had to gradually convert to the digital age. Today, children seem born into it. Their handwriting and vocabulary have suffered. Parents complain that their child's handwriting is deteriorating. If students can read up everything online, they may stop going to school. If students can learn online, so why they should go to school or have teachers. It is something like self-education.

Another drawback of the net age is that students are at a loss if one doesn't understand content on the net or have a guide at hand. Technology can never replace a teacher. If pen and paper once defined school days, it's the stylus and touch screen that do so today. Perhaps the two can co-exist.

- Students still go to school because
a. technology can never replace a teacher b. they find pleasure in the school court
c. learning causes slow death d. they improve their handwriting
- What defines the net age?
a. Pen and paper b. School and teacher
c. Stylus and touch screen d. Paper and papyrus

19. Students may stop if they can read up everything online
 a. eating smoking
 b. going to school watching TV
20. The summary of the last paragraph is
 a. the advantages of the internet the disadvantages of the internet
 b. the drawback of education increasing the use of the internet
21. The word "cautious" can be replaced with
 a. technological b. careful c. careless
 d. catchy e. alert
22. "Parents complain that their child's handwriting are deteriorating". The verb "deteriorating" can be antonymous with
 a. developing b. decreasing c. drawing
 d. explaining e. improving
23. The best title for the passage can be "
 a. Education b. Technology
 c. Education and technology d. Education without technology
 e. The effect of technology on education

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic

Terrorists are working in dark to spoil Egypt's economy and ruin tourist industry. They are not loyal to their country. They terrify and kill innocent people, which is rejected by all religions.

2. Translate into English :

يجب على الشباب أن يستفيدوا من أوقات فراغهم بشكل إيجابي، وذلك عن طريق ممارسة الأنشطة المفيدة مثل الرياضة أو القراءة أو حتى الانضمام لجمعية خيرية.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"The development of education"

2 A sample test on each three units

1- اكتب على كل فقرة وجواب

Test 4 based on Units 1, 2 & 3

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. He was because of murdering an old woman
 a. imprisoned b. rewarded c. taken to prison d. awarded e. given
2. You can say that somebody played a or a
 a. suggestion b. talk c. trick d. rule e. role

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. He tried to me that I should join the school trip but I refused
 a. purchase b. insulate c. persuade d. propose
4. Professor Magdi Yacoub has done a lot of heart
 a. transports b. transplants c. plants d. planets
5. His clothes shop him 4000\$ last month
 a. won b. earned c. gained d. beat
6. people have to follow a diet.
 a. Pump b. Dump c. Plump d. Bump
7. She has gone to the children from the nursery.
 a. consist b. contact c. collect d. connect
8. I my friend Salah a big sum of money.
 a. awl b. own c. owe d. awe
9. As a child, I always when I took any medicine.
 a. crying b. cry c. cried d. was crying
10. "He likes his daughters equally." This means he has two daughters.
 a. all b. many c. either d. both
11. He late for work.
 a. is always b. always is c. doesn't always d. don't always
12. I closed the door and to my bed.
 a. return b. returning c. had returned d. returned
13. Aya two glasses of lemon juice so far.
 a. drinks b. drunk c. was drinking d. has drunk
14. Ahmed isn't here. He to the club.
 a. had gone b. goes c. has been d. has gone
15. At seven o'clock yesterday, he his homework.
 a. does b. has done c. had done d. was doing
16. Don't go out till you your work.
 a. do b. does c. did d. had done



- Read the following passage, then answer the quest

Should we work all the time without having a rest or entertainment? The answer is that we cannot go on working without stopping, from time to time and at regular intervals, to have some rest and recreation. If we do so, we can make mistakes and the quality of our work might get worse.

An overcrowded person may end up by losing the ability to think clearly and by having no energy to go on working. Sleep is one of the ways in which nature renews our energy. Sports and games are also essential for brain workers who stay in closed offices and do not have a good chance to exercise their muscles. Such activities as swimming and walking may do a lot of good to them. So, we should not waste our weekends. They should be made full use of and spent in the open. Having forgotten all about our work and the worries of life, we can then enjoy ourselves to the full and return the next day to work with our energy fully renewed. Change has a magic effect on man's health and consequently on his performance.

17. The best summary to the passage is

- a. We don't have a time of entertainment
- b. Man should have a time of entertainment
- c. Entertainment is a waste of time
- d. Work hard all the time

18. Overworking results in

- a. loss of energy
- b. more energy
- c. more experience
- d. creative thinking

19. The writer suggests that brain workers

- a. should waste their weekends
- b. should spend their weekends somewhere outside
- c. should give up their weekends
- d. should spend their weekends in their workplaces

20. "Change has a magic effect on man's health", the word "magic" in the sentence means

- a. bad
- b. positive
- c. negative
- d. passive

21. The word "intervals" can have the meaning of

- a. stages
- b. periods
- c. cages
- d. classes
- e. pauses

22. Change has a great effect on man's

- a. chance
- b. apology
- c. taste
- d. performance
- e. work

23. Sports and games are for brain workers.

- a. not important
- b. important
- c. boring
- d. harmful
- e. essential

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic:

During my first job interview, I easily got confused and couldn't introduce myself well to the interviewer, so I hope to do better next time.

2. Translate into English:

لأنه من تطوير أسطورة المعلمة في مصر لكي تواكب متطلبات العصر الحديث، ولأنه من تحويل التعليم من معناه إلى منهة لكل من المعلم والمتعلم

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic:

"Your dreams for the future"

Test 5 based on Units 4, 5 & 6

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

1. Stressed words in poetry, the same rhythm.

- a. come
- b. have
- c. give
- d. cause
- e. drive

2. The synonyms of the word clear are and

- a. unfair
- b. complicated
- c. unclear
- d. direct
- e. obvious

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. We all should reject

- a. rucksack
- b. bullying
- c. gravel
- d. conservationists

4. programs can destroy the data on your computer

- a. Software
- b. Malware
- c. Security
- d. Hardware

5. It is not polite to ask strangers questions.

- a. scientific
- b. legal
- c. public
- d. personal

6. Young men like the fast of modern music.

- a. words
- b. verse
- c. rhyme
- d. rhythm

7. and clothing a big family can be very expensive.

- a. Feeding
- b. Feeding
- c. Falling
- d. Feeling

8. The attacked the ship.

- a. pirates
- b. pilots
- c. parents
- d. pioneers

9. I don't have money with me. I can't buy this blouse.

- a. a few
- b. many
- c. little
- d. much

10. If the garden had a white rose tree and a red moon, I'd prefer white one.

- a. a
- b. an
- c. the
- d. some

11. I won't go out until I lunch.

- a. have
- b. will have
- c. was having
- d. had

12. Oh, the bucket is full! _____ off the tap.
 will turn am going to turn am turning turn
13. We forgot _____ the front door, so the thieves went in and robbed the house.
 locking to lock locked locks
14. Be careful while working in the garden. Avoid _____ small plants.
 damage damages damaging to damage
15. How _____ work do you do every day?
 many much often old
16. He was ready _____ in Luxor after getting married there.
 living live to live of living

• Read the following passage, then answer the questions.

Traveling is something which people do every day. It is very difficult to avoid the need to travel. It may be a trip to school, university or to work. Traveling can often take a long time, especially when great distances need to be covered. People often enjoy travelling abroad for holidays. But for some people travelling is not fun at all. Some people suffer from travel sickness. This means that they will become very unwell each time they travel. Travelling can be either affordable or **costly**. It often depends on how far you want to travel and the choice of transport.

Using a bicycle will not cost anything as you power it by using your legs. However, the use of a bicycle can be hard work and can take a lot of time to travel long distances.

Cars and motorcycles are faster modes of transport, but are more expensive to use as gasoline is needed for them to work. It can usually be assumed that the longer you wish to travel, the more expensive and time consuming it will be.

The use of a plane is necessary for people wanting to travel very long distances. A pilot will fly a plane from an airport for many thousands of miles to take people to places far away. Although traffic is rarely a problem for airplanes, it can take a lot of preparation to travel by plane. People often need to arrive at the airport three hours prior to departure.

A train is another mode of transport which is ideal for travelling long distances within the same country, or between countries which are connected by land. A train driver will stop at train stations on route to allow passengers wishing to proceed to the scheduled destination to board the train. A number of destinations can be travelled by using the sea. People often depart from a harbour in a ship which is driven by a captain. If the journey is a long distance, people may choose to sleep on the ship while they wait to arrive at their destination. Some people choose to go on a cruise for their holiday, which would involve stopping at many different city ports for a short amount of time. People who need to travel short distances may choose not to use any transport at all. People often rely on their legs to take them to places nearby. This is often encouraged as certain modes of transport have been said to produce harmful emissions and damage the environment.

17. Why do some people not enjoy travelling?
 Because they find it a waste of time Because it is not comfortable
 Because it is expensive Because they become unwell
18. The use of bicycles is hard work because ..
 they are easy to park they are small
 they pollute the environment they have to be pedalled
19. The best title to the passage is ".....".
 Means of transport Travelling
 Going to work is difficult Traffic Jam
20. The word "destination" in the passage means ..
 the place where someone is going your fate
 the place where someone was born your hobby
21. The word "costly" can have the meaning of ..
 cheap affordable expensive
 inexpensive pricey
22. People often depend on their legs to travel to places
 far remote nearby
 distant neighbouring
23. When you travel by sea, you can depart from a ..
 harbour cliff ferry
 jam port

[Part two]

1. Translate into Arabic :

Youth are considered the backbone of any nation. They are its present and future. Their country's progress is their responsibility.

2. Translate into English :

إن حياة أي إنسان لها جانبين مهمين هما العمل والترفيه، فنحن لن نكون ناجحين إلا بالعمل ولن نكون سعداء إلا بوجود قدر مناسب من الترفيه.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"How to keep healthy and fit"

ALTfWok.com موقع التفوق

General Exercises

collected from

51. 1. 1

تدريبات عامة مخصصة من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

Practice Exercises

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Dalia didn't have _____ friends when she started at her new school.
the a some any
2. In Egypt, students in primary school have to wear _____ uniform.
the a an no article
3. The teacher gave us _____ homework for the next lesson.
a many some any
4. A: What do you intend to study when you join the university?
B: I _____ engineering.
will study am going to study
study would study
5. Why _____ you volunteer at the new youth club next summer?
don't didn't do did
6. Did you _____ your arm yesterday?
broke break breaking broken
7. We should _____ money to charities to help the poor.
donate steal take refuse
8. The beach was really _____, so we couldn't find a place to sit.
beautiful exotic crowded isolated

2. Fill in the gaps with one word :

Next week, our school (1) _____ holding a special event to help students to (2) _____ what to do after their exams. In the morning, we're (3) _____ to watch videos about career and listen to speeches by people with different jobs. I think we (4) _____ be able to ask questions, but I'm not certain. In the afternoon, we're going (5) _____ work in groups and do some more research about the jobs we (6) _____ interested in.

3. Translate into Arabic :

1. Ecotourism aims at providing holidays to places which are endangered and isolated.
2. Try to avoid mixing with bad friends who have bad habits.

4. Translate into English :

١. ذهبنا إلى الشاطئ في نهاية الأسبوع الماضي واستمتعنا بالسباحة في البحر.

٢. هل سبق لك أن قضيت إجازة الصيف مع أصدقائك خارج القاهرة ؟

B. Read the text and answer the questions

Cyberbullying

The word cyberbullying refers to bullying on the internet or on a smartphone. Most teenagers have experienced some kind of cyberbullying, and it affects both girls and boys. One problem is getting offensive messages on social media, in texts or emails. Another problem is when bullies post personal information or pictures of someone. Sometimes it can be anonymous, and that means the victims don't know who is attacking them, which can be very stressful.

Teenagers need to know that they can talk to an adult about what is happening. It's important to report bullies on websites and the police can also help. Any kind of bullying can have serious consequences, so most schools have systems to deal with cyberbullying. It is very important to report any problems and help everyone to stay safe online.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :

1. Cyberbullying affects _____.
boys girls boys and girls
2. Most teenagers have to _____.
talk to adults about cyberbullying
have been bullies
experience cyberbullying
3. Cyberbullying is not _____.
unusual anonymous a problem
4. Who needs to be safe online ? _____.
Friends Adults Everyone

B. Answer the following questions :

5. What are the best ways of staying safe online ?

6. What can you do if you discover someone you know is a cyberbully ?

7. Why do some people become bullies ?

AltFwOk.com موقع التفوق

6 Choose one of the two topics. Write about 150 words on the topic.

1. Write a three-paragraph essay about the advantages and disadvantages of living in a place which is a popular tourist destination. Include your opinion on whether it is a good or bad thing.
2. Write an email to a friend telling him about a place you would like to visit on holiday. Include reasons why you want to go there, what you would do there and what time of year you would like to go.

Practice Exercises

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Have you finished _____ your room yet?
a. to clean b. cleaning c. clean d. cleaned
2. I forgot _____ my calculator to school.
a. bring b. brings c. brought d. to bring
3. Basel offered _____ me with my homework.
a. helped b. helping c. to help d. help
4. Egyptian cotton clothes _____ all over the world.
a. are selling b. sell c. are sold d. sold
5. The _____ is the natural world around us.
a. atmosphere b. environment c. location d. situation
6. I have a new _____ on my smartphone which helps me practise foreign languages.
a. hack b. app c. connection d. scam
7. A person who writes poetry is called a _____.
a. journalist b. novelist c. poem d. poet
8. A novel usually tells a _____ story.
a. long b. true c. travel d. historical

2 Fill in the gaps with one word:

I am always careful when I (1) _____ my shopping online. I use different passwords for each site, and my passwords (2) _____ usually quite complicated. This is because

38 6 WB exercises

I (3) _____ a had experience once when I (4) _____ buying a pair of shoes online. I got a strange email from the website and I (5) _____ know what to do with it. In the end, I opened the email and my computer turned off and on again. Some criminals (6) _____ a taking my computer.

3 Translate into Arabic:

1. The Internet Of Things (IOT) is developing very fast in a lot of fields.

2. I'm going to buy some new clothes for the party next weekend.

4 Translate into English:

١. امضرت أن احمد كذبه واحد النعمه الإلكترونية لاني أحببت على سؤال بطريقة خاطئة.

٢. سوف يستعمل الممثل احمد مراد وضاعة آمنة على البيت.

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

Tourist or Traveller?

Some people say that a tourist visits the sights, but a traveller talks to the local people. This is because different people want different experiences when they go on holiday.

Some tourists prefer food which is familiar to them and so they often look for famous fast food restaurants, or food from their own country. They want to see the famous museums, monuments and beaches, and they will usually speak in their own language when they go abroad.

On the other hand, travellers will usually learn a few phrases in the local language, and they want to eat in typical cafés and restaurants. Sometimes they will look for places to visit that are less famous because they enjoy finding something a little different.

Today, both travellers and tourists are learning about their impact on the environment. It seems that whatever type of traveller you are, it's always good to respect the places you visit so that other people can enjoy them, too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Why do travellers go to foreign countries?

- a. To see the sights.
- b. To meet new people.
- c. To take photographs.

2. Tourists do not usually speak English. They usually go to local restaurants.
3. Travellers try to speak the local language. They usually eat at fast food restaurants.
4. These days, tourists and travellers both visit famous monuments and reduce their impact on the environment. They usually eat at local restaurants.

B. Answer the following questions :

5. What type of damage can tourism cause ? Why is it important not to damage the places we visit ?
6. Which type of visitor do you think you are most similar to ? Why ?
7. Do you think that travelling to different countries changes how you see the world ? Why ? Why not ?

6. Choose one of the two topics. Write about 150 words on the topic :

1. Write a summary of a story you read and enjoyed.
2. Write an autobiography describing your life so far. Include your interests and experiences, and say what you hope to do in the future.

Practice Exercises 3

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. your parents usually donate blood ? - Yes, they always do so.
a. Do b. Did c. Why d. When
2. When Aya visited me, I my room. So, she offered to help me.
a. decorate b. was decorating c. am decorating d. decorating
3. I remember that young men last summer when I was in Sharm El-Sheikh.
a. to see b. see c. seeing d. had seen

4. Sorrowfully my uncle has been ill he was a young man.
for b. when c. ago d. since
5. The tennis player is for doing a lot of voluntary work.
admired b. not respected c. interested d. disliked
6. The Galapagos Islands in Ecuador are famous for the animals such as the turtles which live there.
unknown b. unique c. wild d. huge
7. The police the young man of stealing the money.
excused b. thanked c. accused d. rewarded
8. It is taken for that bullying is a bad behaviour which we all must change.
granted b. refusal c. denial d. decided

2. Fill in the gaps with one word :

Last year, we learnt about pollution at school, so in the summer I decided to (1) on a volunteering holiday (2) my friends. We had to clean (3) beaches along the north coast. There (4) a lot of plastic rubbish like water bottles and plates in the sand. We worked in teams, and each team cleaned a different part (5) the beach. We were careful not to damage (6) shells or wildlife.

3. Translate into Arabic :

1. I remember playing that card game when I was a child.

2. Which do you prefer : reading a poem or a short story ?

4. Translate into English :

١ - رائد ربيعت متطوع في إسكتلندا في عام ١٩٩٠ ومات عن عمر يناهز ٤٤ عامًا

٢ - لقد أعجبت نورا من تناول العشاء وسوف أعمل بلد في خلال عشر دقائق.

5. Read the text and answer the questions :

Mary Shelley

In 2018, it was two hundred years since the publication of the Gothic novel *Frankenstein, or the Modern Prometheus*. It was written by Mary Shelley, who was born in London in 1797. She was the daughter of the famous writer, Mary Wollstonecraft, and the philosopher, William Godwin. Mary didn't go to school, but she educated herself using her father's library at home.

PART 2

In 1812, Mary met the poet, Percy Bysshe, and in 1816, they got married in France. Then, in 1817, Mary wrote a travel book about the journey she took with Shelley to France and Switzer and. After her husband's death in 1819, Mary returned to England and she continued to write novels. Many people think that *The Last Man* (1826) is her best book, but *Frankenstein* is Mary Shelley's most famous novel. It tells the story of what happens when a scientist creates a human being. There have been many different films about the story. Some of them are frightening but others are comedies.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. When was the first publication of *Frankenstein* ?
a. 2018 b. 1818 c. 1797
2. Mary Shelley was born in London and became a
a. poet b. writer c. philosopher
3. Mary Shelley's most famous book is
a. a travel book b. *The Last Man* c. *Frankenstein*
4. *Frankenstein* is a
a. Gothic novel b. comedy c. poem

B. Answer the following questions :

5. Mary Shelley didn't go to school. Do you think it is easier or more difficult to educate yourself today ? Why ?
6. Why do you think so many film versions of *Frankenstein* have been made ?
7. What kind of stories frighten you ? Why do they frighten you ?

6. Choose one of the two topics. Write about 150 words on the topic :

1. Write about a website that you think is useful for school work. Explain what information is on the site and why it is useful for students.
2. Write a blog post on the age you think children should start using the internet. Add photos if you can.

PART 3

Model Tests & Al-Azhar Tests

موقع
التفوق
ALFwOK.com



1. 15 Assessment Model Tests

١٥ اختبار على المصحح بالكامل يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه

2. Al Azhar Exams & Exams for students with special needs

٢ اختبارات للطلاب العاديين والدمج

3. Islamic Selections

٣ مختارات إسلامية لطالب المرحلة المتوسطة

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given.

1. The weather was very good on the day of the match. The atmosphere was
 a. calm b. calm c. calm d. calm e. calm
2. The match was very good. The atmosphere was
 a. calm b. calm c. calm d. calm e. calm

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. The match was very good. The atmosphere was
 a. calm b. calm c. calm d. calm e. calm
4. Sorry, I can't help you at the moment.
 a. I'm busy b. I'm busy c. I'm busy d. I'm busy
5. The teacher writes the names of the winning students on the
 a. chat board b. noticeboard c. guard room d. changing room
6. There is a sound in the word 'city'.
 a. s b. z c. the d. no article
7. I was made a fine for not wearing the seat belt.
 a. pay b. paying c. to pay d. paid
8. Have you sent all the invitations? That's so fast!
 a. already b. just c. yet d. ever
9. The teacher writes the names of the winning students on the
 a. chat board b. noticeboard c. guard room d. changing room
10. A is someone who hurts or frightens someone who is smaller or less powerful than them.
 a. bully b. biologist c. expert d. archaeologist
11. The connection between smoking and cancer is very clear.
 a. connection b. disconnection c. donation d. transplant
12. The diet he follows makes him go
 a. healthy b. powerful c. pale d. strong

13. The man knew the most enormous animal on land. Another word for 'enormous' in this question is
 a. positive b. gigantic c. positive d. fantastic
14. After the match, he preferred to with a cup of tea.
 a. sleep b. sleep c. sleep d. sleep
15. My grandma once me a present.
 a. giving b. gives c. gave d. giving
16. The biggest Red Eye is engineering like her mother.
 a. studies b. studying c. have studied d. study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

A friend of mine once had an amusing experience on a bus. He was driving a bus because he has been driving his own car for many years. But it has happened that his car broke down near his home. He was going to buy a new car after he had taken out of the bank five thousand pounds that could cover the price of the car. He put the money in an envelope in one of his pockets and got on a bus. He met an old friend on the bus and had a conversation with him.

Unconsciously, every now and then he put his hand on his pocket to make sure that the envelope was still there. But suddenly he felt it had gone. He looked at the faces of the people around him but couldn't know which was the thief. He didn't lose his nerve and with a smile said to his friend: "A foolish thief has taken from my pocket an envelope which is full of newspaper cuttings about a subject I am going to write an article on by paper. I think the fool thought it was full of money."

Everybody heard what he said and the man looked down and saw his envelope under the feet of the passengers. He picked it. As he was anxious to count the money, at the next stop. He was happy to find all the five thousand pounds in the envelope.

17. The writer's friend pretended to be a
 a. bus driver b. journalist c. policeman d. thief
18. The thief threw the envelope on the bus floor because
 a. it contained five thousand pounds
 b. he was tricked into believing that it had no money
 c. he was tricked into believing that it didn't have newspaper cuttings
 d. he was afraid of being arrested
19. The writer's friend had his money back
 a. because he knew the thief at once
 b. because he knew the thief but didn't arrest him
 c. because he behaved wisely
 d. because he didn't know the thief at all

20. The thief was really

under stress nervous foolish happy

21. The underlined sentence "He didn't lose his nerve" which is mentioned in the passage means most likely that

the writer's friend stayed calm
the writer's friend became nervous
the writer's friend became furious
the writer's friend stayed tense
the writer's friend didn't get angry

22. After the writer's friend found the envelope, he was to count the money in it

wise worried intelligent
foolish anxious

23. The word "rarely" can be replaced by

seldom always usually
often scarcely

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Infectious diseases have become various and dangerous especially in winter, so we should be careful about ourselves and don't use other people's things.

2. Translate into English :

تعلم الدول المتقدمة أن الاستثمار في الإنسان من خلال توفير الظروف الملائمة لإيجاد شخص متعلم متبحر قادر على الاستيعاب هو أفضل استثمار

3. Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic :

The four seasons of the year are characterized by different kinds of weather and activities. Which season is your favourite and why?

Model 2

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. It is not good to avoid your problem. The opposites of "avoid" in this sentence are
ignore face follow improve confront
2. I didn't enjoy reading that novel. It was boring. The antonyms of "boring" are
interesting tiring annoying amazing exhausting

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. Before joining the university, I living away from my family.
used didn't use to used to wasn't used to
4. I want to get a carpenter the front door of my house.
fix fixed to fix be fixed
5. I know the names of all people in our street, little children
include including includes included
6. My sister has a flat on 2nd floor.
a an the no article
7. A: I'm thirsty. B: Just a minute! I some cold water.
will get am going to get am going got
8. I prefer in the New Capital as it is modern.
to living live lives living
9. You need to work in with your team members.
location destination pollution collaboration
10. A/An is the operation of moving an organ, piece of skin etc. from one person to another.
experience transplant exploration transmission
11. Sometimes, a/an can be as loving as a real parent.
father stepfather orphan attendant
12. He is nervous because he is at work.
stress stressed stressful stresses
13. He is accused of That means trying to trick a person into giving information over the internet to take money from them.
phishing fishing emptying catching

14. My mother used to nurse us when we were ill. The opposite of "nurse" is to
 support look after care about ignore
15. When ... this house built?
 does was did will
16. She is stubborn. It ... easy to make her agree to this plan.
 won't be isn't going to be
 isn't being is

Read the following passage, then answer the questions.

Walking in the street at night, I found a purse full of money and an identity card. I found a photo of a pretty young lady. I put it back in the purse and went directly to the police station. The sergeant made a note of my name and address. Last Friday, I was invited to a party in my friend's house in Shoubra. A neighbour of my friend came to visit his wife. When I looked at her face, I found it familiar to me although we hadn't met before. After a short time, I remembered that she was the lady I had seen in the photo.

I was able to describe the purse and the sum of money accurately. She was surprised and we went together to the police station to get the purse back. After getting out of the police station, she thanked me a lot. She told me that she had looked for her purse for a long time until she lost hope to find it. I went home feeling happy as I was able to make this lady happy. It is good to feel satisfied with yourself.

17. The writer met the purse owner in
 a the police station b street
 c their first school d his friend's house
18. The purse owner was astonished because
 a she lost her purse
 b she met the person who found her purse accidentally
 c the person who found her purse was honest
 d she met the writer at her house
19. This passage is extracted from a ...
 a comic b science book
 c religion book d story
20. If the lady didn't visit the wife of the writer's friend, she would
 a not know about her purse b not forget about her purse
 c forget about the money d find her purse

21. If you find a sum of money, it's honest to
 give it to the police b give it to your friends
 share it with others d share it with the police
 look for its owner
22. The word "satisfied" means ...
 angry b happy c cross
 nervous d content
23. The lady lost hope about
 getting to the police station b getting her purse back
 finding her bag d getting married
 making money

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

My father is a famous mechanic in our neighbourhood. He works hard for long hours to earn enough money for us.

2. Translate into English :

اعتمد المصريون القدماء على النيازك والأشغال في علاج العديد من الأمراض. ولقد اعتمد العلم الحديث على نفس الطريقة بسبب الأثر الجانبية للأشغال الكيميائية.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :
 "Famous Egyptian women".

موقع
 التفوق
 Altfwok.com

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. When I read two ... of the poem, I liked it very much.
a. lines b. poets c. verses d. rhymes e. plots
2. Global warming is one of the main ... that must be faced and solved.
a. rules b. reviews c. roles d. issues e. problems

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. Our teacher asked us to avoid ... our time in useless things.
a. waste b. to waste c. wasting d. to wasting
4. I can't meet you at five because I ... my duties.
a. won't have finished b. will be finished
c. may have finished d. had finished
5. He listened to music while ... his car.
a. was driving b. driving c. drove d. were driving
6. Many writers ... by Shakespeare, the great English playwright.
a. influenced b. have influenced c. were influenced d. were influencing
7. A: Why have you got so much vegetables?
B: Because I ... a meal for ten people.
a. cook b. am going to cook c. will cook d. have cooked
8. What time ... home last night?
a. did you get b. were you getting c. had you got d. were you got
9. My parents warned me not to ... liars.
a. trust b. think c. connect d. distrust
10. ... pay for the tickets but children travel for free.
a. Infants b. Adults c. The young d. The poor
11. The police have found a/an ... that he is the thief.
a. clue b. cross c. island d. idea
12. He ... much money from exporting vegetables abroad.
a. makes b. gives c. gains d. does
13. When the little boy went back home, he asked his brother for ... about
a science problem.
a. donation b. verse c. advice d. rhyme
14. When my little brother does anything wrong, I become ...
a. delighted b. over the moon c. furious d. satisfied

15. The moon ... round the earth.
a. has moved b. will move c. moves d. moved
16. She ... for work an hour ago.
a. has left b. left c. is leaving d. will leave

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Many animals in the world today are in danger. For many of them, the biggest danger is humans. People have always killed animals for their meat or their skins, others are killed because they eat crops or animals which belong to farmers. Certain animals, such as tigers and elephants, used to live in great numbers in countries like India. People have hunted them so much that there aren't many left alive. However, there are now laws to stop this.

In South America, many different birds and animals have lost their natural homes in the forests because thousands of trees have been cut down or burnt. People then used the land for farming or for building roads and towns.

We are too late to save some animals. A few are now extinct. This means there are none left anywhere in the world. Others are only in zoos or special parks. Zoos such as the one in Giza, are important because they can help some animals to live. It also make us able to provide care for animals and learn more about them in zoos.

17. After the trees have been cut down, the forest land in South America is not used for
a. roads b. farms c. towns d. zoos
18. According to the passage, zoos are important for animals because
a. they save animals from death b. we enjoy visiting them
c. animals can be seen there d. people can eat meat there
19. The underlined word "extinct" in the passage means
a. active b. not active
c. existing d. no longer existing
20. The best title to the passage is "...".
a. Animal protection b. Pollution
c. Climate change d. Animals' life
21. ... do their best to keep animals safe.
a. Conservationists b. Hunters c. Policemen
c. Farmers e. Environmentalists

22. The verb "care" can be replaced by
 a look for b look after c look behind
 d look out e take care of
23. People used animals' land for
 a cutting down trees b milking cows
 c planting crops d building zoos
 e building roads and towns

Part two

1 Translate into Arabic :

Before submitting your exam answers, you should revise every item well and to be sure that you have answered all of them.

2. Translate into English :

لا تدع طفاذك يمارس ألعاب الكمبيوتر كثيرا، فإلّا أدت الدراسات الحديثة حظه على الألعاب على الأطفال خاصة إذا كانت ألعاب عنف

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Exploring the space"

موقع
التفوق
ALTfWok.Com

Model 4

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. It's a long walk from my house to the club. The word "walk" can be replaced by
 a route b flight c path d destination e voyage
2. It's better to invite them all, Adham.
 a generally b rarely c loudly d especially e particularly

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. We decided in a five-star hotel.
 a to stay b staying c to staying d stay
4. A: What would you like to start with? B: I lentil soup, please.
 a would have b am having c will have d going to have
5. I don't have friends; just three close ones.
 a any b lot of c many d a few
6. It's two months since we in Cairo.
 a have stayed b were staying c stayed d are staying
7. English all over the world.
 a speaks b is spoken c is speaking d spoke
8. If he the label, he'd know what this drink consists of.
 a. read b. reads c is reading d was read
9. A / An is a dishonest plan to steal money.
 a import b. deal c scam d. export
10. Sara's with Noha started at primary school
 a. friendship b. diversity c salutation d. expression
11. I know how to overcome this difficult situation as I have it before.
 a extracted b married c owed d. experienced
12. People who the law must be fined.
 a save b obey c follow d break
13. The were taken to the public hospital.
 a. solutions b victims c spices d adverts
14. To keep the gravel walk means to stay on the
 a Indian Wars b barrow c path d wall

15. Would you mind _____ me to the airport ?
 a. driving b. to driving c. of driving d. to driving
16. To me, either answer _____ acceptable
 a. are b. were c. is d. has

Read the following passage, then answer the questions

The average age of the population of many countries is getting older. This means that businesses in those countries must adjust to older customers. In fact, many companies are working to respond to the special needs of the elderly. One example of this is the medical industry. New medicines and technologies are being developed especially for the health problems of older people. Another business that offers services for the elderly is the tourist industry. Many travel agencies offer special trips for groups of older people. And finally, there are many different kinds of products made for the elderly. These include everything from shoes and shampoos to magazines and furniture.

In industrialized countries today, many elderly people face the **danger** of living alone and lonely. That leads to the feeling of depression. In the past, older people usually lived with other members of the family. They usually had some responsibilities around the home. For example, older women could help take care of the children or prepare meals. These days, married adults often prefer to live on their own, far away from other parents. Older people sometimes feel that they do not concern anyone.

17. The best summary to the passage can be "....."
 a. Medicine industry develops special drugs b. Serving the elderly
 c. Tourist companies d. Serving the environment
18. Some elderly people feel they are cut off from the world when
 a. they can help their sons b. they can't help their sons
 c. their sons and daughters live far from them d. they face health problems
19. The idiom "on their own" in the passage means
 a. alone b. belonging to
 c. possess d. without help from anyone
20. Those who serve the elderly are
 a. helpful b. impatient c. evil d. unkind
21. The antonym of "danger" is
 a. responsibility b. safety c. opportunity
 d. depression e. security

22. Many travel agencies _____ special trips for the elderly
 a. request b. travel c. offer
 d. pick e. suggest
23. Living alone and lonely leads to the feeling of
 a. depression b. confidence c. hope
 d. pride e. sadness

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Many writers depend on their writings on real stories that they might have happened to them or to some people that they knew well

2. Translate into English :

من الصعب أن تصح لعملك أحياناً تسعى لتحقيقها في فترة زمنية محددة، ولكن الأفضل أن تكون هذه الأهداف مناسبة لعملائك

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

Everywhere we go, we use many modern inventions which help us live a better life. In your opinion, what is the most important invention in your life ?



Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- 1. We have faced many major problems. The antonyms of "major" are
a. important b. main c. minor d. unkind e. unimportant
- 2. Brilliant scientists new devices all the time to make life easier.
a. discover b. create c. explore d. invite e. invent

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- 3. Do you think that Cairo bigger in the future?
a. is going to be b. will be c. is being
- 4. He is collecting all the paintings which his friend
a. drew b. had drawn c. draws d. has drawn
- 5. This playground for training
a. used b. is used c. uses d. is using
- 6. "Doctors are supposed to help sick people" means
a. They help sick people b. They should help sick people
c. They must be helped by sick people d. They might have helped sick people
- 7. yesterday evening ?
a. What were you doing b. What you were doing
c. What doing you were d. What were doing you
- 8. I want bottle of cold water.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
- 9. A / An is a steep piece of land or rock.
a. scar b. cliff c. area d. island
- 10. The problem was discussed a lot on the
a. media b. room c. mid d. middle
- 11. The decided that the man was innocent and set him free.
a. pirate b. sailor c. cook d. magistrate
- 12. conclusion , I'd like to thank you for your attendance.
a. In b. At c. On d. About
- 13. It's important to lock your house before going out. The antonym of "lock" is to
a. about b. separate c. open d. rob
- 14. I needed help, so I asked my friend to me a favour.
a. push b. take c. send d. do

- 15. Try the aerial over there, it might work better
a. to put b. putting c. will put d. put
- 16. Nurses after patients in hospitals. It's their job
a. are looking b. looked c. look d. looks

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

People may be divided into two groups, winners and losers. Because our families and friends have a great effect on us as we grow, we are born hopeless and dependent on our environment. Winners are able to change their situations and become independent by being responsible for their own lives. They don't blame others for their mistakes, they do their own thinking, they listen to, think of what they say and then they make their decisions.

Although they may fall at times, yet they keep self-confidence. Winners overcome their bad experiences. They enjoy work, play, food and the world of nature. They freely enjoy themselves, but they can give it up if duty calls.

Losers, on the other hand never learn to take responsibility for their own lives. There are many reasons why people can become losers: disease, poor food, cruelty, unhappy relationships and bad experiences, these can slow down the normal progress towards becoming a winner. But whereas winners fight these situations, losers don't do anything and use them as excuses. Losers usually feel anxious, unhappy and bored. They are afraid to try new things and repeat their own mistakes again and again. Losers spend their lives waiting for something wonderful to happen to save them from their problems with their lives but never try to change.

- 17. The passage is mainly about
a. winners and losers b. winners
c. losers d. all people
- 18. When the winners fall at times, they
a. are afraid to try new things b. keep their self-confidence
c. spend their time waiting d. repeat their own mistakes
- 19. Winners can change their own ideas by
a. using their mistakes as excuses b. blaming others for mistakes
c. being in charge of their own lives d. waiting for something wonderful
- 20. The verb "overcome" can have the meaning of
a. get up b. get on c. get by d. get over

21. Losers need
 to change their mind
 not to change their ideas about themselves
 not to change their ideas
 to use their mistakes as excuses
 to learn from their mistakes
22. Which of the following is correct ?
 People may fail at times but not all times
 People should think of their ways in life
 People can't change their mind
 Winners can't get over their bad experiences.
 Winners can't fight dangerous situations

23. Winners are
 responsible evil bad
 careless careful

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Although many scientists have warned us recently that mobile phones have bad effects on our health, people often use their mobile phones more than before.

2. Translate into English :

تسعى الحكومة بجد لحل مشكلة الازدحام في اماكن الكبرى بإبناشاء العديد من الكبرى أو بنااء مدن جديدة وتشجيع المواطنين للانتقال للعيش بها.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"A review of a novel you have read"

موقع
التفوق

ALTfwok.com

Model 6

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. These two mobile phones are similar. The antonyms of "similar" are
 unlike b. alike c. comparable d. resembling e. different
2. I think Adham can do this job . He is very clever
 properly b. negatively c. correctly d. improperly e. wrongly

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. Esraa on her mobile when suddenly the battery went dead
 didn't talk b. wasn't talking c. was talking d. has talked
4. When I was young, I much free time, so I played a lot with my friend.
 used to having b. don't use to have
 used to have d. didn't use to have
5. Rokaya the washing-up when her father arrived home.
 did b. was doing c. is doing d. does
6. I spent useful time in the library.
 a b. an c. the d. no article
7. He prepared everything He
 was showering b. has showered
 will shower d. is going to shower
8. I really hate alone.
 to living b. living c. lives d. live
9. Every member of the must respect the freedom of others.
 experience b. beliefs c. community d. merchant
10. My children, Rodayna and Ahmed, are ready to and hurt each other for any reason.
 call b. populate c. fight d. avoid
11. Sending messages online to frighten or worry someone is called
 applying b. sharing c. blogging d. cyberbullying
12. I'd like to speak to the head of the department. The word "head" in this sentence is
 a part of a body b. a leader of a place c. a way of thinking d. a place to stay in
13. I spent the whole day on the beach.
 spicing b. impacting c. sunbathing d. increasing

- 14 The governor is giving a _____ in the conference.
a talk b talks c talking d to talk
- 15 Yasser plans _____ around next year.
to work b working c has worked d to working
- 16 My sister _____ a baby. She is pregnant.
is going to have b will have c is having d shall have

Read the following passage, then answer the questions.

Every one of us dreams of becoming famous one day or another. Sportsmen and champions of games and sports enjoy great fame. Film stars, singers and musicians are known all over the world. They have admirers and fans who send them letters and hang their photographs on the walls of their houses.

The rulers of the world, kings, presidents, politicians and great men are famous people and their fame goes far wide. Anyhow, fame is not easily obtained but it is the result of hard work and suffering.

But the life of famous people is not an easy one. It is very busy and full of troubles and responsibilities. They appear smiling but in fact they are unhappy, and their time is arranged for them. Newspapers and magazines write about them and sometimes about their private lives and this annoys them. Their smallest mistakes appear larger by those who dislike them. Though fame has its troubles, a great number of people desires to get fame.

17. Famous people may appear happy

- a although they are not wealthy
- b despite being far from happiness
- c in spite of having time arranged for them
- d because their fame has gone far and wide

18. Famous people feel furious when

- a they are well known all over the world
- b they have fans
- c their private lives are talked about
- d their photographs are hung on the walls

19. The underlined sentence "their time is arranged for them" most likely means that famous people

- a have free time as they like
- b are free to do what they like
- c are not always busy and have spare time
- d aren't free to do what they like

- 20. According to the passage, the life of famous people is
an easy one b full of hardships and duties
full of fun and pleasure c an enjoyable one
- 21. The best title of the passage is " "
Sportsmen b Champions c Film stars
Famous people d Celebrities
- 22. A great number of people desire to get fame. This means they .. to get fame
want b detest c meet
mistake d wish
- 23. Fame is not easily but it is the result of hard work and suffering.
given b obtained c achieved
desired d got

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

If you go on working without having a rest from time to time, you won't be able to continue, or you will make a lot of mistakes.

2. Translate into English :

لا يعرف الكثير من الناس أن عدم الإهتمام بمطابقة الأسنان يؤدي لمشاكل صحية عديدة في الكثير من أعضاء الجسم منها
الفم والحنك

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Staying healthy"



Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- 1 She did a _____ search for the good hotels in this area.
a offline b online c disconnected d connecting e internet
- 2 To make sure that no one can use your mobile when you are away, it's better to have a _____
a lock b argument c software d passport e password

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- 3 My elder brother _____ maths easier because he was good at it.
a helped me learn b helped me learning
c helped me from learning d helped me to learning
- 4 This is the most interesting novel I've _____ read.
a never b yet c ever d since
- 5 The trumpet is a musical instrument that _____ by musicians all over the world.
a is played b used to play c is playing d plays
- 6 He walked for a long time till he finally got _____ his destination.
a of b off c on d to
- 7 I'm looking forward _____ the new art exhibit.
a to see b to be seen c seeing d to seeing
- 8 He was so active that he took _____ in different activities at his school .
a place b part c after d in
- 9 The author of this book is a famous man of arts. The best word to replace "author" is _____ .
a designer b warrior c writer d worker
- 10 Her _____ changed once she heard of her success.
a expression b experiment c disease d coast
- 11 I didn't know a lot about them because we didn't get in _____ for long.
a conduct b connect c contract d contact
- 12 White blood cells _____ the body against infection.
a defend b defence c offend d offence
- 13 They built a _____ to protect them against the enemy attacks.
a forte b fruit c fort d forty

14 At _____ Could you lend me £100 ? B:

- a Certain b Certainly c Currently d Certain

15 How long ago _____ you visit your uncle ?

- a do b does c did d had done

16 They plotted _____ the new manager fail

- a to make b against making c to making d making

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Now all our free time is regulated by TV. We rush home to be in time for this or that programme. We have given up sitting at table and having an evening meal of the day together.

A sandwich will be enough to enjoy the programme to the full. The TV demands absolute silence and attention. If any member of the family dares to open his mouth during a programme, he is quickly silenced.

Whole generations are growing addicted to TV. Food is left uneaten, homework undone and sleep is lost. To keep the children quiet, mothers put their children in the living room and turn on the TV. It doesn't matter that the children will watch rubbishy programmes of crimes and violence, so long as they are quiet. Some say that TV is a waste of time. But it is said that you have the choice. If you don't like it, don't buy a set or switch it off. If you boast you don't watch TV, it's like boasting you don't read books."

17. According to the passage, while watching a programme on TV,

- a nobody can talk
- b the family are chatting to each other
- c everybody can give their opinion of the programme
- d the members of family make noise

18 Nowadays , people rush home to be _____ .

- a early enough for a TV programme
- b on time for a TV programme
- c late for a TV programme
- d silenced for a TV programme

19 The sentence "It doesn't matter" can be replaced by "_____".

- a It is not your business
- b It hasn't happened
- c It is not important
- d Don't care

20. The summary of the last paragraph is "_____".

- a Everyone has the choice.
- b We should watch TV.
- c We shouldn't watch TV.
- d Don't read books

PART 3

21. The word **rubbishy** can be replaced by
 cheap expensive bad
 good worthless
22. Mothers turn TV on to keep their children
 happy calm noisy
 tall quiet
23. The verb "silence" means stop
 coming watching talking
 during speaking

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic:

Teachers and students need to improve their abilities to be able to keep up with the new educational system in Egypt.

2. Translate into English:

يحب الشباب ارتداء الملابس المتماشية مع الموضة حتى لو كانت مرتفعة الثمن بعض الطرق عن العواذ البهجة في صياغتها.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic:
 "An important event or competition that you have taken part in recently and what you've achieved."

موقع
التفوق
Alifwok.com

Model 8

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

1. He told me that there is no possibility for him to attend the meeting "Possibility" can be replaced by words as
 responsibility b. potentiality c. actuality d. capability e. reality
2. My sister will a presentation next week, so she is worried
 make b. save c. give d. take e. get

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Would you like in Aswan forever?
 to live b. living c. to living d. live
4. I expect the manager accept your request
 will b. is going to c. is d. was
5. I think the Nile is the longest river in the world. Are there rivers longer than it?
 a b. an c. the d. no article
6. The injured woman to the public hospital
 takes b. took c. has taken d. has been taken
7. Wait here until the manager back at the office.
 arrive b. arrives c. have arrived d. had arrived
8. While a cold drink, my car was being checked.
 had b. was having c. was had d. I was having
9. The of large cities suffer from pollution and traffic jams
 resorts b. damages c. residents d. councils
10. The villagers suffer from the of lions that kill their livestock.
 attackers b. attacks c. attacked d. attacking
11. I have the free time needed to do work for a nearby charity.
 a paid b. voluntary c. criminal d. disabled
12. A is a sailor who attacks ships and steals from them.
 captain b. pirate c. crew d. lifeguard
13. He is known for his intelligence. The antonym of "intelligence" is
 a stupid b. stupidity c. selfish d. selfishness
14. The energy of the and their desire to succeed make them the hope of the future.
 ancestors b. old-aged c. infants d. youth

- 15 Law does not _____ smoking in public places. (allow)
 a. allowing b. allows c. allowed d. allow
- 16 My reading glasses _____ missing. (be)
 a. had b. was c. is d. are

Read the following passage, then answer the questions.

It was a very dark night and extremely cold. I remember that night quite well. It was in the early eighties of the previous century. Electricity had just arrived at our little village some months earlier but on that particular night it went off. Everybody had already entered their houses and closed their doors. Strong wind began to blow followed with a loud sound of thunder then I heard some shots of a gun mixed with the horrible sounds of dogs barking. Being a little child, I was really frightened.

When it was early morning and we set out for dawn prayer at the little mosque of our village, we found uncle Fahmy was killed. His body lying on the dusty road by the Nile. I will never forget this scene. Uncle Fahmy used to be a very kind and humble man. I had never heard him shouting. He used to attend prayer at the mosque with us.

I was extremely sad and asked people around me, "Why was he killed?" I was told that he was killed because his grandfather once killed a member of the other family". I wondered as that wasn't uncle Fahmy's fault. Some people neglected my words, others looked at me with a sad face.

- 17 The passage is a
 a. poem b. story
 c. real accident d. scientific fact
- 18 Electricity had just arrived at the little village
 a. in the 16th of the previous century
 b. in the 19th of the previous century
 c. in the 18th of the previous century
 d. in the 20th of the previous century
- 19 The weather that night was cold
 a. very b. as c. not d. absolutely
- 20 The moral of the story is
 a. we shouldn't take revenge in blood
 b. we should be indoors during the storm
 c. we should have memories from the past
 d. we shouldn't care of others in our village

- 21 Some people looked at the writer with a sad face as they wanted to say that he was
 a. right b. shy c. guilty
 d. sad e. correct
- 22 "Some people neglected my words" this means that they didn't my words
 a. speak b. listen to c. dare
 d. face e. care about
- 23 Uncle Fahmy was killed
 a. without any guilt b. in cold blood
 c. without any evil d. without any grudge
 e. without any violence

Part two

1 Translate into Arabic :

The whole world suffers from coronavirus disease, but we should try to live with it or life will stop on this planet.

2 Translate into English :

نكزل من الحرية في احبار رواياته المفصلة التي يرى فيها تعبر عن شخصيته، ولكن لا يجب السخرية من روايات الآخرين.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Travelling is a useful and enjoyable hobby."



Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given.

1. El-Masrout always provides us with many questions to _____ our skills.
a. prove b. avoid c. improve d. develop e. destroy
2. You should be quiet when you _____ an important decision.
a. do b. damage c. take d. protect e. make

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. When I _____ my friend on my way back home, he was doing shopping.
a. was meeting b. met c. has met d. had met
4. During the previous conference he _____ a speech.
a. gives b. has given c. gave d. had given
5. He said that he _____ doing his maths homework after he wrote the essay.
a. will finish b. would finish c. have finished d. had finished
6. A: How is Sama getting to the airport?
B: She said that her brother _____ her a lift.
a. would have given b. should have given c. was giving d. is giving
7. The firefighter ordered _____ the building at once.
a. to everyone leaving b. everyone to be left
c. everyone to leave d. leaving everyone
8. I forgot _____ the report with me, so I had to go back to get it.
a. to take b. to taking c. taking d. take
9. He is a good captain of our team because he has a good _____.
a. person b. character c. family d. company
10. She has done voluntary work for a charity. As a volunteer, she works for the charity for _____.
a. free b. pleasure c. treasure d. money
11. In oil industry, a _____ is the unit of measurement.
a. bottle b. ton c. metre d. barrel
12. A group of criminals who work together is called a _____.
a. tank b. bang c. gang d. bank
13. The woman dressed her children quickly because she was late. The opposite of "dressed" is _____.
a. took off b. took on c. looked up d. looked after

14. He always has a _____ expression on his face. He never looks happy.
a. miser b. miserable c. miserly d. misread
15. We _____ the email and replied to it.
a. received b. receive c. have received d. would receive
16. I _____ in the chat room since five o'clock when the phone rang.
a. am b. was c. had been d. have been

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Searching for a job is not an easy task. You have to keep reading daily newspapers and magazines. Sometimes, advertisers use the most expensive way of advertising. It is the TV advertisement, so, applicants have also to follow watching television. When you reply to a job advertisement, there are some things you should put in your letter. You should show that you are interested in **current** affairs. You should write about your qualities that make you suitable for it. You also need to write the name of someone who can say that you are an honest and good worker. The person who recommends you is a referee. To be successful applicant, you should have good command of English. You should be efficient and well organized. You should also have some computing skills. General knowledge is a must. An applicant who says "Maldives in Africa" will certainly lose probable new job during his interview.

17. According to the passage, a referee _____.
a. may know the applicant
b. should know the applicant
c. should know the adviser
d. should be interested in current affairs
18. Applicants should write about _____.
a. their qualifications and characteristics
b. their neighbours' qualities
c. why they left their current jobs
d. the person who can say that they are selfish
19. As mentioned in the passage, the applicant should _____ English.
a. provide b. eradicate c. master d. neglect
20. The best title of the passage is "____".
a. How to interview an applicant
b. How to be a good applicant
c. How to lose a job
d. What are the bad qualities of an interviewer

Part 3

- 1) To be a successful applicant, you should have more _____ skills.
 computing writing cooking
 industrial management
- 2) The _____ control system
 paid room time
 activity present
- 3) General knowledge is _____ to get the job.
 not important interested essential
 advised necessary

Part two

When we get older, we suffer forgetting things all the time. We can overcome it by some activities as doing crossword puzzles.

2. Translate into English :

يعتقد البعض أن بعض الطيور تومر للبحر أو الشرق، فالبعض يرى الغراب كرم للسم والسمكة.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"What would you like to be after leaving school ?"



Model 10

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. Modern technology has _____ It isn't good all the time, so we should make the best use of it.
 pros and cons wrong and correct
 advantages and disadvantages causes and results
 speakers and listeners
2. Many people left the film before the end because it was very boring. The synonyms of "boring" are
 annoying interesting terrifying exciting frightening

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. A gang of thieves _____ into my house yesterday night.
 were breaking had broken broke break
4. While you _____ on holiday, just relax and do not think about work.
 are are being were were being
5. I _____ five clients _____ today.
 have met have been met was met meet
6. My brother wants to play _____ piano in the future.
 an the no article a
7. This old-aged tree isn't safe to sit under. It _____ at any time.
 will fall is falling is going to fall falls
8. I haven't finished _____ all my jobs yet.
 do to do to doing doing
9. It was unusual that no one has made any _____ on the meeting.
 face part connect comment
10. "Brown" rhymes with "_____".
 clown glue draw naughty
11. To _____ is to steal something from a person, shop, etc.
 give donate hide rob
12. He wanted to drink, but his bottle was empty. The antonym of "empty" is
 fill full dull busy
13. I don't think you are fat. You are only
 clumsy obese plump crescent

14. Mr Nasser is a friend of mine. He is always helpful and never stops supporting me.
a. true b. teenager c. physical d. false
15. She gave me binoculars.
a. much b. some c. any d. a
16. He took smoke.
a. to smoke b. smoking c. to smoking

Read the following passage, then answer the questions.

When a family climbs into a vehicle to go on a trip or even a short ride, it is important that everyone is as safe as possible. We know that terrible accidents can occur. That's why devices like seatbelts and airbags have been invented and put into cars, vans and trucks.

Unfortunately, devices that are meant to save lives can be a threat to life. The airbag is such a device. Airbags were designed to inflate quickly in an accident. They were designed to stop an average adult male who didn't bother to fasten his seatbelt from smashing into or through the front of a car. Therefore, they inflate at approximately 200 miles per hour. It delivers a blow that can seriously injure or kill a child or a small adult.

Children shouldn't sit in the front passenger seat of a vehicle that has a passenger side airbag. They are always safer in the center rear seat. That day will come when vehicles are equipped with smart airbags that automatically adjust their force to the size and weight of a passenger.

17. Airbags inflate in accidents.
a. manually b. rapidly
c. gradually d. slowly
18. Airbags save life.
a. a fat adult's b. children's
c. an average adult's d. a thin adult's
19. The main idea of the passage is that
a. people should take care of car safety
b. people should go to short rides
c. families should travel together
d. cars shouldn't be safe
20. The verb "bother" can be replaced by
a. get b. treat c. annoy d. deal
21. The word "occur" can have the meaning of
a. happen b. take place c. take after
d. look for e. resemble

22. According to the passage, which of the following is not true?

- a. Airbags inflate quickly
b. Airbags were designed to protect travellers
c. Airbags don't have cons
d. Airbags don't cause harm at all
e. Airbags endanger people's lives

23. The passage is about

- a. car safety b. trips c. families
d. short rides e. protecting people's lives

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Do you know that the human brain is very active during the day dream time and it can solve the most difficult problems easily ?

2. Translate into English :

إن شدة وحدة عصبية متوازية وتدريب يوسع منتظم هذا الطريق الأمثل لاستهلاك صحة جيدة ومظهر رائع والقدرة على الإبداع في العمل

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Lifelong learning"



Model 11

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given

- 1. Nabil : Do you think Noha can do this exam alone?
Adham : Yes, I think so because she is
stubborn brilliant foolish tolerant intelligent
- 2. Elephants are one of the giant animals on land now. The synonyms of "giant" are
tiny enormous delighted gigantic ancient

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- 3. I think I well in the next exam
do am going to do am doing will do
- 4. Take a taxi when you to leave
want will want are going to want wanted
- 5. The bag into pieces when it fell down
tear was tearing tore was torn
- 6. He bought goods at this supermarket
little lot of lots of much
- 7. A: visited London? B: I hope I go there one day.
Do you ever Did you ever Had you ever Have you ever
- 8. They many subjects since the teacher told them to write their opinion.
have studied studied are studying were studying
- 9. The child's parents or must give their consent (إقرار بالموافقة) before she has the operation.
designers guardians donors monitors
- 10. A scientist who studies the natural processes of living things is a/an
actor physician activist biologist
- 11. Students need to be to continue their work readily.
donated endangered encouraged scared
- 12. The police are looking for to find the real criminal.
clues glues officers policemen
- 13. Thanks to your donations, the was able to continue its work
volunteer aid charity belief
- 14. The on the plane did their best to make the passengers pleased.
staff stuff crew crew

- 15. The thief was seen away
running to run to running a & b
- 16. I expect uncle Omar us tonight
will visit is visiting is going to visit visited

Read the following passage, then answer the questions

Horses are beautiful creatures. They can be different in colours, and can run quickly. People like to watch horses because they are strong and powerful.

Horses are mammals. The mother horse generally has one baby in the spring, and feeds the baby milk. Horses have long legs, and big eyes that can see almost all the way around them. They can walk, trot, gallop and jump.

Young horses that are one year old or younger are called foals. A young female horse is called a filly, and a young male horse is called a colt. After 4 years, a horse is considered an adult. Many people think that a pony is a young horse, but that is incorrect. A pony is a type of horse that does not grow very large.

Horses can live up to 20 or 25 years. Sometimes people can tell how old a horse is by looking at its teeth! They generally sleep standing up, so that if a killer animal approaches, they can run away quickly. Horses only need about three hours of sleep per day! Their hooves need to be taken care of.

For food, horses eat foods such as grass, hay, oats, corn, apples, and carrots. They are herbivores, meaning they do not eat other animals. Their stomachs are small, so they need small, frequent feedings.

There are wild horses, but many people have horses as pets, too. They ride the horses and may teach the horses tricks. When people first started to take horses as pets, they were just used for work. The horses would pull carriages so people could ride tractors, or ploughs so the farmers could more easily tend their fields. Horses were also used to move goods from place to place by carrying objects on their backs. Some horses now work as therapy horses. When these strong creatures are treated with care, they make wonderful companions.

- 17. The mother horse gives birth to a year.
a one horse b two horses c no horses d three horses
- 18. The best summary of the text is
a horses are beautiful b kinds of horses
c horses' habitat d mammals
- 19. Generally, horses sleep
a upside down b standing up c sitting down d in beds

PART 3

20. A horse can be a friend when
 you are kind to him you are cruel to him
 you are greedy with him you are sad with him
21. According to the passage, which of the following is correct?
 A pony is a young horse A pony is an old horse that doesn't work.
 A pony is a small type of horse A pony is a large type of horse.
 One-year old horse is called a foal
22. The best title for this passage is "
 Horses Animal life Kinds of horses
 Horses' food Horses are strong creatures
23. According to the passage, horses
 cannot do anything can do many things
 can do one thing only cannot learn anything at all
 make wonderful companions if treated with care

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic:
 To keep your youthful appearance over time, you need to have more vegetables and fruits that contain vitamins A and E regularly
2. Translate into English:
 إن ارتفاع درجة حرارة الأرض أحد أهم المشكلات التي تواجه البشرية في العترة العالمية؛ لأنها تؤدي لتوسع المحيط وارتفاع مستوى سطح البحر.
3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic:
 "How can all the society be helpful towards the disabled الماكين?"

Model 12

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

1. They all admire Mr. Tarek because he is a _____ person.
 a. generous b. stingy c. miser d. rude e. kind
2. Farmers usually care about their _____. They feed them well.
 a. plants b. cattle c. kettle d. villagers e. livestock

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. She has stopped ... some milk for the hungry baby.
 a. buying b. to buying c. to buy d. buys
4. He's booked his ticket. He ... to the USA tomorrow.
 a. is travelling b. is going to travel c. travels d. will travel
5. Someone who's broken ... leg finds it difficult to walk.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
6. He is furious as a tricycle ... his new car.
 a. hits b. was hitting c. has hit d. is hitting
7. Giraffes ... on meat. They are vegetarian animals.
 a. feed b. fed c. don't feed d. didn't feed
8. I ... to preparing my meals when I started to live away from my family.
 a. used b. got used c. get used d. become used
9. The Red Sea coast is a tourist ...
 a. party b. paradise c. trip d. flight
10. Mohammed Salah is the best ... in Liverpool.
 a. final b. football c. footballer d. cup
11. Different societies have different ...
 a. cultures b. experience c. prison d. believes
12. Mr. Mohammed is always ... You can chat with him at any time.
 a. website b. blog c. online d. offline
13. To ... is to believe that someone is honest or will not do anything bad or wrong.
 a. blow b. doubt c. lie d. trust
14. ... is something that sheep and goats can eat.
 a. Meat b. Iron c. Hay d. Kebab
15. The sun's energy ... by solar panels.
 a. is collected b. is collecting c. collects d. collected

- 16.1 Choose the verb that best fits the sentence.
 a studied b is studying c was studying d have studied

Read the following passage, then answer the questions.

Many people like to eat pizza, but not everyone knows how to make it. Making the perfect pizza can be complicated, but there are lots of ways for you to make a more basic version at home.

When you make pizza, you must begin with the crust. The crust can be hard to make. If you don't make the crust, you will have to make dough using flour, water, and yeast. You will have to knead the dough with your hands. If you do not have enough time to make your own crust, you can buy a prepared crust that you buy from the store.

After you have chosen your crust, you must then add the sauce. Making your own sauce from lots of vegetables can take a long time. You have to buy tomatoes, peel them, and then cook them with olive oil. It sounds like too much work, so you can also purchase a prepared sauce from the store. Many store-bought sauces taste almost as good as the kind you make at home.

Now that you have your crust and your sauce, you need to add the cheese. Cheese comes from milk, which comes from cows. Do you have a cow in your backyard? Do you know how to milk the cow? Do you know how to turn that milk into cheese? If not, you might want to buy cheese from the grocery store instead of making it yourself.

When you have the crust, sauce, and cheese ready, you can add other toppings. Some people like to put meat on their pizza, while other people like to add vegetables. Some people even like to add pineapple! The best part of making a pizza at home is that you can customize it by adding your own favourite ingredients.

17. The writer's main purpose in writing this passage is to
 a. describe the history of pizza
 b. teach a healthier way to make pizza
 c. outline steps to make a basic pizza at home
 d. provide tips about how to make your pizza especially delicious
18. The author asked a series of questions in paragraph four to
 a. support the idea that most people cannot make homemade cheese
 b. reinforce the idea that most people probably live on farms
 c. prove that store-bought cheese tastes better than homemade cheese
 d. emphasize the superiority of homemade cheese over store-bought cheese
19. To _____ is to mix the ingredients together using your hand.
 a. scratch b. purchase c. knead d. peel

20. When you make pizza, you must begin with the
 vegetables b. crust c. fruit d. meat
21. As used in paragraph one, which word means the opposite of "complicated"?
 Difficult b. Simple c. Hard
 Complex d. Easy
22. As used in paragraph three, which is the best synonym for "purchase"?
 forget b. buy c. ask
 cook d. shop
23. Eating at restaurants
 costs much money b. is so healthy
 costs less money c. is as healthy as eating at home
 isn't so healthy as eating at home d.

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Countries had realised that energy sources won't last forever, so they began to look for other renewable replacements as solar power.

2. Translate into English :

أنت أنتحظر أن ممارسة الرياضة تنسى من ذك. الأفراد. عند لوط أن الطلاب الذين يمارسون رياضة باستخدام أكثر ذك. من لا يمارسون الرياضة.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Spare time is a double edged weapon" سلاح ذو حدين



Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

1. Be careful! When you travel to any place for the first time, it is easy to _____ so you should have a map and the important numbers of this place.
a. get promoted b. go missing c. get lost d. go snorkelling e. go losing
2. The doctor asked me to monitor my grandfather because of his illness. "Monitor" can be replaced by _____.
a. observe b. look for c. watch d. see off e. collect

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. When they met their friend, he _____ the homework his teacher gave him.
a. does b. doing c. is doing d. was doing
4. It _____ my habit to have coffee at this café when I worked there.
a. is b. was c. has been d. had been
5. Going back home, I found that the window _____. So, I went to get new glass for it.
a. broken b. was broken c. is breaking d. break
6. We _____ met our friend lately. He is still away.
a. have b. haven't c. had d. hadn't
7. _____ in the office, he received a call from his wife.
a. During b. On c. While d. After
8. He exerts great efforts. They all think his work is _____.
a. amaze b. amazing c. amazed d. amazingly
9. To have a good building, you need to have a good _____ first.
a. donor b. design c. guardian d. ecotounst
10. His good company _____ had a good _____ on his life.
a. impact b. cause c. reason d. connection
11. He doesn't know much in science. His science knowledge is _____.
a. limit b. limiting c. limitless d. limited
12. Living near the _____ gave him the chance to sit by the sea often.
a. bleach b. peach c. beach d. cost
13. A lot of rain fell and this caused to _____ our streets from the neighbouring ones.
a. flood b. isolate c. connect d. link

14. The way he tackled the problem was a / an _____ one. No one else had had that idea before.
a. unique b. common c. ordinary d. unsuccessful
15. He is _____ HIV patient.
a. no article b. the c. an d. a
16. He refused _____ for what he had done.
a. apologise b. apologised c. apologising d. to apologise

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Scientists believe that there is a number of reasons for climatic changes. One reason could be the changes in the amount of heat which actually comes from the sun at different times. Another could be volcanic dust. People have also been adding gases such as carbon dioxide to the atmosphere. These are called greenhouse gases because they hang in the atmosphere around the Earth like the roof and walls of a greenhouse. The Earth receives heat and light from the sun which sends this back into space as infrared radiation. Much of this radiation cannot pass through the greenhouse gases and this causes increased temperatures near the Earth.

The amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere is increasing mainly because all countries burn fossil fuels such as oil, natural gas and coal. The destruction of the big rainforests, which absorb carbon dioxide and give out oxygen, makes matters worse.

What can be done to prevent this situation? Global warming is a problem that affects every country and every person in the world. First of all, all governments must agree to stop the destruction of the world's rainforests. Secondly, they must agree to reduce the amount of carbon dioxide that transport and industries emit into the atmosphere. And we can all play a part as individuals. We should all try to reduce the amount of carbon dioxide we emit into the atmosphere. This can be done by driving fuel efficient cars. The best way people can help is to use public transport as much as possible instead of their cars. And finally, we should plant more trees in the cities and on farms to give us back the air we need.

17. To help, people can use _____.
a. their private cars b. their old buses
c. private cars and bicycles d. public transport
18. Trees are important because they _____.
a. take in oxygen and produce carbon dioxide b. create infrared radiation
c. produce carbon dioxide d. take in carbon dioxide and emit oxygen
19. If the amount of carbon dioxide doubles, the average temperature will _____.
a. decrease b. reduce c. increase d. improve

20. The best title for this passage is
 Driving environment friendly car Climate changes
 Effects of nature Using public transport
21. The word "destruction" can be replaced by
 holding ventilation damage
 education ruin
22. Carbon dioxide is considered one of the
 atmosphere polluting gases
 increasing greenhouse
 decreasing rainforest
23. The word "absorb" can have the meaning of
 take in take on indulge
 melt soak up

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Old monuments always represent the great creativity of ancient civilizations. Our role is to keep them safe for our next generations.

2. Translate into English :

المتاحف أمانة كبيرة، فهي تحافظ على التراث من الصباغ أو الرقعة معطية الحياة للآثار القديمة والقليل منها حصة جنك أرواد

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Recycling إعادة تصنيع الأشياء is a way to solve many problems."

موقع
التفوق
ALIFWOK.COM

Model 14

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. They were _____ for the missing ring all the night
 a. thanking b. looking c. shouting d. searching e. leaving
2. It's good to donate blood to save other people's lives. The antonyms of "donate" are
 a. keep b. send c. receive d. offer e. give

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. _____ the party, I met several old friends
 a. On b. During c. While d. As
4. You _____ too much sugar to my coffee. It tastes too sweet
 a. had added b. were adding c. were added d. have added
5. Rodayna isn't in her office. I think she _____ home
 a. will go b. was gone c. has been d. has gone
6. She is carrying too _____
 a. many luggage b. much luggage c. a few luggage d. luggages
7. You look very ill. I _____ you to the doctor.
 a. take b. will take c. am taking d. am going to take
8. We intend _____ to spend the next weekend on the beach
 a. to go b. to be going c. to going d. go
9. He paid back all his _____ because he didn't want to go to prison
 a. skills b. debts c. tips d. steps
10. They had a / an _____ about the best solution to the problem of air pollution
 a. debate b. salutation c. teammate d. effect
11. _____ means to be connected to the internet or available on the internet.
 a. Network b. Website c. Online d. Offline
12. To achieve your jobs in time, you need to _____ your time well.
 a. waste b. do c. make d. use
13. He is known to be severe with his children. The antonym of the word "severe" is
 a. cruel b. hard c. gentle d. violent
14. He was very young and weak, so older students _____ him.
 a. drove b. gave c. bullied d. went

15. This road used anywhere.
a. didn't b. doesn't c. isn't d. is
16. It's two weeks I last met Aunt Nadia.
a. ago b. for c. since d. as

• Read the following passage, then answer the questions

It was the end of the weekend and Nadia was worried. She had still not done her homework. Nadia had missed the day of school because she had been ill. She had phoned her friend Azza and asked what homework their teacher had set for the summer holiday. Azza had told her that the teacher had asked them to write a composition. Nadia had written down the title. It was "The best things in life are three".

Nadia didn't know what to write. When she thought about the best things in life, they didn't seem to be "three" at all. She thought about her parents. There were two of them. Her brothers and sisters, there were four of them. She thought about happiness, love and nature. She couldn't count these at all. On the first day at school, Nadia's teacher asked her to read her composition to the class. Nadia stood up and began, "I don't think the best things in life are three at all," she said. "I think they are things you can't count". The other students started to laugh. "Nadia," said her teacher stopping her. The title of the composition was "The best things in life are free not three."

17. The passage is
a. scientific b. narrative
c. imaginative d. historical
18. Nadia disagreed with the title of the composition because
a. she wrote it down wrongly
b. she couldn't count the best things in life
c. she didn't want to write the composition
d. she didn't have time to write the composition
19. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to
a. the homework title b. the book they read
c. the summer holiday d. the telephone
20. Nadia's teacher was with Nadia
a. happy b. pleased c. angry d. worried
21. Nadia had missed the day of school because she had been ill.
This means she was from school.
a. absent b. present c. over the moon
d. worried e. not attendant

22. The best title of the passage is
a. freedom is not worthy b. freedom is not the best thing
c. life has countless good things d. the best things in life are free
e. freedom is worthy
23. The word "set" can have the meaning of
a. determined b. dealt c. counted
d. lived e. scheduled

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Plants, flowers and trees are necessary to breathe clean and fresh air and to have a good view. That's why, we should plant them everywhere.

2. Translate into English :

بعد استمر حوادث القصور على الساحة التي يمشي بها الفترة الأخيرة، بدأت تفكر في تركيب كاميرات مراقبة وفي بعض الممرات في المدرسة.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Without cooperation, there is no success."



Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given.

- 1 She refused to admit breaking the camera. The antonyms of "admit" are
a deny b conceal c adapt d consist e agree
- 2 All the countries around the world give a great interest to the
the background and reason
a children b youth c young people

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 3 The little bird _____ by its mother till it can fly
a feeds b is fed c fed d was fed
- 4 A: _____ your work yet? B: I managed to finish it.
a Is it done? b You have it done? c Have you done? d Are you doing?
- 5 _____ is the protection of natural life.
a Conservation b Reservation c Amiration d Organization
- 6 My father was delighted with my results. The word "delighted" can be replaced by
a satisfied b angry c amazed d astonished
- 7 While _____ the experiment, my teacher had a severe headache.
a did b were doing c are doing d doing
- 8 They _____ here since their grandfather built the house.
a have lived b had lived c are living d were living
- 9 I _____ you a lot for your help.
a own b owe c lend d borrow
- 10 They were _____ in the lift for an hour when electricity went off.
a struck b stuck c tick d stick
- 11 They had _____ of things to do. This means they were very busy.
a lot b loaf c leaves d loads
- 12 They were _____ when they won the prize. This means they were pleased.
a over the moon b under the moon c in a tight corner d out of the blue
- 13 Some thieves broke _____ the old man's house yesterday.
a on b onto c into d in
- 14. _____ you tell him the news? Are you able to do that?
a Able b Dare c Brave d Courageous

- 15 Your grandfather needs help _____ some bags into her flat.
a carries b to carry c carrying d carried
- 16 We hardly heard _____ news of him since he left the company.
a any b some c many d much

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There are many reasons to use alternative energy sources. One reason is to reduce pollutants and greenhouse gases. Alternative or renewable energy sources help to reduce the amount of toxins that are a result of traditional energy use. These alternative energy sources help protect against the harmful by-products of energy use and help to preserve many of the natural resources that we currently use as energy sources.

There are many alternative energy sources. Wind power, solar power, geothermal power, and hydroelectric power are some examples.

Wind power is the ability to **capture** the wind in a way to power the blades of wind turbines. When the blades **rotate**, this movement is switched into electrical current with the help of an electrical generator. In older windmills, wind energy turned mechanical machinery to do the physical work like pumping water to get water. Wind towers are built on wind farms, and usually there are several towers built together. There are several advantages of this energy source: there is no pollution, it never runs out, farming and grazing can still take place on the same land as the wind turbines, and wind farms can be built anywhere. One disadvantage is that you need a consistent wind to get enough power. If the wind speed decreases, less electricity is produced.

Geothermal means "earth heat". This energy captures the heat energy under the Earth. Hot rocks under the ground help to heat water to produce steam. If holes are dug in this area of the ground, then the steam shoots up and is purified and used to drive turbines, which in turn gives power to electric generators. The advantages of this type of energy is that there are no harmful by-products, it is self-sufficient, and the plants are generally small so there is no negative visual effect on the area surrounding the plant.

- 17. In geothermal energy, the main factor of doing the work is
a the heat of the earth b steam coming out
c digging the earth d using hard rocks
- 18. According to the passage wind power is
a discovered in modern ages b used along history
c used only for generating electricity d always harmful
- 19. The suitable title of passage is
a alternative energy b electricity
c windmills d population

- 20) In the future, the more pollution we get,
the wider ozone layer hole is the narrower ozone layer is
the bigger planet is the large planet is
- 21) The underlined word "capture" may be replaced by "
catch leave change
a fix c seize
- 22) The word "rotate" can have the meaning of
a turn off b turn around c turn on
d turn out e spin
- 23) According to the passage, traditional energy use is to the environment
useful harmful friendly
useless toxic

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Robots have become more common in many fields. During coronavirus, many countries as China used them to discover and look after infected people.

2. Translate into English :

يعتقد البعض أن أي قصة أو كتاب نخرج من السكر أن يصبح مله نرجع، ونكرر الجملة "لا يوجد دمر على ذلك"

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"What's the role of the society towards old people?"



1 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer :

موضوع الاستماع فوق نهاية الكتاب

- 1 James has ... things to do.
a many b a few c a little d a lot
- 2 James is very ... about visiting Egypt.
a sad b upset c happy d nervous

B. Vocabulary and Structures

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. While I was doing my homework, my mother ... dinner.
prepares b preparing c is preparing d was preparing
2. I lived in London ... 2016.
for b since c in d ago
3. ... school holidays are starting soon.
The b An c A d No article
4. Be careful, the car ... you. It's very near.
will hit b is going to hit c will be hitting d hits
5. There are very few of these kinds of garaffes now, they are
a safe b isolated c endangered d dangerous
6. I always try to ... food and clothes to my local charity.
a sell b want c owe d donate
7. Most people take clean water for ... , but not all place have it.
a granted b given c having d done
8. The message to transfer money was fake. It was a big
a skim b scar c scam d scan

C. Language Function

3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Omar : I'm bored, I have nothing to do.

Father : Well, (1) ... ?

Omar : The club! That's good idea. Do you know what I can do there ?

Father : Yes, (2) ...

Omar : That's great and I'm good at basketball. When (3) ... ?

Father : You can go (4) ...

D. Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Every year, more and more people are connected to the internet in Egypt. A recent survey found that around 50 million people use the internet on a computer or smartphone.

In the survey, many people said that they used the internet every day, usually for communication so they could talk to friends or family. Many used apps on their phones so they can listen to music or watch films. Other people said they never used the internet. This was usually because they did not understand the technology. Many people also said they did want to use the internet when shopping. They were worried about security and the possibility that their computer might be hacked.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What do many people use the internet for ?
2. Why don't many people use the internet ?
3. Why do people use apps on their phones ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined word "survey" means
a. questionnaire b. quiz c. competition d. match
5. Many people thought that their computer might be
a. connected b. hacked c. lost d. stolen

E. Novel (Treasure Island)

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The thief had a long curved on his face, so we could recognize him.
a. skate b. sky c. skin d. scar
2. A is a large container made of wood or metal.
a. tin b. jar c. barrel d. cup

F. writing

6 Write a paragraph of 80 words on :

The good and bad things about moving to a new school in another town.

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

The best way to make friends is to join clubs or do team sports you like.

B. Translate into English :

رغبة صلاح لي مساعدة الآخرين هي أنه يريد أن يسبح الشباب فرصة للتجارب.

2 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

الإعداد المركزي لمعينة المركزية - القسم الثاني

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer :

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Egypt is developing eco-tourism to protect the environment along the Red Sea.
a. Cost b. Cast c. Coast d. Course
2. Tourists are taught how to avoid the fish and keep the special coral reefs safe.
a. staying b. preserving c. damaging d. keeping

B. Vocabulary and Structures

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The of other people have to be respected.
a. believes b. beliefes c. beliefs d. believe
2. The old family house is by my grandparents.
a. populated b. population c. polluted d. populating
3. As a child, I always when I took my medicine.
a. crying b. cries c. cried d. was crying
4. I have had lunch
a. already b. yet c. just d. so far
5. My father with pride when he heard that I had come first.
a. showed b. rose c. swelled d. puffed
6. To be a , work hard to a plan.
a. successfully b. successful c. success d. succeed
7. is considered a crime.
a. Uploading b. Downloading c. Phishing d. Fishing
8. I suggest that Rodayna engineering like her mother.
a. studies b. studying c. has studied d. study

C. Language Function

3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

A customer has a problem with internet service.

Assistant : Hello, we are Customer Service, how can I help you ?

Customer : Hi, (1) ?

Assistant : I'm sorry to hear that (2) ?

Customer : My connection is dropping out and the speed is very slow.

Assistant : Let me check (3)

Customer : My phone number is 0123456789.

Assistant : Thank you . I'll send technician to your house.

Customer : Okay, (4) home then.

Alfawok.com موقع للتدوين

D. Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions.

In 1859, nothing could live in the waters of River Thames. The river was polluted by the waste which came from hundreds of homes, waste from factories in the city and from a canal which was full of poison, also ran into the river. Things began to change in 1940. Now the river is very clean. It is thought that about 125 kinds of fish live there today. It is a place where many animals visit including dolphins and even whales. Today the river faces a different problem. There is more and more plastic which people dump into the Thames.

5 Answer the following questions:

1. Why couldn't anything live in the waters of the Thames?

2. What problem does the river face now?

3. What should you do to keep rivers clean?

6. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. What does the underlined word "which" refer to?

- a. the factories b. the river
c. the waste from homes d. the waste from factories

5. _____ in the River Thames in 1957.

- a. Fish started to live b. Nothing lived
c. Pollution was worst d. Plastic pollution started

E. Novel (Treasure Island)

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This wound might leave _____ on your cheek.

- a. scare b. scar c. scarp d. scary

2. One of the sailors led a/an _____ against the captain.

- a. invasion b. murder c. mutiny d. mirror

F. Writing

6 Write an essay of not less than 80 words on:

"Tourism in Egypt and how to encourage it"

7 1. Translate into Arabic

Don't fear when your enemies criticise you. Beware when they applaud.

2. Translate into English.

لا تتردد ان تلمذ الحكمة فلما يسيء اليك الناس الصبر

Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

A. Listening

4 Listen and choose the correct answer:

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم

1. Cairo is the _____ of Egypt.
a. port b. capital c. north d. airport
2. All Egyptians speak _____.
a. English b. Spanish c. Arabic d. French

B. Vocabulary and Structures

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When _____ you finish your work?
a. are b. have c. has d. did
2. We all _____ Mohamed Salah as he is polite and generous.
a. hate b. respect c. discourage d. avoid
3. How _____ light is there in the cave?
a. much b. many c. often d. far
4. Village people build their houses with local _____.
a. tourists b. environments c. animals d. materials
5. I've already booked the tickets, we _____ abroad today.
a. are travelling b. travel c. travels d. travelled
6. Every year, more and more people are _____ to the internet in Egypt.
a. connected b. connect c. connection d. contact
7. The police _____ the young man of stealing the money.
a. excused b. thanked c. accused d. rewarded
8. A novel is a long written _____.
a. article b. history c. poem d. story

C. Language Function

3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogues

Nader is talking to Ali who has been on holiday.

Nader: Hi! Where have you been?

Ali: (1)

Nader: How was your holiday?

Ali: It was the best holiday in my life.

Nader: (2)

Ali: I went to the North Coast. It's fantastic.

Nader: Really? Did you go with your parents?

Ali: (3) I went with my cousins.

Nader: (4)

Ali: Yes, I'll post them on my Facebook today. You can check them.

D. Reading comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

One day, Tom woke up and saw that it was snowing outside. He decided to go out. There was enough snow to go sledging. He went into the garden shed to find his sledge. He took off the old sheet his father used for covering the sledge and looked at it. His mother called to him. "Take your gloves with you in case your hands get cold". Tom took them and ran towards the big hill where all his friends were playing in the snow.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What was the weather like?

2. Why did Tom go to the garden shed?

3. How did Tom's father protect the sledge?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Tom's mother asked him to take his

a sledge b gloves c sheet d clothes

5. Tom was

a obedient b disobedient c rude d lazy

E. Islamic selections

5 Choose the correct answer:

1. The five pillars of Islam are

a interested b excited c separated d interrelated

2. _____ is the second pillar of Islam

a Prayer b Zakat c Pilgrimage d Fasting

F. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of 80 words on:

"The age you think children start using the internet"

7 Translate into Arabic:

The best way to make friends is to join clubs or do the team sport you like.

8 Translate into English:

يحب كثير من الناس رجل الأعمال لعطفه وتبرعاته الكريمة للجمعيات الخيرية في مصر.

Al-Azhar Al-Sharif الإدارة المركزية لـ امتحانات التوفيق - القسم الأول

A. Listening

1 Listen to the text then choose the correct answer:

موضوع الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. The discovery mentioned in the text is

a The Femtosecond b The Electric light
c The radio d Television

2. All Egyptians are of Dr Ahmed Zewail.

a pride b proud c paid d pulled

B. Language Function

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Sami: Excuse me, I advise you not to drink that water from that river.

Tourist: (1) I know that the water isn't very clean.

Sami: (2) ?

Tourist: I'm from England, I've just spent a week walking across the desert.

Sami: (3) ?

Touret: No, it is not dangerous.

Sami : (4)

Touret : I learned skills such as using the sun to find my way.

C. Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Daisy didn't have friends when she started at her new school.
a. the b. some c. a d. any
2. We should money to charities to help the poor.
a. donate b. steal c. take d. refuse
3. I have a new on my smart-phone which helps me practise foreign languages.
a. book b. app c. connection d. scam
4. The person who writes poetry is called a
a. journalist b. novelist c. poem d. poet
5. Sadly, my uncle has been ill he was a young man.
a. for b. when c. ago d. since
6. It is taken for that bullying is as bad behaviour which we all must change.
a. granted b. refusal c. denial d. decided
7. The local people benefit when lions
a. is protected b. isn't protected c. are protected d. protects
8. The match at 10 o'clock.
a. will start b. starts c. is going to start d. is starting

D. Reading comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Dolphins are regarded as the friendliest creatures in the sea and stories of them helping drowning sailors have been common since Roman times. The more we learn about dolphins, the more we realize that their society is more complex than people previously imagined. They look after other dolphins when they are ill, care for pregnant mothers and protect the weakest in the community, as we do. Some scientists have suggested that dolphins have a language but it is much more probable that they communicated with each other without needing words. Could any of these mammals be more intelligent than man? Certainly the most common argument in favour of man's superiority over them that we can kill them more easily than they can kill us is the least satisfactory. On the contrary, the more we discover about these remarkable creatures, the less we appear superior when we destroy them.

4 Answer the following questions :

1. How do you think dolphins are like humans ?
2. What reason for man's superiority to dolphins does the writer mention ?
3. In what way can we be wrong about our superiority to dolphins ?

11 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Dolphins have been sailors.
a. drowning b. saving c. sinking d. tricking
5. Dolphins live in and have cooperative societies.
a. isolation b. loneliness c. families d. individuals

E. Islamic selections

5 Choose the right answer :

1. What is the second pillar of Islam ?
a. Zakat b. Prayer c. Fasting d. Pilgrimage
2. Muslims perform prayers times a day.
a. Two b. three c. four d. Five

F. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of 80 words on :

"Your role model"

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

Eco-tourism aims at providing holidays to places which are endangered and isolated.

B. Translate into English :

يهدف السياحة البيئية إلى توفير العطلات في الأماكن المعرضة للخطر ومعزولة.

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق

A. Language Functions

- 1 Choose the correct sentence in the following dialogue:
Hana and Rana are talking about last summer holiday.

Rana : (1)

- a I have a passport
b I went to Indonesia
c I was happy

Hana : (2)

- a What was it like ?
b Who did you go with ?
c How did you go there ?

Rana : It was an enjoyable journey.

Hana : (3)

- a How long did you stay there ?
b What's your favourite subject ?
c What did you see there ?

Rana : I saw orangutans in the forest.

B. Writing and Usage

- 2 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c :

- Ecotourism doesn't the natural environment.
a damage b isolate c conserve
- Forests us with the oxygen we need.
a respect b dive c provide
- Whales are very animals that live in seas and oceans.
a big b small c tiny
- She had a/an on her knee yesterday.
a operate b operation c cooperation
- Hesham tennis at this moment.
a play b played c is playing
- I asked the chef about the of the delicious dish.
a chemicals b ingredients c swimming
- When I was young, I used to swimming.
a go b went c had gone

- 3 Match "A" with "B" to make correct sentences :

(A)	(B)
1 Ahmed Zewail was	a- break the rules
2 The Nile used to	b- protects people from diseases
3 We mustn't	c- awarded the Nobel Prize
4 The Egyptian navy	d- make the soil fertile
5 Vaccination	e- protects Egypt's coasts

A. Language Functions

- 1 Choose the correct sentence in the following dialogue :

Ola : Do you think moving to a new school is a good or bad thing ?

Lina : (1)

- a That's true. It is possible to make new friends.
b As far as I'm concerned, it's not a good idea.
c It's really difficult to make new friends.

Ali : (2) ?

Salim : I'm fifteen

- a How old are you ?
b Who are you ?
c Hi, Salim. How are you ?

Omar : (3) ?

Gamal : Yes, I did my homework yesterday

- a Did you do your homework ?
b Where did you do your homework ?
c When did you do your homework ?

B. Writing and Usage

- 2 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c :

- While Noha her housework, the lights went out.
a did b was doing c does
- Don't forget to come on time when you to come for the interview.
a ask b are asked c asked

- 3 As a personal trainer to the rich and famous, he _____ over a million dollars a year.
 earns wins gains
- 4 I need _____ advice on which computer to buy. The synonym of the word "advice" is _____.
 discouragement relation recommendation
- 5 You need to update your _____ software regularly to look for and remove viruses on your computer.
 antivirus antibiotic antihelics
- 6 He practices _____ the guitar every day.
 to play playing to be played
- 7 I like outdoor _____ such as hiking or climbing.
 activities subjects toys

5 Match "A" with "B" to make correct sentences:

(A)	(B)
1- A food bank is a place	a- I can go instead of him.
2- Contact your local branch	b- to arrange an appointment
3- She discovered that the job	c- wasn't as easy as it might seem.
4- A professional sportsman is	d- the one who earns money by playing a sport.
5- If Ramy can't attend the meeting,	e- where people collect food to give to others.

C. Reading Comprehension

4 Read the passage, then answer the questions. Put (✓) or (X):

Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan. My father bought our tickets at Ramses Station, then we got on the train. There were people from many countries on the train, for example, England and Australia. The train left Cairo at 8 o'clock, and soon we passed Giza. I enjoyed the view from the train window. We arrived at Luxor at a quarter past six. Many tourists left the train there. They wanted to see the Valley of the Kings! The train continued to Aswan. We arrived at ten o'clock. My uncle was there to meet us! It was a wonderful journey.

- a. The train left Cairo at 9 o'clock. ()
- b. They arrived at Aswan at 10 o'clock. ()
- c. Few tourists left the train in Luxor. ()
- d. The writer's uncle met them in Aswan. ()
- e. There were lots of people from many countries on the train. ()

Islamic Selections

Chapter (1) The Five Pillars of Islam

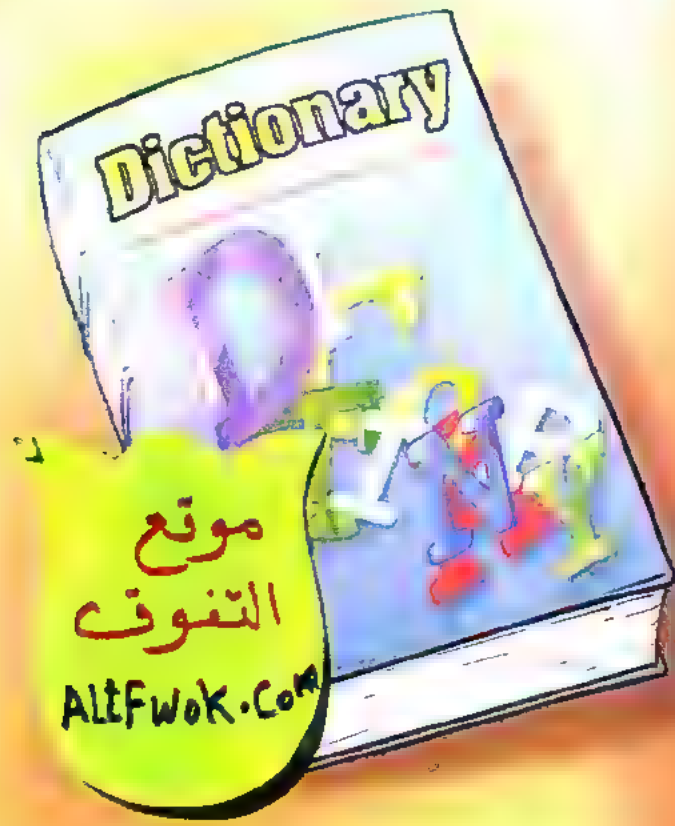
Answer the following questions:

1. What do the Five Pillars of Islam form?
2. How can Muslims have their minor sins cleared?
3. What are the outcomes of Zakat?
4. What would happen if any of the Muslims was ill or on a journey during the fast?
5. How does a Muslim become a true Muslim?

Chapter (2) Prayer

Answer the following questions:

1. What happens as long as a Muslim adheres to keeping Allah in remembrance?
2. Mention the five daily prayers that a Muslim performs every day.
3. What are the purpose of performing the daily prayers by Muslims?
4. What kind of fuel does a Muslim get from prayers?
5. How many are the daily prayers in reward?



Vocabulary - Collocations - Synonyms - Antonyms
- Expressions & Prepositions

First Term Dictionary

عربي الطالب

يتم إعداد قاموس المصطلحات لهذا المصطلح كل في بعض المفردات المصطلحات الأولى وهو بمثابة مرجع للمصطلحات
لغة المصطلحات المصطلحات المصطلحات المصطلحات المصطلحات المصطلحات المصطلحات المصطلحات المصطلحات المصطلحات
والهدف من هذا القاموس هو أن يساعد في كمرجع للمصطلحات في البحث عن أي كلمة أو على تدريب المصطلحات والمصطلحات
لغة المصطلحات المصطلحات المصطلحات المصطلحات المصطلحات المصطلحات المصطلحات المصطلحات المصطلحات

First Term Vocabulary

تحت كلمة المفردات الأكثر أهمية بلون مختلف حتى يسهل حفظها

As			
ability (n)	قدرة	allowed (adj)	مسموح به
abroad (adv)	إلى الخارج (خارج البلاد)	already (adv)	سابقا
accident (n)	حادثة	although (conj.)	رغم أن
achievement (n)	إنجاز - نجاح	amazing (adj)	مذهل - رائع جدا
achieve (v)	إنجاز - نجاح	amongst (prep)	بين / وسط
action (n)	فعل - فعل	ancient (n)	قديم - قديم
active (adj)	نشط	angle (n)	زاوية - جانب
activity (n)	نشاط	angry (adj)	غاضب
actually (adv)	في الواقع / بالفعل	antivirus (adj)	مضاد الفيروسات
add (ed) (v)	يضيف	anymore (adv)	مرة أخرى
address (ed) (v - n)	يتحدث - عنوان	app = application (n)	تطبيق (البرمجي)
admire (v)	يُعجب به	appearance (n)	مظهر
admit (ed) (v)	يقر / يعترف	area (n)	منطقة
adult (n - adj)	شخص بالغ - راشد	around (adv - prep)	حول - حوالى
advantage (n)	ميزة	arrange (d) (v)	ترتيب
adventure (n)	مغامرة	article (n)	مقال
advert = advertisement (n)	إعلان	arts (n)	فنون - أدب
advice (n)	نصيحة	association (n)	جمعية - اتحاد
Africa (n)	إفريقيا	attack (ed) (n - v)	هجوم - مهاجمة
again (adv)	مرة أخرى	attempt (ed) (n - v)	محاولة - يحاول
against (prep)	ضد	attractions (n)	جاذبات الجذب
agreement (n)	اتفاق - موافقة	author (n)	مؤلف
aim (ed) (n - v)	يهدف - يهدف	avoided (v)	يتجنب - يتفادى
allow (ed) (v)	يسمح به	awful (adj)	مريع / شنيع

baby sister(n)	أخت صغيرة	حظ الدم
balcony(n)	شرفة	تهدئ - يهدئ - يهدئ
board(n)	مجلس / مجلس	مجلس / مجلس
beach(n)	شاطئ	الجزء الرئيسي لجسم
beauty(n)	جمال	يحبذ
become - became - become (v)	صاح	نيل
borrow(ed) (v)	استعير - استعير	يستعير - يستعير
branch(n)	مُتفرع / يتفرع	فرع - غصن
brave(n) (v)	جوا	يستشير الفئ
break - broke - broken (v)	اعتقد	يكسر - يكسر
break down (v)	تفكك	تفكك
brief (adj)	مختصر - مختصر	مختصر - مختصر
bring - brought (v)	جاء - جاء	رائع - متفوق
birth(n)	ميلاد	يُحضر - يحضر
bite - bit - bitten (n - v)	عض - عض	يتفكر - يتفكر
bully(n)	كبير العمر	يلطحي - يلمط
business(es)(n)	شركة - شركة	اللطيفة - اللطيفة
buy - bought (v)	اشترى - اشترى	فرحات
blood donation(n)	التبرع بالدم	يشترى

Cc

call(ed) (v)	استدعى - استدعى	فرصة
camp(n)	خيم	زخمة / زخمة
camping(n)	إقامة في معسكر	مُكمل
canal(n)	قناة - قناة	مهم - لديه اهتمام
cancer(n)	مرض السرطان	خلاصة - خلاصة
candle(n)	شمعة	يربط
cannon(n)	مدفع	مُفصل - مُفصل
carnival(n)	احتفال / مهرجان	ارتباط - اتصال
case(n)	حالة - قضية	الصيانة - حماية البيئة
castle(n)	قلعة	مُحافظ على البيئة
cattle(n)	الماشية	يلكر في - يضع في الاعتبار
cause(d) (n - v)	سبب - سبب	يتصل / يتواصل - تواصل
centre(n)	مركز / وسط	يحتوي على

charm(n)	سحر	مجانة
charity(n)	رحمة	صالح - صالح
cheap(adj)	رخيص - رخيص	هل المصروف - مصروف / مصروف
cheat(ed) (v - n)	خدع - خدع	مصحح - مصحح
cheating(n)	خداع	التجارب الخارجية
check(ed) (v)	تحقق - تحقق	مجلس / مجلس
circle(d) (n - v)	دائرة - دائرة	بيرة
classroom(n)	فصل - فصل	مصحف
cleaner(adj)	أكثر نظافة	يعلق - يعلق
clear(d) (adj - v)	واضح - واضح	مُدح - مدح
clearly(adv)	بوضوح	معلقة الثمان
click(ed) (n - v)	نقرة - نقرة	مائل
cliff(n)	منحدر	طاقم سفينة أو طائرة
close (n) (adj)	قريب - قريب	مريمة
closing (n)	إنهاء - إنهاء	مجرم - إجرامي
coast(n)	ساحل	باص - باص
collaboration(n)	تعاون / تأزر	علامة (م) أو (ك) - شطب
collect (ed) (v)	يجمع - يجمع	مُردد
collection(n)	مجموعة	بحر - بحيرة
colourful(adj)	زاهي الألوان	بركة بحرية
comic(n)	مجلة مضحكة للأطفال	شكر - شكر
comment(ed) (n - v)	تعليق - تعليق	حكي
communicate(adj)	يتواصل - يتواصل	الثقافة
communication(n)	اتصال - اتصال	جانب التفتيش / جانب
community(n)	مجتمع - جماعة	جانب التفتيش / جانب
compare(d) (v)	يقارن - يقارن	حادث
contractions(n)	انقباضات	حادث - حادثة
contrast(ed) (n - v)	تباين - تباين	مصر غير الإنترنت
		التسويق الإلكتروني

Dd

damage(d) (v - n)	تلف - تلف	يعمر - يعمر
dare(d) (v)	جرأ - جرد	فكر
data(n)	بيانات	مُعد
date(n)	تاريخ اليوم - موعد	يخفي - يخفي
day(n)	يوم - اليوم	كثرة - كثرة

disconnect(ed) (adj)	متقطع - مقطوع	متصل / معزول
discussion(n)	مناقشة / مناقشة	مناقشة / مناقشة
disease(n)	مرض	مرض
dive(d) (v)	غطس / غوص	غطس / غوص
document(n)	وثيقة	وثيقة
empty(ed) (adj - v)	فارغ / خالٍ	فارغ / خالٍ
entertainment(n)	ترفيه / ترفيه	ترفيه / ترفيه
entertain(ed) (v)	ترفيه / ترفيه	ترفيه / ترفيه
environment(n)	بيئة	بيئة
escape(d) (v - n)	هروب - فرار	هروب - فرار
especially(adv)	بصفة خاصة	بصفة خاصة
essay(n)	مقالة	مقالة
estimate(d) (v)	تقدير - تقدر	تقدير - تقدر
Europe(n)	قارة أوروبا	قارة أوروبا
events(n)	أحداث	أحداث
everyday (adj)	يومي	يومي
everywhere(adv)	في كل مكان	في كل مكان
evidence(n)	دليل	دليل
exactly(adv)	تماماً - بالتحديد	تماماً - بالتحديد
excited(adv)	متحمس - متلهف	متحمس - متلهف

E

each (adv - pron - deter)	كل / كل واحد	البيئة
earned (v)	كسب - كسب	من اناحية البيئة
eco-hotel(n)	فندق صديق للبيئة	بهرت - هروب
ecosystem(n)	النظام البيئي	بصفة خاصة
ecotourism(n)	الساحة البيئية	مقالة
ecotourist(n)	سائح زراعي للبيئة	تقدير - تقدر
eco-trip(n)	رحلة صديقة للبيئة	قارة أوروبا
Ecuador(n)	الإكوادور	أحداث
educate(d) (v)	يتعلم	يومي
effect(n)	أثر	في كل مكان
Egyptians(n)	الصريون	دليل
electric(adj)	كهربائي	تماماً - بالتحديد
electronic(adj)	إلكتروني	متحمس - متلهف

exciting(adj)	مثير	مثير
excuse(n)	إفراجة - عذرة	إفراجة - عذرة
exclusive	مستبعد	مستبعد
expensive(adj)	مكلف - ثمن	مكلف - ثمن
experience (n) - (v)	تجربة - خبرة	تجربة - خبرة
expert (n - adj)	خبير - خبير	خبير - خبير
explain(ed) (v)	شرح - يشرح	شرح - يشرح
explore(d) (v)	استكشف	استكشف
expressions(n)	عبارات	عبارات
extra (adj / adv)	إضافي - إضافي	إضافي - إضافي
extracted (n - v)	مستخلص - مستخلص	مستخلص - مستخلص
entertainment(n)	ترفيه / ترفيه	ترفيه / ترفيه

F

fact(n)	حقيقة	حقيقة
factory(n)	مصنع	مصنع
factual(adj)	واقعي - متعلق بالحقائق	واقعي - متعلق بالحقائق
faculty (n)	كلية	كلية
fair(adj)	عادل	عادل
famous(adj)	مشهور	مشهور
farmer(n)	فلاح / مزارع	فلاح / مزارع
Faroe Islands(n)	جزر الفارو	جزر الفارو
fascinating(adj)	جذاب / جذاب	جذاب / جذاب
favourite(adj)	مفضل	مفضل
feed fed(v)	يُغذي	يُغذي
feel felt (v)	يشعر به	يشعر به
fewer(adj)	أقل في العدد	أقل في العدد
field (n)	مجال - حقل	مجال - حقل
fight - fought (v - n)	مُقاتلة / يُقاتل - مُقاتلة	مُقاتلة / يُقاتل - مُقاتلة
finals(n)	النهائيات	النهائيات
flexible(adj)	مرن	مرن
flight(n)	رحلة جوية	رحلة جوية
fly - flew - flown(v)	طير - يطير - يُطير	طير - يطير - يُطير

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

part

PART 4

library(n)	مكتبة		مكتب
be by him(v)	بجانبه		يكون بجانبه
life clothes(n)	ملابس الحياة	لباس (adj)	مظهر
lighten - adj	مشرق		
lightning(n)	برق		
Machinist(n)	مهندس ميكانيكي	mechanical	ميكانيكي
machine(n)	آلة		
Machu Picchu(n)	حصن ماچو بكتشي في المكسيك	medicine(n)	الطب - دواء
Madagascar(n)	جزيرة ماداغاسكار		يدكتور
magnificent(adj)	فخم / رائع	Mexican (n - adj)	ناجر مكسيكي
main(n)	رئيسي / أساسي	mund(n)	العقل
maintain(v)	تحتفظ	manuscript(n)	نصيب - ناسخ
	مدير	miss(ed) (v)	يفقد - يفتقر
	يوضع	missing(adj)	مفقود - ناقص
	صانع	mix(ed) (v)	يمزج - يختلط
	المزججات الحديثة	modem(n)	نموذج حديث - موديم
map(n)	خريطة	modernized (v - n)	يُراقب / يُرشد - جهاز عرض
market(n)	سوق	mosquito(n)	ناموس
marks(n)	فرجات	movement(n)	حركة
master(n)	السيد	moving(adj)	متحرك
	عائد / غرض - عادي	mutiny(n)	تمرد - عصيان
maybe(adv)	ربما		
		Np	
narrate(d) (v)	يسَـمِّي - يذكر اسم	nickname(n)	لقب اسم شهرة
narrow(adj)	ضييق	niece(n)	ابنة الأخ أو الأخت
nasty(adj)	قبیح - ذمیم	noisy(adj)	مرجع - صاحب
National Park(n)	الحديقة الوطنية	note (n)	ملاحظة
natural(adj)	طبيعي	noticeboard(n)	لوحة الإعلانات
nearby (adj/ adv)	قريب / مُجاور	novel(n)	رواية - قصة طويلة
negative(adj)	سلبي	noset(d) (v)	تُعَرِّض - تزعج العرصي
neighbour(n)	جار	nose(n)	منزلة
network(ed) (n - v)	شبكة - يصل عن طريق الشبكة	nursing(n)	التريض

[illegible]

[illegible]

together (adv)	معًا / سوياً
tonight (adv)	الليلة
talk(ed) (n - v)	حديث - تحدث
Tanzania (n)	تنزانيا
teach - taught (v)	درس
team sports (n)	رياضات جماعية
toys (n)	ألعاب أطفال
tracked (v - n)	يتبع - مرص
traditional (adj)	تقليدي
traditionally (adv)	بشكل تقليدي
travel (v - n)	تقل - زراعة أعضاء
traveller (n)	السياح - مسافر
treasure (n)	كنز
the Pacific (n)	المحيط الهندي
the road	طريق
treasure (n)	كنز
thief - thieves (n)	مخطف - سارق
thinking (n)	فكر
tiny (adj)	صغير جداً
together (adv)	معًا / سوياً
tonight (adv)	الليلة
talk(ed) (n - v)	حديث - تحدث
Tanzania (n)	تنزانيا
teach - taught (v)	درس
team sports (n)	رياضات جماعية
toys (n)	ألعاب أطفال
tracked (v - n)	يتبع - مرص
traditional (adj)	تقليدي
traditionally (adv)	بشكل تقليدي
travel (v - n)	تقل - زراعة أعضاء
traveller (n)	السياح - مسافر
treasure (n)	كنز
the Pacific (n)	المحيط الهندي
the road	طريق
treasure (n)	كنز
thief - thieves (n)	مخطف - سارق
thinking (n)	فكر
tiny (adj)	صغير جداً

<p> <u>tip</u> (n) ↑ ك ، ر ، ت <u>tipple</u> (n) </p>	<p> <u>try</u> (v) (تجربه) بدم عليه امتحان <u>try</u> (n) (تجربه) هو ان لقب </p>	<p> بدم عليه امتحان تجربه بدم </p>
<p> <u>un</u> (adj) understand - understood (v) underwater (adj - adv) unfriendly (adj) <u>un</u> (v) (ر - ت) unusual (adj) </p>	<p> <u>un</u> لم لم يفهم - لم يفهم لم تحت الماء غير ودية لم غير عادي </p>	<p> فهم حرفه فهم حرفه تحت ودية غير ودية غير عادي </p>

vw

variant(n)	تعددية	villagers(n)	القرريين
version(n)	نسخة	visitor(n)	الزائر
victim(n)	ضحية	voluntary work	عمل تطوعي
view(n)	وجهة نظر / رأي - منظر	voluntary(adj)	تطوعي
viewers(n)	الشاهدين	volunteer(n)	متطوع
village(n)	قرية	volunteerism(n)	نمط حياة

www

wake - waked - woken (v)	يقظ - يستيقظ	wake(n)	قوة صراخه
walls(n)	أسوار / جدران	whisper(d) (n - v)	سيرة - سفير
warm(adj)	دافئ	wild(adj)	فرد
warmer(adj)	أكثر دفئا	wildlife(n)	الحياة البرية
warning(n)	تحذير	wind(n)	الريح
wear - wore - worn (v)	يرتدي	winter(n)	فصل الشتاء
weather(n)	الطقس	wish(ed) (n - v)	أمنه - يمني
web(n)	شبكة	wonder(ed) (v)	يسعد
website(n)	موقع على الانترنت	wooden(adj)	خشب
welcome (v)	ترحب	World Cup(n)	كأس العالم
well(adj)	بمحة جيدة	worldwide (adj)	عالمي / دولي
well-known(adj)	مشهور	worry(ied) (n - v)	القلق - يقلق
		writer(n)	كاتب

Yv

ye (adv) جمعية شباب
youth association
youth (n) الشباب

2 Verbal Collocations

Collocations with 'do'			
do a crime	تفعل جريمة	do puzzles	يحل
do a favour	تفعل معجزة	do research	يبحث
do a job	تفعل عمل	do something to help	تفعل شيء لمساعدة
do a lesson	تفعل درس	do the homework	يفعل الواجب المنزلي
do a favour	تفعل معجزة	do voluntary work	يقوم بعمل تطوعي
do something wrong	تفعل شيئاً خاطئاً	do wrong	يخطئ

Collocations with 'feel'			
feel a shock	يشعر بالصدمة	feel safe	يشعر بالأمان
feel better	يشعر بخير	feel so hard	تبدو صعبة جداً
feel connected to	يشعر بالارتباط	feel stressed	يشعر بالتوتر
feel like	يشعر وكأنه		

Collocations with 'give'			
give food	يعطي طعاماً	give advice on	يجمع بمصير
give a chance	يعطي فرصة	give an opinion	يعطي رأي
give a hand	يساعد	give information	يعطي معلومات
give a job	يعطي عمل	give personal details	يعطي تفاصيل شخصية
give a talk	يتحدث	give a presentation	يقوم بعرض تقديمي
give a sense of responsibility	يعطي إحساساً بالمسؤولية	give a reason for	يشرح
give a nickname	يتلقب - يسمي	give a rhythm	يعطي إيقاع

Collocations with 'go'			
go diving	تسبح راحة حرورية	go missing	يتو / يضل الطريق
go trekking	تجول في رحلة فورية سيراً على الأقدام	go online	يدخل على الانترنت
go wrong	يتعطل / يحدث خطأ	go on a holiday	يسافر في إجازة

Collocations with 'have'			
have a reason	لديه سبب	have common interests	لديهم اهتمامات مشتركة
have a holiday	يأخذ إجازة	have a desire to	لديه رغبة أن
have an impact	له تأثير / تأثير	have health benefits	فوائد صحية
have a strong taste	ذو مذاق قوي	have long-term illness	يعاني من مرض مزمن
have a good time	يلهي وقتاً سعيداً	have nothing to do	ليس لديه ما يقوم به

have a child	لديه طفل - تضع مولود	have a game	يلعب لعبة
have no parents	ليس له والدين	have the ability to	لديه القدرة على
have debts	عليه ديون	have skills	لديه مهارات
have a problem with	لديه مشكلة في	have a class debate	يلتزم صراحة مع الطلاب
have bad news	لديه أخبار سيئة	have an effect on	تؤثر على
have time	لديه الوقت	have exams	لديه امتحانات
have no opportunity	ليس لديه فرصة	have a rhythm	له إيقاع
have a role	له دور يقوم به	have fun	يلعب / يمتع
have a happy ending	لها نهاية سعيدة	have a vote	تصوت / تصير
have a suggestion	لديه اقتراح	have a pen friend	لديه صديق مراسلة

Collocations with 'make'			
make money	يكتسب مال - يجمع ثروة	make a decision	يتخذ قرار
make brief notes	يأخذ ملاحظات قصيرة	make life better	يجعل الحياة أفضل
make a suggestion	يقدم اقتراح	make a request	يطلب
make a difference	يحدث فرقاً / يصنع الفارق	make a surface	يصنع سطح
make friends	يأخذ صداقات	make preparations for	يأخذ إجراءات
make sure	يتأكد / يتحقق / يتحقق	make notes	يأخذ ملاحظات
make movements	يأخذ حركات	make friends with	يتخذ صداقات

Collocations with 'take'			
take a taxi	يأخذ تاكسي	take a photo	يأخذ صورة
take a cruise	يقوم برحلة بحرية	take turns	يأخذ الأدوار
take to prison	يأخذ - يمسك	take a long time	يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً
take ... for granted	يأخذ ... كأمر مسلم به	take practice	يتخذ ممارسة

Other collocations:			
be different to / from	يكون مختلف عن	increase pollution	يزيد التلوث
be not welcome here	غير مرحب به هنا	introduce a law	يقدم قانون
be right to	يكون حق في	join clubs	يلتحق لنادي
be ill	يمرض	leave school	يغادر المدرسة
become friends	يصبحون أصدقاء	heavy	ثقل
break the law	يخالف القانون	look like	يبدو كـ
bring problems	يسبب مشكلات	right	أيسر على ما يُراد

PART 4

call	the police	اطلب الشرطة	owe	money to	يدين بالمال لـ
change	your opinion	تغير رأيك	pass	an exam	يحضر امتحان
	your understanding	تحقق من فهمك		a role	يلعب دوراً
	blood pressure	يقيس ضغط الدم	play	a trick on	يخدع
check	men level	يقيس نسبة الحديد في الدم	protest	ecosystem	يحافظ على النظام البيئي
	satnav	يسحق من التوجيه بالقرص الصناعي	provide	a holiday to	يظم رحلات إلى
collect	food	يجمع الطعام	reach	the final	يصل المباراة النهائية
come	home	يعود للبيت	run	the country	يدير البلد
create	jobs for	يوفر وظائف لـ	save	wild animals	يُقِّد الحيوانات البرية
	blood	يخبر بالدم	send	a message to	يُرسل
donate	money	يتبرع بالمال	solve	a problem	يحل مشكلة
earn	money	يكسب مال	spend	time reading	يقضي الوقت في القراءة
express	ideas	يعبر عن أفكار		university	يبدأ الدراسة الجامعية
face	a problem	يراهم مشكلة	start	a conversation	يبدأ حوار
fight	the bullies	يقابل المتنمرين		a new school	ينتقل لمدرسة جديدة
find	a solution to	يبحث حلاً لـ	safe		يبقي بأمان
	the steps	يتبع الخطوات	stay	in bed	يلزم الفراش
follow	rules	يتبع القواعد	study	online	يلوس عبر الإنترنت
forget	your worries	تنسى مخاوفك	tell	a story	يحكي قصة
	lost	يسود / يفقد الطريق	try	a hobby	يحارب ممارسة هواية
	the main idea	يفهم الفكرة الرئيسية	win	a prize	يلوِّز بجائزة
get	a job	يحصل على عمل		a competition	يلوِّز بمسابقة
	good marks	يحصل على درجات جيدة	write	a summary	يكتب تلخيصاً
	money	يحصل على مال		a blog	يكتب منشور في ملونة
improve	his health	يحسِّن صحته			
include	information	يضمِّن معلومات			

3 Synonyms : المتبادلات

Word	Synonym (=Meaning)
a long-term illness	مرض مُرَمِّس
admire	تُعجب بـ
admit	يُقرُّ به / يعترف بـ
	a serious illness
	praise / approve of / appreciate / respect
	confess

advert

amazing	إعجاز / advertisement / ad
ancient	مُذهل - رائع جداً
app	قديم / عتيق
blood donation	تطبيق
book	التبرع بالدم
cheat(ed)	يحجز
clear	بش
clear	واضح
closing	ساقط
common	إنهاء - ختام
concerned	عام - مُشترك - شائع
connection	مهتم - لديه اهتمام
conservation	ارتباط - اتصال
cool	حماية البيئة
crowded	علي الموصلة / جميل / جذاب
desire	مُرَدِّم
donate	رغبة - يرغب
earn	يتبرع
endangered	يكسب - يجني مال
exotic	مُعرض للخطر
exotic	أجنبي
famous	مُذهل / مُذهل (غير اعتادي)
generous	مشهور
giant	كريم - سخّي
grown-ups	عملاق - ضخم
hate	الكبار
impact	يكره
intelligent	أثر
isolated	ذكي
lock-up	بعيد / ناء - مُنعزل
	سجن صغير (التخفية)
	very good - astonishing - awesome
	very old
	application
	giving blood
	reserve
	deceive / trick
	obvious / understandable / direct / uncomplicated / explicit
	bright / cloudless
	conclusion / end / ending
	widespread / usual / ordinary / customary
	interested / involved / affected / connected
	link / relationship / relation
	preservation
	fashionable
	packed - congested - full
	wish
	give
	make (money)
	in danger - threatened
	foreign
	unusual / unconventional
	well-known
	giving / open-handed
	gigantic - enormous - huge
	adults
	loathe / detest
	effect - influence
	clever - brilliant - bright
	remote - faraway
	small prison

PART 4

livestock	الماشية cattle
malware	malicious software
material	الماتريال fabric
miserable	unhappy - depressed
monitor	track / observe - watch keep an eye on
nursery	care for / take care of / look after
over the moon	very happy
peaceful	serene - calm - tranquil - quiet
police	control keep in order / keep under control / regulate
recent	new / modern / late
relaxing	comforting
satnav	satellite navigation
scam	fraud - trick
search for	look for
spicy	hot
sustainable	environmentally friendly
trek	hike
unique	distinctive - individual - remarkable - special
voluntary	unpaid
walk	route / path

4 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (=opposite)
active	lazy - inactive
admire	disapprove of
admit	deny / conceal
advantages	disadvantages
against	with
agree(d)	disagree(d)
amazing	ordinary
ancient	modern - new

angry	غاضب	contented / satisfied - pleased	راضى - سعيد
avoid	بتجنب	confront	يراه
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبح
being	شئ	exciting - interesting	مثير - مثير
borrow	يستعير - يسأل	lend	يقرض - يسأل
busy	مشغول	free	حر - غير مشغول - متفرغ
calm - quiet	هادئ	noisy	مرعج - صاخب
clear	واضح	vague / unclear	غامض
clear	صافي	cloudy	معتدل
common	عام - شائع	unusual / rare	غير شائع - نادر
correct	صحيح	incorrect	غير صحيح
crowded	مزدحم	empty	فارغ
donate	يتبرع	keep / receive	يحتفظ به / يتسلم
download	تنزيل - تحميل (عن الانترنت)	upload	الرفع - رفع (عن الانترنت)
dress	يرتدي ملابس	undress - take off	يخلع ملابس
earn(ed)	يكسب - يجني مال	lose	يفقد
effect	أثر	cause / reason	سبب
empty	فارغ	full	ممتلئ
exciting	مثير	boring	ممل
exotic	أجنبي	native	محلي
exotic	مختلف / مختلف (غير اعتيادي)	usual - conventional	عادي - تقليدي
fair	عادل	unfair	قائم - جائر
forget - forgot - forgotten	ينسى	remember(ed)	يتذكر
formal	بلدية رسمية	informal	بعدد درجة
full-time	دوام كامل	part-time	جزئي - ليعمل الوقت
generous	كريم - سخو - جواد	mean / selfish	بخل / أناني
hate	بكره	love / like	يحب
honest	أمين	dishonest	غير أمين - متعدي
intelligence	الدكاء	stupidity	الغباء
intelligent	ذكي	stupid	عبي

isolated	social	اجتماعي
kind	unkind - cruel	سيء / قاس
light	dark - darkness	ظلام
lock	unlock - open	يفتح
long-term	short-term / temporary	قصير الأمد - مؤقت
major	minor - little - unimportant	صغير - غير هام
miserable	happy - contented	سعيد - راض
online	offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت - ليس على الإنترنت
optional	compulsory	إجباري
peaceful	noisy - agitated - hostile	صاخب - عدائي
personal	public	عام
plump	thin / slender / skinny	نحيف
popular	unpopular	معمود - غير معروف
positive	negative	سلب
regular	irregular	غير مألوف - غير منظم
relaxing	stressful - tiring	مُجهِد - مُتعب
right	wrong	خطأ
save(d)	endanger(ed)	يُعرض للخطر
save(d)	waste(d)	يُهدر - يُبدد
security	danger / insecurity	الخطر / انعدام الأمن
send	receive	يستقبل
similar	different	مختلف
sustainable	unsustainable	غير دائم
unique	common - ordinary	عادي - شائع
voluntary	compulsory / obligatory / paid	إجباري - مدفوع لأجر
wild	domestic / tame	البيت / مستأنس
with	without	بدون

5 Expressions & Idioms

a boy of four	ولد عمره 4 سنوات	I'm afraid I can't	برحمتي أمي لا أستطيع
a cruise to remember	رحلة بحرية لا أنسى	in a few years	حداق سنوات قليلة
a form of writing	أحد أنواع الكتابة	in a friendly way	بطريقة ودية
a full time writer	كاتب مُتفرغ	in addition to	بالإضافة إلى
a mind map	خريطة ذهنية	in groups	في مجموعات
a new way to travel	طريقة جديدة للسفر	in my opinion	في رأيي
a radio phone-in	برنامج إذاعي يشارك فيه الجمهور بصوتهم	in order to	من أجل
a sense of responsibility	الإحساس بالمسؤولية	in progress	مستمر
a serious problem	مشكلة خطيرة	in trouble	في عار
a victim of its own beauty	ضحية جمالها	informal English	الإنجليزية الدارجة
address ... by title	بألقاب	instead of	بدلاً من
address ... by name	بألقاب	its rhythm is too slow	إيقاعه بطيء جداً
all over	في كل أنحاء	keep ... as a souvenir	بخطبه ... كتمكاز
all without	كل ذلك بدون	keep ... safe	يُحفظ ... في أماكن
an adventure story	قصة مغامرة	key information	المعلومات الرئيسية
an advert for	إعلان عن	kill animals for sport	بعضاد الحيوانات كرياضة
an example of	مثال على	leave busy city life behind	يتخلى عن ضغوط حياة المدينة
angry with	غاضب من	lines that rhyme	قطر شعري ذات قافية
any more	مرة أخرى	local population	السكان المحليين
around the world	حول العالم	long-term illness	مرض مزمن
as far as I'm concerned	بقدر اهتمامي	made him give it back	جعله يعيده
as much as	بنفس الكَم	make it easy to say	يجعل من السهل قولها
as often as I can	كثيراً لأقصى حد ممكن	make life worse for	يجعل الحياة أسوأ
ask someone to your house	يطلب من شخص أن	make us all laugh	يجعلنا جميعاً نضحك
at a certain time	في وقت معين	my job was to	كانت وظيفتي هي أن
at breaktime	في الفسحة	no longer	لم يعد
at night	في الليل	none of them	لا أحد منهم
at the end of	في نهاية	not ... any more	ليس ... مرة أخرى
at this age	في هذا السن	nursing people	تريض الناس

away on holiday	on all our flights	على جميع رحلات الجوى
be a role model to	on board = aboard	على متن سفينة أو طائرة
be able to	on his way home	في طريق عودته للمنزل
be admired for	on my own	بمفردي
be arranged in	on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
be badly injured	on the balcony	في الشرفة
be based on guesswork	on the computer / smartphone	على الكمبيوتر / الهاتف الذكي
be best known for	on the islands	في الجزر
be connected to	on the moon	على القمر
be interested in	on the other hand,	من الناحية الأخرى
be known as	on the way there	وفي الطريق إلى هناك
be outside playing	over the moon	سعيد جداً
be praised for	physical abilities	قدرات بدنية
be special about	pieces of advice	نصائح
be stressed about	quite the other way	على العكس تماماً
be tired of	radio show	برنامج إذاعي
busy (with) + (inf + ing)	read aloud	اقرأ بصوت عال
by candlelight	Red Crescent	الهلال الأحمر
by day	respect for diversity	احترام التنوع
careful about	revise for exams	راجع للامتحانات
click on the link	riding on boats	ركوب المراكب
close to	say unkind things about	يقول أشياء سيئة عن
compare and contrast	seem hard to	يبدو صعباً بالنسبة لـ
continue (up) to	send Egypt to the World Cup finals	بعضد بمصر لنهائيات كأس العالم
daily life	show the reason for	يوضح السبب لـ
date published	similar to you	يشبهك
decision making	Social Media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
difference in meaning	stay abroad	بقي خارج البلاد
different from / to	stop it working	يجعله يتوقف عن العمل
disabled children	stressed words	كلمات يرتفع فيها الصوت
disadvantages to	such a remote place	بأله من مكان ناء

early life	summarize the main points	ملخص النقاط الرئيسية
easy to remember	take part in	يشارك في
environmentally-friendly	talking to one another	يتحدثون إلى بعضهم البعض
everyday life	thanks to	بفضل
except for	that's all for now	هذا كل ما لدى الآن
expert at / on / in	the details of the story	تفاصيل القصة
Faculty of Arts	the local council	المجلس المحلي
famous for	the poor law	قانون الفقراء - القانون الثاني
feel differently	the reason for	سبب لـ
find advice for	the space provided	الفضاء المخصص
find him a good job	the World Blood Donor Day	اليوم العالمي لتبرع بالدم
first of all	there should be	يجب أن يكون هناك
for a while	there's nothing to do	لا يوجد ما يفعله
for example,	this was where...	هنا كان حيث ..
for no money = for free	to conclude/ in conclusion	والخلاصة هي
for the first time	tourist destinations	أماكن يقصدها السياح
a piece of writing	tourist industry	السياحة للسياح
free time	travel books	أدب الرحلات
from all around the world	true for you	صحيحة بالنسبة لك
from different angles	wedding party	حفل زفاف
giving blood	what kind of person	أي نوع من الأشخاص
go on a boat trip	when it is light	في النهار
go on a cruise	where to go	أين يذهب
go travelling	who else	من أيضاً
good to hear from you	with his mouth open	وكأن فيه مفتوحاً
happiness maker	words that rhyme	كلمات تأتي مع بعضها البعض
health problem	working together	العمل معاً
Here's some advice	worldwide web	الشبكة العالمية

historic buildings

How about ?

at Thanksgiving

at the same time

at the touch of a button

at the weekends

bad for

badly designed

banner adverts

be addicted to

be aware of

be careful about

be careful with

be curious about

be distracted with / by

be friendly with

be friends with

be happy about

be interested in

be known for

be late for

be right to

be unkind to

be upset with

become a pioneer in

become known as

by 2030

write in clear simple words

young people

need help with

negative advice

no longer able to

normal breathing

old-fashioned

on a flat surface

on different occasions

on social media

on the island

on the menu

on the side of

on their phones

on top of

on your profile

one question at a time

open spaces

personally

plant life

poor soil

positive advice

possible solutions

rather than

reliable sources

see you later

severe injury

يكتب مستخدماً كلمات بسيطة واضحة

الشباب

بحاجة مساعدة في

نصيحة سلبية

لم يعد قادراً على

التنفس الطبيعي

عفا عليه الزمن - عتيق

على سطح مسطح

في مناسبات مختلفة

على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

على الجزيرة

في القائمة

على جانب

على هواتفهم المحمولة

فوق

على حالتك (صفحتك الشخصية)

سؤالاً واحداً في كل مرة

لماكن مفتوحة

شخصياً

الحياة النباتية

التربة الرديئة

نصيحة إيجابية

حلول ممكنة

بدلاً من - أفضل من

مصادر موثوقة

أراك لاحقاً

إصابة شديدة

call for help

climate change

come very close to

different from / to

distant past events

due to the fact that

each other

eager to

easy to understand

emergency services

explanation of / for

face to face

facial expressions

fact-checking

far away

farming techniques

fast food

feel so alone

find it hard

find us ready to

first aid kit

food production

food products

for ages

for many years to come

for me

for most people

share food from one plate

since = ever since

small changes to

small enough to

so far

So what?

social media behaviour

solutions to

sound great

soup with noodles

South-East Asia

spelling mistakes

spend money on

spicy food

stay fit

stay in touch with

stay up late

such as

sudden death

sun cream

sustainable solutions

take an interest in

take up a sport

targeted advertising

text messaging

the findings of a survey

the flow of water

the findings of a survey

the flow of water

the flow of water

بأكلون من نفس الطبق

منذ ذلك الحين

تعديلات صغيرة في

صغير بما يكفي لكي

حتى الآن

وماذا في ذلك؟

سلوك على مواقع التواصل

حلول لـ

يسمى رائعاً

حساء الكرونة

جنوب شرق آسيا

أخطاء هجائية

يقتن مالاً على

طعام مثيل

يظل لائقاً بدنياً

يبقى على اتصال به

يسهر لوقت متأخر

مثل

الموت المفاجئ

كريم واقي من الشمس

حلول مستدامة

يظهر اهتماماً به

يبدأ ممارسة رياضة

الإعلان الموجه

التواصل عن طريق الرسائل النصية

نتائج دراسة استطلاعية

تدفق المياه

تدفق المياه

تدفق المياه

تدفق المياه

تدفق المياه

تدفق المياه

تدفق المياه

تدفق المياه

تدفق المياه

تدفق المياه

تدفق المياه

form of communication	أحد طرق التواصل	the latest software update	أحدث إصدارات البرنامج
formal English	اللغة الإنجليزية الرسمية	the main idea	الفكرة الرئيسية
free ... for	مجاناً	the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط
fun to use	متعة في استخدامه	the negative side of	الجانب السلبي لـ
get cut down	يتم تقطيعه	the original text	النص الأصلي
get ill more often	يمرض كثيراً	the other day	مؤخراً
get sick from	يصاب بالاعياء من	the reason why	السبب في أن
get something ready	يجهز شيئاً ما	the rest of	بقية
go on a picnic	يذهب في نزهة	the whole text	النص بالكامل
go past	يمر -	think fast	يفكر بسرعة
good for	مفيد لـ	this is why	لهذا السبب
green space	مساحة خضراء	to conclude	الخلاصة أن ...
growing world	العالم المتزايد	to do with	لها علاقة بـ
have nothing to do with	لا علاقة له	treat ... badly	يعامل ... بشكل سيء
healthy hearts	قلوب بصحة جيدة	two-day course	برنامج تدريبي مدته يومان
here he / she is	هنا هو / هي	upload ... to a website	يرفع ... على موقع
I can't wait!	أنتظر بفارغ الصبر	urban farming	الزراعة في المدن
I see your point	أفهم ما تقصد	URL (uniform resource locator)	رابط (الموقع أو الصفحة)
in a logical order	بترتيب منطقي	use ... positively	يستخدم ... بشكل إيجابي
in a particular situation	في موقف معين	use first and third person	يستخدم ضمير المذكر / المتكلمين
in a way that shows	بطريقة توضح أن	visit ... for Thanksgiving	يُزور ... في عيد الشكر
in an unfriendly tone	بترية عدائية	welcome to	أهلاً بكم في
in contact with	على اتصال بـ	well-written essay	مقال مكتوب جيداً
in different colours	بألوان مختلفة	What's up?	ماذا لدينا؟ / ما الجديد؟
in difficult situations	في المواقف الصعبة	whether ... or not	سواء ... أم لا
In fact,	في الحقيقة	with clear meanings	ذو معاني واضحة
in general,	بصفة عامة	with help from	بمساعدة من

in response to	رداً على	worried about	القلق على
in the first place	في المقام الأول	wrong with	الخطأ في

Verb + Prepositions

add to	تضيف إلى	hear from	يطلق أخبار
address ... by	يعاطب ... بـ	hear of	يسمع بـ / يعرف عن
admire ... for	يقعّب بـ ... بسبب	help ... with	يساعد ... في
agree about	يتفق في	know (...) about	يعرف (...) عن
arrange ... in	ترتب ... على شكل	lean ... on / against	يسند ... على
arrange to	يرتب أن	learn about	يتعلم عن
ask for	يطلب	learn from	يتعلم من
be based in	مقرّه في (مكان)	learn to	يتعلم أن
be based on	مقرّه في (الفكرة)	live in	يعيش في
benefit from	يستفيد من	live with	يعيش مع
blow ... off	يُثقل - يُقشر ... من	make ... into	يُحوّل ... إلى
break into	يقتحم	match ... to	يرسل ... بـ
break up	ينفك	mix with	يخلط بـ - يتداخل مع
bring ... into / to	يُحضّر ... إلى	move to	ينقل إلى
care for	يهتم بـ	owe ... to	يجب بـ ... لـ
check for	يُفحص للوصول لـ	pay back	يرد الدين - يُسّد
choose ... to	يختار ... لـ	play for	يلعب لـ (نادي مثلاً)
choose from	يختار من بين	point at / to / towards	يُشير إلى
click on	ينقر على	praise ... for	يمدح ... بسبب
come from	يأتي من	put ... away	يضع ... جانباً
come out	يخرج - يُنشر	remove ... from	يُزال ... من
communicate with	يتصل بـ / يتواصل مع	reply to	يرد على
compare ... with	يُقدّر ... بـ	rhyme with	يُفّق مع
complete (...) with	يُكمل (...) بـ	run away	يهرب
connect ... to	يربط ... بـ	run past	يجري متجاوزاً
connect with	يرتبط بـ	say ... about	يقول ... عن
cycle across	يقود الدراجة عبر		
deal with	يتعامل مع / يراجه		

decide to	search for	يبحث عن
disagree about	send (...) to	يُرسل (...) إلى ...
disappear from	send away	يُطرَد
debate for to	stay with	يقيم مع
drive to	steal from	يسرق ... من
encourage to	stop at	يتوقف في
escape from	take away	يأخذ ... بعيداً
escape to	take ... to	يأخذ ... إلى
find out about	talk about	يتحدث عن
focus on	talk to	يتحدث إلى
get to	teach (how) to	يُعلم ... كيف
get up	think of	يفكر في
go away	trek across / through	يسير مسافة طويلة عبر
go down	trek into / in	يسير مسافة طويلة إلى داخل / في
go out	turn from ... to	يتحول من ... إلى
go past	work for	يعمل لـ
grow up	work in	يعمل في
hack into	work with	يعمل مع / في
happen to	worry about	يقلق على
hear (...) about	write about	يكتب عن
adapt ... to	heat ... up	يُسخن ... يُسخن
add ... to	help with	يساعد في
addict to	increase ... by	يزيد ... بـ
advise ... to / not to	invite ... to	يدعو ... إلى
agree with	learn about	يتعلم عن
allow ... to	learn from	يتعلم من
apply for	live on	يعيش على / في
argue with	look after	يرعى / يعتني بـ
ask ... for	look around	يبحث في المكان المحيط
ask ... to / not to	look back at	ينظر مرة أخرى إلى
belong to	look for	يبحث عن

care about	look forward to + (inf + ing)	ينظف إلى
catch up with	lose up to	يُفقد ما يربط به
change ... into	order ... to / not to	يأمر ... إلى / ألا
change to	pay ... for	يدفع ثمن
chat to / with	pay ... to	يدفع ... لـ
check ... against / with	persuade ... to	يقنع ... إلى
choose from	pick up	يسأل - يلتقط
choose to	place ... on	صاح ... على
come / go back	plan to	يخطط لـ
come into	press down	يضغط لأسفل
communicate with	protect ... from / against	يحمي ... من
connect to	pull ... out	يرفع - يترك / يخلع
continue (to+ inf.) / (inf. + ing)	put ... down	يترك
continue to	put up	يضع - يرفع
cut down	refer back to	يشير إلى
deal with	relate to	يتعلق بـ
decide on	remember to	يتذكر أن
decide to	remove ... from	يريد ... من
dig out of	reply to	رد على
disagree about	rise up	يرتفع - يخلو
encourage ... to / not to	run off	اقتطع
expect ... to	seem to	يبدو أن
explain ... to	sell ... to	يبيع ... لـ
fall down	share ... with	يشارك ... مع
feel about	speak to	يتحدث إلى
fight against	start with	يبدأ بـ
fill in	stay up	يسهر
	take ... away	يأخذ

Listening Al Azhar tests

١. الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة الجيزة - القسم العلمي

1. James finished studying his term two days ago. He has too much free time as he is on his mid-year holiday. James decided to visit Egypt because he has good and happy memories there.

٢. الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة المنوفية - القسم العلمي

2. The Red Sea Coast is developing eco-tourism to protect the environment in Egypt. Tourists are taught to preserve the environment and avoid damaging the sea wealth and keeping coral reefs safe.

٣. الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة الشرقية - القسم الأدبي

3. Egypt is a great country. It has a lot of interesting places. Egypt's capital is Cairo. All people are kind. The formal language in Egypt is Arabic.

٤. الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة بنى سويف - القسم الأدبي

4. Ahmed Zewail was a great and famous Egyptian scientist. He discovered the Femtosecond. All the Egyptians are proud of Dr Zewail.



New
Hello!

& Treasure Island

By A Group Of Supervisors

Master
Your Skills

الصف الأول الثانوي
الفصل الدراسي الأول



موقع
التفوق
AltFwok.com



EL-MOASSER

GUIDE

1st
Sec.
2023
FIRST TERM

Preface

Dear Colleagues & Students

It's a pleasure to introduce this guide to cope with the latest trend in our educational system which adopts the assessment process that is based on measuring higher thinking skills (comprehension - application - analysis - synthesis - evaluation). This requires implementing new learning and teaching strategies.

This guide aims at helping teachers to :

- Promote student's abilities through learning in an enjoyable, safe and cooperative setting.
- Enforce students' language skills which prepare them for the employment market.
- Foster students' learning skills to pass tests confidently all the academic year around.

Therefore, this guide is considered a comprehensive resource presenting language skills fundamentals which have already been taught in primary and preparatory stages. Besides, it covers all language skills according to curriculum national standards for the secondary stage.

This guide consists of :

- A comprehensive presentation of structures.
- Reading comprehension passages with higher thinking skills questions.
- Pieces of creative writing, writing skills and how to write essays, letters, e-mails, and short stories

Finally, a part deals with the principles of translation from English into Arabic and vice versa, in addition to useful language expressions.

We hope you find this guide not only beneficial, but interesting as well.

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

إِنَّا نُرِيدُ أَنْ نَمُنَّ بِكُمْ وَأَعْمَلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ إِنَّا لَا نُضِيعُ أَثَرًا مِنْ أَحْسَنَ عَمَلًا
صَدَقَ اللَّهُ تَعَالَى

أعزالي المعلمين والطلاب

بسمنا أن يقدم لحضراتكم هذا الدليل الذي يواكب التطور الذي تشهده العملية التعليمية في السنوات الأخيرة، وما تتميز به من نظام التقييم الذي يهدف إلى قياس مهارات التفكير العليا (الفهم - التطبيق - التحليل - التركيب - التقييم) ومخرجات التعلم، ولتحقيق ذلك، كان لزاماً استخدام طرق تدريس حديثة تعتمد على الفهم والتحليل والاستقصاء وتنمية المهارات العليا وليس على أسلوب الحفظ والتلقين.

ويقدم هذا الدليل الإرشادات وطرق التدريس الحديثة للمعلم التي تمكنه من :

- مساعدة الطلاب على تنمية مهاراتهم اللغوية بشكل عملي داخل بيئة تعليمية تنمى بروح التعاون والإيجابية.
- تحفز الطلاب على التعلم المستمر باستغلال مهارات التعلم الذاتي ومهارات التواصل التي تؤهل لسوق العمل.
- تدريب الطلاب على مختلف أنواع أسئلة مهارات التفكير العليا ليكون دائماً مستعداً لاجتياز الاختبارات بثقة على مدار العام الدراسي بكفاءة.
- ويتكون هذا الدليل من عدة أجزاء هي :
- عرض شامل لكل القواعد اللغوية التي تم تدريسها في المرحلة الابتدائية والإعدادية وأيضاً الثانوية.
- فصل كامل يقدم العديد من قطع الفهم وأسئلة تحترق مهارات التفكير العليا.
- فصل كامل يشرح مهارات الكتابة وأنواع الكتابة (المقالات - الخطابات - رسائل البريد الإلكتروني - والقصص القصيرة)
- وأخيراً جزء يتناول مبادئ الترجمة من الإنجليزية إلى العربية والعكس بالإضافة إلى تعبيرات لغوية مفيدة.
- أمل أن يكون هذا الدليل ليس فقط مفيداً ولكن أيضاً مستمتعاً.

CONTENTS



PART 1

1

Grammar

القواعد اللغوية

PART 2

2

Skills

المهارات



تنويه

استخدم ملحق المهارات
بطاقة مستمرة أثناء العام الدراسي
لتتمكن من تنمية مهارات اللغوية

PART

1

Grammar

القواعد اللغوية

موقع
التفوق
AltFwok.com



- 1- The Structure of the Simple Sentence
- 2- Parts of Speech
- 3- Tenses
- 4- Kinds of Sentences

١. بناء الجملة البسيطة
٢. أقسام الكلام
٣. الأزمنة
٤. الجمل بأنواعها

تنويه

تابع مستواك أولاً
بأول إلكتروني



1 The Structure of the Simple Sentence بناء الجملة البسيطة

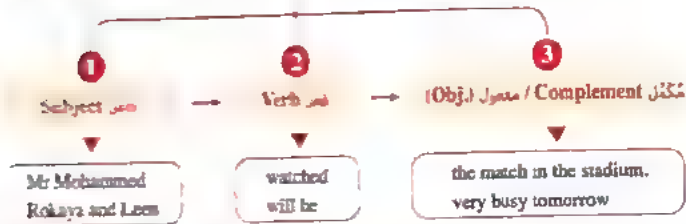
في هذا الجزء سنتعرف على كسب الجملة، وقد المصنوع منه حد كمي

1. تفهم ما يقوله الآخرون (مهارة الاستماع)
2. تُعبر عن أفكارك والطباعت وما تريد (مهارة الحديث)
3. تقرأ وتُفهم وتحلل وتستنتج (مهارة القراءة والتفكير النقدي)
4. تُنمي القدرة على التعبير الإبداعي (مهارة الكتابة، مثل: وِدة الكتيبي - قصة - إنج)
5. تُتقن نقل الأفكار المعنى (المراد) من لغة لأخرى (أمن الترجمة).

أولاً : الجملة العينية للمعلوم

- تتكون الجملة الخبرية البسيطة العينية للمعلوم من :

Active Simple Sentence الجملة البسيطة في العيني للمعلوم



- المكونات الرئيسية الثلاثة للجملة البسيطة :

1 Subject المفاعل

1 الفاعل هو الذي يقوم بالفعل :

e.g. :- Ali ate a sandwich. - My horse won the race.

2 يمكن أن يكون الفاعل هو موضوع الجملة (يقابله المبتدأ في اللغة العربية) :

e.g. :- Mariam is tall. - Sports make us fit.

3 قد يكون الفاعل اسم إنسان / حيوان / مكان / شيء معنوي غير ملموس ... إلخ :

e.g. :- Roxdayna studies medicine at university. (اسم إنسان)

- The cat caught a rat. (اسم حيوان)
- Our house is in Aswan. (اسم مكان)
- Cooperation makes people happy. (اسم معنوي)

1 قد يكون الفاعل اسم مفرد أو جمع [أنظر الجزء الخاص بالاسماء (Nouns)] :

e.g. :- My sister is at home. - My sisters are at home.

2 تعمل صيغ الفاعل التالية محل فاعل الجملة :

I - you - he - she - it - we - they

e.g. :- Omar is clever. = He is clever.
- Nada is beautiful. = She is beautiful.
- Esraa and Doaa are sisters. = They are sisters.
- The lion and the tiger are strong. = They are strong.

3 نستخدم صفات الإشارة التالية كفاعل للجملة :

هؤلاء / هذا (للمفرد القريب) - this
أولئك (للمجمع القريب) - these
ذلك / تلك (للمفرد البعيد) - that
أولئك (للمجمع البعيد) - those

e.g. :- This is my friend. - These are my friends.
- That was a good present. - Those were good presents.

4 ونستخدم صفات الإشارة أيضاً قبل فاعل الجملة :

e.g. :- This boy got high marks. - These boys got high marks.
- That dog chased a cat. - Those dogs chased a cat.

5 قد نستخدم العناصر غير المحددة التالية كفاعل للجملة :

- someone - somebody - something - somewhere
- anyone - anybody - anything - anywhere
- everyone - everybody - everything - everywhere
- no one - nobody - nothing - nowhere

e.g. :- Someone took my tablet. - No one is at home.
- Everyone wants you to succeed. - Anything can change your opinion.

6 يمكن استخدام (One) بمعنى (المرء / الفرد) كفاعل للجملة :

e.g. :- One must help other people.

7 نستخدم (it) أحياناً كفاعل وظيفي أو مُفهم في بعض الجمل :

e.g. :- It has been hot today. (It = The weather)
- It is nine o'clock. (It = The time)
- It was kind of you to help me. (It = The action itself)

2 Verb الفعل

e.g.: - Magdi ate a sandwich

١ يأتي الفعل غالباً بعد الفاعل :
- We will go shopping.

٢ يحدد الفعل زمن الجملة

Sentence	الجملة	Tense	الزمن
He plays football.	إثبات	Present Simple	مضارع بسيط
He doesn't play football.	نفي		
He is playing football.	إثبات	Present Cont.	مضارع مستمر
He isn't playing football.	نفي		
He has played football.	إثبات	Present Perfect	مضارع تام
He hasn't played football.	نفي		
He has been playing football.	إثبات	Present Perfect Cont.	مضارع تام مستمر
He hasn't been playing football.	نفي		
He played football.	إثبات	Past Simple	ماضي بسيط
He didn't play football.	نفي		
He was playing football.	إثبات	Past Cont.	ماضي مستمر
He wasn't playing football.	نفي		
He had played football.	إثبات	Past Perfect	ماضي تام
He hadn't played football.	نفي		
He had been playing football.	إثبات	Past Perfect Cont.	ماضي تام مستمر
He hadn't been playing football.	نفي		
He will play football.	إثبات	Future Simple	مستقبل بسيط
He won't play football.	نفي		
He will be playing football.	إثبات	Future Cont.	مستقبل مستمر
He won't be playing football.	نفي		
He will have played football.	إثبات	Future Perfect	مستقبل تام
He won't have played football.	نفي		
He will have been playing football.	إثبات	Future Perfect Cont.	مستقبل تام مستمر
He won't have been playing football.	نفي		

٢ هناك أفعال لا ترافق (intransitive) بمعنى أنها لا تأخذ مفعول به مثل :
he - go - sleep - smile - cry - look = sound = seem = appear ... etc.

e.g.: - She smiled when she saw her son.
- He looks happy.

٣ هناك أفعال متعديّة (transitive) بمعنى أنها تأخذ مفعول به أو أكثر مثل :
eat - play - visit - choose - take - give - like - see ... etc.

e.g.: - We saw a lion under a tree.
- She gave me some food.

٤ لأفعال الناقصة (Modals) التالية يأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر :
will - would - can - could - may - might - shall - should - must - needn't

e.g.: - Noha can drive a car. - I will buy this T-shirt.
- You needn't go out now. - You mustn't smoke here.

٥ الأفعال شبه الناقصة (Semi-modals) التالية يأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر :
have to - has to - had to - used to - need to - be going to - be able to
- be supposed to ... etc. من المفترض أن - be to من المفترض أن

e.g.: - Amir has to arrive at school at seven.
- I used to live in the countryside.

٦ قد تحتوي الجملة على أكثر من فعل مساعد :
e.g.: - I have been sleeping for eight hours now.

- I will have finished my university course by next month.

٧ هناك أفعال يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) وهناك أفعال يأتي بعدها الفعل مضارعاً له (ing) أو اسم :
e.g.: - She wants to work in a tourist company.

- He suggested having lunch outdoors.

٨ الفاعل المفرد يأخذ فعل مفرد والفاعل الجمع يأخذ فعل جمع :
e.g.: - She is clever. - They are clever.
- Omar works hard. - Omar and Karim work hard.

هناك أفعال تُسمى أفعال المطابقة (ergative verbs) وهي الأفعال التي يمكن أن يُستخدم معها كفاعل لها بنفس المعنى. ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال :

bake	خبز - خبز - خبز	melt	يذوب - يذوب
boil	يغلي	move	يُتحرك - يتحرك
break	يكسر - يكسر	open	يفتح - يفتح
burst	ينفجر - ينفجر	run	يُدير - يجري
cook	يطبخ - يصح (أشوي)	sail	يقود السفينة - يُبحر
drive	يقود - يهتق - يهتق	shake	يُزجج - يهتز / يرتعش
fly	يُطير - يطير / يصعد جزاً	tear	يُسزق - يتمزق
form	يُكون - يتكون	transform	يُحوّل - يتحول
grow	يربع - ينمو	turn	يلف - يدور من تلقاء نفسه
heal	يُعالج العرج - يشفي	walk	يمشي - يأخذ ... للتمشية

- e.g. : - The hot weather melted the ice. (أذاب)
 The ice melted in the hot weather. (ذاب)
 - Farmers grow a lot of plants. (يزرع)
 A lot of trees grow in the forest. (تنمو)
 - I walked with my wife by the Nile. (يسير)
 I walked my wife by the Nile. (أخذ ... للتمشية)

لوصف طريقة حدوث الفعل تستخدم ظروف الكيفية، ويأتي الظرف بعد الفعل أو في نهاية الجملة :

- e.g. : - I walk carefully in this busy street.
 - I walk in this busy street carefully.

تأتي ظروف التكرار التالية قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد (be) والأفعال لمساعدة :

أحياناً sometimes - غالباً often - عادة usually - دائماً always
 etc. ... أبداً never - نادراً rarely = scarcely = seldom - بين الحين والآخر occasionally

- e.g. : - She always gets up early.
 - He is always careful.

3 Complement (المكمل الجملة)

المقصود بالمكمل هو باقي الجملة التي يأتي بعد الفاعل والفعل :

- e.g. : - I bought some fruit yesterday.

يمكن أن يكون المكمل صفة (أو صفة بعدها اسم) تصف الفاعل وتأتي بعد أفعال الربط مثل :

be [am, is, are, was, were, has / have been, being, might have been, etc.]

become = get = grow = turn يصبح - seem = appear = sound = look يبدو -

تبقى / يظل remain يكون ذو مذاق taste - يكون ذو رائحة smell - يشعر / يكون ذو ملمس feel - يبقى / يظل

- e.g. : - She is tired. - Amr looks happy.
 - My mother grew old. - Sama got angry.

يمكن أن يكون المكمل اسم يُعرّف الفاعل أو يصفه :

- e.g. : - Alaa is a doctor. - Alaa is a clever doctor.

يمكن أن يكون المكمل مفعول (اسم / صفة يتبعها اسم / عبارة اسمية ... الخ) :

- e.g. : - I bought a car.
 - I bought a new car.
 - I bought a large new car.

يمكن أن يكون المكمل أحد ضمائر المفعول التالية :

me - him - her - it - you - us - them - one

- e.g. : - An old friend called me.
 - My friends have arrived. I'll welcome them.

يمكن أن يكون المكمل جار ومجرور (حرف جر + اسم) :

- e.g. : - Mr Mohammed lives in Aswan.
 - Abdulrahman plans to get married next year.
 - Bassem works as a police officer.

يمكن أن يكون المكمل ظرف زمان أو مكان :

- e.g. : - I have always lived here.
 - She arrived yesterday.

يمكن أن يكون المكمل ظرف كيفية (بدل على طريقة وقوع الفعل) :

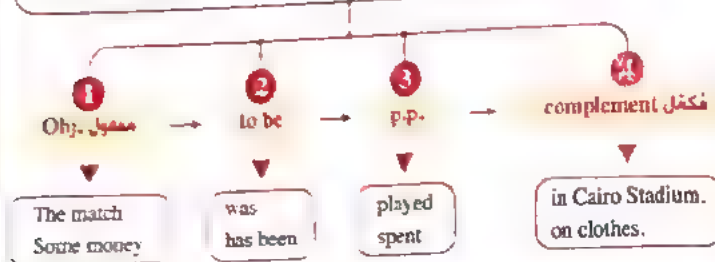
- e.g. : - This old man walks slowly.
 - She didn't sleep well.
 - Karim studies hard.

ليس بالضرورة أن يكون هناك مُكْمَل مع الأفعال اللازمة (التي لا تأخذ مفعول به):
- Mr Ashraf didn't arrive.

e.g.: - The baby has slept.

ثانياً : الجملة المعنوية للمجهول.

الجملة البسيطة في صيغة المبني للمجهول



Sentence	الجملة	Tense	الزمن
He sells vegetables.	معلوم	Present Simple	مضارع بسيط
Vegetables are sold (by him).	مجهول	Present Cont.	مضارع مستمر
He is selling vegetables.	معلوم	Present Perfect	مضارع تام
Vegetables have been sold (by him).	مجهول	Past Simple	ماضي بسيط
He sold vegetables.	معلوم	Past Cont.	ماضي مستمر
Vegetables were sold (by him).	مجهول	Past Perfect	ماضي تام
He had sold vegetables.	معلوم	Future Simple	مستقبل بسيط
Vegetables will be sold (by him).	مجهول	Future Perfect	مستقبل تام
He will have sold vegetables.	معلوم		
Vegetables will have been sold (by him).	مجهول		

2 Parts of Speech - الأقسام الكلامية



- وسما يلي شرح شامل لكل هذه الأجزاء .

1 Nouns - الأسماء

People : man - woman - girl - boy - uncle - Sama - Omar...etc.

Animals : whale - dog - bird - lion - cat - snake ... etc.

Things : plant - tree - rock - sea - love - beauty... etc.

Place : Paris - Asia - Space - Kitchen - Europe - Egypt ... etc

Countable and Uncountable Nouns - الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

A Countable Nouns - الأسماء المعدودة

1 الأساء التي تعد بكون لها مفرد وجمع وهي تجمع بإضافة (s/es/ies) مثل :

- a girl → girls
- an egg → eggs
- a bus → buses
- a library → libraries

2 هناك جمع غير منتظم مثل :

Singular	مفرد	Plural	جمع
child	طفل	children	أطفال
crisis	أزمة	crises	أزمات
datum	معلومة	data	معلومات
foot	قدم	feet	أقدام
goose	وزة	geese	أوز
man	رجل	men	رجال
medium	وسيلة إعلامية	media	وسائل الإعلام
mouse	فأر	mice	أفئران
oasis	واحة	oases	واحات

Altfwok.com موقع التفوق

ox	نود	oxen	ثيران
phenomenon	ظاهرة	phenomena	ظواهر
tooth	سنة	teeth	أسنان
woman	امراة	women	نساء

٢ قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد يمكن أن نستخدم الآتي :

a / an	- My father bought a car.
One	- I've just seen an accident.
Every / Each	- One student got the full marks.
	- Every player in the team trains hard.
	- Each tourist has a camera.
This / That	- This girl is my daughter.
	- That motorbike belongs to me.

١ قبل الأسماء الجمع يُمكن أن نستخدم الآتي :

these / هؤلاء / those / أولئك / some / بعض / any / أي / many / كثير / a few / قليل /
a lot of / كثير من / lots of / كثير من / several / عديد / two / three

e.g. :- I met several friends in the party.
- I have a few books in my bag.
- These boys are my cousins.
- Five nurses are helping the surgeon.

Uncountable Nouns

❶ الأسماء غير المحدودة لا يوجد لها صيغة جمع، وتشمل ما يلي :

1. Liquids
water - juice - tea - coffee - oil - milk - soup - blood ... etc.
2. Gases
oxygen - hydrogen - nitrogen - carbon dioxide ... etc.
3. Meals
breakfast - lunch - dinner - supper

4. School subjects
history - mathematics - physics - الفيزياء - biology - الأحياء ... etc.
5. Languages
English - Arabic - French - German ... etc.
6. Different activities
reading - smoking - writing - studying - shopping - eating ... etc.
7. Sports
football - volleyball - basketball - swimming... etc.
8. Materials
coffee - glass - gold - iron - lime - حامض الليمون - stone - sand - soil - sugar - tea - wood ... etc.
9. Natural phenomena
lightning - البرق - heat - snow - thunder - الرعد - light - rain
10. Abstract nouns
honesty - أمانة - hope - beauty - help - love - hatred - كراهية - confidence - ثقة - courage - شجاعة - experience - خبرة - progress - تقدم - evidence - دليل - patience - الصبر - peace - السلام - poverty - الفقر etc.
11. Other nouns
jewellery - مجوهرات - money - ضحك - laughter - rubbish - equipment - المعدات - furniture - اثاث - cash - نقديّة - work - حثائب - baggage - مرور - traffic - electricity - الطيس - clothing - luggage - أمتعة - machinery - news - information - advice - money - music - bread - cloth... etc.

AltFwOk.com موقع التفوق

1 نستخدم هذه الكلمات مع الاسم الذي لا يحد :

a lot of - lots of - much - a little / little - some - any - all - most - none - no - this - that..... etc.

e.g. : - I'd like to have a little juice. (Not : a few juice)
- How much money do you need? (Not : How many)

2 لا يمكن استخدام (these - those - one - a - an) قبل الاسم غير المحدود :

e.g. : - This equipment is very necessary. (Not : These equipment)
- I bought bread at the baker's. (Not : a bread)

3 يمكن استخدام (a - an) مع بعض الأسماء التي لا تعد إقاً سبقها صفة مثل :

e.g. : - I spent an enjoyable time in the countryside.
- He had a good education at Oxford.

2 Pronouns الضمائر

Subject Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Object Pronouns ضمائر المفعول	Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية	Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية	Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة
I	me	my	mine	myself
He	him	his	his	himself
She	her	her	hers	herself
It	it	its	---	itself
You	you	your	yours	yourself yourselves
They	them	their	theirs	themselves
We	us	our	ours	ourselves
One	one	one's	one's	oneself

1 Subject Pronouns الضمائر الفاعل

- نستخدم ضمائر الفاعل لتحل محل فاعل الجملة لتجنب تكراره :

e.g. : - I bought a car last month. - Ashraf (He) wrote a new article.
- Aya (She) studies hard. - A lion (It) eats meat.
- You came to school late. - Rokaya and I (We) like tennis.
- Ayman and Mohammed (They) love mum.
- Cats (They) eat fish.
- One can achieve a goal by working hard.

2 Object Pronouns ضمائر المفعول

- نستخدم ضمائر المفعول لتحل محل مفعول الجملة وتأتي بعد الفعل وحروف الجر أيضاً :

e.g. : - Menna helped me with my homework.
- We visited Ahmed (him) last Friday.
- My father bought a bike for Leen (her).
- Rahma chased the rat (it). - We won't help you.
- They invited Rodayna and me (us). - She doesn't like goats (them).
- He greeted Ahmed and Omar (them).

3 Possessive Adjectives صفات الملكية

- صفات الملكية تأتي بعدها الاسم المملوك :

e.g. : - My sister is a teacher. - I think it is his coat.
- Hanan decorated her flat. - An animal cleans its skin.
- Never waste your time. - We sold our old car.
- They renewed their visa. - Birds cooperate to look after their young.

4 Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية

- ضمائر الملكية تستخدم بدون اسم بعدها :

e.g. : - The blue bike is mine. - He used my pen and saved his.
- My bag is small, but hers is big. - That house isn't yours; it's ours.
- They asked us to leave our seats, but they kept theirs.

- لاحظ استخدام ضمائر الملكية بعد الصيغة التالية :

1. a / an + اسم مفرد + of + ملكة
e.g. : - He is a cousin of hers. = He is her cousin.
2. اسم جمع + of + ملكة
e.g. : - They are friends of ours. = They are our friends.

ملاحظات على استخدام الضمائر

- لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد مع الكلمات الآتية و عند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير جمع لكن يفضل استخدام ضمير مفرد يعود على المذكور وضمير مفرد يعود على المذكر ميوطن بكلمة (it) :
(Someone / somebody / anyone / anybody / everyone / everybody / no one / nobody)
e.g. : - Someone was knocking on the door. They made my sister afraid.
= Someone was knocking on the door. He or she made my sister afraid.
- Somebody took my pen. I didn't see them.
= Somebody took my pen. I didn't see him or her.

- لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد وضمير مفرد مع الكلمات الآتية :

(Something / anything / everything / nothing)

- e.g. : - Something has fallen to the ground. It made a loud noise.
- الضمير (It) يستخدم لغير العاقل المفرد (فاعل / مفعول) وفي حالة الجمع نستخدم (They) للفاعل و (them) للمفعول :

- e.g. : - The cat (It) eats fish. - Lions (They) eat meat.
- Amal fed the cat (it). - I don't like rats (them).

- لاحظ استخدام (It) للتعبير عن الزمن والمسافة والطقس :

- e.g. : - It is half past nine. - It is a long way to school.
- It is quite cold today.

- لاحظ أن (its) للملكية و يأتي بعدها اسم أو صفة ثم اسم :

- e.g. : - The fox moved its long tail. - The dog ate its food.
- أما (It's) تكون اختصار (It is / It has)
- It's (It is) a new car. - It's (It has) rained for two days.

- لاحظ الصيغة التالية :

It + (be) + object pronoun ضمير مفعول

- e.g. : A : Who opened the door ? B : It's me

ضمير وصل + relative pronoun + ضمير مفعول / ضمير فاعل

- e.g. : - It's I (me) who opened the door.
- يستخدم الضمير (one) بمعنى «المرء» وتدل على الناس بصفة عامة ويمكن استخدام (you) بدلاً منها :

- e.g. : - One (You) should eat healthy food.
- وفي حالة الملكية نستخدم (one's) ويمكن استخدام (your) بدلاً منها :

- e.g. : - It is easy to lose one's (your) money in a bus in Cairo.

Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر العاكسة

- يستخدم الضمير العاكس عندما يكون الفاعل هو نفسه المفعول :

- e.g. : - Ali hurt himself.
- I bought myself a cold drink.
- She saw herself in the mirror.
- We'll pay for ourselves.

- يستخدم الضمير العاكس للتأكيد عندما يأتي بعد الفاعل / المفعول :

- e.g. : - I myself polished the shoes. = I polished the shoes myself.
- يستخدم الضمير العاكس بعد (by) بمعنى «بمفرده» أو «بدون مساعدة» :

by myself = on my own = alone = without any help

- e.g. : - I went shopping on my own. (alone).
- He lives on his own. (alone / by himself).
- Did Ali paint that picture on his own (without any help) ?

- يمكن أن تستخدم الضمائر العاكسة بعد حروف الجر on / for / after :

- e.g. : - The girls looked after themselves. - Always depend on yourself.
- هناك فرق بين (of his own / on his own) :

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق

on his own = alone / without help

e.g. : - I live on my own. = I live alone.
- I cleaned the kitchen on my own. = I cleaned the kitchen without help.

of his own = belonging to him and to no one else تملكه على الملكية

e.g. : - I'd like to have a room of my own. (belonging to me)
- لا نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حرف الجر (with) عندما يكون معنى «مع» ولكن نستخدم ضمائر المفعول (me - him - her - us)

e.g. : - I went with herself. (X)

- I went with her. (✓)

- لا نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر العامة بالموقع أو المكان أو الاتجاه ولكن نستخدم ضمائر المفعول :

e.g. : - She doesn't want anyone to sit next to her.

- The car was coming fast towards me.

- لا نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد أفعال معينة (تصف أشياء - يذهب الإنسان - يذهب - من

approach	يقترب من	rest	يستريح	stand up	يقف
remember	يتذكر	lie down	ينام	meet	يقابل
shave	يغسل	wonder	يتساءل	sit down	يجلس
wake up	يستيقظ	relax	يسترخي		
complain	يشكو	worry	يقلق		

e.g. : - He shaved in ten minutes.

تعبيرات تستخدم فيها الضمائر المنعكسة

- Enjoy yourself. = Have a good time.
- Take care of yourself. = Be careful.
- Help yourself (to). = Take what you want.
- Make yourself at home. = Behave freely as if it were your own home.
- Behave yourself. = Be polite /Behave well.
- He made a name for himself. = He became famous.
- He isn't feeling himself today. = He's feeling ill today.

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- We think that those stories are
a. ours b. us c. we d. our
- The film wasn't very good, but I liked the music.
a. itself b. himself c. herself d. it
- These books belong to
a. their b. they c. them d. theirs
- The dog barked on seeing in a mirror.
a. its b. it's c. itself d. it
- A: Ali, did you and Sami repair the broken window?
B: Yes, we did. But I cut on a piece of glass.
a. mine b. myself c. ourselves d. me
- Make a cup of tea.
a. you b. your c. themselves d. yourself
- A: Is this your sister's bedroom?
B: No, it's my bedroom. is downstairs.
a. Herself b. She c. Hers d. Her
- A: Who repaired your bicycle for you ?
B: Nobody. I repaired it
a. my b. mine c. me d. myself
- We got out of the water and dried
a. us b. we c. ourselves d. themselves
- The girl is feeling faint. Take to hospital.
a. herself b. her c. hers d. yourself
- The door of this room sometimes opens
a. themselves b. by itself c. oneself d. himself
- Are you going to do this exercise?
a. herself b. themselves c. yourself d. himself
- My wife and I have just bought a new flat. is near to where we live now.
a. Its b. We c. Itself d. It

AltFwok.com موقع التوفيق

- 14 Our house is not as modern as
a their b her c hers d your
- 15 Children sometimes hurt when they are playing
a them b themselves c ourselves d himself
- 16 Your garden is bigger than
a we b us c ours d our
- 17 Did you both hurt
a yourself b yourselves c themselves d herself
- 18 We wanted to buy the table, but surface was damaged.
a itself b it's c it d its
- 19 Take an umbrella with in case it rains.
a yourself b you c yours d your
- 20 These books aren't. They are ours.
a theirs b they c them d there's
- 21 I and dressed in ten minutes.
a showered myself b showered with myself
c showered by myself d showered to myself

3 Verbs

في الجزء التالي، يتم شرح الأفعال (verbs) من خلال تقسيم رئيسيتين هما :



- تقسم الأفعال المساعدة إلى ثلاثة أنواع رئيسية :

Part I Helping verbs الأفعال المساعدة

be - do - have Modals الأفعال الناقصة Semi-modals الأفعال شبه الناقصة

Part II "to be"

1 لاحظ تصريف فعل (to be) في الأربعة المختلفة :

المصدر Inf.	التصريف الأول First Form	التصريف الثاني Second Form	التصريف الثالث p. p.
be	am - is - are	was - were	been

2 لاحظ توزيع تصريفات فعل (to be) مع الفاعل :

المضمر Pronoun	الحاضر Present	الماضي Past
I	am / 'm / am not	was / was not / wasn't
He / She / It	is = 's / is not / isn't	was / was not / wasn't
You / We / They	are = 're aren't / are not	were were not / weren't

3 يُستخدم فعل (to be) كفعل أساسي بمعنى (يكون / يوجد) :

- e.g. : - I am tired.
- She is not / isn't clever.
- They are / They're at school.

4 يُستخدم (be) كفعل أساسي بمعنى (يكون) بعد (to) :

- e.g. : - She wants to be a doctor.

5 يُستخدم (be) كفعل أساسي أو مساعد بعد الأفعال الناقصة : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالأزمنة)

- e.g. : - Omar will be 17 tomorrow. (فعل أساسي)
- Your eyes must be examined. (فعل مساعد)

ALTfwork.com موقع المتقون

٦) يُستخدم كلاً من (am - is - are) كأفعال مساعدة لتكوين المضارع المستمر والمضارع المجهول في المضارع البسيط والمستمر : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالأزمنة)

e.g. : - Rodayna is having lunch now. (مضارع مستمر)
- The boys are taken to school by their mother. (مضارع بسيط مبنى للمجهول)

٧) يُستخدم كلاً من (was - were) كأفعال مساعدة لتكوين الماضي المستمر والمضارع المجهول في الماضي البسيط والمستمر : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالأزمنة)

e.g. : - Sama was watching TV. (ماضي مستمر)
- A new school was built in our street last year. (ماضي بسيط مبنى للمجهول)

٨) تُستخدم (being) بعد (am - is - are - was - were) كفعال مساعد ثان لتكوين المضارع المستمر والماضي المستمر المبني للمجهول : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالأزمنة)

e.g. : - The house is being cleaned. (مضارع مستمر مبنى للمجهول)
- TV was being watched by Sama. (ماضي مستمر مبنى للمجهول)

٩) تُستخدم (been) في تكوين الأزمنة التامة والمضارع المبني للمجهول :

e.g. : - Omar has been ill recently. (مضارع تام معلوم)
- The player had been sent out before scoring any goals. (ماضي تام مبنى للمجهول)

١٠) تُستخدم الصيغة (being + adj.) للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالترابط)

e.g. : - Because he was tired, he went to bed early.
= Being tired, he went to bed early.

١١) تُستخدم الصيغة (be to + inf.) للتعبير عن الخطط والترتيبات الرسمية أو إعطاء الأوامر والتعليمات :

e.g. : - The manager is to meet some important businessmen today.
- You are to write an essay about tourism.

Verb to "do"

١) لاحظ تصريف فعل (to do) في الأزمنة المختلفة :

المصدر Inf.	التصريف الأول First Form	التصريف الثاني Second Form	التصريف الثالث p.p.
do	do - does	did	done

٢) لاحظ توزيع تصريفات فعل (to do) مع الفاعل :

الضمير Pronoun	المضارع Present	الماضي Past
I / You / We / They	do ≠ do not = don't	did ≠ did not = didn't
He / She / It	does ≠ does not = doesn't	did ≠ did not = didn't

٣) يُستخدم فعل (to do) كفعال أساسي بمعنى (يفعل / يقوم بـ) :

e.g. : - She does / did her homework.
- I do / did the shopping once a week.

٤) يُستخدم كلاً من (do - does) كأفعال مساعدة في النفي والسؤال في المضارع البسيط :

e.g. : - He does not (doesn't) like fish.
- Does he like fish ?
- What does he like ?
- They do not (don't) go out late at night.
- Do they go out late at night ?
- When do they go out ?

٥) تُستخدم (did) كفعال مساعد في النفي والسؤال في الماضي البسيط :

e.g. : - We did not (didn't) see what happened.
- Did you see what happened ?
- What did you see ?

٦) تُستخدم (do - does - did + inf.) بشكل بلاغي في الجمل المثبتة للتأكيد :

e.g. : - I do know who took the money.
- You did hear what I said.

Verb to "have"

١) لاحظ تصريف فعل (to have) في الأزمنة المختلفة :

المصدر Inf.	التصريف الأول First Form	التصريف الثاني Second Form	التصريف الثالث p.p.
have	have - has	had	had

٢) لاحظ توزيع تصريفات فعل (to have) مع الفاعل :

الضمير Pronoun	المضارع Present	الماضي Past
I / You / We / They	have = 've ≠ have not = haven't	had = 'd ≠ had not = hadn't
He / She / It	has = 's ≠ has not = hasn't	had = 'd ≠ had not = hadn't

٢) يُستخدم فعل (to have) كفعل أساسي بمعنى (يملك / يتناول / يعاني من... إلخ) :

e.g. : - I have had a headache.

- She has / had a lot of money.

٣) لاحظ أن نفي (have / has) كأفعال أساسية في المضارع البسيط هو (don't - doesn't + have) :

e.g. : - He doesn't have meals outdoors. (Not : he hasn't)

- I don't have tea or coffee at night. (Not : I haven't)

٤) لاحظ أن نفي (had) كفعل أساسي في الماضي البسيط هو (didn't + have) :

e.g. : - Aya didn't have a nice time. (Not: he hadn't)

٥) يُستخدم كل من (have - has) كأفعال مساعدة في المضارع التام :

e.g. : - He has bought a car. = He's bought a car.

- They have won the match. = They've won the match.

٦) يُستخدم (had) كفعل مساعد في الماضي التام :

e.g. : - He had taken a rest before going out.

الأنواع الناقصة

١) الأنواع الناقصة هي أفعال لا تؤدي معنى بفردها وتحتاج إلى فعل في المصدر (inf.) بعدها :

e.g. : - I can English well. (*) - I can speak English well. (✓)

- You should your lessons hard. (*) - You should study your lessons hard. (✓)

٢) هناك أفعال ناقصة رئيسية هي :

can - could - will - would - may - might - shall - should - must

e.g. : - I will go home. - She might be late. - Shall we leave now ?

للمزيد حول استخدام الأفعال الناقصة يمكن الرجوع إلى الأجزاء المخصصة للتعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام والقدرة :

Semi-modals : الأفعال والتعبيرات شبه الناقصة

١) هناك أفعال وتعبيرات شبه ناقصة (Semi-modals) مثل :

• ought to - used to - be going to + inf.

e.g. : - You ought to (should) be more careful.

- I used to go to the fields when I was young.

- Sama is going to join university.

• have to (has to / had to / will have to) من اللازم / من الضروري / يجب

e.g. : - I had / have / will have to follow the rules.

- Omar has / had / will have to renew his passport.

- لاحظ أن نفي (have to / has to) هو (don't / doesn't have to) :

e.g. : - He hasn't to get up early. (*)

- He doesn't have to get up early. (✓)

- She hadn't to go to work yesterday. (*)

- She didn't have to go to work yesterday. (✓)

• have got to / has got to من اللازم / من الضروري / يجب

e.g. : - I have got to leave now.

- لاحظ أن نفي (have / has + got to) هو (haven't / hasn't + got to) :

- I don't have got to leave now. (*)

- I haven't got to leave now. (✓)

- لاحظ أن صيغة الماضي من (have / has + got to) هي (had to) :

e.g. : - She had got to look after her baby sister. (*)

- She had to look after her baby sister. (✓)

• need / needs / needed to - needn't + inf.

• dare (to) يستطيع / يجرؤ - daren't + inf.

e.g. : - You need to see a doctor.

- No one dares (to) argue with this manager.

- لاحظ عدم استخدام (to) بعد (daren't / needn't) :

e.g. : - I needn't to buy a new tablet. (*)

- I needn't buy a new tablet. (✓)

- I don't need to buy a new tablet. (✓)

• had ('d) better + inf. / would ('d) rather + inf.

e.g. : - You'd better find another job. - I'd rather go to the park.

- لاحظ أن نفي (had better - 'd rather) هو ('d better not - 'd rather not) :

- I wouldn't rather have lunch outdoors. (*)

- I would rather not have lunch outdoors. (✓)

Principal verbs (الأفعال الأساسية)

Verb forms (الشكل الأصلي)

Conjugation of verbs (تصريف الأفعال)

Verb forms (الشكل الأصلي)

Inf (الشكل الأصلي)	First Form (التصريف الأول)	Second Form (التصريف الثاني)	P.P. (التصريف الثالث)	Present Participle (اسم الفعل)
be	am - is - are	was - were	been	being
do	do - does	did	done	doing
have	have - has	had	had	having
visit	visit - visits	visited	visited	visiting
go	go - goes	went	gone	going
try	try - tries	tried	tried	trying

- وفيما يلي شرح تفصيلي لكل هذه الأشكال الخاصة بالفعل :

Modal Verbs (أفعال مساعدة)

① يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد الأفعال والتعبيرات الناقصة مثل :

can - could - will - would - shall - should - may - might - must - dare
- had better - would rather ... + inf.

e.g. : - I can drive a car.

- Omar will arrive soon. - You had better take a rest.

② يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد الأفعال المساعدة المتفية (don't / doesn't / didn't) :

e.g. : - She doesn't like fish.

- He didn't go out.

- I don't know who broke the glass window.

لاحظ أنه يستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد الأفعال المساعدة (do / does / did) في الجمل المبنية للتأكيد

- Hani does smoke.

- They do know what I mean.

- I did break the vase.

③ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد حرف الجر (to) لأغراض مختلفة :

e.g. : - I want to buy a car. (verb + to + inf.)

- She studies hard to get high marks. (لكي)

- To work hard is a good thing. (استخدام الصيغة المصدرية كفاعل)

④ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل في الصيغة التالية :

let / make / see / hear / watch / notice + ضمير مفعول + inf. ...

e.g. : - My father let us go to the park.

- I saw Ahmed cross the street.

⑤ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل في بداية الجملة لتكوين الأمر المنهت :

e.g. : - Open your books, please.

- Study your lessons before going out.

⑥ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد أداة الاستفهام (Why) لتقديم التراحات :

Why + inf. ...? لِمَ ؟ - Why not + inf. ...? لِمَ لا ؟

e.g. : - Why walk when we can go by bus?

- Why not buy a cold drink?

First form (التصريف الأول)

⑦ يستخدم التصريف الأول للفعل لتكوين زمن المضارع البسيط، ويضاف له (s - es - ies) إذا كان الفاعل مفرد (He - She - It) :

e.g. : - Ahmed plays tennis in the club every Saturday.

- Ahmed and Karim play tennis.

- A lion eats meat.

- Lions eat meat.

⑧ لاحظ أن صيغة المضارع البسيط من الفعل (be) هي (am / is / are) :

e.g. : - I am busy.

- He / She / It is old.

- You / We / They are hungry

⑨ لاحظ أن صيغة المضارع البسيط من الفعل (have) هي (have / has) :

e.g. : - He / She / It has a big family.

- I / You / We / They have some friends.

الضمائر الشخصية (Personal Pronouns)

① يستخدم الضمير الذي للفعل لتذكير من تسمى المذكر

- e.g. : - She went to the library with her friends.
They watched the match in the stadium.

الضمائر الشخصية (Personal Pronouns)

② يستخدم الضمير الثالث للفعل في الحالات التالية

(1) بعد (have / has / had) لتكوين المضارع التام

- e.g. : - He has gone shopping.
- Mum had prepared lunch before we arrived home.
(2) بعد الأفعال المساعدة لتكوين المبني للمجهول :
e.g. : - The window was broken by him.
- The film is shown on this channel every month.
- Our flat will be decorated soon.
- The old man has been helped by his daughter.
(3) يستخدم كصفة :

- e.g. : - Polluted air causes a lot of diseases.
- I have some written work to do.
(4) تستخدم كاختصار لعبارة الوصل في صيغة المبني للمجهول. لاحظ الأمثلة التالية جيداً :
e.g. : - The trees which were grown by my uncle produce a lot of fruit.
= The trees grown by my uncle produce a lot of fruit.
- The criminal who was arrested last night is very dangerous.
= The criminal arrested last night is very dangerous.

اسم الفاعل (Present Participle)

① تستخدم هذه الصيغة في الحالات التالية :

- (1) تستخدم كفعل بعد (be / am / is / are / was / were / been) لتكوين الأزمنة الستة :
e.g. : - He may be sleeping at home. - He is watching TV.
- They were having lunch. - She has been revising her lessons.

① تستخدم بعد أفعال المكان والحركة مثل (go / be / come / be busy)

- e.g. : - We went fishing last Friday.
- I lay looking at the stars in the dark sky.
② تستخدم بعد أفعال الإدراك التالية للدلالة على متابعة جزء من الحدث :
see / hear / watch / notice + اسم / ضمير + (inf. + ing) ...

- e.g. : - I heard someone crying.
- He saw his friends playing in the park.
- I watched the rabbits eating some carrots.
③ تستخدم في الصيغ التالية :

spend / waste + time / money + (inf. + ing) ...

- e.g. : - Don't waste your money (on) buying clothes!
- I've spent three hours shopping.

find / catch + ضمير / اسم + (inf. + ing) ...

- e.g. : - His father caught him playing in the street.
- They found their teachers sitting in the garden.
④ تستخدم كصفة :

- e.g. : - It was an interesting story.
- I sat on the beach to watch the setting sun.
⑤ تستخدم كاختصار لعبارة الوصل في صيغة المبني للمعلوم. لاحظ الأمثلة التالية جيداً :
e.g. : - The dog which is sleeping under the tree belongs to our neighbours.
= The dog sleeping under the tree belongs to our neighbours.
- The boy who is wearing a white shirt is my son.
= The boy wearing a white shirt is my son.
⑥ تستخدم في عبارة اسم الفاعل (present participle clause) كبديل للعبارة السببية والزمنية. لاحظ الأمثلة التالية جيداً :

- e.g. : - After he had put on his coat, he left the house.
= Putting on his coat, he left the house.
- While I was watching the match at home, I fell asleep.
= Watching the match at home, I fell asleep.
- Because he felt very hungry, he went to the nearest restaurant.
= Feeling very hungry, he went to the nearest restaurant.

كيفية تكوين اسم الفعل :

1 مع معظم الأفعال، يُضاف المقطع (ing) لنهاية مصدر الفعل

e.g. : - read → reading - visit → visiting

2 إذا انتهى المصدر بحرف (e) ساكن إلا بطن، فإنه يحذف قبل إضافة (ing)

e.g. : - write → writing - make → making

- ويشتد عن ذلك أفعال مثل :

e.g. : - dye → dyeing - singe → singeing

3 يتضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) إذا انتهى المصدر بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك مع الأفعال ذات المقطع الواحد :

e.g. : - run → running - swim → swimming

- stop → stopping

4 يتضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير المسبق بحرف متحرك واحد مع الكلمات المكونة من أكثر من مقطع قبل إضافة (ing) بشرط أن يكون المقطع الأخير مشدداً في النطق (stressed) :

e.g. : - regret → regretting

- begin → beginning

5 إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرفين (ie) فإنهما يتحولان إلى (y) قبل إضافة (ing)

e.g. : - die → dying - tie → tying

6 إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرف (e) يضاف بعده حرف (k) قبل إضافة (ing)

e.g. : - panic → panicking - picnic → picnicking

2 Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular Verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Irregular Verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

1 Conjugation of Regular Verbs

صفة عامة يتم تصريف الأفعال المنتظمة بإضافة (ed) لنهاية مصدر الفعل :

e.g. : - visit → visited - watch → watched - land → landed

2 إذا انتهى المصدر بحرف (e) يضاف له حرف (d) فقط :

e.g. : - like → liked - change → changed - bake → baked

3 يتضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة (ed) إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد مع الأفعال ذات المقطع الواحد :

e.g. : - stop → stopped - ban → banned

4 يتضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير المسبق بحرف متحرك واحد مع الكلمات المكونة من أكثر من مقطع قبل إضافة (ed) بشرط أن يكون المقطع الأخير مشدداً في النطق (stressed) :

e.g. : - deter → deterred - regret → regretted

5 إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرف (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن فإنه يتحول إلى (i) قبل إضافة (ed)

e.g. : - study → studied - dry → dried - try → tried

6 إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرف (e) يضاف بعده حرف (k) قبل إضافة (ed)

e.g. : - panic → panicked - picnic → picnicked

2 Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تمويه: الطالب غير ملزم بحفظ كل الأفعال غير المنتظمة، لكن هذا التصنيف يُعتبر مُرْجِع لكل دارس. يواجه معظم الطلاب مشكلة في حفظ تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة (الشاذة)، ولتسهيل حفظ هذه الأفعال، سنقوم بتقسيم هذه الأفعال إلى مجموعات حسب طريقة تصريفها :

أفعال لا تتغير عند تصريفها :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bet (s) براهن	bet	bet
broadcast (s) يذيع / يبث	broadcast	broadcast
burst (s) ينفجر	burst	burst
cost (s) يُكَلِّف	cost	cost
cut (s) يقطع	cut	cut

hit (s)	ضرب	hit	hit
hurt (s)	ألم	hurt	hurt
let (s)	دع	let	let
put (s)	ضع	put	put
quit (s)	أنته	quit	quit
read (s)	قرأ	read	read
set (s)	ضع / حدد	set	set
shut (s)	أغلق	shut	shut

١ أفعال يتغير فيها حرف واحد : فقط يتحول حرف (d) إلى (t) في نهاية الكلمة :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bend (s)	ثَنَى / يَثْنِي	bent
build (s)	بَنَى	built
lend (s)	قَرَضَ	lent
send (s)	رَسَلَ	sent
spend (s)	بَقَصَ / تَقَرَّقَ	spent

٢ أفعال يتغير فيها (ay) إلى (aid) في نهاية الكلمة :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
lay (s)	بَعَدَ / تَبَيَّنَ	laid
pay (s)	دَفَعَ (مَدَّ)	paid
say (s)	قَالَ	said

٣ أفعال يُضاف حرف (t) لنهايتها (تستثنى الفعل hear) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
deal (s)	تَوَرَّعَ / تَدَاوَلَ	dealt
dream (s)	رَاحَ	dreamt
hear (s)	سَمِعَ	heard

lean (s)	سَلَّ / يَخْضِي	leant	leant
leap (s)	قَفَزَ	leapt	leapt
mean (s)	بَعَثَ / يَفْهَمُ	meant	meant

٤ أفعال يتحول فيها (ell) إلى (old) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
sell (s)	بَاعَ	sold
tell (s)	خَبَرَ	told

٥ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (u) إلى (ou) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bind (s)	رَبَطَ	bound
find (s)	جَدَّ	found
grind (s)	طَحَنَ / يَشْحَذُ / يَسِّنْ	ground
wind (s)	وَقَفَ / يَتَفَرَّجُ	wound

٦ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (ee) أو (ea) إلى (ed) لتكوين التصريفين الثاني والثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bleed (s)	بَرَفَ	bled
feed (s)	طَفَّمَ	fed
flee (s)	فَرَّ / يَخْطِي	fled
lead (s)	يُؤَدِّي إِلَى / يَعْيشُ (بِطَرِيقَةِ مُعَيَّنَةٍ)	led
speed (s)	تَسَرَّعَ	sped

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق

٨ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (i) إلى (o) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، و إلى (a) لتكوين التصريف الثالث .

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
begin (s)	began	begun
drink (s)	drank	drunk
shrink (s)	shrank	shrunk
sing (s)	sang	sung
sink (s)	sank	sunk
spring (s)	sprang	sprung
swim (s)	swam	swum

٩ أفعال ينتهي تصريفها بـ (ought / aught) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bring (s)	brought	brought
buy (s)	bought	bought
fight (s)	fought	fought
seek (s)	sought	sought
think (s)	thought	thought
catch (s)	caught	caught
teach (es)	taught	taught

١٠ أفعال بها (ee) يتم فيها حذف حرف (e) مع إضافة حرف (i) لنهاية الفعل ما لم يكن موجودا (استثنى الفعل feed) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
creep (s)	crept	crept
feed (s)	fed	fed
feel (s)	felt	felt
keep (s)	kept	kept

kneel (s)	ركع على ركبتيه	knelt	knelt
meet (s)	قابل	met	met
sleep (s)	نام	slept	slept
sweep (s)	نكس / يندفع / يمسح	swept	swept
weep (s)	بكى	wept	wept

١١ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير الحرف المتحرك إلى (o) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، ثم يُضاف إليه (en) لتكوين التصريف الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
awake (s)	استيقظ / يوقظ	awoke / awaked
break (s)	يكسر / ينكسر	broke
choose (s)	يختار	chose
freeze (s)	يتجمد / يُجمد	froze
speak (s)	يتحدث	spoke
steal (s)	يسرق	stole
wake (s)	يستيقظ	woke / waked
weave (s)	يشج	wove

١٢ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير المتحرك (i) إلى (o) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، وينتهي التصريف الثالث بـ (en) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
arise (s)	يُثا	arose
drive (s)	يقود (سيارة)	drove
rise (s)	يرتفع / يزداد / تشرق	rose
ride (s)	يركب	rode
write (s)	يكتب	wrote

١٦ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (ed) إلى (s) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، و إلى (ed) لتكوين التصريف الثالث

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
beat (s)	beat	beaten / born
swear (s)	swore	sworn
tear (s)	tore	torn
wear (s)	wore	worn

١٧ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (ow) إلى (ew) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، و إلى (ewn) لتكوين التصريف الثالث (يستثنى الفعل draw) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
blow (s)	blew	blown
draw (s)	drew	drawn
grow (s)	grew	grown
knew (s)	knew	known
throw (s)	threw	thrown
fly (ies)	flew	flown

١٨ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (i) إلى (e) أو (u) لتكوين التصريف الثاني والثالث ، و يتم حذف حرف (e) من نهاية الفعل إن وجد :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
dig (s)	dug	dug
spin (s)	spun / span	spun
stick (s)	stuck	stuck
sting (s)	stung	stung
strike (s)	struck	struck

swing (s)

swung

swung

١٩ أفعال يتشابه فيها التصريف الأول مع التصريف الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
become (s)	became	become
come (s)	came	come
run (s)	ran	run

٢٠ أفعال يتشابه تصريفها الثاني والثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
babysit (s)	babysat	babysat
hold (s)	held	held
leave (s)	left	left
lose (s)	lost	lost
sit (s)	sat	sat
slide (s)	slid	slid
stand (s)	stood	stood
understand (s)	understood	understood
win (s)	won	won
shoot (s)	shot	shot

٢١ أفعال متنوعة في طريقة تصريفها :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
be (am / is / are)	was / were	been
do (es)	did	done
have / has	had	had
go	went	gone

١٤ أفعال متغيرة في نطق التصريف

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
beat	beat	beaten
bit	bit	bitten
hid	hid	hidden
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
forbid (s)	forbad / forbade	forbidden
forget (s)	forgot	forgotten
get (s)	got	got / gotten
forgive (s)	forgave	forgiven
give (s)	gave	given
see (s)	saw	seen
shake (s)	shook	shaken
take (s)	took	taken

١٥ أفعال يتم تصريفها بطريقتين دون اختلاف في المعنى

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
awake (s)	awoke	awaked / awoke
bear (s)	bore	bore / born
burn (s)	burnt / burned	burnt / burned
dream (s)	dreamt / dreamed	dreamt / dreamed
dwelt (s)	dwelt / dwelled	dwelt / dwelled
forbid (s)	forbad / forbade	forbidden
kneel (s)	knelt / kneeled	knelt / kneeled
lean (s)	leant / leaned	leant / leaned
learn (s)	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
light (s)	lighted / lit	lighted / lit

mow (s)	مرو العشب	mowed	mowed / mown
sow (s)	بسط	sowed	sowed / sown
show (s)	أعرض	showed	showed / shown
smell (s)	شم	smelt / smelled	smelt / smelled
sow (s)	سار	sowed	sowed / sown
speed (s)	تسرع	speeded / sped	speeded / sped
spell (s)	ينطق	spelt / spelled	spelt / spelled
spill (s)	سكب	spilt / spilled	spilt / spilled
spoil (s)	نصف	spoilt / spoiled	spoilt / spoiled
swell (s)	تورم	swelled	swelled / swollen
wake (s)	يستيقظ	woke / waked	woke / waked

١٦ أفعال يتم تصريفها بطريقتين أو أكثر مع وجود اختلاف في المعنى

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bid	أعرض	bid
bid (s)	أعرض / أودع	bade
dive (s)	يقفز إلى الماء / يركب	dove
dive (s)	أعرض	dived
fit (s)	يسبب في الحجم	fit
fit (s)	يُنْصَلِّقُ / يُرْكَبُ	fitted
hang (s)	يُنْصَلِّقُ	hung
hang (s)	يُحْمَلُ / يُشَقُّ	hanged / hung
lay (s)	يضع / يضع	laid
lie (s)	يُكْذِبُ	lied
lie (s)	يُوقَدُ / يُسْتَقْفَى	lain
shine (s)	يُنْصَلِّقُ / يَنْطَعِمُ	shone
shine (s)	يُنْصَلِّقُ الصَّوْرَةَ عَلَى	shone / shined
shine (s)	يُنْصَلِّقُ / يَنْطَعِمُ	shined

Adjectives الصفات

Adjective :

الصفة

- الصفة هي كلمة تصف اسم وتأتي غالباً قبله .
- e.g. : - Rodayna bought an **expensive** mobile yesterday.
- I saw a **frightening** animal in the fields.
- يمكن أن تأتي الصفة و بعدها الموصوف أو بعده فعل **verb to be** وأفعال أخرى مثل (look / seem / appear / taste / feel / sound / smell)
- e.g. : - Leen felt cold. - Ahmed looks happy.
- Mum's food **smells** delicious. - Ali is clever.
- الصفات التالية لا تستخدم قبل الاسم مطلقاً و لكن تستخدم بعد **verb to be** وأفعال مثل (seem / look / feel (أفعال العواس).
- لا يزال على قيد الحياة **alive** / غائب **absent** / مشغول **absent** / **afraid** / **awake** / **asleep** / **alone** / **alight**
- e.g. : - Roaa feels **afraid** when she is left alone.
- We were happy that he was **alive**.

Similarity التشابه

- هناك أكثر من طريقة للتعبير عن التشابه أو تساوي طرفين في صفة ما ومن تلك الطرق ما يلي :
- الطرف الثاني + **as** + الصفة + **as** + **be** + الطرف الأول
- الطرف الثاني + **as** + الاسم من الصفة + **the same** + **has / have** + الطرف الأول
- الاسم من الصفة + **the same** + **have** + **the same** + الطرف الثاني + **and** + الطرف الأول
- الاسم من الصفة + **of the same** + **be** + الطرف الثاني + **and** + الطرف الأول
- الصفة + **be** + الطرف الثاني + **Like** + الطرف الأول

- e.g. : - Aya is **as beautiful** as Mariam.
- = Aya **has the same beauty** as Mona.
- = Aya and Mariam **have the same beauty**.
- = Aya and Mariam **are of the same beauty**.
- = **Like** Aya, Mariam **is beautiful**.

- لاحظ عند التثني نستخدم (not as/so + صفة + as) :
- e.g. : - Nabil is taller than Samy.
- = Samy isn't **as (so)** tall as Nabil.
- لاحظ الاسم الذي يمكن استخدامه بعد (the same + noun + as) من الصفات الآتية :

adjective	noun	adjective	noun
expensive/ cheap	price	deep	depth
big / small	size	wide	width
old / young	age	long	length
far / near	distance	high / tall	height
strong	strength	heavy / light	weight

- e.g. : - This house is **as high** as yours.
- = This house **has the same height** as yours.
- The green blouse is **as expensive** as the red blouse.
- = The green blouse is **the same price** as the red blouse.

Comparative adjectives صفات المقارنة

- تستخدم صفات المقارنة لتقارن بين طرفين في صفة مشتركة بينهما :
- e.g. : - Malak is **taller** than Rodayna.
- A car is **fast**, but a train is **faster**.
- Films are **more exciting** than novels.
- Chicken is **less expensive** than meat.

تكوين صفات المقارنة من الصفات القصيرة والطويلة

- تستخدم صفات المقارنة لتقارن بين طرفين في صفة مشتركة بينهم :
- تكوين صفة المقارنة من الصفات القصيرة :

1) يضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة :

- e.g. : - quiet → quieter - cheap → cheaper - narrow → narrower

2) إذا كانت الصفة القصيرة تنتهي بـ (e) ساكن (لا يتطرق) نضيف في المقارنة (r) فقط :

- e.g. : - wide → wider - nice → nicer
- large → larger - simple → simpler

- ١ الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بـ (y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن تتحول إلى (ier) :
- e.g. : - lucky → luckier - healthy → healthier - easy → easier
- ٢ يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا جاء قبله حرف متحرك واحد بشرط أن تكون الكلمة مقطع واحد :
- e.g. : - hot → hotter - fat → fatter - thin → thinner
- ٣ تكون صفة المقارنة من الصفات الطويلة :

more / less + adj. + the + than

- e.g. : - more / less expensive than - more / less terrifying than
- more / less exciting than - more / less dangerous than

ملحوظات عامة على صفات المقارنة

- يمكن استخدام less قبل الصفات القصيرة :
- e.g. : - Ahmed is stronger than Ali. = Ali is less strong than Ahmed.
- يمكن استخدام (even / much / a lot / far...) قبل صفات المقارنة لإعطاء قوة لمعنى الصفة :
- e.g. : - Travelling by train is **much** slower than travelling by plane.
- يمكن استخدام (slightly / a bit / a little...) قبل صفات المقارنة لإضعاف معنى الصفة :
- e.g. : - I had to drive a bit faster.
- يمكن استخدام صفتي مقارنة للدلالة على التغير المستمر في شيء :
- e.g. : - It's become **more and more** difficult to find a flat.
- لاحظ شكل الضمير بعد than (يكون "ضمير فاعل" إذا كان بعده فعل و "ضمير مفعول" في حالة عدم وجود فعل) :
- e.g. : - He is taller **than** I am.
= He is taller **than** me.
- We earn more money **than** they do.
= We earn more money **than** them.
- يمكن استخدام المقارنة للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة (كلما كلما) :
- جملة النتيجة + صفة مقارنة + the + جملة السبب + صفة مقارنة + The
- e.g. : - The **harder** you study, the **higher** marks you get.

Superlative adjectives الصفات التفضيل

- تستخدم صفات التفضيل لتقارن بين أكثر من طرفين في صفة مشتركة بينهم (لتمييز فرد عن مجموعة) :
- e.g. : - Omar is the **cleverest** student in class.
- The plane is the **fastest** means of transport.
- Football is the **most** exciting sport.
- Fish is the **least** expensive protein source.

- تكون صفات التفضيل من صفات قصيرة المقطع :

١ توضع (the) قبل الصفة ثم يضاف (est) لنهاية الصفة :

- e.g. : - old → the **oldest** - strong → the **strongest**
- tall → the **tallest**

٢ إذا كانت الصفة القصيرة تنتهي بـ (e) (لا ينطق) وقبلها حرف ساكن توضع (the) قبل الصفة ثم يضاف (st) فقط لنهاية الصفة :

- e.g. : - nice → the **nicest** - wide → the **widest**
- simple → the **simplest**

٣ الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بـ (y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن توضع (the) قبل الصفة ثم تتحول (y) إلى (iest) في نهاية الصفة :

- e.g. : - lazy → the **laziest** - heavy → the **heaviest**
- noisy → the **noisiest**

٤ إذا انتهت الصفة قصيرة المقطع بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوقة بحرف متحرك واحد تضاعف الحرف الأخير مع إضافة (the) قبل الصفة و (est) في نهاية الصفة :

- e.g. : - big → the **biggest** - thin → the **thinnest**
- hot → the **hottest**

- تكون صفات التفضيل من صفات طويلة المقطع :

طويلة المقطع. the most / the least + adj.

- e.g. : - dangerous → the **most** / the **least** dangerous
- interesting → the **most** / the **least** interesting

ملحوظات عامة على صفات التفضيل

- يمكن استخدام (most) بدون (the) وفي هذه الحالة تسبق من الضمير (very) :

most + adj. (without the) = very

e.g. : - The information I've just heard is **most** important. = very important

- لاحظ استخدام صفة التفضيل مع الأعداد العربية (first, second, third, fourth, etc.) :

e.g. : - Cairo is the **first** largest city in Africa.

- لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل في حالة وجود ضمير ملكية أو (ال) الملكية قبل الصفة :

e.g. : - The femto-second is Zewail's **biggest** achievement in Chemistry.

- The femto-second is his **biggest** achievement in Chemistry.

- استخدام (No) بدلاً من لرب التفضيل :

باني الجملة + صيغة التفضيل أو المقارنة + "verb to be" + فاعل
طرف المقارنة + **than** + صيغة التفضيل أو المقارنة + "verb to be" + فاعل + No

باني الجملة طرف المقارنة + **as** + **adj.** صفة
No + فاعل + "verb to be" + **as** +

e.g. : - Omar was the **most** courageous man in the city.

= No man in the city is **more** courageous than Omar.

No man in the city is **as** courageous as Omar.

- The Nile is the **longest** river. = No river is **longer** than the Nile.

- Water is the **most** important liquid.

= No liquid is **more** important than water.

- المقارنة والتفضيل باستخدام ever - never :

+ فاعل ثاني + التمييز + صيغة تفضيل + "verb to be" + الفاعل الأول
"have / has" ever + p.p. ...

+ "have - has" never + p.p. ... + a/an

فاعل أول + **like** + تمييز + صفة بدون إضافات

- نلاحظ أن الصفة في جملة (ever) هي صيغة التفضيل أما الصفة في جملة (never) صفة من الدرجة الأولى (بدون إضافات) :

e.g. : - Ali is the **cleverest** boy I have ever seen.

= I have never seen a clever man like Ali.

- I have never watched a funny film like that.

= This is the **funniest** film I have ever seen.

- Zewail is the **most** important person I have ever met.

= I have never met an important person like Zewail.

- نلاحظ أن أداة الاستفهام which تستخدم عند السؤال للمقارنة بين شيئين في صفة معينة (مستخدم صفة من الدرجة الثانية) :

e.g. : - Which is faster; the train or the plane ?

- Which is more exciting; the pyramid or the tower ?

- لاحظ أن أداة الاستفهام which يمكن أن تستخدم للمقارنة بين أكثر من شيئين (صفة من الدرجة الثالثة).

- Which is the **most** expensive car ? - The red car.

Irregular adjectives

صفات غير منتظمة

Adj. / adv.	comparative	superlative
bad / badly / ill / wrong	worse than	the worst
far	farther (further) than	the farthest (furthest)
fore	former than	the first
good / well / right	better than	the best
late	latter than / later than	the last / the latest
little	less than	the least
many / much	more than	the most
old	older / elder	oldest / eldest
real	more real	the most real

Test Yourself

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A chair is comfortable than a sofa.

a. less b. the least c. little d. least

2. This is company in the world.

a. big b. bigger c. biggest d. the biggest

3. English is than any other language.

a. easy b. easier c. more easy d. the easiest

- 4 You look much _____ than yesterday.
a happy b happier c happiest d the happiest
- 5 Football is _____ popular game in Egypt.
a more b most c less d the most
- 6 This is _____ picture I've ever seen.
a nice b nicer c nicest d the nicest
- 7 This computer is not _____ expensive as the one that I bought yesterday.
a more b less c as d most
- 8 The _____ tree in the world is in Sweden.
a old b older c eldest d oldest
- 9 This is the _____ test I've ever taken.
a hard b harder c less hard d hardest
- 10 He is not _____ reliable as his friend.
a so b more c less d most
- 11 The food is not nearly so _____ as it was in the past.
a good b better c worse d the best
- 12 Alaa is a _____ doctor than Omar.
a good b better c best d the best
- 13 Water is the _____ expensive of all liquids.
a much b least c less d more
- 14 An elephant is _____ as a tiger.
a fast b faster c fastest d not as fast
- 15 Nobody in our company is _____ Peter.
a efficient b as efficient as c most efficient than d as efficient
- 16 It was _____ of her to waste all her money.
a more foolish than b less foolish c foolish d least foolish
- 17 Laptops are becoming _____ popular nowadays.
a less and more b more and less c more and more d more and more
- 18 Climbing is the _____ dangerous sport in the world.
a more b most c less d as
- 19 Mr Ali has _____ friends than me.
a many b most c the least d more

- 20 The white flower is pretty, but I think the red one is even
a pretty b prettiest c prettier d most pretty
- 21 Today is _____ hotter than yesterday.
a least b little c less d most
- 22 My flat is _____ than yours.
a more big b less big c bigger d the biggest
- 23 I don't read as _____ books as you do.
a much b more c most d many

5 Adverb ظرف

- هناك خمسة أنواع من الظروف هي :

Types of adverbs أنواع الظروف

- **Frequency التكرار** - I often get up early.
- **Degree الدرجة** - She was very happy yesterday.
- **Manner الطريقة** - He ran quickly.
- **Place المكان** - She travelled abroad.
- **Time الزمن** - He went to the park yesterday.

- وسنبدأ في شرح خمسة أنواع للظروف المختلفة :

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

١ تدل ظروف التكرار كما يتضح من اسمها على تكرار الحدث :

e.g. - I go to Alexandria every summer. - She goes to the cinema once a month.

٢ ظروف التكرار التالية مشتقة من كلمات زمنية، وتدل على تكرار الحدث كل فترة معينة :

daily - weekly - monthly - yearly / annually = every (day - week - month - year) = once a (day - week - month - year)

- e.g. : We pay the taxes **every year**.
 = We pay the taxes **once a year**.
 = We pay the taxes **only a year**.

٢. ظروف التكرار التالية تأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :

every + (time) + (day - night - week - month - summer - year ...)

- e.g. : I visit my aunt **every month** = I visit my aunt **once a month**.
 She calls her mother **every three days**.

= I visit three days, she calls her mother **once a week**.

٣. ظروف التكرار التالية تملأ على تكرار الحدث عدة مئة من العتات كل مرة واحدة وتأتي في نهاية الجملة :

- e.g. : once + (time) + (day - night - week - month - year ...)
 I go to the club **once a week**.
 = **Once a week**, I go to the club.

٤. تستخدم ظروف التكرار التالية قبل الفعل الأسنى أو بعد (to be) والأفعال المساعدة :

- بانتظام regularly - عادة normally / usually - بشكل دائم constantly - دائماً always
 من حين و آخر occasionally - أحياناً sometimes - غالباً frequently / often
 مطلقاً never - بالكاد hardly ever - نائراً seldom / rarely - شبه لئلة little

- e.g. : I **usually** go to the club.
 Tom **is often** late for work.

- كما يمكن أن تستخدم ظروف التكرار هذه في بداية أو نهاية الجملة لتؤكد على معنى الفعل :

- e.g. : **Sometimes**, I play football.
 = I play football **sometimes**.

٥. الظروف التالية تملأ على النفي، وعند استخدامها في بداية الجملة فإن المعنى السائد يصبح على النفي :

Seldom / Rarely / Seldom / Hardly / Little / Never + فعل مساعد + subj. فاعل

- e.g. : - We **never** waste our time.
 = **Never** do we waste our time.
 - My train **rarely** goes out.
 = **Rarely** does my train go out.

Adverbs of degree

ظروف الدرجة

١. أهم ظروف الدرجة في اللغة الإنجليزية هي :

a bit	قليلاً	nearly	تقريباً
absolutely	بشكل مطلق	pretty	بالتفصيل / ببطء
almost	تقريباً	quite	إلى حد ما
completely	تماماً	rather	إلى حد ما
enough	كاف / بما يكفي	really	بالتفصيل / ببطء
entirely	كُلّاً	scarcely	بداً / قليلاً
extremely	للمعالي	too	بما / أكثر من اللازم
hardly	بالكاد	utterly	كُلّاً
just	مجرد / بمرّة	very	بما
little	قليلاً / قلّة		

٢. تستخدم ظروف الدرجة في الحالات التالية :

- e.g. : - Mr Omar is **very** tall.
 - I'm **a bit** tired.

- e.g. : - He speaks **quite** loudly.
 - She walks **very** slowly.

- e.g. : - Aya has **nearly** prepared lunch.
 - She **just** smiled and went away.

٣. تستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات العادية :

little / a bit - rather / quite - very - really - extremely

- e.g. : - The water is **very** hot. - I'm **extremely** tired.

٤. تستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات القوية :

absolutely - utterly / entirely - completely

- e.g. : - This engine is **absolutely** excellent.
 - The temple is **utterly** ancient.



④ يمكن أن تُستخدم (really / pretty) مع كل من الصفات القوية والضعيفة :

e.g. : - He is really angry / furious.

⑤ تُعطي (enough) معنى إيجابي وتُستخدم قبل الاسم أو بعد الصفة والظرف :

e.g. : - He has enough money. (enough + noun)

- He is old enough to depend on himself. (adj. + enough)

- She works hard enough to pass the exam. (adv. + enough)

⑥ تُعطي (too ... to) معنى سلبي وتُستخدم قبل الصفة والظرف :

e.g. : - The tea is too sweet to drink. (too + adj.)

Adverbs of manner

① ظرف الكيفية يصف كيفية حدوث الفعل و يجب عن السؤال بـ (How) :

e.g. : - A : How does Omar walk? B : He walks quickly.

- A : How do they work? B : They work hard.

② يأتي ظرف الكيفية بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول :

e.g. : - Sama walks slowly. - Ali shouted at me angrily.

③ تأتي الظروف التالية قبل الفعل وليس بعده :

usually – probably – possibly – definitely – surely – certainly

e.g. : - It is probable he will buy a car. = He will probably buy a car.

- He prays as usual. = He usually prays.

④ يتكون ظرف الكيفية غالباً بإضافة (y / ly / ily) إلى الصفة :

١. بصفة عامة يتم تكوين ظرف الكيفية بإضافة (ly) إلى الصفة :

e.g. : - slow → slowly - quick → quickly

٢. وتُضاف (ly) حتى وإن كانت الصفة تنتهي بحرف (l) :

e.g. : - careful → carefully - beautiful → beautifully

٣. لصفة المنتهية بـ (le) يتم حذف حرف (e) وإضافة (y) :

e.g. : - possible → possibly - probable → probably

٤. الصفة المنتهية بـ (y) مبدوء بحرف ساكن تتحول إلى (ily) :

e.g. : - easy → easily - happy → happily

٥. الصفة المنتهية بـ (ly) تتحول إلى ظرف باستخدام : (in a way / manner) :
e.g. : - friendly way - in a friendly way
- cowardly way - in a cowardly way

- Bassem is a good swimmer = Bassem swims well.

٦. هناك ظروف غير منتظمة مثل :
e.g. : - good → well - fast → fast - hard → hard
- late → late - early → early

- He smiled in a fatherly manner (way).

⑤ هناك بعض الظروف لها شكلين ومعنيين مختلفين :

deep	بعمق / عميقاً	deeply	بشدة
free	مجاناً	freely	بحرية
hard	بجد / بصعوبة	hardly	بالكاد / تقريباً لا
high	عالياً	highly	بدرجة كبيرة
late	متأخراً	lately	مؤخراً / حديثاً
most	الأكثر	mostly	أساساً / في الغالب
near	بقرب	nearly	تقريباً
pretty	إلى حد ما	prettily	بشكل جميل

e.g. : - The ship sank deep in the ocean.

- I was deeply affected by your advice.

⑥ يمكن مقارنة الظروف مثل الصفات الطويلة باستخدام :

more / أكثر / less / أقل + adv. + than

e.g. : - Rodayna draws more beautifully than Ahmed.

- Mr Ayman drives less fast than Mr Ashraf.

Adverbs of place

① أهم ظروف المكان في اللغة الإنجليزية هي :

above	فوق / أعلى	eastwards	شرقاً
abroad	خارج البلاد	everywhere	في كل مكان

across	عبر	far	بعيداً
ahead	أمام	here	هنا
around	حول	homeward	باتجاه البيت
away	بعيداً	in	بالداخل
back	لخلف	indoors	بالداخل
backwards	للخلف	inside	بالداخل
below	أسفل	nearby	قريب / مجاور
between	بين	outside	بالخارج
beyond	وراء / بعد	overseas	خارج البلاد
down	أسفل	there	هناك
downwards	لأسفل	west	في / باتجاه الغرب

① تُستخدم ظروف المكان لتحديد مكان حدوث الفعل :

e.g. : - We are meeting here next October.

② توضع ظروف المكان عادة بعد المفعول أو بعد الفعل :

e.g. : - I will wait for them outside.

- I will wait outside for them.

③ قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى الاتجاه :

e.g. : - He went north to enjoy the good weather in Alexandria.

④ قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى المسافة :

e.g. : - There's a gym nearby.

⑤ قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى مكان شيء - بالنسبة لأشياء أخرى :

e.g. : - The horse is under the tree.

⑥ قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى الحركة :

e.g. : - The boat moved backwards.

Adverbs of time

① ظروف الزمان التي تشير إلى وقت وقوع الحدث تأتي غالباً في نهاية الجملة :

yesterday - tomorrow - today - now - last week - later - etc.

e.g. : - I'll call you later. - I'm busy studying now.

- يمكن استخدام هذه الظروف في بداية الجملة للتركيز على معنى الظروف :

e.g. : - Later, I'll call you. - Now, I'm busy studying.

② ظروف الزمان التي تشير إلى وقت وقوع الحدث تأتي غالباً في نهاية الجملة :

e.g. : for + مدة / since + توقيت / all + مدة

- I have been waiting here for ten minutes.

- She has had this mobile since 2017.

③ تُستخدم (yet) بمعنى (حتى الآن) في نهاية الجملة أو بعد (not) لتدل على شيء لم يحدث بعد وإن كان يُتَظَر حدوثه :

e.g. : - Have they arrived yet? - We haven't decided yet.

- A: Have you finished? - B: Not yet.

④ تُستخدم (still) بمعنى (لا يزال)، وتوضع قبل الفعل الأصلي وبعد الفعل المساعد :

e.g. : - He is still waiting for his friends.

- Do you still live in Aswan?

- عندما يكون (be) فعلاً أساسياً فإن (still) تُستخدم بعده :

⑤ عندما يكون هناك أكثر من ظرف زمان يكون الترتيب كالتالي :

التوقيت + when + التكرار + how often + المدة + how long

e.g. : - I worked for five hours.

- I have worked for five hours every day.

- I worked for five hours every day last year.

موقع التفوق AltFwok.com

Test Yourself

⊕ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He has no money. He is poor.
a. very b. fairly c. quite d. extremely
2. You shouldn't climb the stairs
a. careful b. care c. carelessly d. careless
3. My sister is a good student. she studies her lessons
a. well b. good c. goodly d. willingly
4. My father ran very and caught a thief.
a. fastly b. fast c. fastness d. fasten
5. I sometimes get up and miss the school bus.
a. late b. lately c. later d. lateness
6. The team played the match very, so they lost it.
a. had b. badly c. badness d. good
7. This girl behaves
a. friendly b. friend
c. in a friendly way d. friendliness
8. He couldn't buy the suit because it was expensive.
a. rather b. quite c. never d. hardly
9. I had an ordinary childhood.
a. quite b. quiet c. quit d. quickly
10. We like our English teacher. He is a good person.
a. quite b. never c. lately d. hardly
11. It is raining
a. heavy b. heavily c. heaviness d. heavenly
12. Dalia does her work She is efficient.
a. good b. well c. proper d. prepare
13. Samy was exhausted when he finished the race.
a. utterly b. very c. quite d. rather
14. Bassam doesn't leave his office before he finishes his work. He is quite a worker.
a. harder b. hardly c. hardest d. hard

15. Noha was after she had cleaned the house all day. She slept for 12 hours after that.
a. absolutely exhausted b. absolutely tired
c. very exhausted d. not tired
16. Today, car engines burn petrol more than in the past.
a. efficient b. efficiently c. efficiency d. inefficient
17. She's a bad writer. She writes English
a. badly b. worse c. worst d. bad
18. She works
a. hardly b. more hardly c. hard d. hardness
19. Don't behave to be popular with people.
a. rudely b. rude c. rudeness d. rudest
20. She answered the questions
a. accurate b. more accurate
c. accuracy d. accurately



الجزء الأول : زمن المضارع المستمر

Part 1 Present Tense

Formation : تتكون جملة المضارع المستمر من
 - في الجمل المثبتة : Subject + am / is / are + (inf. + ing) ...
 e.g. : - Ali is reading a story. - I am running fast.
 - Aya and Heba are cooking lunch.
 - في الجمل المنفية : Subject + am not / is not (isn't) / are not (aren't) + inf. + ing.
 e.g. : - Ali is not reading a story. - I am not running fast.
 - Aya and Heba are not (aren't) cooking lunch.
 - كيفية إضافة (ing) للفعل :
 • (inf. + ing) :
 e.g. : - read → reading - visit → visiting
 (١) إذا انتهى المصدر بحرف (e) ساكن لا يضاف ، وإن بحث قبل حدة ing
 e.g. : - write → writing - make → making
 - وشذ عن ذلك الفعلين dye / singe :
 e.g. : - dye → dyeing - singe → singeing
 (٢) إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد و كان الفعل يتكون من مقطع واحد أو أكثر يشترط أن يكون المنقطع الأخير مشدداً في اللفظ فإنه يضاف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة (ing)
 e.g. : - run → running - begin → beginning
 - stop → stopping - regret → regretting
 - swim → swimming
 (٣) إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرفين (ie) فإنهما يتحولان إلى (y) قبل إضافة (ing)
 e.g. : - die → dying - tie → tying
 (٤) إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) يضاف بعده حرف (k) قبل إضافة (ing)
 e.g. : - panic → panicking - picnic → picnicking

- السؤال المبدئي : يفعل ماذا ؟
 Am / Is / Are + subject + (inf. + ing) ... ?
 e.g. : - Is Ali reading a story ? - Yes, he is. / No, he isn't.
 - Are you running fast ? - Yes, I am.
 - السؤال بكلمة استفهام :
 Question word + (inf. + ing) ... + subject + am / is / are + ... ?
 e.g. : - What is Ali doing ?
 - Who is running fast ?
 - المضارع المستمر في صيغة البني للجمل :
 Object + am / is / are + being + p.p. ...
 e.g. : - Ali is reading a story. (active)
 - A story is being read by Ali. (passive)
 - She is watering the plants. (active)
 - The plants are being watered by her. (passive)
Usage : الاستخدام
 ① To express actions that are happening now : التعبير عن أحداث تقع الآن :
 e.g. : - I am revising for my test. - They are watching Tom and Jerry.
 ② To express actions that are taking place around the present : التعبير عن أحداث تقع حول الوقت الحاضر وليس بالضرورة الآن :
 e.g. : - We are taking exams these days.
 - I'm reading a story for Naguib Mahfouz.
 ③ To express future arrangements : يعبر عن حدث في المستقبل كامل الترتيبات (المرجع معروف والأطراف المشتركة في الحدث تعلم ذلك) :
 e.g. : - Our aunt is leaving hospital tomorrow morning
 - They are travelling on Monday.
 - يستخدم المضارع المستمر مع كلمات زمنية مثل :
Key words :
 now - at the moment - at present - still - ما زال - Look ! - Listen ! - Watch out ! انتبه etc.
 - لاحظ : لا يستخدم المضارع المستمر مع أفعال الحواس و التفكير و العاطفة و التملك بل يأتي معهم زمن المضارع البسيط مثل :

astonish	يعجب	hate	يكره	need	يحتاج
see	يرى	believe	يصدق	hear	يسمع
owe	يدين	seem	يبدو	belong	يخص
know	يعرف	own	يمتلك	smell	يشم
concern	يقلق / يهتم	lack	ينقص	possess	يمتلك
suppose	يفترض	consist	يتكون	like	يحب
prefer	يفضل	surprise	يفاجئ	contain	يحتوي على
love	يحب	realize	يدرك	taste	يتذوق
depend	يعتمد	matter	يهم	recognise	يتعرف على
understand	يفهم	deserve	يستحق	mean	يعني
remember	يتذكر	want	يريد	have	يملك

لا يستخدم الفعل (have) بمعنى "يملك" في المضارع المستمر ولكن يضاف له (ing) إذا استخدم بمعنى غير المعنى الأساسي (يملك) :

- e.g. : - I have a shower. أملاك دش
- I'm having a shower. انني أخذ دشا
- I'm having my breakfast now. يتناول أو يأكل

2 The Present Perfect Continuous Tense زمن المضارع التام المستمر

Formation : التكوين

Subject + have / has + been + inf. + ing

- وغالبا ما تكون في الجملة كلمات تدل على الاستمرار :

since... / for... / for... now / all +

- e.g. : - He has been working there ever since he graduated.
- It has been raining for three days now.
- I have been playing football for about ten years.

- لاحظ صيغة النفي :

Subject + hasn't / haven't + been + inf. + ing ...

- e.g. : - They haven't been sleeping all night.
- Rodayna hasn't been learning English for this long time.

- لاحظ صيغتي السؤال :

- Have / Has + subject + been + inf. + ing . ?
e.g. : - Have you been playing tennis for an hour?
Yes, we have (been playing tennis for an hour).
- Has Rodayna been learning English for this long time?
No, she hasn't (been learning English for this long time).

Question word + أداة استفهام + have / has + subject + been + (inf. + ing) ... ?

- e.g. : - How long have you been playing tennis?
- What has Rodayna been learning for this long time?

Usage : الاستخدام

- يستخدم المضارع التام المستمر للتعبير عن :
- حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال مستمر حتى الوقت الحاضر :
e.g. : - He's been training really hard since the last Olympic Games.
- I have been learning English since I was eight years old.
- He has been working for them for about two years.

- حدث تم بانتظام حيث بدأ في الماضي وأستمر حتى الآن :
e.g. : - For the last few months, I've been playing squash regularly.
- حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي وله اثر على الحاضر (تفسير لموقف في الحاضر) :

- A : You look tired. What have you been doing?
B : I have been serving customers all day.

- يستخدم هذا الزمن مع الأفعال التي تستغرق وقتا طويلا وتدل على الاستمرارية :

study, teach, learn, read, write, play, run, paint, sit,
stand, lie, sleep, cook, wait, rain,

- e.g. : - It has been raining since I woke up.
- يُستخدم المضارع التام وليس المضارع التام المستمر في الحالات التالية :
- عند بناء جملة المضارع التام المستمر للجهد لتحويل إلى المضارع العام :

Object + have / has + been + p.p.

- e.g. : - I have been studying English since I was in primary one. (active)
- English has been studied (by me) since I was in primary one. (passive)

الروابط النحوية

1. Linking words (Conjunctions)

Conjunctions that express contrast

1. تستخدم الروابط التالية لفضل على التناقض وتضع هذه الروابط بين الجملتين.

although / though / even though / even if / but / yet / however + subject + verb

- e.g. : - Although Sam is upset, he keeps smiling.
- Even though the car is expensive, I am going to buy it.
- As he was born in London, yet he can't speak English well.
- In fact, I won't turn the fan on.

2. تستخدم الروابط التالية لفضل على التناقض وتضع هذه الروابط (gerund or noun).

In spite of - Despite - Regardless of + (gerund or noun)

- e.g. : - In spite of her old age, she isn't married yet.
- Despite his wealth, he isn't satisfied with his life.
- Despite being wealthy, he isn't satisfied with his life.

- لاحظ أنه يمكن التعبير عن التناقض باستخدام (However) من حيث الجملتين.

However + فعل + فاعل + صلة / ظرف

- e.g. : - However hard he works, he doesn't get a promotion.
- Whatever he does, he doesn't get a promotion.

Whatever + اسم + فعل + فاعل + صلة / ظرف

- e.g. : - Whatever the wealth he has, he is sad.

- لاحظ أنه يمكن التعبير عن التناقض باستخدام (no matter) كالتالي:

no matter + فعل + فاعل + صلة / ظرف

- e.g. : - Short as he is, he can jump as high as he plays, he doesn't win the match.

In spite of / Despite + the fact that + subject + verb

- e.g. : - Despite the fact that he is ill, he can work hard.

2. Conjunctions that express cause

1. للتعبير عن السبب تستخدم الروابط التالية ويضعها صلة (فاعل + فعل + ...):

(because - as - since) + subject + verb

- e.g. : - She won the competition because she worked hard.
- As Soha has a heart problem, she can't do sport.
- Since she has a heart problem, she can't do sport.

2. للتعبير عن السبب تستخدم الروابط التالية ويضعها (noun or gerund):

because of - due to - owing to - on account of - thanks to - through - for + noun / (inf. + neg)

- e.g. : - My grandpa died due to a heart attack.
- Owing to his intelligence, he can do any difficult sum.
- Because of being ill, he went to hospital.

- لاحظ أنه يمكن استخدام (Being + verb) بمعنى (كون / كون / كونهم) للتعبير عن السبب:

- e.g. : - Being ill, he went to hospital.
- لاحظ أن هذه التعبيرات يمكن أن تأتي بعدها جملة كاملة.

Because of / Owing to / Due to / Thanks to / On account of + the fact that + subject + verb

- e.g. : - The teacher punished him because of being rude / because of the fact that he was rude.

Conjunctions that express result

تستخدم الروابط التالية للدلالة على النتيجة
 so - that is why - therefore - consequently - As a result of - Hence - thus
 e.g. : - He was wet so he had a severe cold.
 - Nada was born with a phobia of dogs therefore she can't stand seeing a dog in the street.

كذلك يمكن استخدام جملتي
 so (adv / adv) that
 such (adj + noun) that

e.g. : - The book was so successful that it was sold like sweet.
 - It was such a successful book that it was sold like sweet.

Conjunctions that express time

تستخدم الروابط الزمنية التالية للدلالة على علاقة زمنية بين حدثين
 When - While - As (Just as) - After - Before
 - By the time - till - until - As soon as

e.g. : - While it was raining, I fell down.
 - After the train had left, Sally arrived at the station.
 - By the time he got the prize, he had expected it.
 - She didn't do the shopping till she had had her salary.
 - We won't leave home until we have permission.
 - As soon as Ali arrives, we will leave.

لاحظ العلاقة بين الحدثين في الجمل السابقة.
 لاحظ أنه عند حذف الفاعل يستخدم (inf. + ing) بعد بعض هذه الروابط
 e.g. : - While raining, I fell down.
 يمكن استخدام (During) بدلاً من (While) وفيها (noun)
 e.g. : - I fell asleep during the film.
 لاحظ أنه تستخدم (On) بمعنى (When) وفيها (inf. + ing) أو (noun)

Kind of Sentences

e.g. : - When she got the prize, she felt extremely excited
 - On getting the prize, she felt extremely excited
 - On his arrival, we started the party
 يمكن استخدام (inf + ing) بعد (When)
 e.g. : - When reading the new novel written by Tom, he felt shocked

Conditionals

الجمل الشرطية
 Present Simple Present Simple
 If زمن المضارع البسيط زمن المضارع البسيط (Zero conditional)
 e.g. : - If you put wood in water, it floats
 Present Simple will + inf.
 If زمن المضارع البسيط زمن المستقبل البسيط (First conditional)
 e.g. : - If I remember her address, I will tell you.
 Past Simple would + inf.
 If زمن الماضي البسيط could / might + inf. (Second conditional)
 e.g. : If I lost Ahmed's CD, I would buy him another one.
 Past perfect would have + p.p.
 If زمن الماضي التام could / might + have + p.p. (Third conditional)

e.g. : If I had been more careful, I wouldn't have lost my book.
 يمكن استخدام "Were" مكان "If" في الحالة الثانية :
 - If she were a tour guide, she would tell him about the monuments.
 Were she a tour guide, she would tell him about the monuments.
 - If he played well, he would win the game.
 Were he to play well, he would win the game.
 يمكن استخدام In case of (If) في الثلاثيات يأتي بعدها اسم أو (inf. + ing)
 e.g. : If Ali worked hard, he wouldn't be fired.
 In case of working hard, Ali wouldn't be fired.

Altfwok.com موقع التفوق



يمكن استخدام (But) مع الشرط أو بدلاً من (if) ولكن
 اسم أو (ing) + will / can / may + inf.

e.g.: - If Samia didn't eat vegetables, she wouldn't be healthy.
 - But she ate vegetables, Samia wouldn't be healthy.

Conjunctions that express purpose

1 Subject + present → ^{so that} in order that ^{من أجل / لكي} + can / will / may + inf.
 = the hope that
 e.g.: - We save money in the hope that we will buy a car.

2 Subject + past → ^{so that} in order that ^{من أجل / لكي} + could / would / might + inf.
 = in the hope that
 e.g.: - Ali went to the market so that he could buy some vegetables.

3 Subject + verb + to / so as to / in order to ^{المصدر} + inf.
 e.g.: - She went there in order to enjoy the fine weather.
 - I study hard to reach my goal.

4 Subject + verb + not to / in order not to / so as not to + inf. ^{لكي لا}
 e.g.: - I go to bed early in order not to be late for school.

5 Subject + verb + in the hope of + inf. + ing
 e.g.: - I went home quickly in the hope of laying with my children before they slept.

6 Subject + verb + lest ^{خشية أن} + inf. / should + inf.
 e.g.: - She turned away from the window lest any one see / should see her.

Conjunctions that express addition

1 and ^{تستخدم "and" لربط جملتين بإضافة شيء إلى شيء آخر (ترتبط بين جملتين)}
 e.g.: - We played tennis and went home.
 - Ahmed is studying and Rodayna is cooking.

CLAMPING Words of Sentences

1 Besides + noun or (inf. + ing) ^{بالإضافة إلى}

e.g.: - Besides doing homework, she helped her mother.
 - She helped her mother besides doing homework.

2 Besides that + subject + inf. ^{بالإضافة إلى ذلك (جمله)}
 e.g.: - She did her homework. Besides that she helped her mother

3 in addition to + noun / (inf. + ing) ^{بالإضافة إلى}

e.g.: - In addition to doing homework, she helped her mother.
 - She helped her mother in addition to doing homework.

4 In addition + جملة ^{بالإضافة إلى ذلك}

e.g.: - In addition she did homework, she helped her mother
 - She did homework. In addition, she helped her mother

5 As well as + (inf. + ing). ^{إذا كان فاعل الجملتين واحد بالإضافة إلى}

e.g.: - We went to the market. We went to the zoo.
 - As well as going to the market, we went to the zoo.
 - إذا كان الفاعل مختلفين بالجملتين فإن الفعل يتبع فاعل الجملة الأولى في حالة الربط به
 as well as كالتالي.

فعل يتبع فاعل الجملة الأولى ... + فاعل ثاني + as well as + فاعل أول

e.g.: - I as well as Ali have a car.
 - Eman as well as her brothers likes fish.

6 not only, but also (as well) ^{ليس هنا فقط ولكن أيضاً}

e.g.: - She not only arrived late, but she also forgot her books.
 - She not only arrived late, but she forgot her books as well.
 - لاحظ: بعد استخدام Not only في بداية الجملة تستخدم الفعل المساعد قبل الفاعل
 e.g.: - Not only did she arrive late, but she also forgot her books.

Both and كلا من

e.g. : Mr Ahmed is a doctor. His wife is a doctor.
Both Mr Ahmed and his wife are doctors.

لاحظ : عند الربط به both and يكون الفعل في حالة الجمع
بأن يقد "Both of" صير بفعل جمع (you, us, them) ويكرر استخدام الفعل أو صير بصيغة الجمع

e.g. : Both of the girls are polite.
My aunt visited both of us yesterday.

Neither ... nor لا ... ولا

نستخدم neither ... nor لربط جملتين في حالة النفي

e.g. : Rodayna isn't at home. Her brother isn't at home.
Neither Rodayna nor her brother is at home.

لاحظ أن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني كالاتي

e.g. : Malak isn't lazy. Her sisters aren't lazy.
Neither Malak nor her sisters are lazy.

عند استخدام Neither في أول الجملة يندم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل

e.g. : I neither watched nor tried to watch the film.
Neither did I watch nor tried to watch the film.

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- ... Lemuel Gulliver was travelling at sea, there was a storm.
a. Although b. If c. Because d. While
- They were accused of stealing money ... they were innocent.
a. despite b. although c. in spite of d. as
- He failed the exam ... his intelligence.
a. although b. however c. despite d. even though
- Cheap ... the car was, I refused to buy it.
a. however b. despite c. though d. as

EL-MOHAMMED Kinds of Sentences

- They couldn't continue the race ...
a. owing to b. because c. since d. as
- He'd like to join the sports club ... he can get fit.
a. so as to b. as c. so that d. in order
- We visited Ahmed yesterday ... congratulate him on his success.
a. so that b. in order to c. so as d. because
- ... did he get full marks but he was chosen as the ideal student as well.
a. As well as b. Not only c. Beside d. In addition to
- ... he was in debt, we decided to help him.
a. Since b. Because of c. Owing to d. In spite of
- ... cleaning the house, she did the shopping.
a. In addition b. As well as c. However d. Also
- ... you say, I'll never believe you.
a. Despite b. However c. Whatever d. In spite
- ... swimming makes me fit, I don't like it.
a. Although b. Despite c. In spite d. Because
- I, as well as my friend, ... to leave at once.
a. am b. is c. are d. were
- Not only my brothers but also my sister ... going to Alexandria.
a. are b. is c. were d. have been
- Neither the library nor the bookshops ... that book.
a. has b. have c. is having d. are having



موقع
التفوق
ALTfWok.com



- 1- Reading Skill
- 2- Writing Skill
- 3- Translation

١. مهارة القراءة
٢. مهارة الكتابة
٣. الترجمة

تنويه

تابع مستويات اول
بأول إلكترونيًا



Reading Skill

CLIMONSSER Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة

How to answer a comprehension :

- * كيفية الإجابة على قطعة الفهم :
- قطعة الفهم عبارة عن نص، يجيب الطالب على ثلاثة أسئلة (نبدأ بأدوات استفهام) :
- لا بد أن تقبى أسئلة قطعة الفهم المهارات التالية :

1- Giving the main idea or understanding reference

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية أو فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

وهناك نموذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك .

Topic الموضوع

• The topic / main idea of the passage is

= The text is mainly about

- موضوع النص هو / الفكرة الرئيسية للنص هي

= What is the topic / main idea of the passage?

= ما هو موضوع النص / الفكرة الرئيسية ؟

• Which of the following titles best summarizes the main idea of the passage?

- أي من العناوين التالية توجز الفكرة الرئيسية للنص ؟

Source المصدر

• This passage is part of / taken from / extracted from

- هذا النص هو جزء من / مأخوذ من / مقتبس من

Title العنوان

• Which of the following would be the best title for the passage / story / article / extract?

- أي مما يلي يُعد العنوان الأفضل للقطعة / للقصة / للمقال / للاقتباس ؟

Reference

- The underlined word pronoun refers to

- الكلمة / الضمير الذي نحدد خط يشير إلى

2. Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

تخمين معاني مفردة لغوية في النص

وهذا يساعدكم على فهم النص بشكل أفضل

Synonym المرادف / المصطلح

- In line ... the word ... is closest in meaning to ...
- في سطر رقم ... الكلمة ... أقرب ما يكون في المعنى إلى ...
- The underlined word ... gives the meaning of ...
- الكلمة التي تحتها خط ... تعطي معنى ...
- Which of the following is equivalent in meaning to ... ?
- أي مما يلي مرادف في المعنى لـ ... ؟
- The word ... in the passage gives the synonym of ...
- كلمة ... في النص تعطي مرادف ...

Antonym المضاد / المصطلح

- In the ... paragraph, the word ... is the antonym of ...
- في الفقرة رقم ... كلمة ... مضاد لـ ...
- The word ... in the passage gives the opposite of ...
- كلمة ... في النص تعطي عكس ...
- Which of the following gives the antonym of ... ?
- أي مما يلي مضاد في المعنى لـ ... ؟
- The word ... has two meanings in the passage. Explain.
- كلمة ... لها معنيين في النص. وضح ...

3 Understanding details and extracting information

فهم التفاصيل واستخراج المعلومات

وهذا يساعدكم على فهم النص بشكل أفضل

Yes / No questions

Wh-questions

- أسئلة تبدأ بمفعول مساعد

- أسئلة تبدأ بكلمات استفهام

- أدوات وتعبيرات استفهامية هامة

about whom	عن من	since when	منذ متى
for how long	كم من الوقت	to what extent	إلى أي مدى
for whom	لأجل من	to whom	إلى من
from where	من أين	what	ما / ماذا
how	كيف	what ... for = for what	لماذا
how come	لماذا	what colour	ما اللون
how far	كم بعد / إلى مدى	what size	ما الحجم
how high	كم ارتفاع	what time	ما الوقت
how long	كم طول المدة / المسافة	when	متى
how many	كم عدد	where	من
how many times	كم مرة	where ... to	في أي
how much	كم كمية / كم ثمن	which	أي
how often	كم مرة	who	من (المفعول أو المفعول عامل)
how old	كم عمر	whom	من (المفعول عامل)
how tall	كم طول	whose	لن / ملك من
in / at which	في أي	why	لماذا
in what way	بأي طريقة	with whom	مع من

نماذج أخرى مثل

True / Correct صحيح

- According to the passage, all of the following is true EXCEPT
- حسب ما ورد في النص، فكل ما يلي صحيح ما عدا
- Based on the passage, which of the following is true about
- حسب ما ورد في النص، أي مما يلي يُعدُّ صحيحاً بناءً على النص

False / Incorrect خطأ

- According to the passage, all of the following is false EXCEPT
- حسب ما ورد في النص، فكل ما يلي خطأ ما عدا
- Based on the passage, what is probably untrue about
- حسب ما ورد في النص، أي مما يلي يُعدُّ غير صحيح بناءً على النص

4 Critical Thinking Skill مهارة التفكير النقدي

- من أسئلة التفكير النقدي المرتبطة بقطع الفهم
- تعتمد أسئلة التفكير النقدي على الفكرة الرئيسية للنص، ووجهة نظر الخبير
- لا تطلب هذه الأسئلة معلومات مباشرة موجودة في النص
- لا بد أن تكون إجابة سؤال التفكير النقدي كما يلي
- 1. تدل على فهم الموضوع والسؤال ؟ سقطة أو غفلة ؟ ✓ صحيحة من الناحية النحوية

- نماذج من أسئلة التفكير النقدي :

- 1 تركّز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على الرأي الشخصي للطلاب بخصوص الكاتب أو الأفكار الموجودة بالنص مثل :
• Do you think this passage was written by a young man or an old person? What showed this to you?
- هل تظن أن كاتب هذا النص شاب أم شخص كبير من العمر ؟ وما الذي أوضح لك ذلك ؟
- What job do you think the writer of this passage is? How do you know?
- في رأيك، ما وظيفة كاتب هذا النص ؟ كيف تعرف ذلك ؟

Reading Skill مهارة القراءة

- 1 تركّز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على قياس القدرة على التعبير عن الفئان أو اختلاف مع ما ورد في النص مع ذكر السبب ؟
• Do you agree with the ideas the writer has introduced / raised? Why / Why not?
- هل تتفق مع الأفكار التي طرحها الكاتب ؟ له / لم ؟
- هل فكر الكاتب بمهمته لذلك ؟ له / لم ؟
- 2 تركّز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على طلب أمثلة من عند الطالب لإثبات صحة أو خطأ ما ورد بالنص :
• What do you think of what the writer has said? Give examples of your own that can prove / disprove that.
- ما رأيك بما قاله الكاتب ؟ اذكر أمثلة من عندك تثبت صحة أو خطأ ذلك.
- How would you put into your own words?
- كيف يمكنك صياغة بأسلوبك ؟
- What do you think would be an example of?
- ماذا تعتقد أنه مثالاً لـ ؟
- Give an example of = Illustrate
- اذكر مثالاً لـ / وضح ؟
- 1 تركّز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على أن يفترض الطالب أنه في موقف معين وكيف سيكون رد فعله :
• If you were the writer, would you have the same point of view? Give your reason(s).
- لو كنت مكان الكاتب، هل كنت ستتبنى نفس الرأي ؟ اذكر السبب / الأسباب.
- What would you (do) if you were in the writer's position? Explain why
- ما الذي كنت (تفعله) لو أنك في مكان الكاتب ؟ وضح السبب.
- If hadn't what do you think would have happened?
- لو ماذا تعتقد كان سيحدث ؟

٤ تركّز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على تقييم نرجس الكاتب للموضوع وهل هو مناسب أم لا ؟

- Has the writer succeeded in making his ideas clear? Explain your opinion in detail

هل نجح الكاتب في توضيح أفكاره؟ وسع وجهه نظرك بالتفصيل.

- Is the writer's style suitable for the topic? How did he develop his ideas?

هل أسلوب الكاتب مناسب للموضوع؟ كيف طوّر أفكاره؟

٥ تركّز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على تخيل ردود أفعال قنات معينة من الناس تجاه الأفكار الواردة بالنص :

- How do you think poor people / patients would view these? Illustrate.

في رأيك، كيف سيكون رأي الفقراء / المرضى تجاه ذلك ... ؟ وضح.

- How would people who differ in age or gender react to?

كيف سيكون رد فعل الناس الذين يختلفون في العمر أو الجنس تجاه ... ؟

٦ تركّز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على التعبير عن المفردات أو المبررات المستفادة أو التقييم الموجودة بالنص :

- How can you make use of (benefit from)?

- كيف يمكنك أن تستفيد من؟

- How could ... be put into practice?

- كيف يمكن تطبيق؟

- What is the moral of the story?

- ما المفرد الأخلاقي للقصة؟

موقع التفوق AltFwok.Com

Used in Reading comprehension questions
تستخدم في أسئلة الفهم في القراءة

- لابد من مراجعة المفردات التالية، فستساعدك على فهم الأسئلة الواردة على نص القراءة :

abbreviation	اختصار	lead to	يؤدي إلى
according to	طبقاً لـ	lesson	درس
advantages	مزايا	line	سطر
analyse	يحلل	main idea	فكرة رئيسية
analysis	تحليل	make a comment	يعلق
antonym	مضاد / عكس	make clear	يوضح
apply to	ينطبق على	meaning	معنى
article	مقال	mention	يذكر
author	مؤلف	merits = advantages	مزايا
back with evidence	يدعم بالدليل	moral	مفرد أخلاقي
based on	قائم على	moralities	فرد أخلاقي
be against	يعارض	opinion	رأي
be for	يؤيد	opposite	عكس
bold	بارز	other than	بجانب / غير ذلك
case	قضية	paragraph	فقرة
choice	اختيار	paraphrase	يعيد صياغة
claim	يدّعي / يزعم	passage	قضية القراءة
classification	تصنيف	perspective	منظور
classify	يُصنّف	point of view	رأي / وجهة نظر
comment	يعلق / تعلق	practical	عملي

core	جوهر	predict	تنبأ
demerits	مزايا	principle	مبدأ
= disadvantages		pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب
discuss	ناقش	quality	صفة / صوره
effect	تأثير	rather than	بدلاً من
equal	متساوي	reject	ايعارض / يرفض
equivalent	مماثل	result in	يؤدي إلى
essay	مقال	short for	اختصاراً
essence	جوهر / ن	simplify	يُبسِّط
example	مثال	state	يذكر
explain	شرح / عر	summarise	يُلخِّص
express	يعبر عن	support	يدعم
extra	إضافي / آخر	synonym	مترادف
impact	اثر / أثر	underlined	تحت خط
impression	طباع / عر	value	قيمة
introduce	تقدم / عر	writer	كاتب

Read and learn

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

All the different plants and animals in a natural community are in a state of balance. This balance is achieved by the plants and animals interacting with each other and with their non-living surrounding. An example of a natural community is woodland, and woodland is usually dominated by a particular species but there are also many other plants.

The plants of a community are the producers : they use carbon dioxide, oxygen, water and nitrogen to build up their tissues using energy in the form of sunlight. The plant tissues form food for the plant eating animals (herbivores) which are in turn eaten by the flesh-eating animals (carnivores). Thus, plants produce the basic food supply for all animals of the community. The animals themselves are the consumers, and are either herbivores or carnivores in a woodland community.

Examples of herbivores in a woodland community are rabbits, deer, mice, and snails, and insects, such as aphids and caterpillars. The herbivores are sometimes eaten by the carnivores. Woodland carnivores are of all sizes.

Some carnivores feed on herbivores and some feed on the smaller carnivores, while some feed on both : a tawny owl will eat beetles and shrews as well as voles and mice. These food relationships between the different members of the community are known as food chains or food webs. All food chains start with plants. The links of the chains are formed by the herbivores that eat the plants and the carnivores that feed on the herbivores. There are some organisms at the base of a food chain than at the top : for example, there are many more green plants than carnivores in a community.

Another important section of the community is made up of the decomposers. They include the bacteria and fungi that live in the soil and feed on dead animals and plants. By doing this, they break down the tissues of the dead organisms and release mineral salts into the soil.

فهم التفاصيل واستخراج المعلومات Understanding details & extracting information

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Decomposers soil for plants.
a. disturb b. enrich c. kill d. spoil
- The sun is nutrition in plants.
a. catalyst b. an element
c. responsible for d. secondary for
- According to the passage, a natural community comprises
a. living organisms b. non-living organisms
c. neither of them d. both of them

Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context (تخمين المعنى من السياق)

4. The underlined word "caterpillars" in the passage is similar in size

- a. forests b. mice c. moth d. snails

Critical thinking skill (مهارات التفكير النقدي)

B. Answer the following questions:

1. According to the passage, what do you think the writer's message to man?

a. Man should interact with the elements of nature to benefit from them.

b. Man should interact with the elements of nature to damage them.

c. Man should be indifferent.

d. Man should leave the earth.

2. What are the three components of a food chain mentioned in the passage?

a. Pasta, chili & meat.

b. Vegetable, carrots & parsley.

c. Plants, herbivores & carnivores.

d. Peas, fungi & mushrooms.

3. From your view point, what is meant by the balance in the passage?

a. balance between man and woman.

b. balance between companies and producers.

c. balance between herbivores and carnivores.

d. Balance between elements of nature.

4. Woodland has species of plants.

a. particular

b. common

c. surrounding

d. interacting

5. Woodland are of all sizes.

a. herbivores

b. carnivores

c. reptiles

d. mammals

6. All food Chains start with

a. meat

b. plants

c. men

d. organisms

Practise by yourself (تدرب بنفسك)

Reading Skill

Read the following passage, then answer the questions.

People may be divided into two types, winners and losers. Winners are able to change their situations and become independent by being responsible for their own lives. They don't blame others for their mistakes. They do their own thinking. They listen to others and evaluate what they say, and then they make up their minds.

Although they may fail at times, yet they keep self-confidence. Winners overcome their bad experiences. They enjoy work, play, food and the world of nature. They freely enjoy themselves, but they can postpone it if duty calls.

Lovers, on the other hand, never learn to take responsibility for their own lives. There are many causes why people can become losers: disease, poor nutrition, cruelty, unhappy relationships and bad experiences. These can interfere with the normal progress towards becoming a winner. But whereas winners fight these situations, losers hang onto them and use them as excuses. Losers usually feel anxious, unhappy and bored. They are afraid to try new things and often repeat their own mistakes again and again.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When the winners fail at times, they

a. always keep their self-confidence

b. are afraid to try new things

c. always repeat their own mistakes

d. spend their time waiting

2. Losers are people who

a. try to change

b. blame others for their mistakes

c. overcome their bad mistakes

d. learn to take responsibility

3. The opposite of "hang onto situations" in the last paragraph is

a. give them up

b. delay them

c. dream of them

d. be independent

4. The underlined phrase "on the other hand" means

a. however

b. because

c. as

d. so

5. Winners are
 responsible dependent careless d. lazy
6. Losers tend to
 change their ideas about others
 stay losers forever
 hate winners
 fight winners
7. Which of the following is correct?
 People should turn failure into success
 People can't succeed
 People can't challenge to win
 People should be careless
8. The word "anxious" has the same meaning of
 brave b. responsible c. dependent d. worried
9. Losers are afraid to new things.
 give b. try c. repeat d. stay
10. One of the causes of being a loser is
 a. good nutrition b. kindness
 bad nutrition c. good relationships



Writing Skill

المهارات الكتابية



موضوعي المقال : موضوعي الطالب
 - لقد أصبحت مهارة الكتابة ركيزة أساسية في نظام التعليم الجديد. وعلى الطالب أن ينمي هذه المهارة
 ليحصل لدرجة الإتقان ويكون مستعداً للكتابة في أي موضوع ، وصيغة عامة يجب أن يتقن الطالب كتابة
 نصيح أصبح العالم :

- 1 A narrative essay / short story
- 2 A descriptive essay
- 3 A comparative/argumentative essay

مقال قصدي أو قصة قصيرة
 مقال وصفي

مقال مقارن (مقارنة بين الأشياء) - لإظهار التشابه والاختلاف / مقال عدلي

- Different forms like : formal and informal emails, job description, cooking recipes, letters, invitation cards, a book review or brochure.

صحيح محله مثل رسالة البريد الإلكتروني الرسالة وغير الرسالة - وصف الوظائف - وصفات الطهي -
 المحادثات - بطاقات الدعوة - عرض تقديمي لكتاب - نشر ... إلخ

ما المطلوب منك في الاختبار بخصوص الموضوع الإنشائي؟

• كتابة حوالي (150) كلمة بأحد الصيغ (مقال - قصة ...)

• بب. إيضاح موضوعين أو أكثر لاختيار أحدهم للكتابة عنه

• نقد مباحة رأي الموضوع على شكل

• خبرة قد تحرق على العنوان المطلوب مباشرة

• حكمية أو قول مأثور يتخذه الطالب معروفاً أساساً لكتابة الموضوع الإنشائي

• مؤال مباشر

أشياء

Write about 150 words on ONE only of the following topics :

- An essay or short story about the statement: "For every joy, there is a price to pay."

- An essay or short story about the statement, "Setting a goal for yourself is the first step to achieve your ambition."
- Air pollution
- Why is it necessary to develop education in Egypt?

• وفيما يلي سيتم عرض خمسة لطيفة كتابة أهم ثلاث أشكال تعليمية وهي:

1 Essay writing

كتابة المقال

2 Short story writing

كتابة القصة القصيرة

1 Essay Writing

- ما الفرق بين الفقرة (Paragraph) والمقال (Essay)?

- الفقرة (Paragraph) عبارة عن مجموعة من الجمل متعلق بفكرة واحدة.
- المقال (Essay) عبارة عن مجموعة من الفقرات (Paragraphs) تدور كل واحدة حول فكرة واحدة متعلقة بالفكرة الرئيسية للمقال ككل.
- يُفترض أن يحتوي المقال على أربعة فقرات على الأقل.
- إرشادات عامة لكتابة كل فقرة من فقرات المقال:

- عند كتابة كل فقرة من فقرات المقال، هناك إرشادات عامة يجب اتباعها، وذلك لإخراج المقال بشكل جيد من حيث الشكل ومن حيث المضمون:

- من حيث الشكل Form

- تحسين الخط وترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.
- ترك مسافة صغيرة (١ سم تقريباً) في بداية السطر الأول لخط من كل فقرة.
- لا يبدأ كل جملة بحرف (Capital).
- وضع نقطة (.) في نهاية كل جملة، أو علامة استفهام (?) في بداية السؤال.

- من حيث المضمون Content

- يجب الاهتمام بالفكرة التي تدور عنها الفقرة وتسلطها مع أفكار الموضوع ككل.
- من المهم جداً أن تلتزم بالحدث عن الفكرة المطلوبة بوضوح وبسهولة.
- ابدأ الفقرة بـ (topic sentence) أي جملة رئيسية تحتوي على الفكرة التي تدور عنها الفقرة.
- لا بد من تنوع بدايات الجمل.
- استخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب للموضوع الذي تكتبه.
- استخدم جمل بسيطة حتى لا تقع في أخطاء أنت في علمك عنها.

The Form of the Essay

Writing Skill

Title

العنوان

Education and Technology

→ It is clear that technology has made it easier to get, store and use information. That's what has made it important to use modern technology in the field of education. In this essay, I'm going to write about the forms of technology we can use in education and how they will make the educational process more effective and enjoyable.

→ Computers can be used to store and control electronic information. A teacher can use his or her computer to prepare lessons in a more attractive way. Smart boards have partly replaced traditional blackboards. A smart board makes learning more interactive and exciting. Children learn from videos that are available on the internet. This in turn will make the education process more enjoyable and effective.

→ Modern technology will make education more effective. A student will be able to search for information in different sources. With the help of their teachers, students will learn for life not for exams. Most exams will be done online. No stressing exams will make students and their parents suffer any more.

→ To conclude, the use of modern technology in the educational field will be very useful. However, there's a long way to go before achieving this. So, every citizen must be patient and cooperative.

المسافة البادئة في أول كل فقرة

Introduction

Body

Conclusion

(1) Introduction :

المقدمة

- هي المقدمة الأولى في المقال وتطرح الفكرة أو الهدف من كتابة الموضوع وكيف سيتم عرض الأفكار

- بالنسبة للطالب الذي يجيد الكتابة، هناك أساليب مختلفة يمكن أن يبدأ به فقرة المقدمة مثل

١ حملة عامة تدبر بها عن الفكرة التي يوزعها في الموضوع

- مثال : عند كتابة موضوع عن دور المعلم "The role of teachers" يمكن أن تبدأ كالتالي.

- No one can deny that teachers play a very important role in both students' education and their personal lives.

- لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن المعلمين يلعبون دوراً هاماً في تعلم الطلاب وحياتهم الشخصية على السواء.

(2)

- We all owe much to our teachers and the important influence they have on our lives.

- جميعنا ندين بالكثير للمعلمين وتأثيرهم المهم في حياتنا.

٢ حكمة أو مثل :

- A good teacher can inspire hope, ignite the imagination, and instill a love of learning.

- يمكن للمعلم الجيد أن يلهم الأمل وشعل الخيال ويغرس حب التعلم.

٢ حملة تتضمن تعريف بالموضوع :

- A good teacher is not that person who gives the answers out to students but understands their needs and challenges and gives them tools of success.

- المعلم الجيد ليس مجرد شخص يقدم الإجابات للطلاب، ولكنه يفهم احتياجاتهم وتحدياتهم ويوفر أدوات لمساعدتهم على النجاح.

١ سؤال مهم يتم طرحه في البداية لإثارة الموضوع :

What role do teachers play in shaping the future of the nation?

- ما الدور الذي يلعبه المعلمون في صناعة مستقبل الأمة؟

بعض الجمل الافتتاحية التي تصطبغ لموضوعات المقالات الإيجابية

- بالنسبة للطالب الذي لا يجيد الكتابة، هناك مقدمات يمكن أن تساعد مثل :

• We all agree that ... is one of the most important things in our life and has its vital role nowadays.

- نتفق جميعاً أن ... واحد من أهم الأشياء في حياتنا وله دوراً حيوياً هذه الأيام.

• We all admit the importance and necessity of ... in our life.

- كلها تقر بأهمية وضرورة ... في حياتنا.

• No wonder if we say that ... has (have) its (their) good and positive effects on us.

- لا عجب إذا قلنا أن ... له آثار طيبة وإيجابية علينا جميعاً.

• We all agree that is (are) very necessary and plays (play) an important part in our life.

- كلها نتفق أن ... ضروري جداً ويلعب دوراً هاماً في حياتنا.

• We should put into consideration that ... has (have) become one (some) of the most important things in everyone's life.

- يجب أن نتخذ في الاعتبار أن ... قد أصبح واحداً من أهم الأشياء في حياة كل شخص.

• In my opinion, ... is really important and necessary nowadays. It may have good and positive effects on all of us. I think so because ... may bring all the good to our society.

- في رأيي ... هو حقاً مهم وضروري هذه الأيام وقد يكون له الأثر الطيب والإيجابي علينا جميعاً وإنني أعتقد ذلك لأن ... قد يعود بالنفع على مجتمعتنا.

• No one can deny that ... plays a very important role in our life.

- لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن ... يلعب دوراً هاماً في حياتنا.

• There is no doubt that this subject has affected our thought and caused a great impact on us.

- لا شك أن هذا الموضوع قد أثر على فكرنا وأحدث تأثيراً بالغاً علينا.

• لاحظ أنه إذا كان الموضوع اسم جمع براعى استخدام أفعال تناسب الفاعل

بعض الجمل الختامية التي تستخدم لموضوعات المقالات العلمية

• In my opinion, ... is serious and harmful nowadays. It may have bad and negative effects on all of us. I think so because ... may bring evils to our society.

- من وجهة نظري ... خطير وخطير هذه الأيام، وقد يكون له آثار سلبية على مجتمعاتنا ...
وبما لا شك فيه ... قد يجلب الشر، الذي يجلب

• There is no doubt that ... is one of the most dangerous phenomena in our life and has its bad and negative effects nowadays.

- بما لا شك فيه أن ... هي واحدة من أخطر الظواهر في حياتنا وكما لا شك فيه ...
بما لا شك فيه أن ... هي واحدة من أخطر الظواهر في حياتنا وكما لا شك فيه ...

• Frankly speaking, ... is one of the worst things in our life. Thus, our state spares no effort to fight it.

- بصراحة أقول أن ... واحدا من أسوأ الأشياء في حياتنا، وعليها فإننا نلجأ لا نضع جهدا كبيرا
بمكافحة وتقاوم هذا الشيء.

(2) Body :

ملئ الموضوع (الجزء الرئيسي)

- لكي يكون الملل الذي تكتبه معروفا ومنهجا وموثوقا، عليك مراعاة ما يلي :

١. اقرأ عناوين الموضوعات حذرا واحترأ أصلها وأصلهم بالنسبة لك

٢. تأكد أنك تكتب عن الموضوع المطلوب

٣. لا بد من تقسيم الموضوع لعدد من الأفكار

٤. تحدث عن كل فكرة في فقرة مستقلة

٥. استخدم حمل بسيطة وواضحة

٦. تجنب الكتابة بضمير المتكلم (إلا إذا كنت تتحدث عن شيء يخصك مثل هرايتك أو عاداتك أو شيء مفضل لديك ... إلخ).

٧. يجب توزيع بدايات الجمل، ولتحقيق هذا الهدف يمكنك أن تستخدم ما يدور في أذهانك من العبارات التالية في بدايات الجمل :

- Everyone knows that + جملة ... يعرف الجميع أن ...

- I don't exaggerate when I say that + جملة ... لست أبالغ عندما أقول أن ...

- I reveal no secret when I say that + جملة ... لا أفشي سرا عندما أقول أن ...

- It can't be denied that + جملة ... لا أحد يمكنه أن ينكر أن ...

- It goes without saying that + جملة ... غنى عن البيان أن ...

• It is crystal clear that + جملة

• It is known that + جملة

• It is taken for granted that + جملة

• There is no doubt that + جملة

من الواضح تماما أن

من المعروف أن

من المسلم به أن

بما لا شك فيه ...

٨. عند التعبير عن رأيك الخاص يمكن أن تبدأ جملتك بأحد التعبيرات التالية :

• I think / believe that ... أعتقد أن ...

• In my opinion, ... من وجهة نظري ...

• As far as I am concerned, ... على حد علمي ...

٩. عندما تريد أن تغطي مثالا أبدا جملتك :

• For example, ... / For instance, ... على سبيل المثال ...

(3) Conclusion :

الخلاصة (الختامية)

- غالبا ما تتضمن فقرة الخاتمة ملخصا (summary) للأفكار التي تم التعبير عنها أو النتيجة التي وصلت إليها

- هذه النتيجة قد تكون نصيحة أو تحذير أو إعطاء رأي أو غيره.

بعض الجمل الختامية التي يمكن استخدامها في الفقرات الختامية للمقال

• Finally, it is quite clear that ... (الموضوع) ... is really ... (جملة).

- أخيرا، من الواضح أن ... فعلا ...

• I can end my speech saying that...

- يمكنني أن أنهى حديثي بالقول أن ...

• In brief, I think that ... is really ...

- باختصار، أعتقد أن ... يكون حقا ...

• In the end, I hope I had pointed out all the aspects of this subject and made it clear.

- في الختام، أتمنى أن أكون قد تطلعت إلى كل جوانب الموضوع وجعلته واضحا.

• To conclude, I hope my words were enough to illuminate the most vital sides of this subject.

- خاتمة، أتمنى أن تكون كلماتي كانت كافية لإلقاء الضوء على أكثر جوانب هذا الموضوع أهمية.

• To sum up, one can say that ... is really ...

- الخلاصة، يمكن للمرء أن يقول أن ... يكون فعلا ...

2. كتابة القصة القصيرة Short Story writing

- ما الفرق بين المقال (Essay) والقصة القصيرة (Short story) ؟
- المقال (Essay) عدة عن مريض أو غرض فكرة واحدة عن طريق تقسيمها لمجموعة أفكار مرتبة ويكون العرض موضوعي مباشر.
- القصة القصيرة (Short story) عبارة عن وصف لحرفه معين أو عدة أحداث متتالية للقصة عناصر معينة مثل : الحكمة - الشخصيات - المكان - الزمن - الحيز - المعنى الأخلاقي - الخ
- ما أوجه التشابه بين المقال (Essay) والقصة القصيرة (Short story) ؟
- التشابه فقط يكون في استخدام اللغة، فالقصة مثل المقال تنقسم إلى فقرات (Paragraphs) يتناول كل منها فكرة معينة.
- القصة المطلوبة في نفس حجم المقال حوالي (١٥٠) كلمة.
- لا بد من استخدام لغة بسيطة واضحة.
- يجب مراعاة التسلسل الزمني للأحداث.
- لا بد من مراعاة علامات الترقيم.

إرشادات هامة لكتابة القصة القصيرة :

- عند كتابة كل قصة قصيرة، هناك إرشادات هامة يجب اتباعها، وذلك لإخراج القصة بشكل جيد من حيث الشكل ومن حيث المضمون :
- حبكة القصة (الأحداث) Plot (1) - وهي الأسلوب المُحكَّم الذي يتم به عرض الأحداث وتصادمها وصولاً لقروة الموقف حتى الوصول للنهاية .
- المكان والزمان Setting (2) - لا بد من تحديد المدى الزمني والمكان الذي تدور فيه الأحداث.
- الشخصيات Characters (3) - يجب الاهتمام بعرض وتطوير لشخصيات حتى تبدو حقيقية بالنسبة للقارئ، فالشخصيات هي التي تقوم بالأحداث في القصة ولا بد أن تتطور مع تطور الأحداث.
- السر Narrating (4) - يجب الاهتمام بأسلوب الكتابة، واستخدام الجمل القصيرة بمعنى تشويقاً وجعل تسلسل الأحداث أكثر وضوحاً.
- المغزى الأخلاقي Moral (5) - لا بد أن يكون للقصة مغزى أخلاقي أو درس مستفاد يخرج به القارئ.

Short Story Model

نموذج للقصة القصيرة

A situation of great fear

I lived in a small village where most farmers kept dogs to guard their animals and farms. They regarded dogs as a kind of danger alarm at night because dogs barked when they saw strangers in the streets. When farmers heard dogs' barking at night, they got ready to face the expected danger.

I was a young boy of about five when this situation took place. My uncle, who was a young man then, asked me to go with him to the farm. My father didn't want me to go but when I started to cry, he allowed me to go.

There on the farm, my uncle was busy doing some jobs here and there. I wandered around the field. I didn't realise that I had gone far away from my uncle.

Suddenly, I found myself face to face with a party of five large dogs. They all looked at me in a frightening way, their mouths were open and their tongues were hanging out.

I turned around and started to run. Fear made my legs weak. I was breathless and had no power to run. In seconds I was on the ground and the dogs surrounded me. I felt it was the end.

I was saved by a farmer who was in a nearby field. He carried me home where he told my father what had happened. I have never liked dogs since then.

موقع التنويع ALTfWok.com

Follow your progress in writing skill

UNIT 1

Write an essay of about (150) words on your tourism

UNIT 2

Write an essay of about (150) words on a famous person.

UNIT 3

Write an essay of about (150) words on describing a character from a book, film or TV who is similar to you.

UNIT 4

Write an essay of about (150) words on to a friend telling him about a place you would like to visit on holiday. Include reasons why you want to go there, what you would do there and what time of year you would like to go

UNIT 5

Write an essay of about (150) words on the internet, possible advantages, disadvantages and how to protect yourself online.

UNIT 6

Write an essay of about (150) words on a summary of a story you read and enjoyed

Translation

الترجمة

مادة علمي اللغة الإنجليزية أ.أ.ب. و.د.ب. حله و ط.أ.أ.ب. الترجمة الشاوية .
تقدم لكم هذا العهد الموضح "El-Masser Translation Guide" كإهداء بسيط منا لتكملة
مادتنا على مشكلة الترجمة بالنسبة لآياتنا في الترجمة الشاوية . وذلك باستخدام أسلوب الزاوي ، الأداة
الترجمة الشاوية في عرض المادة العلمية الخاصة بكتبة الترجمة . وقد تم تقسيم المادة العلمية في
هذا الدليل إلى عدد من الأقسام . وفي كل قسم تناول حصة محددة تم بمقتضاها تدريبات شملت ما تم
عرضه في القسم .
نريد كل محروقة تدريبات معها جدول مرتب أنصت للمحروقات الهامة للطلاب ، كما يوجد جدول لبعض
التعريفات الهامة في نهاية هذا الجزء .

Introduction Expressing the sense of (words or text)

تستأذن حل المقصود بالترجمة ترجمة الكلمات المعروضة بالجملة حرفياً ؟
جواب لا . فالترجمة تعني نقل النص من لغة إلى أخرى دون التقيد بالأنماط . لاحظ ترجمة الجملة التالية :
- Diamond cuts diamond
الماس يقطع الماس
هذه ترجمة حرفية ولا تؤدي معنى المقولة الإنجليزية . لكن إذا أردنا أن نترجم بشكل صحيح فنقول لا يفل
الحديد إلا بالحديد :
إيها نطير بهرة
وتنكس ترجمه بشكل صحيح طيلة مراهقة ما يلي :
(أ) اقرأ البحر الذي تريد أن ترجمه بالكامل لكي تفهم الفكرة العامة له .
(ب) اقرأ النص من جديد قراءة جيدة لتعرف ما الذي يعنيه الكاتب وكيف كان إحصائه حين قال هذا الكلام .
مثلاً كيف تترجم الجملة التالية ؟
- Ahmed is always listening to loud music.
أعتقد أنك ستتربصها كالتالي : « يستمع أحمد دائماً إلى موسيقى صاخبة »
وتلك بالطبع ترجمة غير سليمة . حيث أن استخدام "always" مع المصارع المستمر "is listening"
يؤدي بحسب وصح المتحدث ، لذلك فإنه من البقية أن تترجم الجملة كما يلي : « يستمع أحمد دائماً إلى
هذا الموسيقى الصاخبة » .
لاحظ أن استخدام صيغة المزال و علامة استفهام رغم أن الجملة الأصلية ليست كذلك ، فالأهم هو نقل
المعنى بالأحاسيس الموجودة في النص الأصلي .
(ج) لا تترجم الكلمات كمعاني مستقلة . لكن حسب استخدامها في السياق ، لاحظ كيف تترجم الجملة التالية :
- The teacher asks me to use my right hand to draw a right angle right now
لاحظ تكرار كلمة "right" ثلاث مرات بثلاث معانٍ مختلفة :
الآن على الفور - right now - زاوية قائمة - right angle - اليد اليمنى - right hand
وممكن تكون ترجمة الجملة كالتالي : « يطلب مني المعلم أن أسخدم يدي اليمنى لأرسم زاوية قائمة الآن
على الفور »

(د) اقرأ النص الذي لم يتم ترجمته . هل تفضل نفس الحكي الذي فهمته من النص الأصلي ؟ هل وصل إليك من النص المترجم نفس الإحساس الذي حصل من النص الأصلي ؟ إذا لم يصل إليك نفس الإحساس ، فالترجمة غير سليمة

Part 1 Translation from Arabic into English

الترجمة من اللغة العربية إلى الانجليزية

كيفية بدء الجملة الإنجليزية Starting the English Sentence

السؤال : كيف أبدأ الجملة الانجليزية في الترجمة ؟

(أ) إذا كانت جملة خبرية مبنية للمعلوم فهي تبدأ بالفعل.

مثال : اكتشف الدكتور فاروق الباز المياه الجوفية تحت الصحراء العربية.

- Dr. Farouk El-Baz discovered underground water under the Western Desert.

(ب) إذا كانت جملة خبرية مبنية للمجهول فهي تبدأ بالمفعول الذي يتوب عن الفعل.

مثال : بُني السد العالي لتخزين مياه النيل.

- The High Dam was built to store the water of the Nile.

(ج) إذا كانت جملة أمر تكون الترجمة كالتالي :

يكون الأمر المثبت في اللغة الإنجليزية من

تكملة. comp. + مفعول. obj. + الفعل في المصدر. Inf.

مثال : اعمل بجد واحصل علي قدر كاف من النوم.

- Work hard and get enough sleep.

- يمكن أن توضع "always" في بداية جملة الأمر المثبت لتقوية المعنى

مثال : دوماً ساعد الآخرين وقت الحاجة.

- Always help others in need.

- يتكون الأمر المنفي (النهى) في اللغة الإنجليزية من :

تكملة. comp. + مفعول. obj. + الفعل في المصدر. Don't + inf.

مثال : لا تأخذ أي أدوية دون استشارة الطبيب.

- Don't take any medicines without consulting the doctor.

- يمكن أن تستخدم "Never" بدلاً من "Don't" في بداية جملة النهى لتقوية المعنى :

مثال : إياك أن تصادق الأشرار.

- Never make friends with evil people.

(د) إذا كنت تترجم سؤالاً به فعل :

أبدأ بأحد الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة التالية حسب الرسم :

- Am / Is / Are / Was / Were / Do / Does / Did / Have / Has / Had

- Can / Could / Will / Would / Shall / Should / May / Might / Must / Ought /

Need / Dare

- يأتي بعد الفعل المساعد أو الناقص فعل إذا كان السؤال مبنياً للمعلوم :

مثال : هل سبق أن قرأت رواية لشارلز ديكنز ؟ (لاحظ الفعل في زمن المضارع التام)

- Have you ever read a Charles Dickens Novel?

مثال : أنتارس الرياضة بشكل يومي ؟ / هل أنت معتاد على ممارسة الرياضة يومي ؟ (لاحظ أن الفعل

في صيغة المضارع)

- Do you practise sport every day?

- يأتي بعد الفعل المساعد أو الناقص مفعول إذا كان السؤال مبنياً للمجهول :

مثال : هل شُرح لك هذا الدرس بالأمس ؟

- Was this lesson explained to you yesterday?

مثال : هل جرت العادة أن تنظف حجرتك كل صباح ؟

- Is your room cleaned every morning?

- إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بـ (أليس / ألا) تبدأ الترجمة بالفعل المساعد المنفي :

مثال : أنت تتبع نظاماً غذائياً ؟ / أليس من عادتك اتباع نظاماً غذائياً ؟

- Don't you follow a diet?

مثال : ألا تهتم بمشاهدة الأفلام ؟ (عادات في الحاضر)

- Aren't you interested in watching films?

(هـ) إذا كنت تترجم سؤالاً بادئاً استفهام يبدأ بأحد أدوات الاستفهام التالية ثم أحد الأفعال المساعدة

حسب الزمن :

What	ما / ماذا	Which	أي
Where	أين	When	متى
Why	لماذا	Who	من
Whose	لمن	How	كيف / كم

مثال : ما الذي يجب أن نفعله لتحمي البيئة من التلوث ؟

- What should you do to protect the environment from pollution?

مثال : كيف لنا أن نواجه ظاهرة الغش في الامتحانات ؟

- How can we fight exam cheating phenomenon ?

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. تعمل أختي مضيفة طيران وترتدي زياً خاصاً بالشركة التي تعمل بها.
٢. تُستخدم الأتجار الصناعية في اكتشاف المياه الجوفية والمعادن والتربة.
٣. في كل عام يأتي السياح إلى مصر ليستمتعوا بالجو الجميل في الشتاء.
٤. تُبنى المدارس والجامعات في كل المحافظات لتوفير تعليم مناسب لجميع المصريين.
٥. تتطلع جميع شعوب العالم إلى العيش متاً في حب وسلام.
٦. ساعد والديك و اعمل بجد.
٧. لا تُكثر من طعام ولا تسي ممارسة الرياضة.
٨. اصنع ما شئت ، لكن لا تؤذي الآخرين.
٩. لا تتأخر على مدرستك ، ولا تضيع وقتك.
١٠. ألا تساعد أصدقائك وقت الحاجة؟
١١. هل تقوم بأعمال مفيدة في وقت فراغك؟
١٢. أفضل سنامك بالفرشاة مرتين يومياً؟
١٣. كيف تمكن قدماء المصريين من بناء الأهرامات؟
١٤. لماذا تصيح وقتك فيما لا يفيد؟
١٥. كم مرة تمارس الرياضة أسبوعياً؟

موقع
التفوق
ALTfWok.com

Related Vocabulary

air hostess	مضيفة طيران	minerals	المعادن
brush	يفسل بالفرشاة	peoples	شعوب
governorates	محافظات	special	خاص
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	waste	يضيع
manage to	يتمكن		

2) Tenses of Sentences أزمنة الجمل

السؤال : في اللغة العربية هناك زمني المضارع و لماضي ، و يتم التعبير عن المستقبل بـ سوف / will + الفعل المضارع ، لكن في اللغة الإنجليزية يوجد حوالي إثني عشرة زمناً ، وكيف يتم ترجمة الأزمنة؟
- تحتاج إجابة هذا السؤال إلى دراسة الأزمنة و معرفة استخدامات كل زمن و هذا متروك لدروس القواعد المفصلة ، لكن هنا سنتكلم في بعض العموميات التي قد تفيد إلى حد كبير في الترجمة.
(٢) الجملة التي تدل على حقائق ثابتة أو عادات متكررة يُوضع فعلها في صيغة زمن المضارع البسيط (inf. / inf. + s, es, res)

- مثال : المخ البشري يتحكم في كل شيء - يقوم به.
- The human brain controls everything we do.
مثال : يتسلم الكتاب والعلماء جوائز قيمة كل عام.
- Writers and scientists receive valuable prizes every year.
مثال : التعليم ليس غاية في حد ذاته، إنما وسيلة تؤدي إلى غاية.
- Education is not an end in itself, but it is a means to an end.

(ب) الجملة التي تدل على حدث مستمر في الوقت الحالي يُوضع فعلها في صيغة زمن المضارع المستمر (am / is / are + inf. + ing)

- مثال : في الوقت الحالي ، تبذل الحكومة جهوداً كبيرة لتحسين الصحة التعليم.
- Nowadays, the government is exerting great efforts to improve health and education.
(ج) الجملة التي تدل على حرات أو أحداث إنتهت للتو أو أحداث ماضية لها تأثير على الحاضر تُترجم إلى مضارع تام (have / has + p p)
مثال : فاز أحمد بميداليتين ذهبيتين حتى الآن.
- Ahmed has won two gold medals so far.
- أما إذا تم ذكر توقيت حدوث الفعل فنستخدم الماضي البسيط (التصريف الثاني للفعل) :
مثال : فاز أحمد بميداليتين ذهبيتين العام الماضي.
- Ahmed won two gold medals last year.

(د) عادات الماضي يتم التعبير عنها كالتالي

- often / sometimes / occasionally / rarely / scarcely / seldom / never

نادر الحدوث

مثال : كان جدي أحياناً يأخذنا لزيارة أجدادنا في الريف

My grandfather used to take us to visit our relatives in the countryside.

(هـ) عادات الماضي التي تنوفد في الحاضر

- used to + inf. - be + used to + ing

مثال : اعتدت الذهاب إلى المدرسة الابتدائية براجسي الصغيرة

I used to go to primary school on my small bike.

مثال : كانت جدتي معتادة علي عمل الخبز في المنزل

My grandmother was used to making bread at home

(و) الجملة التي تعبر عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي تعبر عن الماضي المستمر (was / were + inf. + ing)

مثال : كان أحمد يلعب كرة القدم مع أصدقائه عندما انكسرت ساقه

Ahmed was playing football with his friends when his leg broke.

(ز) الجملة التي تدل على حدث تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي يستخدم صيغة (had + p.p.)

مثال : انتهى المعلم من شرح الدرس قبل أن يعطينا بعض التمارين

The teacher had finished explaining the lesson before he gave us some exercises.

(ح) الجمل التي تدل على المستقبل (سأفعل / سوف أفعل / لن أفعل) تُترجم إلى الصيغة المناسبة من المستقبل (will + inf. / be going to + inf. / be + inf. + ing)

مثال : ستحتفل هدى بعيد ميلادها الخامس الشهر القادم

Huda is celebrating her fifth birthday next month.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. يتم إنشاء المكتبات العامة في كل مكان لتشجيع أفراد الأسرة على القراءة.

٢. يحذر الأطباء الناس من التدخين لأنه السبب في كثير من الأمراض

٣. لم ينجح العلماء حتى يومنا هذا في إيجاد علاج لبعض الأمراض.

١. أصبح تعلم اللغات والحاسب الآلي أساسا للحصول علي وظيفة.

٢. في القريب ، سوف تساعدنا التكنولوجيا علي قيادة السيارات بأمان أكثر.

٣. من بعض النوازل الحديثة تستخدم الطاقة الشمسية في تسخين المياه.

٤. قد قام السيد العالي بمساعدة مصر من الفيضانات ووفر المياه لوقت الحاجة.

٥. لن نحقق أهدافنا دون أن نعمل بجد.

٦. كنت غائبا من المدرسة عندما قابلت عمي في الشارع

٧. حدثت حمى أن يحكي لنا قصصا شغلة.

٨. نحاول حدي أن أحل هذه المسألة الصعبة

Related Vocabulary

do my best	أحاول جاهداً	aims	أهداف
come true	تتحقق	smoking	التدخين
floods	الفيضانات	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
problem	مشكلة / مسألة	try hard	يحاول جديداً
public	عام	warn (ed)	يحذر
set up	يُنشئ	diseases	أمراض
cure	علاج	achieve	يحقق

31 Translating Adjectives and Adverbs

النزول : كيف أترجم الصفة إلى اللغة الإنجليزية وما هو موقع الصفة بالنسبة للموصوف ؟

(١) تأتي الصفة في اللغة الإنجليزية قبل الموصوف علي عكس اللغة العربية ، لاحظ :

- interesting stories - قصة شيقة - a beautiful girl - فتاة جميلة - a clever boy - ولد ماهر

مثال : العمل الجاد والخلق الحسن من سمات الإنسان الناجح.

- Hard work and good manners are some qualities of a successful person

(٢) علي غير العادة ، تأتي الصفة في اللغة الإنجليزية بعد الموصوف ، ليس قبله إذا كانت تصف أي من الكائنات التالية

something / anything / everything / nothing - someone / anyone

/ everyone / none - somebody / anybody / everybody / nobody -

somewhere / anywhere / everywhere / nowhere

- مثال : دائما ما أكون في عطلتي في الموعد المحدد
I am usually at my work in time.
- (ب) ظروف المكعب التي تحمل على كفة أو طريقة حدوث الفعل تأتي بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول
مثال : أصررت على الذهاب إلى المدرسة.
I walk quickly to my school.
- مثال : من حقك أن تعبر عن رأيك بحرية
It is your right to express your opinion freely
- (ج) أفعال الدرجة الثانية بعد درجة قوة أو ضعف الصفة ، وتوضع قبل الصفة مباشرة :
extremely / absolutely / utterly / completely / really / very / so / quite / rather / إلى حد ما / سكر نطش / للعادة
- مثال : إني في الحقيقة غاضب جدا من ذلك الجار السيء.
I'm really angry with that bad neighbour.
- (د) في اللغة الإنجليزية يُفضل أن يكون ظرف الزمان أو المكان إما في بداية الجملة أو نهايتها وذلك حسب المعنى
مثال : أذهب إلى أوروبا مرتين كل صيف.
I travel to Europe twice every summer.
Every summer, I travel to Europe twice.
- Now, test yourself
- Translate into English :
- لقد حان وقت العمل الجاد من أجل بنا - مستقبل وطننا العظيم
 - العلم الحديث والتخطيط الجيد ضروريان من أجل حياة أفضل.
 - جاءت نساء إلى الفرائض مبكرا
 - يستخدم الطلاب المصريون أجهزة الحاسب الآلي في مدارسهم.
 - يملك العلماء شيء ما جديد كل يوم لحكمة البشرية.
 - كان البحر جارا للعناية طوال الأسبوع الماضي.
 - يجب أن نغزو السيارة بحرص حتى نبقى بأمان.
- مثال : لقد أصبح محسن بعد صبح لا محسن
He became He became
- (أ) إذا جاء بعد الاسم صفات ذوي أداة ربط بما لا يحد (أحد) ، لاحظ
رجل ثري مشهور
سيدة شابة ذكية
- مثال : الجمعيات الخيرية المحفلة تساعد على تسريع النمو.
..... organisations help homeless street children.
- (د) إذا جاء بعد الاسم صفتان بينهما أداة ربط فليسا في العالين يكتب الصفة الأولى أولا ثم الثانية
لاحظ
رجل ثري ومشهور
سيدة شابة وذكية
- مثال : العمل الجاد والستمر هو الخطوة الأولى نحو تحقيق هدف في الحياة
..... work is the first step towards achieving your goal in life
- (و) إذا وصفا قبل الصفة "the" ولم يسبق الصفة اسم ففقدت كبر من يكون بعد الصفة
المكفوفين The blind - رجال مكفوفين blind men - رجل مكفوف the blind man
- مثال : ينبغي على الأغنياء مساعدة الفقراء.
Rich people should help poor people.
The rich should help the poor.
- السؤال : وماذا عن الظرف؟ كيف يُترجم إلى الإنجليزية وأين يكون موقعه في الجملة ؟
(1) ظروف التكرار التالية توضع قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد (be) ويمكن أن تأتي بعضها في نهاية أو نهاية الجملة :
always / usually / often / sometimes / occasionally / rarely / scarcely / seldom / hardly / never
- مثال : تحاول أمي دائما الحفاظ على بيتنا نظيفاً ومرتباً
My mother always tries to keep our house clean and tidy.

٨. أحيانا أعمل في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

٩. المكفوقون يمكنهم التعلم والعمل.

١٠. الرقيات الصغيرة لثقافة مفيدة للصحة.

١١. حصلت علي درجات مرتفعة بسبب العمل الجاد والمستمر.

١٢. يبدو هذا اللاعب غاضبا بعد خسارة المباراة.

Related Vocabulary

home / homeland	لوطن	marks	درجات
light	خفيف	meals	وجبات
look / seem	يبدو	modern	حديث
losing	خسارة	planning	التخطيط
mankind	لبشرية	humanity	البشرية

4 Special Cases (1) حالات خاصة (١)

السؤال : كيف أقوم بترجمة الفعل (يعتبر) المبنى للمعلوم، وكذلك الفعل (يُعتبر / يُعد) المبنى للمجهول؟

(١) يُترجم لفعل (يعتبر) المبنى للمعلوم كالتالي :

- جملة + that + (حسب الزمن) consider + فاعل Subj.
- as + noun + (حسب الزمن) regard + فاعل Subj.

مثال : تعتبر الحكومة لتعليم استثمارا في مستقبل مصر.

The government considers that education is an investment in the future of the country.

The government regards education as an investment in the future of the country.

(ب) يُترجم الفعل (يُعتبر) المبنى للمجهول كالتالي :

- considered + (حسب الزمن) be + مفعول Obj.
- regarded + as + noun + (حسب الزمن) be + فاعل Subj.

مثال : يُعتبر التعليم استثمارا في مستقبل مصر.

- Education is considered an investment in the future of Egypt.
- Education is regarded as an investment in the future of Egypt.

السؤال : أحيانا يكون من الصعب ترجمة الأفعال (يعمل / يقوم / يتم)، فكيف أترجم الجملة حينئذ ؟
هذا يحدث عندما لا تكون هذه الأفعال هي الأفعال الأساسية للجملة، وفي هذه الحالة يتم استبدالها بفعل مناسب للمعنى أو الاستغناء عنها والاعتماد على الفعل الأصلي :

مثال : تعمل جميع الدول على إيجاد حل لمشكلة التلوث.

هنا كلمة (تعمل) تؤدي معنى (تحاول)، فترجم الجملة كالتالي :
- All nations try to solve the problem of pollution.

مثال : يقوم معلمو اللغة الإنجليزية بمدرستنا بشرح الدروس جيدا.

- هنا كلمة (يقوم) لا تؤدي أي معنى ليتم حذفها واستخدام فعل مشتق من الجملة (يشرح) ، ونُترجم الجملة كالتالي :
- The teachers of English in our school explain lessons well.

مثال : يتم حل المشكلات التي تواجه الطلاب لمساعدتهم علي التعلم بشكل جيد.

هنا كلمة (يتم) لا تؤدي معنى ، فنحذفها و نترجم الجملة مبنية للمجهول كالتالي :
- The problems which face students are solved to help them learn well.

السؤال : ماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة عربية ليس بها فعل إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

(١) هناك الجمل الاسمية التي ليس فيها فعل و نستخدم (be) عند ترجمتها للإنجليزية :

مثال : العمل الجاد طريقك إلى النجاح.

- Hard work is your way to success.

(ب) هناك الجمل الاسمية عند ترجمتها للإنجليزية نستخدم (be) كترجمة لـ (هو / هي / هذا / هم / هن / هي) :

مثال : الطعام الصحي والرياضة هما مفتاحي الصحة الجيدة والسعادة.

- Healthy food and sport are the keys to good health and happiness.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. يعتبر المصريون نهر النيل مصدر الحياة لهم.

٢. يتم بناء طرق جديدة لحل مشكلة الازدحام لمروحي.

٣. يُعد السيد العالي أفضل إنجاز للرئيس عبد الناصر.

٤. العمل هو سر الحياة ، و النجاح في العمل هو السعادة.

٥. يعتبر أبي مشاهدة المباريات علي التلفاز مضيقا للوقت.

٦. تقوم الحكومة بتوفير التعليم لكل المواطنين.
٧. التعليم هو الطريق الحقيقى لمستقبل أفضل.
٨. يُعسر الدكتور البار وممن من ومور العلم فى كل مكان.
٩. إن الإنترنت أصبح ممكنة فى المراجع.
١٠. يقوم أبى بزيارة جدى فى لرب كل شهر.
١١. إن زراعة الصحراء شي - ضرورى لتوفير الغذاء.
١٢. تقوم الحواس بارسال رسائل إلى المع.

Related Vocabulary

achievement	إنجاز	source	مصدر
a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت	symbol	رمز
president	الرئيس	traffic jam	الازدحام المرورى

Special Cases (2) حالات خاصة (2)

السؤال : كيف أترجم جملة بها (لدى / لديه / لديها / عنى / عند / عند / لها / لهم - - - - -) ؟

تُترجم مثل هذه الجمل حسب الجدول التالى مع مراعاة زمن الجملة .

I have	عندى - لى - أملك	You have	لديكم - لكم - تملكون
He has	عنده - له - يملك	We have	لدينا - لنا - نملك
She has	عندها - لديها - تملك	They have	لديهم - لهم - يملكون
It has	لها - له - لها	One has	للمرء - لدى المرء - يمتلك المرء
You have	عندك - لك - تملك		

- مثال : لدينا الكثير من الاهتمامات فى وقت فراغنا .
 - We have a lot of interests in our free time.
 مثال : كان لأبى دور كبير فى نجاحى .
 - My father had a great role in my success.

- مثال : سيكون للشباب دور كبير فى تقدم الوطن .
 - Youth will have a great role in the progress of the country.
 السؤال : كيف أترجم جملة تبدأ به (عليه / عليها / عليك / لاهد / حتما / يجب / ينبغي ... إلخ) ؟
 تُترجم مثل هذه الجملة حسب القاعدة التالية :
 Subj. + must / should / ought to / have to / has to / had to + inf.
 مثال : علينا أن نحافظ على البيئة نظيفة .
 - We should keep the environment clean.
 مثال : لابد أن تُطع والديك وتحترم معلميك .
 - You must obey your parents and respect your teachers.
 مثال : كان عني أن أراجع دروسى جيدا لأحتاز الإمتحان .
 - I had to revise my lessons well to pass the exam
 السؤال : وكيف أترجم الكلمات (عسى / لعل / ليت) ؟
 (1) إذا جاء بعد هذه الكلمات فعل مضارع فإنها تُترجم فى الغالب إلى :

- I hope / I wish + to + inf.
- I hope + subj. + will + inf.
- I hope + subj. + inf. + (s / es / ies)

مثال : ليتنى أقدر أن أساعدك .

- I hope / wish to be able to help you.
- I hope I will be able to help you.
- I hope I am able to help you.

(ب) إذا جاء بعد (لعل / ليت) فعل ماضى فإنها تُترجم فى الغالب إلى :

- I wish + subj. + had + p.p. ...
- I regret not + inf. + ing ...

مثال : ليتنى ذاكرت جيدا اللغة الماضى .

- I wish I had studied hard last year.
- I regret not studying hard last year.

استؤال : وكيف أترجم المضاف والمضاف إليه ؟

(1) جمع (of) بين المضاف والمضاف إليه أو تبدأ بالمضاف إليه ثم نضع المضاف بدون (of) :

- standard of living	- living standard	مستوى المعيشة
- pollution of the air	- air pollution	تلوث الهواء
- the rate of birth	- birth rate	معدل المواليد

(ب) تستخدم ('s) الملكية غالباً عندما يكون المضاف إليه عائلاً أو اسم حيوان .

- My mother's house. ('s) ملكية فرد
- My parents' house. (s') ملكية جمع
- The parrot's tail is very long.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. يجب أن نستخدم أفضل الطرق لتربية أطفالنا.
٢. تصل الدولة على رعاية الشباب وتمهين مواهبهم.
٣. يجب أن ننشئ الأطفال على حب الوطن واحترام الوالدين.
٤. علينا أن نشارك بيجابية في تقدم وطن.
٥. علينا أن نلوم على تحسين ظروف حياتنا.
٦. يجب استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة في التعليم.
٧. من الضروري أن ننسى الإهتمام بالعمل لدى الصغار لإعداد جيل من العلماء.
٨. للعلماء دور هام في إيجاد حلول لمشكلات المجتمع.
٩. ليتني لم أنفق كل مالي في شراء هذه السيارة.
١٠. للتليفزيون دور مؤثر في ثقافة وسلوك المواطنين.

Related Vocabulary

bringing up	تربية	positively	بإيجابية
conditions	ظروف	progress	تقدم
culture	ثقافة	share	نشارك
effective	مؤثر	society	المجتمع
generation	جيل	solutions	حلول
interest	اهتمام	talents	مواهب

Special Cases (3)

حالات خاصة (٣)

Translation

السؤال : كيف أترجم كلمة (لقد) ؟

- (١) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن المضارع التام في حالة عدم وجود كلمة دالة على الماضي :
- مثال : لقد اجتاز أخي امتحان القيادة مؤخرًا.
- My brother has passed the driving test recently.
- (ب) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن الماضي البسيط في حالة وجود كلمة دالة على الماضي :
- مثال : لقد اجتاز أخي امتحان القيادة الأسبوع الماضي.
- My brother passed the driving test last week.
- (ج) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن الماضي التام مع الحدث الأول في حالة وجود حدث تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي :
- مثال : لقد اجتاز أخي امتحان القيادة الأسبوع الماضي قبل أن يقوم أبي بشراء سيارة له بالأمس.
- My brother had passed the driving test last week before my father bought him a car yesterday.

السؤال : حسنًا ... فكيف أترجم كلمة (قد) ؟

لا توجد ترجمة لكلمة (قد) ، فهي تُحذف وتستخدم بدلاً منها زمن الماضي البسيط ويمكن المضارع التام :

- (١) تُترجم جملة (قد + فعل مضارع) مثل (لقد) :
- مثال : قد اجتاز أخي امتحان القيادة مؤخرًا.
- My brother has passed the driving test recently.
- (ب) تُترجم جملة (قد + فعل مضارع) إلى (may / might + inf.) :
- مثال : قد يسافر أبي إلى أسوان غداً.
- My father may / might travel to Aswan tomorrow.

السؤال : وماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة تبدأ بحرف التوكيد (إن) ؟

- الجملة التي تبدأ بمصدر أو (إن + مصدر / اسم، في اللغة العربية غالباً ما تبدأ بـ (noun / inf. + ing) في اللغة الإنجليزية ويكون فعل الجملة مضارع بسيط :

مثال : إن تعلم اللغات الأجنبية والحاسب الآلي ضروري في الوقت الحالي.

- Learning foreign languages and the computer is necessary at present.

سؤال : وماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة تبدأ بـ (أن + فعل مضارع) وبعد الأفعال الناقصة ؟

- (١) الجملة التي تبدأ بـ (أن + فعل مضارع) في اللغة العربية تبدأ بـ (To + inf.) في اللغة الإنجليزية :
- مثال : أن تساعد في الحفاظ على البيئة نظيفة فهذا شيء جيد.
- To help keep the environment clean is a good thing.

(ب) كلمة (أن) بعد الأفعال الناقصة لا تُترجم

مثال : يجب أن نجد حلولاً لمشكلاتنا الاقتصادية والاجتماعية

- We should find solutions to our economic and social problems.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. لقد فاز فريق كرة القدم ببطولة هامة.

٢. لقد ذهب الله مصر الكثير من الاماكن السياحية والتفاح لرائع

٣. إن تحقيق التقدم لا يمكن أن يحدث إلا بتعاون الأفراد مع الحكومة

٤. لقد أثبت الأطباء أن من لا يدخنون مطلقاً يعيشون حياة أطول

٥. إن هوايتي المفضلة هي قراءة القصص الخيالية ولعب التنس

٦. لقد أصبح ضروريا البدء في إنشاء مدن جديدة في الصحراء.

٧. إن إهدار مياه البيل جريمة في حق الوطن

٨. إن مهارات الحاسوب لا غنى عنها للحصول على وظيفة جيدة في الوقت الحالي

٩. إن البحث العلمي وسيلة عامة لتحديد شكل مستقبل أي أمة.

١٠. إن زراعته الصحراء وبناء المدن الجديدة يحل الكثير من المشاكل الاقتصادية والاجتماعية.

١١. إن زيادة الانتاج واجب وطني لمواجهة مشكلة تزايد السكان

١٢. لقد ذهب الله مصر كثير من الموارد الطبيعية.

١٣. إن سيادة حرة هم من أرض مصر يجب الاهتمام بتعليمها ورعاية أهلها.

Related Vocabulary

against	في حق / ضد	nation	أمة
co-operation	تعاون	national	وطني / عرقي
crime	جريمة	production	إنتاج
duty	واجب	research	بحث
fictional	خيالي	resources	موارد
grant (ed)	يُمنح	skills	مهارات
increasing	زيادة	wasting	إهدار
means	وسيلة		

Special Cases (4) حالات خاصة (4)

السؤال : كيف أترجم الفعل الذي تبدأ به (يوجد / كان يوجد / هناك / كان هناك / سيكون هناك
الجواب : إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟
ترجم هذه الصفحة إلى

- There + is / are / was / were / have been / has been / had been
will be / can be / must be + noun اسم

مثال : يوجد الكثير من الطرق لتجنب الأمراض

- There are a lot of ways to avoid diseases.

مثال : كان هناك مشكلة في محرك السيارة

- There was a problem with the car engine.

مثال : سيكون هناك بديل للنفط في المستقبل

- There will be replacements for oil in the future

مثال : لابد أن يكون هناك حل لمشكلة تلوث الهواء

- There must be a solution to the problem of air pollution

السؤال : كيف أترجم الجمل التي بها (كلما ... كلما) إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

ترجم هذه الصفحة إلى

- The + subj. + verb + the + subj. + verb + صلة مقارنة + The +

مثال : كلما تدرجت أكثر كلما أصبحت أكثر لياقة

- The more you exercise, the fitter you get / become.

مثال : كلما نكون أكثر طولا كلما نستطيع أن نتجري أسرع

- The taller you are, the faster you can run.

السؤال : كيف أترجم المصير المتصل بفعل ؟

(١) مبرر الفاعل المتصل بفعل مترجم بصيغة (I - he - she - it - you - we - they) . لاحظ :

كتبْتُ I wrote - كتبتْ She wrote - كتبنا We wrote

celebrate	يحتفل به	pass	ينجح / يجتاز / يمر على
enjoy	يتمتع به	reach	يصل إلى
fear	يخشى أن	recognise	يتعرف على
feel	يشعر به	sacrifice	يضحى به

مثال : يؤثر التدخين على الصحة بشدة. - Smoking affects health badly.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. من الضروري أن نهتم أكثر بالتعليم والصحة.
٢. من الطبيعي أن يكون لمصر جيش قوي يحمي حدودها وشرطة قوية تحمي أمنها الداخلي.
٣. من المتوقع أن تكون الحروب القادمة بين الدول هي حروب للسيطرة على مصادر المياه.
٤. يلعب مصر دورًا كبيرًا في منطقة لشرق الأوسط.
٥. تتأثر السياحة تأثرًا كبيرًا بالأحداث الجارية في العالم.
٦. يحذر الأطباء الناس تحديدًا شديدًا من التدخين.
٧. تتطلع مصر تطلعًا كبيرًا لتحسين مستوى معيشة مواطنيها.
٨. تهتم الدولة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بالموهبين وتقدم لهم مزايا قيمة.
٩. تولي الحكومة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بالأطفال لأشهر قادة المستقبل.
١٠. من الحكمة ألا تتخذ قرارًا إلا بعد تفكير عميق.

Related Vocabulary

current events	الأحداث الجارية	pay attention	تولي اهتمامًا
deep thought	تفكير عميق	the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط
It is wise	من الحكمة		

Part II Translation from English into Arabic

الترجمة من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية :

- الترجمة من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية أمر سهل وبسيط، ولقد تم تناول معظم الملاحظات التي قد تفيدك فيها ضمن الملاحظات الخاصة بالترجمة من اللغة العربية للغة الإنجليزية ولم يتبقى سوى بعض الملاحظات البسيطة سنتناولها فيما يلي :

السؤال : ما الذي يتطلبه ترجمة نص من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية ؟

- (أ) قراءة وفهم النص الإنجليزي لمعرفة الفكرة العامة للمرصوع.
- (ب) قراءة النص مرة أخرى بعناية لوقوف على الكلمات والتراكيب الصعبة.
- (ج) تخمين معنى الكلمات الصعبة من سياق الجملة فالمطلوب هو استنتاج المعنى.
- (د) بعد الانتهاء من الترجمة، اقرأ الترجمة العربية لتتأكد من أنها مكتوبة بأسلوب عربي سليم مع تجنب الترجمة الحرفية والأخطاء النحوية.

السؤال : كيف أترجم للفعل (be) عندما يكون فعلًا أساسيًا ؟

هناك طرق مختلفة لترجمة هذا الفعل حسب استخدامه في الجملة الإنجليزية، منها :

- (١) المعنى الأساسي للفعل (be) في اللغة العربية وهو (يكون / يوجد) :

e.g. - My life was difficult when I was abroad, away from home.

كانت حياتي صعبة عندما كنت بالخارج بعيدًا عن الوطن.

- (ب) يمكن ترجمة الفعل (be) بفعل آخر في اللغة العربية غير (يكون / يوجد) حسب المعنى العام للنص :

e.g. - The wedding was last week.

- تم الزفاف الأسبوع الماضي.

- A knife is for cutting food.

- تستخدم السكين لقطع الطعام.

- (ج) يمكن ترجمة الفعل (be) بضمير شخصي مثل (هو / هي / هما / هم / هن) في اللغة العربية مثل :

e.g. - My mother is everything to me.

- إن أمي هي كل شيء بالنسبة لي.

- Our children are the joy of our life.

- أطفالنا هم بهجة حياتنا.

- (د) يمكن إيقاط الفعل (be) نهائيًا من الترجمة العربية للجملة :

e.g. - Ahmed is a hard-working student.

- أحمد طالب جاد في العمل.

- My house is in a quiet part of the city.

- يقع منزلي في جزء هادئ من المدينة.

السؤال : قالوا لي أن الفعل (have) متعدد المعاني، ملخص أقدمه إلى العارضة

- هذا كلام صحيح لهذا الفعل يستخدم معاني ثمانية

(أ) المعنى الأصلي للفعل (have) هو يمتلك (عند / عند / حسب / من

- لدى / عندي / أملك مثلاً : لديه حديقة - I have a house with a small garden.

(ب) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (أكل / طعم / شرب /

- تناولت بعض اللحم والأرز في العشاء أمس. - I had some meat and rice for lunch yesterday.

(ج) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (تفهم / يفهم / يحضر /

- سأقيم حفلاً كبيراً بمناسبة نجاح ابنتي. - I will have a big party on the occasion of my daughter's success.

(د) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (يعاني / لديه معاناة)

- لقد عانت من صداع شديد بعد العمل. - She had a bad headache after the party.

السؤال : هل بالفعل كلمة (only) تحتاج لمعاملة خاصة في الترجمة ؟

نعم بالفعل، ولكن ترجم بشكل سليم لابد أن نتذكر دائماً أن هذا الفعل يقصر الكلمة التي تأتي بعده مباشرة

- Only my mother helped me with my homework.

- My mother only helped me with my homework.

- لم تقم أمي إلا بمساعدتي في واجبي المنزلي.

- My mother helped only me with my homework.

- ساعدتني أمي أنا فقط في واجبي المنزلي.

- My mother helped me with only my homework.

- ساعدتني أمي في واجبي المنزلي فقط.

السؤال : ماذا أفعل إذا كان فعل الجملة الإنشائية عيباً للمجهول ؟

(أ) يفضل تحويل الجملة الإنشائية المبينة لمجهول إلى المبني للمعلوم عند الترجمة للحرية طالما كان الفاعل معروفاً :

- The operation was performed by a well-known surgeon.

- لقد أجرى العملية جراح مشهور. / أجريت العملية الجراحية عن طريق جراح مشهور.

(ب) من الممكن استخدام الفعل (تم) يليه الاسم من الفعل الأصلي مثل

- تم تنفيذ المهمة في الوقت المحدد. e.g. - The task was carried out on time.

Now, test yourself

Translate into Arabic :

1. A good friend is a source of strength that keeps you going through all ups and downs of life.
2. Always do right. This will please some people and astonish the rest.
3. Awareness should be spread among citizens to make great efforts to reduce pollution.
4. Be free and respect others' freedom.
5. Being a good citizen requires a lot of civilised behaviour.
6. Children learn good habits by imitating of their elders.
7. Creative thinking is essential for success in life.
8. Currently, there're major powers trying to dominate the whole world through technology.
9. Don't cry over spilt milk.
10. Eat less, exercise more, and fill your eyes with sleep.
11. Egypt is one of the earliest cradles of human civilisation.
12. Everyone has the right to express their opinion freely and take part in the social life.
13. Experts believe that solar energy may have replaced oil by the 2050.
14. Good citizens are ready to sacrifice their lives when their country is in danger.
15. Great efforts have been made for the equality between men and women.
16. Growing older is a natural process that we cannot stop.
17. Habits, good or bad, are acquired in childhood.
18. Has technology made the world a better place to live in?
19. If an object causes you pain, you respond by moving away from it.
20. If you risk nothing, then you risk everything.
21. In order to be successful, you should have courage, ambition, self-confidence and self-dependence.
22. In the future, the world's supplies of oil will dry up.
23. In the third world countries, the number of smokers is increasing, mainly due to ignorance.
24. Inside their homes, children get their first lessons in behaving towards others.

- قاموس المعاصر للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرجة -

Economic and Social Vocabulary

ambitions	طمع / طموحات	low income	دخل منخفض
bargains	صفقات	manufacture	يُصنع
budget	موازنة	manufacturer	مصنع
capital	رأس مال	marketing	تسويق
capitalism	رأسمالية	monopolist	محتكر
commerce	تجارة	monopoly	احتكار
commercial	تجاري	national duty	واجب وطني
compete	منافس	national economy	الاقتصاد القومي
congestion	ازدحام	national income	الدخل القومي
consume	يستهلك	nationalization	تأميم
consumer	مستهلك	nationalize	يؤمم
consumption	استهلاك	necessitate	يستلزم
cost of living	تكاليف المعيشة	overpopulation	الانفجار السكاني
creation	خلق / إيجاد	price control	ضبط لأسعار
crime	الجريمة	priorities	أولويات
current stage	المرحلة الراهنة	products	منتجات
dealer	وكيل	profits	أرباح
development	تنمية / تطوير	promote	يُزجج / يُزجج
discount	خصم / خصم	prosperity	ازدهار
dissatisfaction	عدم إشباع	rate	معدل
due care	الاهتمام اللازم	rationalise	بسيط / يُرشد
economic	اقتصادي	rationalization	ترشيد
economic	الأثر الاقتصادي	reclaim	يستصح
crisis	مأزق / أزمة	reclamation	استصلاح
economical	موفر / اقتصادي	recycling	إعادة تصنيع
economics	علم الاقتصاد	reduction	تخفيض
economist	خبير اقتصادي	reform	إصلاح
enterprise	مشروع / منشأة	renaissance	نهضة
expenses	مصاريف	resources	موارد
facing	مواجه / مواجهة	revenue	عائد
famine	مجاعة	risky	خطير
finance	مالية / تمويل	sales / discounts	مبيعات / تخفيضات
financial	مالي	shares	أسهم
food shortage	نقص الطعام	short-term	قصير لأجل
		slogan	شعار
		slums / squatters	العشوائيات

foreign aids	معونات خارجية	long-term	طويل الأجل
funds	مذخرات	spread	امتداد / انتشار
goods / commodities	السلع / البضائع	standard of living	مستوى المعيشة
grant(ed)	منح / منح	statistics	إحصائيات
greed	طمع / طمع	stock market	بورصة
growth	نمو	strict measures	معايير صارمة
handmade	صناعة يدوية	strict procedures	إجراءات صارمة
hard currency	عملة صعبة	subsidy	الدعم
high income	دخل مرتفع	tax	ضريبة
humour	المزاح / السخرية	trade	تجارة
in turn	بدوره	trader	تاجر
inflation	التضخم	unemployment	البطالة
inhabitants	سكان	unrest	اضطراب
inject	يحقن	vast	كبير / شامل
insurance	تأمين	via	من خلال / عبر
investment	استثمار	violence	العنف
investor	مستثمر	welfare	رفاه / رفاهية
job opportunities	فرص عمل	youth	الشباب
labour force	القوى العاملة		

The Nile and saving water النيل وتوفير المياه

a matter of life or death	مسألة حياة أو موت	improve relationships	تحسين العلاقات
artery of life	شريان الحياة	International Treaty	معاهدة دولية
civilisation	الحضارة	lack of water	نقص المياه
constructive dialogue	الحوار البناء	majority	معظم / أغلبية
cradle	مهد	must	ضرورة
dam	سد	national security	الأمن القومي
date back to	يعود تاريخه إلى	Nile Basin	حوض النيل
demand for	الطلب على	Renaissance Dam	سد النهضة
downstream countries	دول النهر	shortage	نقص
drought	جفاف / قحط	supplies	موارد
Egypt's share	حصة مصر	main source	المصدر الرئيسي
emergency meeting	اجتماع طارئ	thirst	الغثا
essential	ضروري	tributaries	روافد
generate	يولد	upstream countries	دول المصب
company	شركة	water security	الأمن المائي

consequently	لذلك	noncommunicable	غير ساري
contributions	إسهامات	noninfectious	غير معدى
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	nuclear	نووي
creativity	الآخاع	nuclear waste	النفايات النووية
creatures	مخلوقات	observatory	مرصد
deforestation	إزالة الغابات	owe	يدين
destructive	مدمر	pathology	علم امراض الدم
developed countries	دول متقدمة	pharmaceutical	خاص بالصيدلة
developing countries	دول نامية	philosophy	الفلسفة
deviation	انحراف	photosynthesis	عملية البناء الضوئي
diabetes	مرض السكر	physical illness	مرض بدني
diagnose	يُشخص	physiology	علم وظائف الأعضاء
diagnosis	تشخيص للمرض	physiotherapy	العلاج الطبيعي
disaster	كوارث	pillars	ركائز
disastrous	مدمر / كارثي	positive	بناء / إيجابي
distance learning	تعلم عن بُعد	potentials	قدرات
donation	تبرع	power plant	محطة توليد طاقة
drugs	عقاقير / مخدرات	preservation	حماية
eagle	صقر	prevention	وقاية
ecology	علم البيئة	properly	بشكل صحيح
Egyptology	علم المصريات	proportional to	متناسب مع
end / target / goal	غاية / هدف	psychiatrist	طبيب نفسي
endanger	يُعرض لخطر	psychologist	عالم نفسي
epidemic	وباء	psychology	علم النفس
erosion	تآكل / تعرية	public opinion	الرأي العام
evergreen	دائم الخضرة	radiation	إشعاع
evils	شرور	rare species	نصيلة نادرة
existence	وجود	reactor	مفاعل
extinction	إندثار / إنقراض	reform	إصلاح
females	إناث	regional	إقليمي
fever	حمى	remarkable progress	تقدم ملحوظ
		remedy	علاج

field	مجال	respiratory system	جهاز تنفسي
fragile	هش / ضعيف	restoration	ترميم
frustration	إحباط	scales	قشور / موازين
generation	جيل / توليد (طائفة)	scientific research	البحث العلمي
genetic engineering	الهندسة الوراثية	scabed	قاع البحر
global warming	الاحتباس الحراري	self	النفس / الذات
harness	يُسخر	set up	يُنشئ
herbal medicines	الأدوية العشبية	sociology	علم الاجتماع
heritage	تراث	sooner or later	عاجلاً أم آجلاً
hibernation	بيات شتوي	sterilization	تعقيم
humidity	رطوبة	stubborn	عنيد
hurricane	إعصار	support	بدعم / دعم
ideal solution	حل مثالي	surgery	جراحة
immune system	جهاز المناعة	symptoms	أعراض
impact	أثر	tame	أليف
incurable	لا علاج له	techniques	تقنيات
indigestion	عسر الهضم	thanks to	بفضل
individual	الفرد	therapist	معالج
infection	عدوى	therapy	علاج
infectious	معدى	thinkers	مفكرين
injection	حقن	tide	المد والجزر
innovation	الابتكار	tornado	إعصار
insomnia	أرق	transfusion	نقل دم
instinct	غريزة / فطرة	tropical	إستوائي
intensive care	عناية مركزة	tumor	ورم
issue	قضية	vaccine	مصل / لقاح
kidneys	كلتين	vegetarian	إنسان نباتي
knowledge	المعرفة	vehicle	مركبة
limit	يحد من / يقلل	waterfalls	شلالات
lungs	رئتين	wheel of production	عجلة الإنتاج
		zoology	علم الحيوان

Literature & Different Arts الأدب والفنون المختلفة

ancestors	أسلاف / أجداد	kindergarten (KG)	حضانة
aware	واع	loyalty	ولاء
awesome	مذهل / عجب	manners	سلوكيات
barriers	حواجز	manuscripts	مخطوطات
borders	حدود	masterpieces	روائع
brain drain	هجرة العقول	merely	فقط
bringing up	تربية	motives	دوافع
bullying	خطوة	nobility	نبيل
censorship	رقابة	non-verbal	غير لفظي
coherence	ترابط / تماسك	nutrition	تغذية
commemorate	يحيى ذكرى	objective	موضوعي
cope with	يجدي / يسائر	obstacle	عقبة
core	لب / جوف	peer	نظير / ند
corner stone	حجر الزاوية	personal interests	مصالح شخصية
craftsmen	أصحاب الحرف	personify	يُجسد
creative	صديق	playwright	كاتب مسرحي
cultural	ثقافي	potentials	قدرات
curriculum	منهاج	pre-historic	يخس ما قبل التاريخ
descendants	ذرية / نسل	principles	مبادئ
deterioration	تخلف / تدهور	procedures	إجراءات
edition	نسخة / طبعة	producer	مُنتج
elegance	إتقان	professional	مهني
enrich	يُثري	public library	مكتبة عامة
exceed	يتجاوز	public opinion	الرأي العام
faithfulness	إخلاص	reference	مرجع
fashion designer	مصمم أزياء	science fiction	خيال علمي
fashion houses	بيوت الموضة	spiritual	روحي
fashion show	عرض أزياء	sponsor	راعي
fine arts	فنون جميلة	sponsorship	رعاية
for entertainment	من أجل التمتعة	storyteller	قصص
		strategy	خطة

fortification	تحصين	sufficiency	إكتفاء
fortress	حصن	suspense	تشويق
glory	مجد	talented	موهوب
graphics	فن الجرافيك	tastes	أذواق
heritage	تراث	timid	متحفظ / خجول
hero	بطل	traditions	تقاليد
heroine	بطلة	UNESCO	منظمة اليونسكو
honest	صادق	unique	فريد
imagination	خيال	values	قيم
immigrants	مهاجرين	verbal	لفظي
immortal	خالد	vision	رؤية
incidents	أحداث	warmth	دفء
inspiration	الهام	weave	تنسج
invaders	غزاة	willingness	إستعداد
justice	العدالة	wonders	عجائب

Politics & Society السياسة والمجتمع

activist	ناشط	military	حربي / عسكري
administrative capital	العاصمة الإدارية	military secrets	أسرار عسكرية
ambassador	سفير	miracles	المعجزات
armed forces	قوات مسلحة	Muslims	المسلمين
assassinate	يقتال	nation	أمة
assassination	إغتيال	national security	الأمن القومي
belonging	الإلتصاف	national unity	وحدة وطنية
betray home	يخون الوطن	nationalism	القومية
bomb	قنبلة / يفجر قنبلة	negotiate	يتفاوض
carry out	يُنْفذ	negotiation	التفاوض
citizen	مواطن	obstacles	عقبات
citizenship	المواطنة	parliament	برلمان
civilian	مدني	partner	شريك
civilized	متحضر	party	حزب
commitment to	الإلتزام بـ	peace	السلام
conflict	صراع		

congested	متكدس	peace makers	صانع السلام
conspiracy	مؤامرة	policy	سياسة
constitution	تأسيس	politician	سياسي (شخص)
contribute to	يساهم في	politics	علم السياسة
cooperation	التعاون	pray	يدعو / يصلي
Copts	الأنباط	president	رئيس
crossroad	تقاطع	prevail	يسود / ينتشر
democracy	ديمقراطية	prime minister	رئيس الوزراء
democratic	ديمقراطي	principles	المبادئ
devote	يكرس	progress	التقدم
dictatorship	ديكتاتورية	protective	والحي
difficulty	صعوبة - مأرق	rebel	يشرد
diplomacy	دبلوماسية	rebellion	تعد / متمرد
domination	هيمنة / سيطرة	refugee	لاجئ
efforts	جهود	regime	نظام حكم
eliminate	يقضي على	rejecting	رفض - نيل
emigration	الهجرة	require	يتطلب
equality	مساواة	resistance	مقاومة
extert	يسئل	restrictions	القيود - المتوابط
extremism	تطرف	revolutions	الثورات
extremist	متطرف	rights	حقوق
fatal	قاتل / خطير	sacrifice	يضحى - تضحية
flourish	يزدهر	secret agent	عميل سري
formal request	طلب رسمي	security forces	أجهزة الأمن
freedom	حرية	service	خدمة
government bodies	الهيئات الحكومية	shield	درع
governorate	محافظة	spy	جاسوس
heavenly religions	الديانات السماوية	spying	تجاسر
housing	الإسكان	stability	استقرار
human rights	حقوق الإنسان	strictness	الحزم
human values	القيم الإنسانية	subjects	رعايا
ignorance	الجهل	tendency	توجه
illegal	غير شرعي		

illiteracy	الأمية	terrorism	الإرهاب
impose	يفرض	terrorist	إرهابي
independence	استقلال	the state	الدولة
injustice	الظلم	tolerance	التسامح
intelligence	المخابرات	transitional stage	مرحلة إنتقالية
leak secrets	يسرب أسرار	treason	خيانة عظمى
legal	شرعي / قانوني	treaty	معاهدة
lethal	قاتل	truce	هدنة
liberation	تحرير	tyranny	طغيان
loyalty	انتماء	victim	ضحية
major	كبير - رئيسي	violate	يتنهدك
martyr	شهيد	violation	انتهاك
		weapons	أسلحة

Various Issues قضايا متنوعة

accommodation	إقامة	intimacy	ألفة - حمودة
acquire	يكتسب	journalism	صحافة
amateur	هاو	local tourism	سياحة داخلية
amuse	يسنع / يسلو	magical	ساحر - خلاب
ancient / long-standing	عريق	major powers	قوى عظمى
annually	سنويا	manufacturer	صانع
athlete	لاعب ألعاب قوى	mass tourism	سياحة جماعية
attractions	أماكن جذب	miss the record	يفشل في تعظيم
audience	جمهور		الرقم القياسي
ban	يحظر	monuments	أثار
bear	يحمل	motivate	يحث / يثقل
broaden	يوسع	mountaineers	متسلق الجبال
champion	بطل رياضي	multinational	متعدد الجنسيات
championship	بطولة رياضية	news agency	وكالة انباء
coach/ trainer	مدرب	Olympic games	الالعاب الاولمبية
competition	منافسة	outlet	مخرج - منفذ
competitors	منافسين	pay	راتب / أجر
conference tourism	سياحة المؤتمرات	pharaohs	فراسة
critical	نقدي / حرج	physical fitness	لياقة بدنية
criticism	نقد	professional	محترف
criticize	ينقد	prohibition	حظر - منع

cultural tourism
current events
decisive
deprive
deviation
dignity
disasters
disputes
dominance
dominate
earner
eco-tourism
enrich
equality
erosion
fair play
farming
finals
flourish
flow of traffic
free press
migration
friendship
gallantry
generous
glory
grateful
greed
hard currency
homesickness
honour
hospitality
humour
hurricanes
ideal
ignorance
impression
instruct
interpret
interpreter

سياحة ثقافية
الأحداث الجارية
حازم / حاسم
بُحرِم
الإنحراف
كرامة
كوارث
النزاعات
هيمنة / سيطرة
يهيمن / يسيطر علي
مصدر دخل
سياحة صديقة للبيئة
يُثري
المساواة
التعزية
اللعبة التنظيم
الزراعة
نهائيات
يزدهر
انسياب المرور
صحافة حرة
هجرة
الصدقة
الشهامة
كريم
المجد
شاكِر / ممتن
جشع / طمع
عملة صعبة
حنين للوطن
شرف / يكرم
كرم الضيافة
فكاهة
أعاصير
مثالي
الجهل
إنطباع
يُعلم
يترجم فوري
مترجم فوري

propaganda
public relations
public transport
purity
rapprochement
rare
recreational tourism
reinforce
relationship
resort
rights
risk
rumour
satisfy
security
seek
self-confidence
self-dependence
selfishness
set a record
set an example
settlement
sightseeing
silver
source
stamina
stream
surroundings
take drugs
teamwork
therapeutic tourism
tourist site
tournament
traffic regulations
transition
travel agency
unite peoples
unselfishness
vacations
victory
virtues

الدعاية
علاقات عامة
المواصلات العامة
نقاء
التقارب
نادر
سياحة ترفيهية
بمعزز - يدعم
العلاقة
منتجع
الحقوق
خطر
إشاعة
يُرضي / يُشبع
أمن
يسعى / يرغب في
الثقة بالنفس
الاعتماد علي النفس
الأنانية
يسجل رقما قياسيا
يعطي قدوة
تسوية / حل
زيارة المعالم
الفضة / فضي
مصدر
قوة الاحتمال
التيار
الأشياء المحيطة
يتعاطى المخدرات
العمل الجماعي
سياحة علاجية
موقع سياحي
دورة
قواعد المرور
تحويل
وكالة سفريات
توجد الشعوب
الإبشار
عطلات / اجازات
نصر
الفضائل